













Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2016 with funding from  
Getty Research Institute





# NEW AND FORTHCOMING WORKS.

*IMPORTANT TO DYERS AND MANUFACTURERS.*

*Will be Published in October next, embodying the Sanitary Legislation of the present Session,*

**A DICTIONARY of HYGIÈNE AND PUBLIC HEALTH:** Comprising Sanitary Chemistry, Engineering, and Legislation, the Dietetic Value of Foods, and the Detection of Adulterations. On the plan of the *Dictionnaire D'Hygiène Publique* of Professor AMBROISE TARDIEU. By ALEXANDER WYNTER BLYTH, M.R.C.S., F.C.S., A.K.C., &c.; Analyst to the County of Devon, Medical Officer of Health, &c. Royal 8vo, cloth, with Illustrations, Diagrams, and Map.

*Now Ready, crown 8vo, cloth, with numerous Diagrams, 7s. 6d.*

**THE MECHANIC'S GUIDE: A Practical Hand-Book for Engineers, Mechanics, Artizans, &c.,** comprising Arithmetic, Geometry, Mensuration, Velocities, Wheel-Gearing, Screw-Cutting, the Steam-Engine, &c., and the General Principles of Mechanism; with a number of Useful Recipes and Copious Tables for Practical Use. By WILLIAM V. SHELTON, Foreman, Imperial Ottoman Gun-Factories, Constantinople: Associate of the Society of Amalgamated Engineers; Member of the Fourth Class, "Order of the Medjidieh," &c., &c.

*In Preparation, crown 8vo, cloth. Fifth Edition.*

**A MANUAL of ELECTRO-METALLURGY:** Containing the newest Processes of Depositing Gold, Silver, Copper, and other Metals. By JAMES NAPIER, F.R.S.E., F.C.S., &c. With numerous Illustrations. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged.

*Royal 8vo, 764 pp., cloth, with over 200 Illustrations, drawn to scale, and reduced in many instances from working drawings. Price 34s.*

**ELEMENTS of METALLURGY: A Practical Treatise on the Art of extracting Metals from their Ores.** By J. ARTHUR PHILLIPS, M. Inst. C.E., F.G.S., F.C.S., &c., Ancien Elève de l'Ecole des Mines, Paris.

## CONTENTS:—

Refractory Materials.	Iron.	Aluminium.
Fire-Clays.	Cobalt.	Copper.
Fuels, &c.	Nickel.	Tin.
Antimony.	Mercury.	Gold.
Arsenic.	Bismuth.	Silver.
Zinc.	Lead.	Platinum, &c.

"There is certainly no metallurgical treatise in the language calculated to prove of such general utility to the student seeking sound practical information. The value of the book is almost inestimable"—*Mining Journal*.

"A work which is equally valuable to the student as a text-book, and to the practical smelter as a standard work of reference. . . . The illustrations are admirable examples of wood engraving"—*Chemical News*.

"The author has treated with great skill the metallurgical operations relating to all the principal metals. The methods are described with surprising clearness and exactness. . . . In our opinion the best work ever written on the subject with a view to its practical treatment."—*Westminster Review*.

*Now Ready, crown 8vo, cloth bevelled, with numerous Diagrams, 15s.*

**A MANUAL of TELEGRAPH CONSTRUCTION: The Mechanical Elements of Electric Telegraph Engineering.** By JOHN CHRISTIE DOUGLAS, East India Government Telegraph Department, Society of Telegraph Engineers, &c.

"The amount of information given is such as to render this volume a most useful guide to any one who may be engaged in any branch of Electric Telegraph Engineering."—*Athenæum*.

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN AND COMPANY,  
10 STATIONERS' HALL COURT.

A M A N U A L

OF

DYEING AND DYEING RECEIPTS.







A MANUAL  
OF  
DYEING AND DYEING RECEIPTS,  
COMPRISING  
A SYSTEM OF ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY,  
AS APPLIED TO DYEING,  
WITH RECEIPTS FOR THE GENERAL READER FOR DYEING ANY  
COLOUR ON COTTON, SILK, AND WOOL, WITH  
COLOURED PATTERN OF CLOTH OF  
EACH FABRIC.

BY  
JAMES NAPIER, F.R.S.E., F.C.S., &c.

Third Edition.

LONDON:  
CHARLES GRIFFIN AND COMPANY,  
10 STATIONERS' HALL COURT.  
1875.

*(All Rights Reserved.)*



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

IF there be any trade which, more than another, requires the knowledge of first principles, it is that of dyeing, it being essentially progressive. The particular conditions of the trade render information of this description more needful, and therefore more valuable, than ordinary. The trade is what is termed open, so that any man may enter it; and, in consequence, there are few instances where young men are taught the business systematically. A great many enter the trade who are grown up,—their chief ambition being to learn the mechanical operations of the dye-house, and when sufficient dexterity in these is attained, to secure the highest rate of wages. When this is accomplished, zeal for improvement in a great measure subsides. However, there are many who, not content with acquiring a knowledge of the mere mechanical routine, desire to look deeper into the principles of the art, and aim at higher honours than those of a mere labourer in it, but who believe that the means of success consist simply in long and steady service, and a good memory for the rules of manipulation. Both of these are valuable qualifications, but neither of them would be depreciated in the slightest degree by being conjoined with a more extended knowledge of the fundamental principles of the art than usually falls to the share of the practical dyer. There is another evil arising out of this condition of the trade. Individuals who attain the position of good workmen value their abilities by the contrast which exists between them and the newly-initiated journeyman; but they rarely or never look forward to the wide field which lies unexplored before them. Often indeed they boast of their capabilities, of their expertness, and their knowledge; and it is no uncommon thing for them to indulge in petty jealousy, and endeavour to conceal the *secret* of their mode of working from their neighbours. Under these circumstances it is no wonder that years are often spent—we should say wasted—in endeavouring to discover what was long before patent to every one who knew the

scientific principles of the trade, although ignorant of the practical operations of it. This ignorance of principles often makes both workman and master the dupes of knaves who go about hawking *valuable secrets* at so much a piece.

It must be admitted, however, that notwithstanding all untoward circumstances, the degree of advancement which the art has attained is truly astonishing. A single practical hint is sometimes sufficient to cause a complete revolution in some branch of the trade, so that were the principles of chemistry in their application to dyeing but once generally understood by those practically employed at the trade, we can hardly conceive what changes and improvements might not be effected.

Another circumstance calling for a few remarks is the fluctuating state of the trade, which, even in its best condition, throws not less than a fourth part of the workmen idle during the winter months. But while we admit the hardship of such a state of things in its fullest extent, we do not believe that this time should be allowed to glide by in absolute listlessness. It is still a portion of the allotted span of life, and ought to be turned to all the advantage which circumstances will admit; and if it can be made subservient to future advantage, either by advancing the personal interests, or in augmenting the mental enjoyment of the individual, it is surely culpable to allow it to run to waste. We sincerely believe that it may be turned to account in both ways, and we promise, with some confidence, that the following Treatise will suggest the means of deriving remuneration even from idle hours. Lord Bacon's maxim, that "Knowledge is power," has been reiterated till it may be thought to have lost its virtue; but it is still as true as ever, and we are confident that it cannot be more aptly applied than to the case of the practical dyer.

From our own experience we are aware that there at present exists a strong desire amongst a great many of those employed in the processes of dyeing to understand the principles of the art, and to be able to assign reasons for the various changes that take place in producing the colours. Such knowledge is often eagerly sought for without success, both in books and in the lecture-room. The disappointment arises from two sources: first, the inability of the dyer to apply chemical principles to his special purposes; and, second, a want of practical knowledge in the author or lecturer, which disqualifies him for pointing out the special applications of the principles he may

be defining. These circumstances have long impressed the Author with the opinion that an application of principles to any practical operation can best be done by an individual working at, or familiar with, all the practical details of that particular operation or trade, and that every branch of trade or art ought to have its own guide-book prepared by one of its own operatives. The carrying out of this idea has induced the Author to publish the present MANUAL, which is a "SYSTEM OF CHEMISTRY APPLIED TO DYEING." Having been himself a practical dyer for many years, and having experienced the difficulties which an uneducated man has to contend with in striving to become a Dyer in the proper sense of the term, he has in the following pages endeavoured to clear away some of the technical difficulties besetting the path of the practical man, and to guide him in following out First Principles while engaged in experiments to advance his art.

The Author acknowledges his obligations to a few intelligent dyers for several practical hints contained in these pages, which had not come under his own observation. It will also be seen in reading the work, that advantage has been taken of some valuable articles in foreign journals, translations of some of which have appeared in chemical periodicals, such as the *Pharmaceutical Times*, which is now discontinued, and the *Chemical Gazette*, a journal which he earnestly recommends to the practical dyer, as containing from time to time papers of great value upon Dyeing and Dye-stuffs.

PARTICK, GLASGOW,  
25th Feb., 1853.





## PREFACE TO THE PRESENT EDITION.

---

SINCE the time when the *MANUAL OF DYEING* was first published, many and important changes have taken place, both inside and outside the dye-house. On the one hand, there is increased knowledge of the capability of the art; on the other hand there is a wonderfully increased power of production, resulting from improved machinery: these changes have taken place inside the dye-house, while outside changes have taken place also. Science has made unprecedented advances, and with its advance its nomenclature has undergone an entire change. These changes and additions to our knowledge have made it necessary to very carefully revise and extend the Manual, in order to meet the requirements of the day on its re-publication now. A short statement of the history of the Manual, and the nature of the alterations now made upon it, may neither be uninteresting nor out of place here.

When first published the Manual was really, if we except Dr. Bancroft's *Philosophy of Permanent Colours*, published in 1813, the first *practical* Treatise on Dyeing published in this country, and as the Doctor was not a dyer, the Manual was the first book upon Dyeing by a practical dyer in this country. In 1842 was commenced the *Glasgow Practical Mechanic and Engineer's Magazine*, the editor of which resolved to publish papers on different trades written by practical men, and from a workman's standpoint. I was asked to furnish a few papers on Dyeing. These appeared in the years 1843 and 1844. Two years afterwards an American publisher printed the entire series, with a little addition on calico-printing. The whole formed a good-sized volume, entitled "*A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON DYEING AND CALICO-PRINTING*," but neither the name of the author nor the source from which the papers on Dyeing were taken was mentioned. I nevertheless felt proud that my efforts had been appreciated. In 1852 I revised and extended these magazine papers, and they were issued by the present firm under the title of "*A MANUAL OF THE ART OF DYEING*."

This work suggested to my publishers another volume more suitable to the general public, containing useful receipts, which was entitled "DYEING RECEIPTS," and rapidly passed into a second edition.

However, during the interval between that and the present issue great changes have taken place in the Dyer's Art, and in Chemistry. At first sight those who are not engaged in the trade are apt to think that the discovery and introduction of the Coal-Tar Colours has so revolutionised the art, that the old dye-stuff, which it had been the pride of the dyer to manipulate, has now become antiquated and has been banished from the trade. However, the revolution has not been so disastrous upon the old dye-drugs as appearances to the non-practical man might suggest. Some few dye-stuffs have been superseded, but there still remains a good assortment. Neither are the processes really changed by which the dyes from these dyeing agents were produced; changes in the manipulations have taken place, machinery supplying the place of manual labour; but neither processes nor principles have become antiquated.

Dyeing with Coal-Tar Colours is an entirely new branch of the art. New matter therefore has been added under this head. I have, in treating of them, kept in mind as much as possible to look at them from the standpoint of the dye-house, remembering that the Manual addresses itself to men who know the application of these colours, but who may understand little or nothing of their chemical nature and constitution. This portion of the work I have done my best to make clear, so that workmen who may not have studied Chemistry to any great extent may yet understand the nature of these curious compounds.

In the Chemical Formulæ of the work there are great changes, and those readers who are acquainted with the first edition of the Manual, and who have not kept abreast with the progress of Chemistry, will be ready to believe that the whole science of Chemistry has been revolutionised. In the first edition indications were given of an approaching transition in the manner of formulating compounds, in order to make the formulæ agree with the latest knowledge of the arrangement of the different elements in a compound. Thus, for example, it used to be considered that acids did not combine directly with a metallic element, but with its oxide, so that such salts as the sulphate of iron should be sulphate of the oxide of iron, formulated thus,  $\text{SO}_3 + \text{FeO}$ . I stated that this idea was giving way to the idea of direct combinations with a metal, and that the sulphate of iron should be formulated thus,  $\text{SO}_4 + \text{Fe}$ ; also, that sulphuric acid should



not be formulated as  $\text{SO}_3 + \text{HO}$ , but as  $\text{SO}_4 + \text{H}$ , hydrogen being a metallic element. Chemical discovery has necessitated greater changes than these, in order that the whole science may be harmonised.

Hydrogen being the lightest element known, chemists fixed upon one volume of it as the standard of comparison for the combining weight of all the other elements, and whatever weight any other element combined with one volume of hydrogen, that was taken to be the equivalent of combination, hydrogen being one. Thus, suppose one grain of hydrogen to combine with oxygen, and the compound formed would weigh 9 grains; hydrogen being one, the oxygen must therefore be eight, and this relation was found to be invariable. This rule was followed with all the other elements, and a table formed of the combining equivalents of all the elements. This table was given in the first edition of the Manual. Afterwards, however, serious objections were taken to one volume of hydrogen being regarded as the standard of unity, for it necessitated anomalous conditions. Thus, volume and atom being considered synonymous, if one volume—say a cubic inch—was brought into combining contact with one volume of oxygen—a cubic inch also—when all the hydrogen was taken up there remained half of the oxygen uncombined, and it would require another cubic inch of hydrogen to take up the remaining half inch of oxygen; so that if one volume or atom of hydrogen were taken as unity, then oxygen would be uniting in half volumes or half atoms, which would be an absurdity, for atoms being the smallest particle of matter there could be no half atoms. Similar results were found in connection with many other elements. After much discussion and investigation, these errors became thoroughly manifest, and a better system was proposed by various leading chemists, which came gradually into use. One volume of oxygen was taken as the standard, which, retaining still the relative combining weight compared with hydrogen, was called 16. Hence water, which was formerly formulated  $\text{HO}$ , one hydrogen (1) and one oxygen (8) = 9, is now formulated  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , two hydrogen (2) and one oxygen (16) = 18. The equivalent weights of all the other elements are taken in this relation, one volume being weighed against an equal volume of oxygen. Many of these, like oxygen, have their combining weights doubled, some few tripled to what they were, while others remain as formerly. By comparing the tables the reader will observe these changes. This change has necessitated a considerable alteration in the formulæ of compounds, to which we would call the reader's special attention. If he is in possession of our former edition, and has been guided by it, he may get confused, and

think that the principles of the science are altered, which is not the case. For illustration, let him examine the two tables, and take the elements of nitric acid, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen. The weights of the two first remain as they were; but oxygen is doubled, so that to retain the same proportions we have to double the proportions of hydrogen and nitrogen.

The old formula of this acid was . . . .  $\text{NO}_5 + \text{HO} = 63$

The transition formula was . . . .  $\text{NO}_6 + \text{H} = 63$

The new formula, retaining the same proportions, would be  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_6\text{H}_2 = 126$

but this would not be consistent with the rule of for-

mulating; it is therefore divided thus,  $\text{NO}_3\text{H}$ , formulated  $\text{HNO}_3 = 63$

It will thus be observed that the original relations of the weights are unaltered. I have endeavoured to make these changes as plain as possible, and a very little study will enable the reader who has only been familiar with the old formulæ to overcome the difficulties caused by the change. In the present edition I have considered myself as still addressing dyers. My object in the Manual is not to teach practical Dyeing, as many of those who will read this book know that better than I do; but to explain the scientific principles of the art, to stimulate among working dyers a desire to understand their trade, and the laws regulating the various combinations producing the different colouring compounds, a knowledge more necessary now than ever it was. This knowledge may not raise a man to the position of foreman or manager; but it will qualify him who possesses it for any position in connection with the trade. A knowledge of principles will add interest in their work to those who labour at it, removing from them the idea that they are mere labouring machines, and raising them to the rank of skilled workmen—a title which, if properly appreciated, would add dignity to the possessor of it.

J. N.

PARTICK, *June*, 1875.

# CONTENTS.

---

## GENERAL PROPERTIES OF MATTER.—HEAT.

	PAGE
Conditions of Matter, . . . . .	1
Heat the Cause of Conditions of Matter, . . . . .	1
General Effects of Heat, . . . . .	2
Measures of Temperature, . . . . .	3
Boiling of Liquids, . . . . .	5
Substances affecting Boiling Point, . . . . .	5
Strong Boiling, . . . . .	5
Chemical Effects of Heat upon Colours, . . . . .	6

## LIGHT.

Nature of Light, . . . . .	8
Relation of Colours to the Fabric, . . . . .	9
Effects of Different Rays upon Colours, . . . . .	10
Effects of Light causing Combination, . . . . .	11
Light decomposes Chemical Compounds, . . . . .	12
Practical Application of the Principles, . . . . .	13

## ELEMENTS OF MATTER.

Differences between an Element and Compound, . . . . .	16
Use of Symbols, . . . . .	19
Nomenclature, . . . . .	20
Rules for Naming Compounds, . . . . .	20
Salts—their Nature and Nomenclature, . . . . .	21

## CHEMICAL AFFINITY.

Application of Affinity, . . . . .	24
Circumstances influencing Affinity, . . . . .	24
Catalytic Influence, . . . . .	24
Constitution of Salts, . . . . .	25
Salt Radicals, . . . . .	27

## ELEMENTARY SUBSTANCES.

	PAGE
Oxygen, . . . . .	29
How to make Oxygen Gas, . . . . .	29
Properties of Oxygen, . . . . .	31
Hydrogen, . . . . .	31
Water, . . . . .	32
Incrustation on Steam Boilers, . . . . .	38
Binoxide of Hydrogen, . . . . .	39
Nitrogen, . . . . .	39
Protoxide of Nitrogen—Nitrogen Monoxide, . . . . .	41
Binoxide of Nitrogen—Dioxide, . . . . .	41
Nitrogen Trioxide, or Nitrous Acid, . . . . .	41
Nitrogen Tetroxide, or Peroxide of Nitrogen, . . . . .	42
Nitrogen Pentoxide, . . . . .	42
Nitric Acid, . . . . .	42
Table of the Quantity of Acid in 100 Parts by Weight, . . . . .	46
Ammonia, . . . . .	48
Chlorine, . . . . .	49
Chlorine Protoxide, or Hypochlorous Acid, . . . . .	50
Chlorous Acid, . . . . .	50
Chloric Acid, . . . . .	50
Perchloric Acid, . . . . .	51
Hydrochloric Acid, . . . . .	51
Chloride of Nitrogen, . . . . .	55
Bleaching, . . . . .	55
Ozone, . . . . .	71
Sulphur, . . . . .	72
Sulphurous Acid, . . . . .	73
Sulphuric Acid, . . . . .	74
Hyposulphurous Acid, . . . . .	80
Hyposulphuric Acid, . . . . .	81
Hydrogen Sulphide, . . . . .	81
Selenium, . . . . .	82
Phosphorus, . . . . .	82
Iodine, . . . . .	83
Bromine, . . . . .	84
Fluorine, . . . . .	85
Silicium, . . . . .	85
Boron, . . . . .	85
Carbon, . . . . .	86
Carbonic Oxide, . . . . .	87
Carbonic Acid, . . . . .	88
Oxalic Acid, . . . . .	88
Cyanogen, . . . . .	89

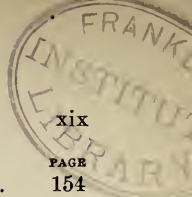
## METALLIC SUBSTANCES.

	PAGE
General Properties of Metals, . . . . .	91
Potassium, . . . . .	91
Potash, . . . . .	92
Sulphate of Potash, . . . . .	96
Bisulphate of Potash, . . . . .	96
Sulphite of Potash, . . . . .	96
Nitrate of Potash, . . . . .	96
Chlorate of Potash, . . . . .	96
Phosphate of Potash, . . . . .	97
Oxalate of Potash, . . . . .	97
Ferrocyanide of Potassium, . . . . .	97
Ferrieyanide of Potassium, . . . . .	100
Cyanide of Potassium, . . . . .	101
Cyanate of Potash, . . . . .	101
Sodium, . . . . .	101
Soda, . . . . .	102
Soda made direct from Common Salt, . . . . .	103
Soda-Ash, . . . . .	104
Sulphate of Soda, . . . . .	109
Chloride of Sodium, . . . . .	109
Nitrate of Soda, . . . . .	109
Borate of Soda, . . . . .	109
Phosphate of Soda, . . . . .	109
Lithium, . . . . .	110
Soap, . . . . .	110
Composition of Soaps, per 1,000 Parts, . . . . .	111
Barium, . . . . .	115
Chloride of Barium, . . . . .	115
Nitrate of Barytes, . . . . .	115
Strontium, . . . . .	115
Calcium, . . . . .	116
Caustic Lime, . . . . .	116
Sulphate of Lime, . . . . .	116
Carbonate of Lime, . . . . .	117
Magnesium, . . . . .	117
Magnesia, . . . . .	117
Aluminum, . . . . .	117
Alumina, . . . . .	117
Alum, . . . . .	117
Sulphate of Alumina, . . . . .	121
Acetate of Alumina, . . . . .	121
Manganese, . . . . .	127
Mineral Cameleon, . . . . .	129

	PAGE
Iron, . . . . .	129
Sulphate of Iron, or Ferrous Sulphate, . . . . .	130
Chloride of Iron, . . . . .	135
Carbonate of Iron, . . . . .	135
Acetate of Iron, . . . . .	135
Persulphate of Iron, . . . . .	136
Nitrate of Iron, . . . . .	136
Protosalts, . . . . .	139
Persalts of Iron, . . . . .	139
Cobalt, . . . . .	139
Nickel, . . . . .	140
Sulphate of Nickel, . . . . .	140
Chloride of Nickel, . . . . .	141
Nitrate of Nickel, . . . . .	141
Carbonate of Nickel, . . . . .	141
Zinc, . . . . .	141
Chloride of Zinc, . . . . .	142
Sulphate of Zinc, . . . . .	142
Nitrate of Zinc, . . . . .	142
Cadmium, . . . . .	143
Indium, . . . . .	143
Copper, . . . . .	144
Protoxide of Copper, . . . . .	144
Sulphate of Copper, . . . . .	144
Nitrate of Copper, . . . . .	145
Chloride of Copper, . . . . .	145
Acetate of Copper, . . . . .	146
Oxalate of Copper, . . . . .	146
Arseniate and the Arsenite of Copper, . . . . .	146
Lead, . . . . .	146
Suboxide of Lead, . . . . .	147
Protoxide of Lead, . . . . .	147
Peroxide of Lead, . . . . .	148
Carbonate of Lead, . . . . .	148
Nitrate of Lead, . . . . .	148
Acetate of Lead, . . . . .	148
Sulphate of Lead, . . . . .	150
Chloride of Lead, . . . . .	150
Testing the Value of Lead Salts, . . . . .	151
Thallium, . . . . .	151
Bismuth, . . . . .	151
Nitrate of Bismuth, . . . . .	152
Tin, . . . . .	152
Protoxide of Tin, or Stannous Oxide, . . . . .	153
Protochloride of Tin, . . . . .	154



# CONTENTS.



xix

PAGE

Protosulphate of Tin, . . . . .	154
Protonitrate of Tin, . . . . .	155
Tartrate of Potash and Tin, . . . . .	155
Deutoxide, or Sesquioxide of Tin, . . . . .	155
Peroxide of Tin, . . . . .	156
Perchloride of Tin—Stannic Chloride, . . . . .	156
Spirits, . . . . .	158
Red Spirits, . . . . .	158
Plumb Spirits, . . . . .	159
Barwood Spirits, . . . . .	159
Yellow Spirits, . . . . .	159
Acetate of Tin, . . . . .	159
Oxalate of Tin, . . . . .	159
Stannate of Soda, . . . . .	160
Titanium, . . . . .	162
Chromium, . . . . .	162
Chloride of Chromium, . . . . .	163
Sulphate of Chromium, . . . . .	163
Chromic Acid, . . . . .	164
Bichromate (Red Chromate) of Potash, . . . . .	165
Chromate of Lead, . . . . .	166
Chrome Yellow, . . . . .	166
Chrome Greens, . . . . .	168
Chrome Orange, . . . . .	168
Tests for Bichromate of Potash, . . . . .	169
Vanadium, . . . . .	170
Tungstenum, or Wolfram, . . . . .	170
Molybdenum, . . . . .	171
Peroxide of Molybdenum, . . . . .	171
Molybdic Acid, . . . . .	171
Tellurium, . . . . .	172
Tellurous Acid, . . . . .	172
Telluric Acid, . . . . .	172
Arsenic, . . . . .	172
Arsenious Acid, . . . . .	173
Arsenic Acid, . . . . .	174
Sulphides of Arsenic, . . . . .	174
Antimony, . . . . .	175
Oxide of Antimony, . . . . .	175
Sulphate of Antimony, . . . . .	176
Antimonious Acid, . . . . .	176
Antimonic Acid, . . . . .	176
Uranium, . . . . .	176
Protoxide of Uranium, . . . . .	177
Peroxide of Uranium, . . . . .	177

	PAGE
Cerium, . . . . .	178
Mercury, . . . . .	178
Suboxide of Mercury, . . . . .	178
Protoxide of Mercury, Peroxide of Mercury, or Red Oxide, . . . . .	178
Silver, . . . . .	179
Nitrate of Silver, . . . . .	180
Sulphate of Silver, . . . . .	180
Gold, . . . . .	181
Chloride of Gold, . . . . .	181
Perchloride or Trichloride of Gold, . . . . .	182
Platinum, . . . . .	182
Palladium, . . . . .	183
Iridium, . . . . .	184
Osmium, . . . . .	184
Rhodium, . . . . .	184
Lanthanium, . . . . .	185

## MORDANTS.

Red Spirits, . . . . .	196
Barwood Spirits, . . . . .	197
Plumb Spirits, . . . . .	197
Yellow Spirits, . . . . .	198
Nitrate of Iron, . . . . .	198
Acetate of Iron and Alumina, . . . . .	199
Acetate of Alumina, . . . . .	199
Black Iron Liquor, . . . . .	199
Iron and Tin for Royal Blue, . . . . .	199
Acetate of Copper, . . . . .	199

## VEGETABLE MATTERS USED IN DYEING.

Introductory Remarks, . . . . .	206
Galls, . . . . .	213
Sumach, . . . . .	220
Catechu, . . . . .	224
Valonia Nuts, . . . . .	227
Divi Divi, . . . . .	227
Myrobalans, . . . . .	227

## INDIGO.

Woad and Pastel, . . . . .	257
Indigo Blue, . . . . .	257
Pastel Vat, . . . . .	259



# CONTENTS.

xxi

PAGE

Woad Vat, . . . . .	261
Modified Pastel Vat, . . . . .	262
Indian Vat, . . . . .	263
Potash Vat, . . . . .	264
German Vat, . . . . .	264
Management of the Vats, . . . . .	265
Logwood, . . . . .	269
Brazil-Woods, . . . . .	276
Santal or Sandal-Wood, . . . . .	279
Barwood, . . . . .	280
Camwood, . . . . .	282
Fustic or Yellow-Wood, . . . . .	283
Young Fustic, . . . . .	284
Bark or Quercitron, . . . . .	285
Flavine, . . . . .	287
Weld or Wold, . . . . .	288
Turmeric, . . . . .	289
Persian Berries, . . . . .	289
Safflower or Carthamus, . . . . .	290

# MADDER.

Levant Madder, . . . . .	294
Dutch Madder, . . . . .	295
Alcase Madder, . . . . .	295
Madder of Avignon, . . . . .	295
Madder Purple, . . . . .	298
Madder Red, . . . . .	298
Madder Orange, . . . . .	299
Madder Yellow, . . . . .	299
Madder Brown, . . . . .	299
Madder Acids, . . . . .	299
Madder Preparations, . . . . .	300
Munjeet, or Mungeet, . . . . .	303
Annotta, or Arnotto, . . . . .	303
Alkanet Root, . . . . .	306
Archil, or Orchil, . . . . .	306
Sooranjee, . . . . .	308
Carajuru, or Chica, . . . . .	311
Wongshy, . . . . .	312
Aloes, . . . . .	315
Pittacal, . . . . .	316
Barbary Root, . . . . .	317
Cochineal, . . . . .	318
Carmine, . . . . .	319

	PAGE
Lake Lake, or Lac, . . . . .	322
Kerms. . . . .	323
Ultramarine, . . . . .	323

## COAL-TAR COLOURS.

Greens, . . . . .	331
-------------------	-----

## DYEING RECEIPTS.

Introductory Observations, . . . . .	338
--------------------------------------	-----

## PRELIMINARY PREPARATIONS FOR DYEING.

1. Banding, . . . . .	339
2. Boiling and Sticking, . . . . .	339
3. Cotton Cloth, . . . . .	339
4. To remove Oil Stains, . . . . .	340
5. To remove Iron Stains, . . . . .	340
6. To make Bleaching Liquor, . . . . .	340
7. To bleach Cotton Yarn for Dyeing, . . . . .	340
8. To work Cotton Yarn for Dyeing or Bleaching for Dyeing, . . . . .	341
9. To bleach Cotton Yarn to be finished White, . . . . .	341
10. To bleach Cotton Cloth, . . . . .	341
11. To make Caustic Potash, . . . . .	341
12. To make Caustic Soda, . . . . .	342
13. To slake Lime, . . . . .	342
14. To make a Sour, . . . . .	342
15. To make Nitrate of Iron, . . . . .	342
16. To make Acetate of Iron, . . . . .	342
17. To make Sulphate of Iron, . . . . .	343
18. To make Proto-Chloride of Iron, . . . . .	343
19. To make Persulphate of Iron, . . . . .	343
20. Other Methods, . . . . .	343
21. To make Perchloride of Iron, . . . . .	343
22. To make Sulphate of Zinc, . . . . .	344
23. To make Sulphate of Copper, . . . . .	344
24. To make Nitrate of Copper, . . . . .	344
25. To feather Tin or Zinc, . . . . .	344
26. Protochloride of Tin, . . . . .	344
27. To make Bichloride of Tin, . . . . .	345
28. Another Method for Permuriate of Tin, . . . . .	345
29. Red Spirits, . . . . .	345

	PAGE
30. To make Yellow Spirits, . . . . .	345
31. Barwood Spirits, . . . . .	345
32. Spirit Mordant for Woollen, . . . . .	345
33. Plumb Spirits, . . . . .	346
34. Double Muriate of Tin, . . . . .	346
35. Single Muriate of Tin, . . . . .	346
36. To make a Plumb Tub, . . . . .	346
37. Alum Plumb Tub, . . . . .	346
38. Peachwood Plumb, . . . . .	346
39. To make up a Blue Vat, . . . . .	346
39a. Another Method, . . . . .	347
40. To prepare Annotta, . . . . .	347
41. To prepare Catechu, . . . . .	347
42. To make Decoctions of Ground Woods, . . . . .	347
43. To test the Comparative Quality of Logwood, or other Vegetable Colouring Matters Soluble in Water, . . . . .	347
44. To make Sulphate of Indigo, . . . . .	348
45. To prepare Indigo Extract, . . . . .	348
46. To make Sour Extract of Indigo, . . . . .	348
47. To make Free Extract of Indigo, . . . . .	348
48. To make Chemic, . . . . .	349
49. To prepare Safflower for Dyeing Cotton, . . . . .	349
50. To prepare Safflower for Dyeing Silk, . . . . .	349
51. To make Oxalate and Muriate of Tin, . . . . .	349
52. To make Acetate of Alumina, . . . . .	350
53. To test Water, . . . . .	350
54. To make Lime-Water, . . . . .	350
55. To make Cochineal Liquor, or Paste, . . . . .	351
56. To remove Mildew from Cotton, . . . . .	351
57. To remove Indelible Ink Marks, . . . . .	351
58. Another Method, . . . . .	351
59. To detect Animal and Vegetable Fibres, . . . . .	351
60. To detect Mixed Fabrics of Cotton and Wool, . . . . .	351
61. To detect Cotton in Linen, . . . . .	351
62. Another Method for detecting Cotton in Linen, . . . . .	352
63. Cotton and Wool, . . . . .	352
64. Cotton with Silk and Wool, . . . . .	352
65. Cotton with Silk and Woollen, . . . . .	352
66. Softening, . . . . .	352
67. To strip Royal Blue from Silk or Woollen, . . . . .	352
68. Strip Scarlet Cochineal Dye, . . . . .	353
69. To make Soluble Prussian Blue for Domestic Use, . . . . .	353
70. Another Method, . . . . .	353
71. To find the Quantity of Tannin in any Vegetable, . . . . .	353
71a. Testing Dyed Stuffs or Fibres, . . . . .	353

## COTTON DYEING.

	PAGE
General Directions, . . . . .	356
72. Black, . . . . .	357
73. Jet Black, . . . . .	357
74. Blue Black, . . . . .	358
75. Spirit Brown, . . . . .	358
76. Mordant Brown, . . . . .	358
77. Cinnamon Brown, . . . . .	358
78. Uvanterine Brown, . . . . .	359
79. Fawn Brown, . . . . .	359
80. Bismarck Brown, . . . . .	359
81. Catechu Brown, . . . . .	359
82. Catechu Chocolates, . . . . .	360
83. Chocolate or French Brown, . . . . .	360
84. Catechu Fawns, . . . . .	360
85. Catechu Fawns—Another Method, . . . . .	360
86. Catechu Fawns—Another Method, . . . . .	361
87. Safflower Pink, . . . . .	361
88. Rose Colour, . . . . .	361
89. Safflower Crimson, . . . . .	362
90. Safflower Red, . . . . .	362
91. Safflower Scarlet, . . . . .	362
92. Aniline Pink, . . . . .	362
93. Common Red, . . . . .	362
94. Barwood Red, . . . . .	363
95. Aniline Red, . . . . .	363
96. Common Crimson, . . . . .	364
97. Magenta, . . . . .	364
98. Light Straw, . . . . .	364
99. Leghorn, . . . . .	364
100. Lemon Yellow, . . . . .	364
101. Chrome Yellow, . . . . .	365
102. Chrome Amber, . . . . .	365
103. Another Method for Dark Yellows, . . . . .	365
104. Spirit Yellow, . . . . .	366
105. Light Spirit Yellow, . . . . .	366
106. Bark Yellow with Mordant, . . . . .	366
107. Chrome Orange, . . . . .	366
108. Another Method for Chrome Orange, . . . . .	367
109. Annotta Orange, . . . . .	367
110. Sky Blue or Prussian Blue, . . . . .	367
111. Napoleon Blue, . . . . .	368
112. Royal Blue, . . . . .	368
113. China Blue, . . . . .	368
114. Opal or Spirit Blue, . . . . .	369

	PAGE
115. Logwood Blue, . . . . .	369
116. Indigo Vat Blue, . . . . .	369
117. Chrome Green, . . . . .	370
118. Bark Green on Yarn, . . . . .	370
119. Fustic Green on Yarn, . . . . .	370
120. Bark or Chemic Green on Cloth, . . . . .	370
121. Fustic Green on Cloth, . . . . .	371
122. Green with Prussian Blue, . . . . .	371
123. Sage Green, . . . . .	371
124. Olive or Bottle Green, . . . . .	372
125. Olive or Bottle Green—Another Method, . . . . .	372
126. Deep Olive Green, . . . . .	372
127. Aniline Green, . . . . .	372
128. Lavender Puce or Lilac, . . . . .	373
129. Another Method, . . . . .	373
130. Light Purple or Adelaide, . . . . .	373
131. Another Method and Deeper Shade, . . . . .	373
132. Ordinary Purple, . . . . .	374
133. Lavender or Peach, . . . . .	374
134. Logwood Puce, . . . . .	374
135. Another Method, . . . . .	374
136. Light Lavender, . . . . .	374
137. Aniline Purple, . . . . .	375
138. Mauve, . . . . .	375
139. Aniline Lavender, . . . . .	375
140. French White, . . . . .	375
141. Safflower Lavender, . . . . .	375
142. Safflower Lavender—Another Method, . . . . .	376
143. Iron Buff or Nankeen, . . . . .	376
144. Another Method, . . . . .	376
145. Another Method, . . . . .	377
146. Drab, . . . . .	377
147. Olive Drab, . . . . .	377
148. Rich Reddish Drab, . . . . .	377
149. Stone Colour, . . . . .	377
150. Catechu Stone Drab, . . . . .	378
151. Catechu Drab, . . . . .	378

## SILK DYEING.

Preliminary Remarks, . . . . .	379
152. Black, . . . . .	379
153. Full Deep Black, . . . . .	380
154. French Black, . . . . .	380
155. Blue Black by Prussiate, . . . . .	380

	PAGE
156. Deep Hat Black, or Paris Black, . . . . .	380
157. Mixed Black, . . . . .	380
158. Brown, . . . . .	381
159. Brown, . . . . .	381
160. Red Browns, . . . . .	381
161. Another Method, . . . . .	382
162. Chocolate Brown, . . . . .	382
163. Bronze Brown, . . . . .	382
164. Another Method, . . . . .	382
165. Safflower Pink, . . . . .	382
166. Safflower Rose and Crimson, . . . . .	383
167. Safflower Scarlet, . . . . .	383
168. Cochineal Crimson, . . . . .	383
169. General Remarks, . . . . .	384
170. Aniline Pink, . . . . .	384
171. Aniline Red, . . . . .	384
172. Common Red, . . . . .	385
173. Cochineal Pink, . . . . .	385
174. Cochineal Scarlet, . . . . .	385
175. Common Crimson, . . . . .	385
176. Common Scarlet, . . . . .	385
177. Rubies, Maroons, &c., . . . . .	335
178. Rubies, &c., . . . . .	386
179. Sky Blue, . . . . .	386
180. Prussian Blue—Sky, . . . . .	386
181. Royal Blue, . . . . .	386
182. Another Method, or Napoleon Blue, . . . . .	387
183. Alkaline Blue, . . . . .	387
184. Aniline Blue, . . . . .	388
185. Lavender, . . . . .	388
186. Lavender—Another Method, . . . . .	388
187. Wine Colour, Violet, Lilac, &c., . . . . .	388
188. Violet, . . . . .	389
189. Hofmann's Violet, . . . . .	389
190. French and Pearl White, . . . . .	389
191. Another Method, . . . . .	389
192. Weld, Yellow, . . . . .	389
193. Bark and Fustic Yellow, . . . . .	390
194. Another Method, . . . . .	390
195. Gold and Amber, . . . . .	390
196. Nankeen, Buff, Salmon, Flesh, &c., . . . . .	390
197. Orange, . . . . .	390
198. Orange—Another Method, . . . . .	391
199. Yellow Drab, . . . . .	391
200. Common Drabs, . . . . .	391



	PAGE
201. Slate or Stone Colour, . . . . .	391
202. Common Green, . . . . .	392
203. Another Method, . . . . .	392
204. Sage Green and Pea Green, . . . . .	392
205. Bottle Green, . . . . .	393
206. Another Method, . . . . .	393
207. Green, . . . . .	393
208. Another Method, . . . . .	393
209. Olive, . . . . .	393
210. Light Olive, . . . . .	394

## WOOLLEN DYEING.

Preliminary Remarks, . . . . .	395
211. Black, . . . . .	395
212. Black, . . . . .	395
213. Blue Black, . . . . .	396
214. Common Black, . . . . .	396
215. Brown, . . . . .	396
216. Chrome Brown, . . . . .	396
217. Yellow or Light Brown, . . . . .	397
218. Brown, . . . . .	397
219. Brown, . . . . .	397
220. Madder Brown, . . . . .	397
221. Crimson, . . . . .	397
222. Magenta, . . . . .	398
223. Scarlet, . . . . .	398
224. Another Method, . . . . .	398
225. Red, . . . . .	398
226. Lac-Scarlet or Red, . . . . .	398
227. Claret, . . . . .	398
228. Madder Red, . . . . .	399
229. Pink, . . . . .	399
230. Pink, . . . . .	399
231. Yellow, . . . . .	399
232. Yellow or Amber, . . . . .	399
233. Another Method, . . . . .	400
234. Another Method for Yellow, . . . . .	400
235. Orange, . . . . .	400
236. Sky Blue, . . . . .	400
237. Aniline Blue, . . . . .	400
238. Royal Blue, . . . . .	401
239. Another Method, . . . . .	401
240. Saxon Blue, . . . . .	401
241. Pigeon Blue, . . . . .	401

	PAGE
242. Another Method, . . . . .	401
243. Oak or Apple Green, . . . . .	402
244. Common Logwood Green, . . . . .	402
245. Common Green, . . . . .	402
246. Fast Green, . . . . .	402
247. Bottle Green, . . . . .	402
248. Invisible Green, . . . . .	403
249. Grass Green, . . . . .	403
250. Olive, . . . . .	403
251. Olive, . . . . .	403
252. Purple, . . . . .	403
253. Hofmann's Violet, . . . . .	404
254. Peach, to Wine Colour, . . . . .	404
255. Light Violet, . . . . .	404
256. Perkin's Mauve Original Colour, . . . . .	404
257. Common Puce, . . . . .	405
258. Puce or Purple, . . . . .	405
259. Greenish Drab, . . . . .	405
260. Brown Drab, . . . . .	405
261. Light Grey, . . . . .	405
262. Grey Drab, . . . . .	406
263. Another Method, . . . . .	406
264. Slate Drab, . . . . .	406
265. Slate or Stone Colour, . . . . .	406
266. Blue by Woollen Blue Vat, . . . . .	407
267. Another Blue Vat for Woollen, . . . . .	407

#### MIXED FABRICS—DYED TWO COLOURS.

268. Green and Pink, . . . . .	408
269. Green and Crimson, . . . . .	408
270. Blue and Orange, . . . . .	408

#### MIXED FABRICS—DYED ONE COLOUR.

271. Black on Cotton and Woollen, . . . . .	410
272. Brown on Cotton and Woollen by one Process, . . . . .	410
273. Black on Silk and Woollen by one Process, . . . . .	410
274. Black on Cotton, Silk, and Woollen, by one Process, . . . . .	410
275. Drabs on Cotton, Silk, and Woollen, by one Process, . . . . .	410
Colour and Dress, . . . . .	411
Glossary of Technical Terms, . . . . .	413
Index, . . . . .	417



# DYEING.

---

## GENERAL PROPERTIES OF MATTER.

---

### HEAT.

CONDITIONS OF MATTER.—Matter, which is everything capable of affecting the senses, exists in three different states,—solid, fluid, and gaseous. Looking upon matter in any of these states, the most casual observer cannot fail to distinguish a great variety of appearances. For example, stone differs from brick, bread from wood, and iron from both, among the solid forms; while differences quite as great are seen both in fluids and amongst gases. But although these differences are familiar to all, there are few who inquire the cause why, under the same circumstances, one portion of matter exists as a solid, another as a fluid, and a third as a gas. Correct answers to these inquiries are the objects of scientific research. They are in their nature twofold—*physical* and *chemical*. The former, embracing the study of matter in *mass*, takes cognisance of shape, measure, hardness, weight, flexibility, tenacity, divisibility, and such like properties; while the latter, the chemical, investigates those more remote differences which depend on the relative powers, properties, and mutual actions of the elemental components of the given substance—an inquiry which embraces a universal interrogation of all kinds of matter.

HEAT THE CAUSE OF CONDITIONS OF MATTER.—That one body is solid, another fluid, and a third gaseous, is an inquiry which belongs more directly to physics than to chemistry; yet heat, which is the cause of these differences, is so intimately connected both with the molecular changes and the constitution of bodies, particularly of the colouring matters used in dyeing, that it will be proper to enumerate, preliminarily, a few of its most prominent effects and general laws, for convenience of frequent reference when we come to speak of the practical effects of those laws on many of the operations in the dye-house.

All bodies are supposed capable of existing in the three states—solid, fluid, and gaseous—by the addition or subtraction of heat; but the same degree of heat does not affect all kinds of bodies to the same extent. For example, water subject to the ordinary pressure of the atmosphere, at 32° Fah. and under is solid, from 32° to 212° it is fluid, and from 212° upwards it is gaseous; while quicksilver, another fluid, at the ordinary

temperature does not become solid until it is cooled  $72^{\circ}$  below that of the solidifying point of water, and does not pass into the gaseous state until it is heated upwards of  $400^{\circ}$  above the aeriform point of water. Again, lead and several other bodies only become fluid at the temperature which gasifies quicksilver. The following table will make this more apparent:—

	Solid under	Becomes fluid at	Becomes gaseous at	Range of fluidity.
Sulphurous Acid, . . .	-105	105	14	91
Carbonic Acid, . . .	-71	None.	71	None.
Mercury, . . . . .	-39	39	622	701
Water, . . . . .	32	32	212	180
Tin, . . . . .	442	442	about 2400	about 2058
Lead, . . . . .	600	594	Not known.	
Bismuth, . . . . .	500	500	900	400
Arsenic, . . . . .	356	None.	356	None.
Silver, . . . . .	2283	2283	Not known.	
Cast Iron, . . . . .	3479	3479	Not known.	

This table shews how differently the same degree of heat affects different substances. We cannot conceive a condition *so cold* that all matter would be solid, nor *so hot* that all would be gaseous. In the cases of carbonic acid and arsenic, there appears an exception: these bodies have no fluid range—they have no known existence in a fluid state. The former may be obtained fluid by pressure; but this is under extraordinary circumstances, and the particles still retain their elasticity, which a true fluid does not. But when in the solid state, and under ordinary conditions—that is, under the ordinary pressure of the atmosphere—it passes directly from the solid to the gaseous state on the temperature being raised.

Some philosophers, reasoning from analogy, and not admitting any exceptions to what are considered general laws in nature, object to the apparent fact, and give, as their opinion, that such substances as carbonic acid really have a fluid range; but being so little, probably only a few degrees, the body may pass through that state without observation. There are many other bodies, besides carbonic acid and arsenic, that require a greater amount of pressure than that of our atmosphere to maintain them in the fluid state, so that both the facts and the circumstances are in accordance with the general laws of nature.

GENERAL EFFECTS OF HEAT.—In connection with the general laws of heat, we may notice, first, that bodies when they become heated expand, or become larger—the particles which compose them seem to separate farther from one another. Familiar illustrations of this effect of heat are numerous. If a pair of tongs, with legs of equal length, have one of the legs put into the fire and made red hot, it will be found, in this state, longer than the other. It is well known to dyers that if a boiler be filled to within a little of the mouth with cold water, and a fire put under it, by the time

it begins to boil the water runs over, having enlarged so much that the boiler is too small to contain it when hot. Another circumstance often occurs—when a certain quantity of a decoction of a dye is required, and is measured out of the boiler in gross while hot, and then distributed in the same proportions when cold, there is wanting a considerable portion of liquid at the end, causing serious annoyances in the dye-house, when the contraction and expansion by temperature are not taken into consideration.

That gaseous bodies are affected in the same way by heat, may be illustrated by taking a bladder, and filling it three parts full with cold air, tying it round the neck, and holding it before a fire—or, what is better, taking the bladder into the drying-stove connected with the dye-house. In a very little time the bladder becomes distended and quite full, and may be made to burst by the expansion of the air, if the heat be high, or the bladder originally nearly filled.

MEASURES OF TEMPERATURE.—Upon this expansive effect of heat is founded the means of measuring its intensity. Our senses tell us when a body is hot or cold, but they are very imperfect indicators of the degree or intensity of the heat. Our own temperature being the standard, we can only tell that a substance is hotter or colder than our own body. In the dye-house, where the hand is often made the indicator of the temperature of the dyeing liquid, the result varies according to whether the person has been previously working in hot or cold liquids, and is therefore a very imperfect test of temperature, and often productive of evils by giving different tints of shades, and deteriorating the beauty of a colour. Temperature is very correctly measured by observing the amount of expansion in any given body. Instruments for this purpose are plentiful and cheap: we will therefore not require to detail their mode of manufacture; but a good thermometer is an essential instrument in the dye-house, and ought to be constantly employed. The thermometers used in this country are generally those of Fahrenheit. The scale of measurement of this has been determined in the following manner:—Fahrenheit divided the two points, from the freezing of water to its boiling, into 180 degrees: he called the freezing point the 32nd degree, from some reason of his own; hence  $32^{\circ} + 180^{\circ} = 212$ , the boiling point of water, according to Fahrenheit. There is another scale sometimes used, called Reaumur's. This has the two points, from the freezing to the boiling of water, divided into 80 degrees. Another, and more generally used scale, has the range from freezing point to boiling of water, divided into 100 degrees; thus the freezing point is marked 0, the boiling point 100. This is termed the Centigrade thermometer. In reading books where temperature is referred to—such as in many dyeing recipes and processes—attention must be paid which thermometer scale is referred to. They are generally indicated by abbreviations—as F. or Fah., for Fahrenheit's scale, R. or Reau., for Reaumur's, and C. for the Centigrade. The following table of the com-

parative value of the different scales, of Centigrade and Fahrenheit, will guide the operator in using one or other of them :—

Cent.	Fah.	Cent.	Fah.	Cent.	Fah.
0.....	32	34.....	93·2	68.....	154·4
1.....	33·8	35.....	95	69.....	156·2
2.....	35·6	36.....	96·8	70.....	158
3.....	37·4	37.....	98·6	71.....	159·8
4.....	39·2	38.....	100·4	72.....	161·6
5.....	41	39.....	102·2	73.....	163·4
6.....	42·8	40.....	104	74.....	165·2
7.....	44·6	41.....	105·8	75.....	167
8.....	46·4	42.....	107·6	76.....	168·8
9.....	48·2	43.....	109·4	77.....	170·6
10.....	50	44.....	111·2	78.....	172·4
11.....	51·8	45.....	113	79.....	174·2
12.....	53·6	46.....	114·8	80.....	176
13.....	55·4	47.....	116·6	81.....	177·8
14.....	57·2	48.....	118·4	82.....	179·6
15.....	59	49.....	120·2	83.....	181·4
16.....	60·8	50.....	122	84.....	183·2
17.....	62·6	51.....	123·8	85.....	185
18.....	64·4	52.....	125·6	86.....	186·8
19.....	66·2	53.....	127·4	87.....	188·6
20.....	68	54.....	129·2	88.....	190·4
21.....	69·8	55.....	131	89.....	192·2
22.....	71·6	56.....	132·8	90.....	194
23.....	73·4	57.....	134·6	91.....	195·8
24.....	75·2	58.....	136·4	92.....	197·6
25.....	77	59.....	138·2	93.....	199·4
26.....	78·8	60.....	140	94.....	201·2
27.....	80·6	61.....	141·8	95.....	203
28.....	82·4	62.....	143·6	96.....	204·8
29.....	84·2	63.....	145·4	97.....	206·6
30.....	86	64.....	147·2	98.....	208·4
31.....	87·8	65.....	149	99.....	210·2
32.....	89·6	66.....	150·8	100.....	212·0
33.....	91·4	67.....	152·6		

It will be seen from this table that every 5 degrees of the Centigrade scale is equal to 9 Fahrenheit; so that any degree of the one may be converted into the other by a simple rule—namely, by multiplying the Centigrade by 9, and dividing by 5, then adding 32°. Thus, if any liquid is recommended to be at 60° C., then  $60^{\circ} \text{ Cent.} \times 9 \div 5 + 32^{\circ} = 140^{\circ} \text{ F.}$ ; or, by Reaumur's, the only difference in the process is to divide by 4 instead of by 5. Thus,  $60^{\circ} \text{ R.} \times 9 \div 4 + 32^{\circ} = 167^{\circ} \text{ F.}$



**BOILING OF LIQUIDS.**—The heating and boiling of liquids is explainable by the principle of expansion. When heat is applied to a vessel holding water, the particles of water nearest the fire become heated, and consequently expand; and in this expanded state, being lighter than the particles above them, they rise to the surface and give place to another layer of particles. These particles are in turn heated, and rise to the surface; and so on successively until the fluid is all heated to the point at which it passes off as vapour or steam. The exact temperature at which this takes place is stated above as 212° Fah., but varies a little from the amount of pressure upon its surface, so that water boils at a lower heat upon a high hill than at the foot of it; and for the same reason, it requires a higher temperature to boil the water at the bottom of a deep pit than upon the surface at the mouth of the pit—there being a greater pressure of air at the bottom of the pit in proportion to the depth.

**SUBSTANCES AFFECTING BOILING POINT.**—Anything that gives an increased attraction to the particles of a fluid also raises the temperature of the boiling point. Some kinds of vessels—such as glass and polished metals—retain the water with greater force than rough vessels, hence it requires a little higher heat to boil water in vessels of polished material. Water upon the surface of oil boils two degrees of heat below water in a glass vessel, in consequence of the oil having no attraction for water.

Substances dissolved in water have often a similar effect, the attraction of the two substances having to be overcome. Thus, alkaline leys—soda or potash dissolved in water—require higher temperatures to boil them than pure water does. But, connected with this, we may mention a circumstance of great importance in the dye-house. In boiling alkaline leys, so strong is the attraction of the water for the alkali, that it carries a small quantity with it in passing off as steam; so that great care should be taken in a dye-house where leys are being boiled, that the steam or vapour does not come into contact with any colours that will be affected by alkalies. Where convenient, it is, indeed, safest to have all alkaline leys boiled entirely apart from where any coloured goods are likely to be exposed to the influence of these vapours. We have seen many annoying and expensive accidents caused by neglecting this precaution, especially upon such colours as safflower reds and Prussian blues—these being often dried in a shed by a current of air, the steam mixing with this hurts the colour.

**STRONG BOILING.**—Another circumstance of common occurrence in the dye-house is what is termed *strong boiling*. This means, that in the process of boiling we increase the fire, in order to give the liquor more heat, and make it hotter. We need hardly say that this is an error; for a liquid at the boiling point cannot be more heated by increase of fire, provided it is not under pressure. All that is required is as much heat as will retain it on the *spring* of the boil, and the liquid will then be as hot as though it boiled with the greatest violence. The only difference in strong boiling is,

that much more steam is driven off, which carries off the heat applied and lessens the quantity of solution; if a thermometer be placed in the liquor, the temperature is found to be the same; the only effect is that the extra heat is rapidly carried off by the steam, causing a waste of fuel. The amount of heat which steam thus takes away, is calculated, in round numbers, at  $1000^{\circ}$  Fah. per pound of water, which may be illustrated as follows:—If one pound of water, at  $32^{\circ}$ , requires the burning of a pound of coal to bring it to the boiling point ( $212^{\circ}$ ), the water will have received  $180^{\circ}$  of heat; if the fire be continued at the same rate, it will take  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of coal to convert the pound of boiling water into steam, and the temperature of the steam will never be above  $212^{\circ}$  Fah.: thus  $1000^{\circ}$  of heat have been taken up by the steam, and retained in what is termed a latent state—that is to say, in a state not sensible to the thermometer. Or we may illustrate this principle by another experiment: If we take  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of water at  $32^{\circ}$ , and pass a jet of steam at  $212^{\circ}$  through it, until the water begins to boil, the whole water will weigh  $6\frac{1}{2}$  lbs.; thus 1 lb. of steam has brought  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of water up  $180^{\circ}$ , thereby shewing that this pound of steam had contained  $1000^{\circ}$  of heat. These facts the practical dyer can easily apply to his own purposes. Steam is very generally used in the dye-house as a heating agent for water, making decoctions, and the boiling of goods. It is an observed fact that steam is not so effective for many purposes as fire—as in the making of some decoctions. The conditions noticed of the raising the boiling point of water by the presence of matters held in solution, and by different kinds of vessels, do not apply to liquids when boiled by steam. This may be the cause of the observed difference of effect in the dye-house when making decoction by fire and steam heat. Again, water boiled by passing a jet of ordinary pressure steam into it, never gets above  $210^{\circ}$ , a small deficiency, but sufficient to cause a difference in the results of many operations in the workshop. This fact may be accounted for by the circumstance that in boiling by steam there is no attraction of the water by the surface of the vessel, as when boiled by fire, which, as has been observed by Berzelius, causes the boiling point in different vessels to vary upwards of  $2^{\circ}$ ; hence  $210^{\circ}$  may be actually the true boiling point of water. For all ordinary purposes steam, as a heating agent, is of the highest value to the dyer.

CHEMICAL EFFECTS OF HEAT UPON COLOURS.—The effects of heat in relation to chemical combination and decomposition, are of the utmost importance in all the operations of the dye-house. The influence of heat in producing particular tints and colours, and also upon many colours when produced, are subjects of every-day observation. Nevertheless, the consequences are often so important that the subject cannot be too fully impressed upon the minds of all interested. We shall, therefore, enumerate a few of the more prominent effects in this place.

In making a decoction of quercitron bark for dyeing yellow, if it is made at a temperature of about  $90^{\circ}$ , a much finer and purer yellow is

obtained than when the decoction is made by boiling, but the amount of colour got at this temperature is not so great. When woollen cloth is dyed by bark and then hotpressed, the heat impairs the colour; but generally dyed colours are more liable to be affected by heat when moisture is present than in a dry atmosphere. For instance, a safflower red on cotton will stand a high temperature when the air is dry, but if moisture be present, it passes rapidly into a yellowish brown. If cotton dyed a Prussian blue be placed in a moist atmosphere, and raised to the temperature of about 300° Fah., it fades entirely in a few hours. A moist heat is hurtful to most dyes. Many of the colouring matters of flowers, when imparted to cloth, may be dried without change in the cold and dark, and afterwards be submitted to a temperature of 200° without alteration, but could not stand a temperature of 95° without being altered, were these precautions not taken; such colours, therefore, if put on goods, could not be dried in a stove.

The kind of material on which the colour is dyed also influences the effects of heat. Indigo blue dyed upon cotton is permanent, exposed to heat and moisture; but the same colour, with the same dye-stuff, upon silk, is readily changed under those conditions. Safflower colours upon silk and cotton, placed under similar circumstances in regard to heat and moisture, are affected differently; that on the cotton is completely destroyed before that upon the silk is at all affected.

Finding that heat affects colours differently when the heated atmosphere is dry and when it is moist, it suggests the propriety of paying strict attention to the condition of the drying-stove, and the hanging of the coloured fabrics, so as to give a free outlet to all moisture. If this is neglected, the colours are subjected to a hot-vapour bath, and are under the most favourable conditions to be destroyed by the joint action of the heat and steam.

The same kind of colouring matter fixed upon cotton by different mordants, is affected by heat differently, whether moisture be present or not. This is very apparent with logwood colours, when fixed by tin or by alumina. The different changes which these colours undergo in the process of drying, and the dependence of these upon the state of the stove, as to being *hot and dry*, or *hot and moist*, are familiar to the practical dyer. But as we shall have occasion to notice some of these changes when describing the dye-stuffs, and the colours produced, we pass over the details in this place. The following, however, may be stated as a general rule—namely, that all organic colouring matters are destroyed at a heat approaching to redness. There are some, however, such as indigo, which sublime, or may be distilled by a heat less than sufficient to effect their destruction. Those colouring matters which are volatile are in general most permanent when fixed upon fabrics, and resist the action of heat best; and those colours that do not sublime are most susceptible of decomposition under the combined influence of air, heat, and moisture.



## L I G H T.

---

NATURE OF LIGHT.—The effects of light upon dyed colours are so closely related to those of heat, and so powerful—particularly the direct rays of the sun—that we cannot pass over the consideration of those phenomena, which, however, we must understand as independent altogether of that essential relation which light has to produce colour. Strictly speaking, colours have no material existence, but are altogether the effect of light—at least colours do not exist in the objects appearing coloured, but in the light which is reflected from the apparently coloured object. In order, then, to define colour, we may briefly state what is known upon the nature and composition of light—at least so far as is necessary for our present purpose.

There is believed to exist everywhere throughout all space, and surrounding the atoms of all matter, an exceedingly thin and subtle ether called the luminiferous ether. This is set into rapid vibration by all luminous bodies, and these vibrations are propagated through the ether in waves which strike the eye and produce the sensation of light. In this respect it is similar to sound, which consists of wave motions imparted to the air by sonorous bodies.

If a ray or beam of white sunlight be allowed to pass through a hole in a shutter into a dark room, and a glass prism be placed in its path, the ray is found to be stretched out into a band of prismatic colours, ranging from violet through Indigo blue, green, yellow, and finishing with red. This band is called the spectrum; and it is found that the varying colours all through the band have separate wave lengths; in fact, it is the wave length in the vibratory motion of this ether that determines the colour of the light, just as it is the wave length in sound determines the pitch. We see, then, from the prism experiment, that white light is composed of all the colours or waves vibrating together. When these waves composing a ray of white light strike upon the surface of any substance, they may be totally thrown back or reflected, in which case the substance will appear white, or they may be almost totally absorbed or destroyed, in which case the substance will have a black appearance. Again, they may find a free passage through the substance, and when this is the case the substance is said to be transparent; indeed, when the transmission or passage of the wave through a substance is perfect the substance is invisible. Now, between these three extremes any number of combinations may occur, and with every varying proportion of the number and nature of the waves

reflected, absorbed, or transmitted, so will be the variety of colour and tint and the amount of transparency or opacity. This subject, however, may be very much simplified, as the spectrum is capable of being divided into three broadly distinctive parts, the blue at the one end, the yellow in the middle, and the red at the other end, as philosophers used to divide it, distinguishing them as the three primary colours; sometimes also termed the chemical, the luminiferous, and the calorific rays or parts, owing to distinctive properties they possess. The blue is found most active in exciting chemical action. The yellow has the greatest light-giving, and the red the greatest heat-giving properties. We will hereafter speak of the combinations of colours in this more popular sense, taking for our illustrations these three primary colours—Blue, Yellow, and Red. If the different coloured rays are not reflected or absorbed in the same ratio, the result is a colour according to the difference in the reflection or absorption of the different ray or rays. If the red ray is absorbed, and only the blue and yellow rays reflected, the object from which they are reflected appears green; if the yellow ray is also absorbed, the object appears blue; or if it is the blue ray that is absorbed, and red and yellow reflected, the object appears orange; or if the yellow ray only is absorbed, the object appears violet or purple. Thus, by the rate of the disturbing influence, and the different combinations of these three colours, are all the various shades in nature produced. The same substance may reflect some of the rays and transmit others. Such a substance will have a different colour when looked upon than when looked through.

RELATION OF COLOURS TO THE FABRIC.—Although these remarks go to prove that colour has no material existence in the body appearing coloured, still the question is one of chemical and physical science. As every change which a body undergoes affects the character of the substance in its relations to light, the dyer's object is, therefore, to effect a combination with his stuffs that will produce certain effects upon light, and thereby produce colours. It is found, sometimes, that the nature of the fabric affects the beauty and tint of a colour. A chemical compound may be obtained that vies with nature, both in the beauty and brilliancy of its colour; but when that is obtained within the fibre of silk, cotton, or wool, the light must be transmitted through the material as a medium, and the fibre not being perfectly transparent the original beauty of the colour is much diminished. Hence, the same colour, fixed within the fibres of those three substances, has different appearances in each; the cotton never yields the beauty of colour that the silk does, or even the wool. These circumstances, in all their relations, afford matter of constant study to the practical dyer.

It may be said that we cannot follow nature in the production of colours—that were the dyer to attempt to produce a white by an exact admixture of blue, red, and yellow, he would fail, and would produce instead a black or deep brown; but this would not be a proper application of the law

above stated. Nevertheless, to a certain extent, the practice of producing white by the combining the three colours is had recourse to every day by the practical bleacher and dyer. All goods coming from the bleaching process, no matter what the nature of the process has been, have always a brownish yellow tinge when compared with pure white: to cotton goods, a little indigo or cobalt blue is added, and the result is a much purer white: to silk, which has much more of the yellow tinge than cotton, a little Prussian blue and cochineal pink, or what is more common, a little archil, which gives a violet colour, is added, the quantity varying according to the depth of yellow—the result is a much purer white.

The following simple experiment serves to illustrate how far the production of colours depends upon the relation of the substance to light:—Take a solution of iodide of potassium, which is colourless and transparent, and divide it into three proportions: into the one pour a little acetate of lead (sugar of lead), into the other a persalt of mercury, and into the third a little starch, with a few drops of nitric acid. These are all colourless substances; but after they are mixed, in the first we have a deep and beautiful yellow; in the second a red; and in the third a blue. Thus we have the three primitive colours produced by the same substance combining with other substances, all previously colourless. If to a concentrated solution of protosulphate of manganese, which is of a red colour, there be added a solution of protochloride or protosulphate of iron, which are of a green colour, there is produced a perfectly colourless solution. Many white flowers, when macerated in water, yield a yellow colour, which alkalis turn green and acids red.

EFFECTS OF DIFFERENT RAYS UPON COLOURS.—The three separate rays of light have peculiarities of action: one has heating power, and is therefore termed the *calorific* ray; another has more of the property of giving light, and is termed the *luminous* ray; and the third has the greatest effect in changing the composition of bodies, and is in consequence termed the *chemical* ray. But in our remarks upon the effects produced by light, we will speak of their total action.

The effects of heat upon dyed colours, which we have already described, are equally applicable to light, the presence of moisture greatly facilitating the effects. Reds, dyed by Brazilwood and a tin mordant, exposed to light, pass into a brownish orange, and then gradually fade away. Prussian blue becomes reddish, and passes into a dirty grey. Yellows become brown, and then fade. The effects of light and moisture are beautifully shewn by taking a piece of Prussian blue dry, and another wet, and placing each under a glass, exposed to the rays of the sun for a day. The wet piece becomes a reddish lavender, while the dry piece is very little affected. Safflower colours are easily affected by light, but more so when wet; so that when such colours are being dried in the air, care should be taken to keep them from exposure to light. Even the most permanent dyes, when exposed to sunlight, yield their colour. The follow-

ing are the effects upon a few of the more ordinary colours, when exposed to the sun for a few days, often in a few hours :—

Dark Indigo blues become light, with a greenish grey tint.

Analine blue loses its beauty and becomes light grey.

Yellow dyed by fustic becomes a straw colour.

Yellow dyed by chrome becomes greenish brown.

Red by madder, Turkey Red, becomes lighter.

Red by cochineal and spirits becomes paler.

Red by safflower becomes white, with a yellow tint.

Red by Magenta becomes very light.

Green with Indigo and chrome becomes light and dirty.

Green with vegetable yellow becomes dull and pale.

Black with logwood becomes brown.

When these colours are exposed wet, these effects are much sooner produced, so that it is not good to dry coloured goods by exposure to the sun.

The action of light upon different matters and colours, and its power of changing the constitution of these substances, forms the subject of a distinct branch of chemical study, known by the name of *actino chemistry*. Mr. Robert Hunt says—“The changes produced by the influence of the solar rays are of a remarkable character, and few of them, in the present state of our knowledge, can be satisfactorily explained. In some instances it would appear that new properties are imparted to bodies by exposure to sunshine; in others, that radiation has the power of disturbing the known chemical forces, and apparently establishing a new order of affinities; whilst, in all we are forced to recognise the operations of a principle, the nature of which is involved in the most perplexing uncertainty.” The art of photography is dependent on the action of light.

EFFECTS OF LIGHT CAUSING COMBINATION.—We will here refer to a few examples of the action of light upon substances, and the power it possesses of inducing changes, with a view to impress upon the practical man the necessity of a strict attention to all the conditions and circumstances in which he may have to place his coloured fabrics and colouring materials. In many cases bodies remain mixed and without action upon each other in the dark, but combine rapidly and form new compounds when exposed to light. Thus, chlorine and hydrogen may be kept mixed in the dark for any length of time; but, if exposed to daylight, they silently combine and form muriatic acid. If the mixture be exposed to strong sunshine, the combination becomes so rapid as to cause an explosion.

Chlorine, in water, remains a long time unaltered in the dark, but by exposure to light the water is decomposed, muriatic acid is formed, and oxygen given off. These effects are observed daily in the operations of bleaching. If grey goods are put into the bleaching liquor, and kept in the dark, they whiten much more slowly than when exposed to light.



Many bleachers know this, and expose their goods to light, and keep their bleaching vessels in the lightest part of the premises.

Mixtures of chlorine with carbonic oxide, of chlorine with sulphurous acid, and chlorine with pyroxilic spirit, and many other substances, are similar examples of the same kind, being all inactive upon each other in the dark, but combining easily and rapidly when exposed to light.

**LIGHT DECOMPOSES CHEMICAL COMPOUNDS.**—Chemical compounds are also decomposed by exposure to light. Carbonic acid gas exposed to strong sunshine is decomposed into oxygen and carbon. This decomposition is supposed to go on daily in vegetable bodies during their growth, causing them to give off oxygen and take up carbon. Colourless nitric acid exposed to the sun soon becomes yellowish brown, from a portion of it being decomposed, and the red nitrous fumes remaining in the acid, produces the colour—which again shews the propriety of keeping the carboys with that acid in the shade as much as possible, as such changes by the sun's rays materially affect the preparation of many of the compounds, which dyers have to make for themselves, and also the strength of the acid.

Nitrate and chloride of silver—both white salts—become black by exposure to light: paper or cloth saturated with these salts, and exposed to light, is dyed permanently black. This is the principle of the art of photography—an art now so well known as to require no special description in this place. It has not yet been put to dyeing purposes, but concerning which there is hope. A piece of paper prepared with a solution of silver, and exposed to the coloured rays passing through a prism, as described (page 8), is affected thus:—

Names of coloured ray.	Change on paper prepared.
Violet, . . . . .	Purplish black.
Indigo, . . . . .	Black not so purplish.
Blue, . . . . .	Black.
Green, . . . . .	Green.
Yellow, . . . . .	Red.
Orange, . . . . .	Faint brick red.
Red, . . . . .	No change.

These results are exceedingly curious and interesting, and may point out some useful application in respect to the preserving of compounds from change, by keeping them in vessels which admit those rays only which least affect them.

Solutions of substances are also affected by the sun's rays, sometimes sufficiently to cause a precipitation. A solution of proto-sulphate of iron (copperas) in distilled water may be kept a long time clear in the dark; but, when exposed to sunshine, it becomes cloudy, and oxide of iron precipitates. A solution of bichromate of potash, exposed to the sun's

rays, acquires a property of precipitating many metals, as chromates, much darker than will be produced by a similar solution kept in the dark. The reddening and darkening of *chrome* colours by exposure to light is well known to dyers. The effects of light upon precipitates are well known to the manufacturers of lakes—which, let it be borne in mind, are simply the colouring matter which constitutes the dyes, precipitated and dried—and therefore the effect produced upon these precipitates is equally true of the same colours as dyes. Sir H. Davy gives the following anecdote of a maker of carmine—a lake made from cochineal:—

“A manufacturer of carmine, who was aware of the superiority of the French colour, went to Lyons for the purpose of improving his process, and bargained with the most celebrated manufacturer in that city for the acquisition of his secret, for which he was to pay £1000. He was shewn all the process, and saw a most beautiful colour produced, but he found not the least difference in the French mode of fabrication and that which had been constantly adopted by himself. He appealed to his instructor, and insisted that he must have kept something concealed. The man assured him he had not, and invited him to inspect the process a second time. He minutely examined the water and the materials, which were in every respect similar to his own; and then, very much surprised, said—‘I have lost both my labour and my money, for the air of England does not admit us to make good carmine.’ ‘Stay,’ said the Frenchman, ‘don’t deceive yourself; what kind of weather is it now?’ ‘A bright sunny day,’ replied the Englishman. ‘And such are the days,’ said the Frenchman, ‘on which I make my colour; were I to attempt to manufacture it on a dark and cloudy day, my results would be the same as yours. Let me advise you, my friend, only to make your carmine on bright sunny days.’” Probably in this case as much depended upon the knowing the instant for arresting the action of heat upon the materials as upon the light. The Frenchman having always prepared it under one circumstance, may have been in error as to the cause.

PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF THE PRINCIPLES.—In the application of some of these phenomena to the trade, we must pause and inquire experimentally how this can be effected. For instance, if we dissolve a piece of iron in nitric acid, and expose a portion of this solution for some time to the rays of the sun, and keep the other portion in the dark, on adding a solution of prussiate of potash to each of these, the precipitate formed by the portion exposed to light will be much deeper in colour than that kept in the dark. Were we to reason directly from the result, we would expose our nitrate of iron solutions to the light in order to have a deeper dye; but if we test this by experiment, and dye a piece with each of the iron solutions, it will be found that the darkest blue is obtained from the iron solution kept in the dark. Thus, we observe, without experiment we may be liable to reason falsely. The change effected upon the iron by the light may make it less fit to enter within the pores or cells of the fibre; or if the dye be a com-

bination of the stuff and fibre by affinity, these relations are affected—which we will discuss more fully in another part of this work.

These brief notices of the more prominent effects of light upon colours, and other compounds, will serve to impress the dyer with the importance of attending to what he too often considers trifling circumstances; and to shew that while every different condition—the moisture of the air, the temperature, the degree of light, &c.—are all acting and reacting upon the substances composing his colours, both before and after they are fixed upon the fabric, nothing should be considered too trifling or of too little consequence to warrant its being overlooked.

The consideration of the chemical changes which are supposed to be taking place in the vegetable kingdom through the influence of light, will be more fully explained when we are treating of the colouring matters of vegetables.

In connection with light, there is an application of a very important practical kind which it will be well to notice—namely, the arrangement of colours, so that their harmony should produce the best effect. Upon this subject many propositions were made for the decoration and laying out the manufactures in the Great Exhibition. Upon the philosophy of the arrangement of different colours for effect, we will quote from the *Athenæum* (*Athen.*, 1851, page 273) a few passages upon this subject, which we think will be useful to the dyer:—

“The ‘successive’ contrast has long been known; and it consists in the fact, that if you look steadfastly for a few minutes on a red surface fixed on a white sheet of paper, and then carry your eye to another white sheet, you will perceive on it not a red but a green one; if a green, red; if purple, yellow; if blue, orange. The ‘simultaneous’ contrast is the most interesting and useful to be acquainted with. When two coloured surfaces are in juxtaposition, they mutually influence each other—favourably, if harmonising colours, or in a contrary manner if discordant; and in such proportion in either case as to be in exact ratio with the quantity of complementary colour which is generated in our eye. For example, if two half-sheets of plain tint-paper—one dark green, the other red—are placed side by side on a grey piece of cloth, the colours will mutually improve, in consequence of the green generated by the red surface adding itself to the green of the juxtaposed surface—thus increasing its intensity—the green in its turn augmenting the beauty of the red. This effect can easily be appreciated if two other pieces of paper of the same colours are placed at a short distance from their corresponding influenced ones, as below—

RED.

RED GREEN.

GREEN.

It is not sufficient to place complementary colours side by side to produce harmony of colour, the respective intensities having a most decided influence: thus pink and light green agree—red and dark green also; but light green and dark red, pink and dark green do not; therefore, to obtain the maximum of effect and perfect harmony, the following colours must be

placed side by side, taking into account their exact intensity of shade and tint :—

HARMONISING COLOURS.		
Primitive Colours.	Secondary Colours.	
Red, . . . . .	Green, . . . . .	{ Light blue.
		{ Yellow.
		{ Red.
Blue, . . . . .	Orange, . . . . .	{ Red.
		{ Yellow.
		{ Blue.
Yellow orange, . . . . .	Indigo, . . . . .	{ Blue.
		{ Red.
		{ Yellow.
Greenish yellow, . . . . .	Violet, . . . . .	{ Red.
		{ Blue.
		{ Yellow.
Black, . . . . .	White, . . . . .	{ Yellow.
		{ Blue.
		{ Red.

“If respect is not paid to the arrangement of colours according to the above diagram, instead of colours mutually improving each other, they will, on the contrary, lose in beauty: thus, if blue and purple are placed side by side, the blue throwing its complementary colour, orange, upon the purple, will give it a faded appearance; and the blue receiving the orange-yellow of the purple, will assume a greenish tinge. The same may be said of yellow and red, if placed in juxtaposition. The red, by throwing its complementary colour, green, on the yellow, communicates to it a greenish tinge; the yellow, by throwing its purple hue, imparts to the red a disagreeable purple appearance. It is of very great importance that every one should be acquainted with the laws of colours who intends to display or arrange coloured goods or fabrics.

“The mixed contrast gives the reason why a brilliant colour should never be looked at for any length of time, if its true tint or brilliancy is to be appreciated; for if a person looks, for example, at a piece of red cloth for a few minutes, green, its complementary colour, is generated in the eye, and adding itself to a portion of the red, produces black, which tarnishes the beauty of the red. This contrast explains why the shade of a colour may be modified according to the colour which the eye has previously looked at, either favourably or otherwise. An example of the first instance is noticed when the eye first looks to a yellow substance and then to a purple one; and as exemplifying the second case, looking at a blue and then at a purple.”

Attention to these principles is of the first importance to the calico printer; for although the public may not understand why a certain arrangement of tints please the eye, still there is something about the proper combination of colours that never fails to please.



## ELEMENTS OF MATTER.

---

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN AN ELEMENT AND COMPOUND.—It has been intimated that the conditions of matter—solidity, fluidity, and gasuity—depend upon heat; and it was also stated that in each state there is a vast variety—a variety so great that the idea of telling where any one variety begins and ends is a task seemingly beyond human power. Nevertheless, by labour, by experiment, and comparison, much has been done not only to distinguish every variety of substance, but why one substance differs from another both in appearance and quality. Let us take a known compound as an illustration:—When a piece of steel is placed in diluted sulphuric acid, the acid dissolves the greater part of it; but there is left undissolved a black matter, which, by testing, we find to be charcoal or carbon, and that which has been dissolved is iron. We therefore infer that steel is composed of iron and charcoal—that it is a *compound* substance; but if we take the carbon, and treat it in any way within our power, we find it still the same, *without* components. In the same manner let us test iron—dissolve it, melt it, or treat it as we will, it yields nothing but iron. All such substances, then, that resist every effort to decompose, or shew any admixture, are termed elementary, or simple substances. The number of such elements known to the chemist at the present time are sixty-three; and all the varieties in which we find matter presenting itself to us—whether in the mineral, the vegetable, or the animal kingdoms—are made up of one, or a mixture of two or more of those sixty-three elements. The following table gives the names and particulars necessary to be observed in the study of these elements:—

	Symbol.	Equivalent.		Symbol.	Equivalent.
Aluminum .....	Al	= 27·26	Cobalt .....	Co	= 58·74
Antimony .....	Sb	= 122·3	Copper .....	Cu	= 63·12
Arsenic .....	As	= 75·15	Didymium .....	D	= 94·96
Barium .....	Ba	= 137·14	Erbium .....	E	= 112·6
Bismuth .....	Bi	= 210·0	Fluorine .....	F	= 18·96
Boron .....	Bo	= 11·04	Glucinum .....	Gl	= 9·30
Bromine .....	Br	= 79·95	Gold .....	Au	= 196·71
Cadmium .....	Cd	= 112·04	Hydrogen .....	H	= 1·0
Cæsium .....	Cs	= 133·00	Indium .....	In	= 113·4
Calcium .....	Ca	= 40·00	Iodine .....	I	= 126·85
Carbon .....	C	= 12·00	Iridium .....	Ir	= 196·87
Cerium .....	Ce	= 92·16	Iron .....	Fe	= 56·00
Chlorine .....	Cl	= 35·46	Lanthanium ....	La	= 92·88
Chromium .....	Cr	= 52·08	Lead .....	Pb	= 206·92

Symbol.	Equivalent.	Symbol.	Equivalent.
Lithium.....Li	= 7.02	Silver.....Ag	= 107.93
Magnesium.....Mg	= 24.0	Silicon.....Si	= 28.10
Manganese.....Mn	= 54.04	Sodium.....Na	= 23.04
Mercury.....Hg	= 200.00	Strontium.....Sr	= 87.54
Molybdenum...Mo	= 96.00	Sulphur.....S	= 32.07
Nickel.....Ni	= 58.74	Tantalum.....Ta	= 182.30
Niobium.....Nb	= 94.0	Tellurium.....Te	= 128.06
Nitrogen.....N	= 14.0	Thalium.....Tl	= 203.64
Osmium.....Os	= 199.03	Thorium.....Th	= 115.72
Oxygen.....O	= 16.00	Tin.....Sn	= 118.10
Palladium.....Pd	= 106.57	Titanium.....Ti	= 50.00
Phosphorus.....P	= 31.00	Tungsten.....W	= 184.00
Platinum.....Pt	= 197.18	Uranium.....U	= 120.00
Potassium.....K	= 39.13	Vanadium.....V	= 51.35
Rhodium.....Rh	= 104.21	Yttrium.....Y	= 61.70
Rubidium.....Rb	= 85.40	Zinc.....Zn	= 65.16
Ruthenium.....Ru	= 104.40	Zirconium.....Zr	= 89.60
Selenium.....Se	= 79.46		

When two or more of these elements combine together, it is found that the union does not take place indeterminately, but always in definite proportions. Those proportions are expressed by the figures placed opposite to the names in the above table. For example, if we mix together one ounce of hydrogen and one ounce of oxygen, and bring them under circumstances to cause combination, it is found that the one ounce of oxygen has combined with an eighth part of the hydrogen, or two drams, and that other seven ounces of oxygen are required to combine with the whole of the hydrogen. Their combining properties are therefore set down as 1 to 8. The same law holds good for every other element; so that the union is invariably distinct and definite. This has relation to the actual and relative weight with which two elements combine. Hydrogen being the lightest of the elements, one volume of it was taken as the standard, with which all the others were compared; but experiment shewed that by this method many of the elements, such, for example, as oxygen, would occasionally have a combining proportion of only half a volume, and as volume is equivalent to atom, there cannot be half an atom. This difficulty has been got over by fixing upon one volume of oxygen as the standard, which consequently is called 16 as the equivalent weight, so that instead of water being formulated as  $\text{HO}=9$ , it is now represented as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}=18$ , thus the same relation is retained. This will explain the difference of the combining numbers affixed to the elements in the table compared with those in our former edition; several remain as before, many are doubled, and some are tripled—each number refers to the weight of one volume of the element. In reference to the combining of volumes, there is much to interest the philosophic mind, which we will briefly indicate, in

hopes of sending the reader to works devoted to the subject of chemical philosophy. If we take one cubic inch of hydrogen and one cubic inch of chlorine, they combine and form two cubic inches of hydrochloric acid. If we take one cubic inch of oxygen and two cubic inches of hydrogen, they combine and form water, and make only two cubic inches; the first of these results is termed *Monad*, the second is termed *Diad* combinations. One cubic inch of nitrogen combines with three cubic inches of hydrogen, forming ammonia, and making only two cubic inches. The following compounds will probably be more familiar to the dyer, and serve to illustrate:—

Nitric oxide, .....	$\boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}}$ .....	$= \boxed{\text{NO}}$	equivalent 30
Nitrous oxide, .....	$\boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}}$ .....	$= \boxed{\text{N}_2\text{O}}$	„ 44
Hyponitric acid, ..	$\boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}}$ .....	$= \boxed{\text{NO}_2}$	„ 46
Nitrous acid, .....	$\boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}}$ .....	$= \boxed{\text{N}_2\text{O}_3}$	„ 76
Nitric anhydrate, ..	$\boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{N}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}} \quad \boxed{\text{O}}$	$= \boxed{\text{N}_2\text{O}_5}$	„ 108

The reader will observe here that the addition of oxygen in most cases adds nothing to the bulk, but increases the weight of the compound. However, as we look upon these results, we cannot refrain from the thought that there is something more simple to be yet found. From the above it is seen that one element is often found to combine with another in a great number of proportions. Thus, nitrogen—which, according to the table, has a combining equivalent or weight of 14—combines with oxygen in proportions as under:—

Two nitrogen = 28	to one oxygen = 16.
One nitrogen = 14	to one oxygen = 16.
Two nitrogen = 28	to three oxygen = 48.
Two nitrogen = 28	to four oxygen = 64.
Two nitrogen = 28	to five oxygen = 80.

Thus we observe that the proportion of oxygen is always 16, or a multiple of 16; so it is with nitrogen, always 14, or twice 14, and so on to any number of multiples of 14 or 16. The same rule holds good with every element in the table; they combine only according to the number following the name.

But when they thus combine in different and distinct quantities, the compounds formed are also distinct and definite. Thus, two proportions of nitrogen and one oxygen is laughing gas; and it is so at all times and under all circumstances, and can be nothing else. But when two of

oxygen combine with one of nitrogen, a different substance is formed from laughing gas, also distinct and definite from every other proportion in which the elements unite. The first and last of the above list form an apt illustration—the former being laughing gas, the latter pentoxide of nitrogen, formerly hypothetical nitric acid (aquafortis).

USE OF SYMBOLS.—The letters placed immediately after the names of the elements in the above table are the symbols commonly used to represent the respective elements, and facilitate the expression of the compounds into which they enter. Thus, to represent laughing gas, we write  $N_2O$ , which means two of nitrogen and one of oxygen. The symbol always represents the volume, the weight of which is given in the table, and the figures attached shew how often that proportion or volume is repeated. Thus, the formula for pentoxide of nitrogen,  $N_2O_5$ , which means two parts of nitrogen and five of oxygen—the figure being placed immediately after the symbol which is to be multiplied; but sometimes there may be two or more proportions of a compound combined with another compound: this is represented by placing a large figure before the compound to be multiplied, and a comma at the end. For example, two proportions of pentoxide of nitrogen united with one of water should be expressed thus,  $2N_2O_5, H_2O$ . The figure 2 preceding applies to all between it and the comma. Some use the sign  $+$  instead of a comma—thus,  $2N_2O_5 + H_2O$ . It being important to the student that these be fully understood before beginning to read for study, we will take another series of compounds:—

$H_2SO_2$  hypo-sulphurous acid; two hydrogen, one sulphur, and two oxygen.  
 $SO_2$  anhydrous sulphurous acid; one sulphur and two oxygen.  
 $H_2SO_3$  sulphurous acid; two hydrogen, one sulphur, and three oxygen.  
 $SO_3$  anhydrous sulphuric acid; one sulphur and three oxygen.  
 $H_2SO_4$  sulphuric acid; two hydrogen, one sulphur, and four oxygen.  
 $H_2SO_4 + H_2O$  sulphuric acid, with one equivalent of water.  
 $H_2SO_4 + 2H_2O$  sulphuric acid, with two equivalents of water, being acid at about  $120^\circ$ .—*Twaddell*.

To make up the equivalent weight of any compound from symbols, we have simply to multiply the elements given according to the table. Thus, suppose we take the sulphuric acid and two water, we have—

Two hydrogen, .....	1	=	2
One sulphur, .....equivalent weight,	32	=	32
Four oxygen, .....	$16 \times 4$	=	64
Two water, .....2 Hy. and 16 oxygn....	$= 18 \times 2$	=	36

which is the proportion or weight of sulphuric acid of the strength which would be required to combine with any element, suppose iron, which



is 56; therefore it would require fully twice the weight of sulphuric acid of this strength to that of a piece of iron to dissolve it.

NOMENCLATURE.—In the nomenclature of these elements in the above table there has been no definite rule followed. They have been named either from the fancy of the discoverer or from some leading property or appearance they presented, which appearances will be noticed under their separate descriptions; but, in naming compounds, a distinct rule has been adopted, so that the name of the compound expresses, as nearly as possible, its composition and property. We will give a few of the leading principles observed in this rule of naming compounds.

RULES FOR NAMING COMPOUNDS.—When two *elements* combine together, and the compound formed has not acid properties, the name ends in *ide*, such as *oxide*, *chloride*, *bromide*, *iodide*, &c. Formerly *uret* was used instead of *ide*, such as in *sulphuret*, *carburet*, *phosphuret*, &c.; but *ide* is now generally adopted for these, giving *sulphides*, *carbonides*, *phosphides*, &c. When the compound formed by the union of the elements has acid properties, the name ends in *ic* or *ous*; thus we have *sulphuric*, *sulphurous*, *nitric*, *nitrous*, *chloric*, and *chlorous* acids. Elements, uniting together in different multiples, have prefixes added to express the number of proportions. Thus, *proto* denotes one proportion, or first; *bi*, two proportions; *tri*, three proportions; *per* denotes no particular number, only the highest proportion. As examples, take the compounds of hydrogen and nitrogen, already noticed:—

NO protoxide of nitrogen.

NO<sub>2</sub> binoxide of nitrogen.

NO<sub>3</sub> trioxide.

NO<sub>4</sub> tetroxide.

NO<sub>5</sub> pentoxide.

Thus, we observe, the full name of the substance not having acid properties denotes its composition. In the case of acids, it does not tell the number of elements combined, as with oxides—*ous* simply signifying that it has less oxygen than another acid composed of the same elements, and which ends in *ic*. There are sometimes more than two acids formed by the combining of the same elements; in this case, if the oxygen is less than in the acid whose name terminates with *ous*, the prefix *hypo* is put to the name of the *ous* acid; if there be more oxygen than in the *ous* acid, and less than the *ic* acid, the same prefix is made to the last-named acid. Finally, when there is more oxygen present than in the acid whose name terminates with *ic*, the prefix *per* is put, as in oxides. The following illustrations will exemplify these terms:—

H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>2</sub> hypo-sulphurous acid.

H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> sulphurous acid.

H<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> hypo-sulphuric acid.

H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> sulphuric acid.

Any acid found having more oxygen, in relation to the sulphur, than the last named in this list, would be called *per-* or *di-* or *tri-*sulphuric acid, *per* being highest. It will thus be seen that the names of the compounds denote their composition, and give an idea of their leading properties. The term *sesqui*—as *sesquioxide*—which was often used, meant one and half of an equivalent, which, from what has been said, cannot take place. Nevertheless, the name is conveniently retained to denote such compounds as have two of one element and three of another; such as sesquioxide of iron, also termed peroxide, and which is composed of two iron with three oxygen,  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ . Sometimes one proportion of oxygen, chlorine, &c., combines with two proportions of a base as a metal; such compounds have the prefix *sub*, or *di*, as—

$\text{Fe}_2\text{O}$ , sub-oxide of iron, or dinoxide of iron.

$\text{Cu}_2\text{Cl}$ , sub-chloride, or dichloride of copper.

When one proportion of oxygen, chlorine, &c., combines with three of a metal, the prefix *trisub* or *tridi*, is occasionally used; but this is not very convenient; the best and most general plan is to denote such compounds as *basic*, and then apply the ordinary prefixes, such as *bibasic*, *tribasic*, &c., thus:—

$\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$ , bibasic oxide of copper.

$\text{Cu}_3\text{O}$ , tribasic oxide of copper.

In the name of a compound ending in *ide*, the base or element with which the oxygen, chlorine, &c., is combined, used to be given last, as

Oxide of iron.

Oxygen and iron.

Chloride of iron.

Chlorine and iron.

Now it is reversed, as

Ferrous oxide.

Ferrous chloride.

With compounds having acid properties, the base is placed at the beginning, thus:—

Sulphuric acid.

Sulphur and oxygen.

Nitric acid.

Nitrogen and oxygen.

Hydrochloric acid.

Hydrogen and chlorine.

SALTS—THEIR NATURE AND NOMENCLATURE.—The acids combine with other substances, such as the metals, and form another class of compounds termed Salts. The names of these also denote their composition: the salt formed with the acid terminating in *ic* and a base, ends with *ate*; that formed by the acid terminating in *ous* ends with *ite*, the name of the element with which the acid combines being added. Thus,

Sulphuric acid and iron form *sulphate of iron*.

Sulphurous acid and iron ... *sulphite of iron*.

Some have altered these terms into sulphic acid and sulphous acid, hence the above is sulphic iron and sulphous iron. When these acids unite with elements or bases in different proportions, the same prefixes are used as with oxides. If one proportion of acid unites with one of another element, the compound is termed *proto*, as proto-sulphate of iron; if two of acid and one metal, the compound has *bi*, as bisulphate of iron, &c. *Per* is also used as denoting the highest proportion—as, when three equivalents of acid unite with two equivalents of iron, the salt is termed *persulphate of iron*.

Sometimes we have the metal uniting with acids, forming basic salts, as described in the case of basic oxides; such as having two proportions of metal to one of acid, and three proportions or equivalents of metal to one of acid. In such cases, the same prefixes are used as we have before stated—namely, *bi*basic sulphate of copper, two equivalents of copper to one of sulphuric acid; *tri*basic sulphate of copper, three copper to one acid.

Combinations of water with oxides or salts are termed *hydrates*, or the compound is termed *hydrous*, in contradistinction to substances having no water, which are termed *anhydrous*—thus, hydrate of potash, or hydrous potash,  $K_2OH_2O$ ; anhydrous potash,  $K_2O$ .

These formulæ may appear at first sight rather puzzling, and require a little explanation in addition to our remarks at page 20. In the old way of stating these compounds we had—

Anhydrous potash,  $KO = 47$

Hydrous potash,  $KOHO = 56$

Although the equivalent of oxygen is doubled, the potassium equivalent remains as formerly, so that

Anhydrous potash is now  $K_2O = 94$

Hydrous potash is now  $K_2OH_2O = 112$

In this last there are two hydrogen, two potassium, and two oxygen, which would be formulated  $H_2K_2O_2$ ; instead of this it is divided  $HKO = 56$ .

The reader will meet with several compounds and hydrates formulated in the same manner.

Two salts sometimes unite together, and form a definite compound, which is termed a double salt. Alum is a good instance of this class of compounds: it is a double salt of sulphate of alumina and sulphate of potash.

## CHEMICAL AFFINITY.

---

THE elements of matter have a disposition, if we may use the term, to unite with one another: this disposition is termed *affinity*, or chemical attraction. The affinity of any one element for the others is not equal, but is greater for some one element, or for a particular class of elements. Thus, oxygen has a stronger attraction under ordinary circumstances for those elements the combining with which forms alkalis, than for any of the others; and amongst these potassium has the strongest affinity for oxygen, so that, by the operation of this law, should a number of elements be arranged together, under proper circumstances for combining, those which have the strongest attraction for each other will combine first. The same law holds good when compound bodies unite together. Were we to take sulphuric acid, and add to it a mixture of potash and magnesia, the acid would combine with the potash with greater force than it would with the magnesia; and were there not enough of acid to combine with the whole of the mixture, a part of the magnesia would be left, because the potash has a stronger attraction for this acid than magnesia. This peculiarity of selecting is not merely owing to the substance having acid properties, but from a stronger attraction existing between the base and acid compounds. Thus the two acids, *sulphuric* and *muriatic*, comport themselves towards the following bases, as under:—

### MURIATIC ACID.

Silver.  
Potash.  
Soda.  
Barytes.  
Strontia.  
Lime.  
Magnesia.

### SULPHURIC ACID.

Barytes.  
Strontia.  
Potash.  
Soda.  
Lime.  
Magnesia.  
Silver.

Although we have named silver here under the sulphuric acid column, in order to complete the comparison, it is not immediately next to magnesia in affinity for that acid; a great many of the other metals rank before it, such as mercury, copper, iron, zinc. So that were any of these metals added to a solution of sulphate of silver, the acid would leave the silver and combine with it—the silver being precipitated.

It is this law of affinity that regulates compositions and decompositions, all of which are matters of daily experience in the dye-house; particularly that class of decompositions termed double, in which two salts being put together, there takes place a mutual exchange of partners,



if we may so term it. For instance, in mixing nitrate of iron with yellow prussiate of potash, the nitric acid leaves the iron and combines with the potash, while the iron and prussic acid combine, forming Prussian blue. When any of the two compounds so combined forms an insoluble substance, the decomposition is always more apparent, more complete, and most applicable to dyeing purposes. Compounds which cannot easily be formed directly by bringing their elements together, are often formed by means of double decomposition: thus, carbonate of iron is difficult to form directly, but by mixing a solution of carbonate of soda with sulphate of iron, this compound is instantly formed, which may be thus represented—



APPLICATION OF AFFINITY.—These double decompositions and recompositions are of the utmost importance to the practical dyer, who should make himself thoroughly acquainted with all their laws and conditions; as it is these formations of new and often insoluble compounds which constitute a prominent feature in the production of colours, and every circumstance connected with this class of phenomena favours this kind of reaction for practical purposes. It is a general law that in the rapid union of two elements, or of a compound with an element, such as dissolving a metal in acid, that there is always a great evolution of sensible heat. This circumstance would interfere with many dyeing operations, affecting both the fibre and colour; but in the double affinity referred to, where two compounds merely exchange elements, there is no sensible heat evolved to interfere with the dyeing operations or fabric. The interchange of elements takes place quietly, so that the dyer may fix within the fibres of the most delicate material any compound required for the colour.

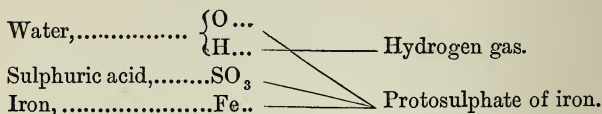
CIRCUMSTANCES INFLUENCING AFFINITY.—The force of affinity is greatly influenced by the conditions in which the combining bodies are placed, as indicated when treating of light and heat. Solid bodies, in general, have no chemical action upon one another; therefore, before any chemical change can take place, it is necessary to bring the substance into a fluid state. This is eminently necessary in all dyeing operations, not only for the purpose of causing combination, but to enable the particles to enter within the fibres of the cloth, and to be, while there, acted upon by the affinity of another body, also in solution, brought into contact with them. This is an essential condition of all dye drugs, and of all salts used in dyeing, either as dyes or mordants, and must never be lost sight of in studying either its philosophy or practical application, as anything that interferes with the free operation of these conditions necessarily retards the process or deteriorates the dye.

CATALYTIC INFLUENCE.—Another circumstance or power sometimes occurring in dyeing operations, which interferes with or directs chemical affinity amongst the particles of bodies is, that one body often induces a

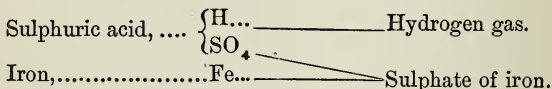
chemical change in another, while it undergoes no change itself. This kind of affinity or power is termed CATALYSIS. A good instance of this is in fermentation: a little yeast put into beer induces fermentation in all the solution, while the yeast is not altered. If we boil starch with dilute sulphuric acid, the starch is first changed into gum and then into sugar. Yet, notwithstanding these changes, the sulphuric acid is found unaltered, either in property or quantity. A great many substances possess this property of catalytic influence; and it is not unlikely that fibrous materials, such as silk, woollen, and cotton, possess it towards many of the vegetable colouring matters used in dyeing; indeed, many operations in the dye-house indicate the presence of some such influence. The real nature of this power is not well understood; only we know that bodies subject to change by catalysis have their particles held together by a weak affinity, and therefore changes are less or more easily effected, according to the power exerted, to keep their elements together. The elements of many organic compounds seem held together by a mere balance of power among them, so that while another substance put into such a compound may possess a sufficient attraction for some of the elements in the compound to disturb this balance of power, yet it may not have sufficient power to combine with them, but only cause the whole elements to re-arrange themselves in a new and probably more stable form. The study of such reactions is of the greatest interest; and as these principles of action, in all probability, play a prominent part in the art of dyeing, it will be again brought under consideration when describing operations where we think this action takes place. We may here mention, however, that the introduction of such a term as *catalysis* is only considered useful as bringing under one group a certain class of phenomena; but, indeed, the same may be said of the no less useful term affinity. When our knowledge of these hidden powers is more extended, all those phenomena may, perhaps, be accounted for, and ranged under the operation of some one universal power or law, of which at present we know only by particular terms: until then the names are useful.

CONSTITUTION OF SALTS.—It may have been observed that, in describing the constitution of compounds and their nomenclature, the elements are grouped together in a certain order, not only shewing their composition in so far as the elements and the number of equivalents are concerned, but how these elements are arranged in the compound salt. Salts were long considered to be a double compound of an acid with the oxide of a metal. Thus, sulphate of iron was represented as  $\text{FeOSO}_3$ , being sulphuric acid combined with oxide of iron, the name being the sulphate of the protoxide of iron; but the results of an extensive series of investigations by different chemists have altered these views, and different formulæ have been proposed, not affecting the actual composition of the salts, but the supposed manner in which the elements group themselves together in the compound. However, it is not intended to enter here into the merits of the different

views which have been entertained by chemists regarding this point, but briefly to give a general idea as a guide to the workman. We will take sulphuric acid as our first illustration. The composition of this acid was given as  $\text{SO}_3$ , but  $\text{SO}_3$  is a solid crystalline compound, which has no acid properties until it is combined with one proportion of water, being then  $\text{SO}_3 + \text{HO}$ , or hydrous sulphuric acid. If into this acid we place a piece of iron, the reaction was expressed thus,  $\text{SO}_3\text{HO} + \text{Fe} = \text{SO}_3\text{FeO} + \text{H}$ ; or as follows:—



Here we have water decomposed, to give an atom of oxygen to the iron forming an oxide; and then we have the acid combining with this oxide. The same principle of action is ascribed to all metals, and used to be described as a sort of disposing affinity. The acid  $\text{SO}_3$  is conceived to have such an attraction for the oxide of the metal, that it disposes both the metal to combine with oxygen and the oxygen with the metal, in order that it might unite with the two to form a salt. Sir H. Davy, with his usual clear perception of all chemical phenomena, thought that as sulphuric acid  $\text{SO}_3$  had no acid properties, and was incapable of combining with any body as such, except in union with water, it was more probable that what is termed hydrated sulphuric acid  $\text{SO}_3 + \text{HO}$ , may be the true composition of sulphuric acid, rather than  $\text{SO}_3$ , and therefore ought to be represented thus,  $\text{SO}_4 + \text{H}$ —the hydrogen being the base or metal, and that its presence is an essential qualification to the acid, so that a piece of iron being put into sulphuric acid will have a reaction as under,  $\text{SO}_4\text{H} + \text{Fe} = \text{SO}_4\text{Fe} + \text{H}$ :—



Here we have no supposed primary-disposing action, but the iron simply taking the place of hydrogen, by substitution, in virtue of  $\text{SO}_4$ , having a stronger affinity for it than for the hydrogen. The same reaction explains the dissolving of any other metal in sulphuric acid. Names were proposed in accordance with this theory, as, for instance, the  $\text{SO}_4$  was termed *sulphion*; therefore,  $\text{SO}_4 + \text{H}$ , instead of being termed sulphuric acid, would be *sulphionide* of hydrogen, and sulphate of iron, *sulphionide* of iron; now they are hydric sulphate and ferrous sulphate. Such new names, however, are very difficult to introduce; and although they may be used and approved of by chemists, their use in the arts must necessarily be a matter of gradual growth.

The views given above, of the true formula of sulphuric acid, may be

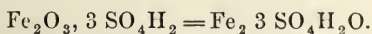
applied to all hydrated acids. The so-called nitric anhydride of the formula  $N_2O_5$  is not an acid. There is  $N_2O_5 + H_2O$ , hydrated nitric acid; but why  $N_2O_5 + H_2O$ , rather than  $N_2O_6 + H_2$ ? from doubling the equivalent of oxygen, nitric acid is represented as  $HNO_3$ , instead of  $N_2O_6H_2$ . Metals dissolving in it only replace the hydrogen. The same with muriatic acid, which is a compound of hydrogen and chlorine, properly termed hydrochloric acid. In dissolving a metal in this acid, the acid, not the water, is decomposed. Or if we put hydrochloric acid upon the oxide of a metal, say soda, the action is not that of the acid combining with the oxide, but there is a double decomposition and composition represented by  $HCl, NaHO = NaCl, H_2O$ . So that bodies termed muriates are more properly chlorides.

**SALT RADICALS.**—There is another thing necessary for the student to bear in mind, in reference to these views, and the nomenclature resting upon them. The  $SO_4$ ,  $NO_3$ , &c., are called the *Salt Radical*, which term is often used in chemical books, and is applied equally to compounds such as the above, or to an element, such as chlorine. It refers to any element or compound that will form an acid when combined with hydrogen, and a salt when united with a metal. There are a great many salt radicals which are compound substances, but which deport themselves in their reactions as elements. One eminent example of a substance of this kind is cyanogen, (CN), which is the salt radical of Prussic acid, and which we will have occasion to notice when treating of the compounds of this acid and the ferro-prussiates, so much used in the dye-house. The symbol of this radical is Cy.

This view of the constitution of salts is much more simple than that of oxides combining with the acids, and, as it will be apparent, reduces the compound bodies, termed acids and salts, into one great class.

It also enables us to account for a remarkable law which has been already noticed, namely, that bases, such as metals, always unite with the same number of proportions, or equivalents of acids, or salt radicals. Thus, if we dissolve protoxide of iron, ferrous oxide, in sulphuric acid, one proportion of iron only combines with one proportion of acid, and is represented by  $FeO, SO_4H_2 = Fe SO_4, H_2O$ .

But if we take the peroxide of iron, ferric oxide, and dissolve it in sulphuric acid, we then have three proportions of acid, thus—



It must, however, be borne in mind, that both theories require several hypothetical conditions to be taken for granted, to enable us to account for all the phenomena which take place in the actions of one body upon another; and also, that both these views of the constitution of salts, as to the manner in which the atoms or particles arrange themselves, are liable to objections; but the latter are more in accordance with observed pheno-



mena. We have stated the fundamental principles of these views, both as a general guide to the student in his inquiries into chemical science, and because we will have occasion to refer to them hereafter. But the reader who wishes to obtain more extended information may consult such works as those of Graham, Liebig, Gmelin, Millar, Hoffman, and others, who have given this matter much close attention; and such research will be found amply to repay any labour and time expended upon it, for on the proper understanding of the fundamental laws of affinity depends, in a great measure, the proper application of chemical science to practical purposes, and more especially in such delicate operations, and with such materials, as the animal and vegetable fibres operated upon in a dye-house.

## ELEMENTARY SUBSTANCES.

---

### OXYGEN (O. 16).

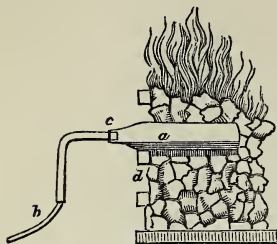
By referring to the table of elements, it will be found that several substances are therein named which many of our practical readers have never heard of. There are, indeed, a number of elements of which little more is known than the fact of their existing in certain compounds; they have only been seen by the discoverers and a few friends, and are as yet so rare, and found in such small quantities, that under present circumstances their application to any common branch of manufacture is not thought of. Such substances we will therefore pass over with a very short notice, and confine ourselves more to those that are, or so far as their cost and quantities are concerned, may be brought into common use. The name of the element at the head of this chapter is a very familiar term in the dye-house, but is applied so indiscriminately, and so often erroneously, to different substances as to cause a considerable misunderstanding of its real nature and properties. Many of these erroneous applications of the name, and consequent confusion of ideas, will be noticed more appropriately under chlorine, with which gas oxygen is often identified in the dye-house.

Oxygen exists in Nature both free and combined: when free, it forms a colourless and transparent gas, without taste or smell; it is a little heavier than common air, of which it forms a part, and is dissolved or absorbed by water, in the proportion of from 3 to 4 per cent. by weight. Its wide range of affinity for other elements, its presence in almost every compound, and the part it plays in nature, invest it with an importance not possessed by any of the other elements. It constitutes more than a fifth part of the atmosphere, as much as eight-ninths of the water, and fully half of the solid crust of the globe; and it is, besides, a prominent ingredient in all animal and vegetable bodies. The following table shews its numerical importance more precisely:—

Water has . . . .	8 oxygen in 9 by weight.
The Air, . . . .	3 „ in 9 „
Crust of the Earth, . .	5 „ in 9 „
Animals and Vegetables, .	7 „ in 9 „

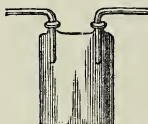
HOW TO MAKE OXYGEN GAS.—The name oxygen was given to this element from the idea which the old chemists had, that it gave acid properties to its compounds. It was first recognised in this country as a distinct substance by Dr. Priestley, in the year 1774, and about a year after in Sweden, by Scheele, without any previous knowledge of Priestley's dis-

covery. It was obtained by Priestley by heating in a retort red oxide of mercury, which is thereby resolved into fluid mercury and oxygen. But



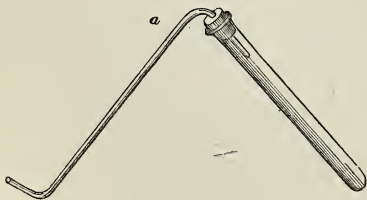
other and more economical means are now adopted for its preparation, as follows:— An iron bottle is prepared, with an iron tube fitted into the mouth air-tight, forming a retort; into this a quantity of black oxide of manganese is put, and the bottle placed with its contents into a good fire, with the open end of the iron pipe dipping into a vessel filled with water. The accompanying figure shews the bottle in the fire,

with the conducting pipe. Care must be taken not to allow any water to get into the bottle. This may be prevented by placing a receiver or Woulff's bottle between, thus—



When the bottle becomes red hot, bubbles of gas are seen to rise from the pipe through the water: these bubbles are oxygen gas, and may be collected by filling a bottle or jar with water, and holding its mouth downwards over the extremity of the pipe; the gas, ascending into the bottle or jar, gradually displaces the water. In explanation of what is taking place within the retort-bottle in the fire, it may be stated that black oxide of manganese is composed of  $\text{MnO}_2$ ; the high heat drives off, or sets at liberty a portion of the oxygen, and the manganese is converted into a lower state of oxidation, so that  $3 \text{ MnO}_2$  becomes  $\text{Mn}_3\text{O}_4 + 2 \text{ O}$ .

Another and more rapid method of preparing oxygen is, by taking equal parts of oxide of copper and chlorate of potash, and placing the mixture in a small flask or test tube, fitted with a glass tube, as represented by the annexed cut. When



heat is applied by means of a lamp, a rapid evolution of gas takes place, very pure, and without any danger to the operator. One ounce of chlorate of potash, treated in this way, will yield about 500 cubic inches of gas. The chlorate

of potash is composed of  $2 \text{ KClO}_3$ , all the oxygen is set free, and chloride of potassium left. The oxide of copper undergoes no decomposition. The part it plays is not well understood; but a practical use of its presence in this experiment is to prevent fusion of the salt, which would take place, and is liable to break the vessel used. When the experiment is finished and the flask cold, a little water will dissolve out the chloride of

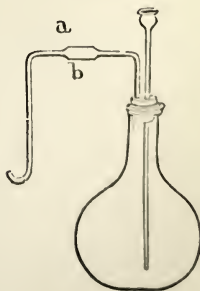


potassium from the oxide of copper, which, when dried, may be used again for a similar experiment. Peroxide of iron or manganese may be substituted for oxide of copper. The facility that these bodies give to the decomposition of the chlorate is considered catalytic. There are a variety of other means of obtaining this gas, but they need not be detailed.

**PROPERTIES OF OXYGEN.**—Oxygen is an eminent supporter of combustion. If a candle be placed in an atmosphere of this gas, it burns with intense brilliancy. Sulphur and charcoal being kindled, and placed in oxygen, give a vivid light, and there is formed sulphurous acid with the sulphur, and carbonic acid with the charcoal. If a piece of iron or steel wire be made red hot, and then immersed into oxygen gas, the combination is so rapid that the heat produced causes the iron to scintillate, and the oxide to fuse and drop off like water, sufficiently hot to melt or fuse china and glass. Many other metals burn in the same way as iron in this gas. It is upon this gas depend the processes of combustion and respiration; and the various functions of organised existence, in all its forms, are essentially connected and sustained through the agency of oxygen. Indeed, there are few operations in chemistry which are not in some way connected with oxygen, so that, under the various heads in which we intend to treat our subject, its nature and properties will be constantly developed. Dyed fabrics, whether wet or dry, suspended in this gas are not affected—a fact for the dyer to bear in mind when he is identifying this gas with chlorine.

### HYDROGEN (H. 1).

Hydrogen is a gaseous element, never found free or uncombined in Nature, but is easily obtained from some of the compounds of which it is a component. When pure, it is without smell or colour, and is the lightest substance known; it is therefore used for inflating balloons. Its distinctive character as an element was first pointed out by Cavendish, in 1766. It exists abundantly in Nature in combination with other elements; it is a constituent of all animal and vegetable substances; and, being one of the constituents of water, it enters as such into the composition of almost all compounds. It is from the decomposition of water that hydrogen is generally prepared for experimental purposes. The process is simple. By putting some iron or zinc into a retort, and pouring over it a little dilute sulphuric or hydrochloric acid, the metal dissolves with effervescence, and the gas, in passing off, may be caught in bottles or jars over the pneumatic trough, as described for oxygen. Instead of a retort, a flask or bottle may be used, having a tube fitted by a cork in the mouth of the bottle, as represented by the annexed figure.



The reaction which takes place, by the acid acting on the metal, is, as we have before shewn (page 26), formulated thus—



We observe here that the change is only the substitution of the metal for the hydrogen in the acid. The use of the water mixed with the acid is to dissolve the salt of zinc formed in the process, which requires a considerable quantity of water. From these and similar facts hydrogen is supposed to be a metal existing in a gaseous form. Its chemical character exhibits most of the properties possessed by the metals, and alloys of hydrogen with other metals, particularly paladium, have been obtained. Hydrogen, when prepared in the way described, has a slight smell, which results from impurities in the substances used, generally from a small trace of arsenic or sulphur being in the metal. When iron is used instead of zinc, the smell is still more perceptible. Hydrogen is a combustible gas, and burns with a yellow flame, but does not support combustion. A burning candle immersed in it is instantly extinguished. When mixed with oxygen, and heat is applied, the mixture explodes with a loud report, and water is formed by the union of the gases. Hydrogen does not support life. An animal immersed in an atmosphere of it soon dies. Several attempts have been made to breathe this gas, and some curious effects have been observed; but from incautiousness in not purifying the gas perfectly before inhaling it, two fatal accidents have followed. All such attempts are extremely foolish. Hydrogen combines with oxygen in two proportions, forming the protoxide or water, and peroxide or binoxide, a substance which has strong bleaching properties.

**WATER.**—The discovery of the true composition of water was made by Cavendish, in 1781, by burning known quantities of oxygen and hydrogen in a dry glass vessel, and observing that water was formed and deposited on the glass, and in quantity exactly equal to the weights of the gases which disappeared. He also found that these gases unite exactly in the proportion of two volumes of hydrogen with one of oxygen, and by weight 1 to 8, or as now formulated, 2 to 16.

Pure water is colourless and transparent, and has neither taste nor smell. It is eminently neutral, having neither acid nor alkaline properties, and does not alter the nature of substances put into it. It often enters, however, into the composition of compounds; and many substances put into it have the property of decomposing it, and appropriating its elements.

The statement that water is entirely neutral, and having no action upon matters put into it, may appear doubtful to the practical dyer, as his daily experience teaches him that the waters he uses have a strong effect upon many of the dyes, and that certain kinds of water are better for some of his colours than others, which manifests a difference either in the condition or constitution of the water. This difference in water, experienced by dyers, depends upon foreign matters dissolved in it. It would therefore

be a great object for the dyer to obtain pure water ; or, if this is not practicable, to know what the ingredients are that are in the water he is using, so that he may either counteract their effects and escape their consequences, or render them subservient to his purpose. The great practical importance of water to the dyer is not only its neutrality, but also its solvent power. The cohesion of solid bodies is overcome, and the particles are diffused through those of the water, and so placed in the best possible condition for combining with the particles of other bodies brought into proximity with them. This may be illustrated by taking two solid substances that have a strong affinity for each other—say tartaric acid and carbonate of soda; mix them together dry, there will be no apparent action ; but if these substances be previously dissolved in water, and the solutions mixed, the action is violent and immediate. It is its great solvent powers that gives us impure water.

Water is rendered pure by distillation. When boiled it passes off as steam, and when steam is condensed by cooling, it is pure water, provided the impurities which were in the water before boiling do not volatilise at a lower temperature than that of  $212^{\circ}$ . Gaseous matters are expelled, and such liquids as alcohol, which boil at lower temperatures, are also given off ; but the impurities that are found in common water to affect the dyer are not given off, except these be in the water in great quantities, as in leys, in boiling which some of the soda or potash is carried away with the steam, as already noticed.

The original source of all our water is from the surface of the ocean : it is evaporated, or vaporised, and carried through the atmosphere in the form of clouds, or in solution, and deposited upon the earth as dew or rain ; in these states it dissolves matters from the atmosphere, such as carbonic acid, ammonia, &c. ; so that rain water, especially if near towns, is not altogether free of impurities. Nevertheless, when far from towns, or after it has rained for some time purifying the air, rain is the purest water in nature, but the moment it touches the earth it dissolves some solid matters, and becomes contaminated with the ingredients of the soil over or through which it passes, and these ingredients cause the differences experienced by dyers. The nature of the impurities depends upon the immediate source of the water—the nature of the soil or strata of earth through which it has passed ; and as these substances act and react upon the dye-stuffs used, it therefore becomes of the first importance that the dyer should fully comprehend the character and effects of the substances dissolved in the water he is using. These ingredients are generally lime, magnesia, alumina, potash, soda, iron, copper, sulphuric acid, hydrochloric acid, and carbonic acid. There are also other substances, which have been found in springs, in more minute quantities, but which we need not enumerate here, as they are not common ; and even some of these given, such as copper, are not often present in waters used in the dye-house. These earthy substances are generally found in the water combined as sulphates, chlorides, or carbonates. There are also gases present in waters, as atmospheric air, car-



bonic acid, sulphurous acid, &c. The last-named gas is easily detected by the smell, and water could not be used for dyeing containing an appreciable quantity of it. Copper will not be present except in the vicinity of a copper mine, or a copper-ore vein. Iron as a sulphate, or chloride, is often present in very minute quantity; but when the quantity is considerable, the water is not good for many purposes; and if the water is conveyed through lead pipes, or retained in leaden tanks, a small trace of lead may be detected, which is not only deleterious to the dyer's operations, but very destructive to health. Two common definitions of the quality of water are *hard* and *soft*; but these expressions, so far as regards the dyer, are somewhat ambiguous, and are only useful when alkalies and soaps are to be used. Distilled water is soft and pure, and useful for all purposes of the arts; but a water may be soft and useful for bleaching and washing, and very deleterious in dyeing; and it may be hard, and yet good for dyeing most colours. Such a term, therefore, does not denote any particular kind of impurities. If a piece of pure white soap be dissolved in alcohol, not so strong as to form a jelly, and a little of the solution be dropped into water, if the soap *curdles* the water is hard; if not, it is soft. If hard, the ingredients are of an acid or an earthy nature, such as carbonic acid, carbonate of lime or iron, sulphate of lime, &c.; if soft, it may contain alkalies. The ingredients in the water are often so minute that the ordinary tests do not for some time detect them. The best mode of proceeding is to apply the soap test first, as a sort of guide; next, to try the water with delicately-prepared test papers, and observe whether it has any acid or alkaline reaction; then take a gallon of the water and boil it down to a pint; put this into a narrow jar, and allow it to settle for a few hours; pour off the clear liquid into another vessel, and retain for examination the turbid remainder if any: it will most probably be carbonate and sulphate of lime, and a little iron. Carbonate of lime has been held in solution as bicarbonate; but the boiling decomposes this compound, one proportion of carbonic acid being given off, and the insoluble carbonate precipitates. The sulphate of lime is soluble only in small quantity, so that a little may be precipitated by boiling. To the residue add a few drops of hydrochloric acid, and the carbonate of lime and iron will dissolve with effervescence, while the sulphate will remain undissolved. A drop or two of gallic acid added to the acid solution will detect iron, by giving a black or bluish colour. A portion of this solution may be taken, and a little ammonia added to neutralise the acid; iron will give a brown precipitate; if lime is present, the addition of a little oxalate of ammonia will give a white precipitate.

The clear portion is now divided into five different portions, and put into small wine or test glasses.

To one portion is added a few drops of gallic acid, which, if iron be present, will, after standing some time, produce a bluish colour.

To another portion add a few drops of oxalate of ammonia, which will give a white precipitate if lime is present. This should be heated a little.

To a third portion add a few drops of phosphate of soda, and stir it well. After standing some time, if a white precipitate be formed, this will indicate the presence of magnesia.

To a fourth portion add chloride of barium: if a white precipitate is obtained, which is not re-dissolved by adding a little pure nitric acid, sulphuric acid is present.

To the fifth portion add nitrate of silver: if a white precipitate is formed, not re-dissolved by the addition of a little pure nitric acid, then hydrochloric acid is present.

These tests, and the nitric acid used, of course, must be perfectly pure, or no dependence can be placed upon the results.

If carbonic acid exists in the water, which it does very commonly in combination with a base, it will be known, as already intimated, by the effervescence caused by the addition of an acid; but it may exist free; and the best way to detect it, is to take a separate quantity of the water, without boiling, say a pint, and add to it a little clear lime water; if milkiness appear after standing some time, carbonic acid is present, either free or as bicarbonate of lime.

If blue litmus paper be reddened, there is free acid present in the water.

This manner of proceeding, which is very simple, is sufficient to give the dyer an idea of the impurities he has to contend with. Of course, the effects of each of these separately, or together, upon his dye-drugs, will also have to be studied; but for this we refer to the separate heads under which they naturally fall. Should a more correct investigation be required, such as the exact quantity of each ingredient, this must be done by a regular course of analysis, which, we are afraid, few practical dyers have the apparatus or other means of making. However, with the tests referred to, a near approximation may be come at, by boiling the gallon of water to dryness, and carefully weighing the contents, which will give the whole solid matters in the gallon; and afterwards, by dissolving this in distilled water, pouring off the solution, and drying the insoluble portion, the quantity of soluble salts, which may be those of potash, soda, magnesia, &c., will be found. The water is tested for these and all the other ingredients by the tests given. To the remaining insoluble part a few drops of hydrochloric acid are added, and notice is taken if this produces effervescence. This acid solution is then diluted with distilled water, and tested as above: if anything remains insoluble, it is again dried and weighed, and the result will indicate the silica present.

Water is used in the dye-house principally as a solvent; but its solvent property depends upon certain laws. The action being the mutual attractions between the solid and fluid, it becomes weaker as the attractions are satisfied. If, for example, we take a piece of white sugar of lead, and immerse one small point of it in water, the liquid is quickly drawn up into its pores, and adheres to the particles of the salt. If more water than is merely sufficient to wet the particles is allowed to enter, the solid particles

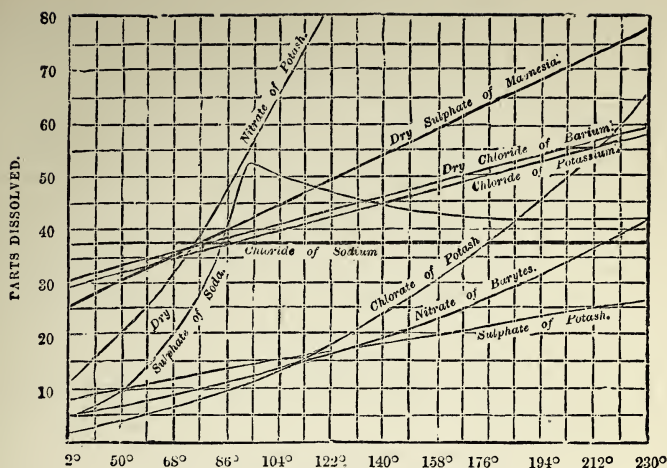
of the salt break down and disappear in the water—in other words, the salt dissolves. But this action of the water upon the salt is limited: it is very powerful at first, but as the salt is diffused through the liquid, the action upon the solid decreases gradually, until the water gets satisfied, and will dissolve no more; the water is then said to be saturated.

A general practice in dissolving salts in the dye-house may here be noticed. When dissolving quantities of crystallised salts, such as alum, sugar of lead, &c., the custom is to put the solid crystals into a vessel, and pour water upon them; and a person keeps stirring until the whole is dissolved or the water saturated. This takes up much valuable time, and there is often a remainder of the salt not dissolved for want of time. If, instead of proceeding in this way, the quantity of water which is necessary to use be put into the vessel, and the crystals of the salt be suspended upon the surface, the solution would proceed much more rapidly and more economically than any other way. As the particles of water take up the particles of the salt, they become heavier, and sink; other particles take their place, dissolving more of the salt, and sink in turn, so that the action of a constant current of liquid is kept up on the suspended crystals, and always of that portion of the liquid most capable of dissolving. Now, if the crystals of any salt are put into a vessel, and water poured over them, and allowed to remain, they are a very long time in being dissolved, as the water surrounding the crystals becomes saturated and incapable of dissolving more, and from its weight it remains at the bottom of the vessel. This may be beautifully illustrated by taking three tumblers filled with water, and adding to each an equal weight of crystallised sulphate of copper. In the one let the crystals rest at the bottom, stir the second constantly, and let the crystals in the third be suspended upon the surface of the water, the action will be seen, and the difference in time appreciated.

In general, hot water dissolves more of a salt than cold water; but the relation of different dissolving powers of water, at different temperatures and for different salts, is very curious. Some salts dissolve equally at all temperatures, such as common salt. Some salts dissolve least in cold water, and increase gradually as the water is heated; others, again, increase rapidly, until the water is at a certain temperature, and then become less soluble; while other substances, such as lime, dissolve in larger quantity when the water is cold. Thus, 66 gallons water, at 32° Fah., dissolve 1 lb. lime; but it takes 75 gallons at 60° Fah., or 128 gallons at 212°, to produce the same effect; so that boiling water can contain only about the half of the lime that ice-cold water can. Thus, when saturated lime water at 60°, which is about the maximum heat of water in summer, is boiled, a quantity of lime is deposited as the heat increases. This is often experienced in the *raising* of chrome oranges.

The following table illustrates these remarks, and is of great value to the dyer:—





It will be seen here that if a salt is dissolved in boiling water to saturation, and allowed to cool, a great quantity will be deposited either as crystals or powder; also, if we wish to have a highly-saturated solution, there are certain temperatures better adapted for obtaining it than others. The best means for uniformity is to use the salt dissolved to saturation in cold water, as above stated; and the dyer, while he uses his solution, say the salts of iron, alum, &c., should know that when he uses the full of a ladle, or pail, or small mug, he is taking exactly so many ounces or pounds of the salt, rather than so many measures, as is generally the case, without reference to the particular strength of the solution.

The following table of the quantity of a salt dissolved in a gallon of cold water at saturation, will be an example of this:—

Common salt,	.	.	.	.	4½lbs. per gallon.
Sal-ammoniac,	.	.	.	.	3½ „
Sulphate of copper,	.	.	.	.	4½ „
Sulphate of iron,	.	.	.	.	7 „
Sulphate of zinc,	.	.	.	.	9¼ „
Sulphate of nickel,	.	.	.	.	7½ „
Sulphate of soda,	.	.	.	.	4½ „
Alum,	.	.	.	.	1½ „

Comparing this with the diagram above, it will be seen that double the quantity of some of these salts is dissolved in boiling water; so that a saturated solution of some salts at different temperatures contains different quantities—this the dyer ought to bear in mind.

Besides the property for dissolving solid bodies, which we have been considering, water, as has been previously said, has also the property of dissolving gases, and holding them in solution. In this case, cold water is a more powerful solvent than hot. Some gases, if held in solution by

water used for dyeing, would be very deleterious; and as many of these gases are often floating about in the dye-house, they may be absorbed by the water in small quantities, and be injurious, and the cause of the injury may not be known or thought of. The following are a few of the gases and their solubility in water.

100 volumes, or cubic inches of water, at 60°, will dissolve about

253 volumes of sulphuretted hydrogen, weighing 93·6 grains.

438       ,,       sulphurous acid,                       ,,       300       ,,

206       ,,       chlorine,                               ,,       155·7       ,,

100       ,,       carbonic acid,                               ,,       47·2       ,,

76        ,,       nitrous oxide,                               ,,       75        ,,

Any of these gases in the water will affect colours, and they are all, to some extent, found in the dye-house.

One gallon is equal to 277 cubic inches, so that each gallon is capable of holding in solution

259·3 grains of sulphuretted hydrogen.

189·7 grains of sulphurous acid.

431·3 grains of chlorine.

130·7 grains of carbonic acid.

273    grains of nitrous fumes.

INCRUSTATION ON STEAM BOILERS.—All natural water, except rain, contains small portions of earthy matters in solution, which are not volatilised by boiling. This is a source of great annoyance and loss where much steam is used. In steam boilers, as the water boils off, these salts accumulate until the water cannot hold more in solution, then the salt deposits or crystallises upon the surface of the boiler. The salts principally found affecting boilers are bicarbonate and sulphate of lime. The former salt is soluble in water in small proportions; but when the water containing it is brought to a boiling heat, it loses an equivalent of carbonic acid, which passes off with the steam, and leaves carbonate of lime, which is insoluble in water, and precipitates, so that every night, during the non-use of the boiler, this precipitate falls to the bottom of the boiler and forms a crust, so that in a few weeks, according to the quality of the water, a thick layer of carbonate of lime is formed, which hurts the boiler and causes great loss of heat. This kind of precipitate is, however, very easily prevented by placing a perforated pipe along the bottom of the boiler, and when the precipitate accumulates there, blowing off that portion before it hardens; if this be done regularly, no incrustation is allowed to form. It is different, however, when the water contains sulphate of lime: that does not precipitate, but crystallises on the sides of the boiler, and continues until it thickens so as to retard the production of steam, and adheres so firmly as to necessitate its being chipped off by hammers. Upwards of twenty years ago I adopted the following remedy with good results, which was published at the time. The water used for the boiler was carefully tested for the quantity of sulphate of lime it contained,

and also the quantity of water boiled off was ascertained. A vessel containing a known strength of solution of carbonate of soda was placed in connection with the feeding apparatus, and by means of a stop-cock or syphon as much carbonate of soda was allowed to drop into the feed water as was equivalent to the sulphate of lime, this converted the sulphate into the insoluble carbonate of lime, which precipitating was blown off at intervals in the same way as stated above. Boilers that had to be emptied, and the crust taken off by hammers every six weeks, were by this means only cleaned out once a year. We have known carbonate of soda thrown into a boiler in quantity when newly filled, in order to prevent incrustations; but free soda in the water is hurtful to the packing of engines, as a portion is carried off by the steam.

**BINOXIDE OF HYDROGEN.**—Binoxide of hydrogen is a colourless liquid like water; it has a metallic taste, and bleaches almost instantly all organic coloured substances. Its preparation is difficult and expensive. It was first obtained by the decomposition of the binoxide of barium, the preparation of which is difficult. There are now known several other methods of obtaining it, but all requiring precaution and chemical skill, that almost no description which our limits permit would enable the student to prepare it by; these are all given in detail by Thenard, the discoverer of the compound, in his *Traite de Chemie* (vol. i., 6th edition).

Could there be any means of procuring it readily and cheap, its uses would be invaluable, both as a bleaching agent and also for oxidising, and many other operations in the arts. It is often referred to in proof that oxygen has bleaching properties as well as chlorine—a fact which will be noticed to some extent under that element.

Hydrogen combines with other elements besides oxygen, giving rise to most important compounds, such as ammonia and the great variety of hydrocarbons, some of which will be treated of under the separate elements with which it combines.

#### NITROGEN (N. 14).

If a small vessel be floated upon water with a piece of phosphorus set on fire, and a glass jar inverted over it, as represented by the annexed figure, the flame is soon extinguished, and the water, when the air within the glass cools, rises into the jar. If you let the whole stand until the white fumes in the glass disappear, the remaining air in the jar will be found to differ entirely from common air: a candle will not burn in it, and an animal put into it would very soon die. This gaseous substance is nitrogen. The atmosphere is composed of oxygen and nitrogen; and the burning phosphorus combines with the former of these gases, forming phosphorous



acid, constituting the white cloud referred to, which is absorbed by the water after a little time. The rising of the water into the jar is to supply the place occupied by the oxygen consumed, and nothing but nitrogen remains.

This element was first called AZOTE by its discoverer, Dr. Rutherford—the life-destroyer—from its not having the power of supporting life; but the name was afterwards changed to nitrogen, on account of its being found to be the basic constituent of nitric acid (*aqua fortis*). Nitrogen has neither taste nor smell, and is rather lighter than oxygen. Its use in the atmosphere is supposed to be for diluting the oxygen; but there is no doubt that other important purposes are served by its presence in the air, although we may be ignorant of them, as it forms an essential constituent of animals and vegetables, and also of many mineral productions. Nitrogen is peculiar for what are termed *inert* or *negative* properties. We cannot cause it to combine directly with any other element, as we do oxygen and hydrogen, or hydrogen and chlorine; nevertheless, it combines with a number of elements, when compounds are being decomposed.

With oxygen, nitrogen forms a variety of interesting compounds, already alluded to (page 18), but which we will here notice more in detail, particularly those more commonly met with. As already remarked, the atmosphere is a mixture of nitrogen and oxygen, found to be in very nearly the same proportions under all circumstances and at all places, not in chemical union, but maintained in equal mixture by the principle of diffusion. There is a variety of methods for ascertaining the proportions of oxygen and nitrogen in the air: the one just described, the burning of phosphorus in an inverted jar over water, will suffice as an example. The results of careful investigations into this subject give as the constitution of the atmosphere in 100 parts—

21 Oxygen.

79 Nitrogen.

But from the constant evaporation of water from the sea and surface of the earth, and the production, by many causes, of carbonic acid gas, which finds its way into the atmosphere, the air always contains a small and variable portion of those ingredients, which, being taken into account, makes, as a general average, the composition—

Oxygen,	.	.	.	.	.	20
Nitrogen,	.	.	.	.	.	79
Vapour of water,	.	.	.	.	.	0.9
Carbonic acid,	.	.	.	.	.	0.1
						<hr/>
						100.0

The dyer cannot fail to have observed a thin crust of solid matter upon the surface of his lime solution, bleaching liquor, and blue vats. This crust is the carbonate of lime, and is caused by the carbonic acid in



the air combining with the lime, and forming an insoluble carbonate. The presence of this gas in the air has no deleterious effects in the dye-house, so far as we know, except its combining with caustic alkalies, if exposed, and deteriorating them.

The oxygen of the atmosphere plays a very prominent part in the dye-house; and the knowledge of the true constitution of the air will make many of these phenomena better understood. This gas not being in chemical union with the nitrogen, there is no chemical force retaining and preventing it from acting upon other bodies, when brought under its influence.

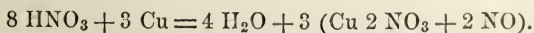
The principal compounds formed between nitrogen and oxygen are—

Nitrogen monoxide, or protoxide of nitrogen,	. . .	$N_2O$
Nitrogen dioxide, or deutoxide of nitrogen, . . .	. . .	$NO$
Nitrogen trioxide, or nitrous acid, . . . . .	. . .	$N_2O_3$
Nitrogen tetroxide, or peroxide of nitrogen, . . .	. . .	$N_2O_4$ , or $NO_2$
Nitric acid (aquafortis), . . . . .	. . .	$HNO_3$
Nitrogen pentoxide, . . . . .	. . .	$N_2O_5$

Some of these being of no known importance in the dye-house, we need do little more than refer to the condition in which they may be found.

**PROTOXIDE OF NITROGEN—NITROGEN MONOXIDE**—is a gaseous body, and is easily obtained by heating nitrate of ammonia in a retort, as described for obtaining oxygen (page 30), and collecting the gas as it escapes over water. It is known under the appellation of *laughing gas*.

**BINOXIDE OF NITROGEN—DIOXIDE**—is also a gaseous body, and is evolved when metals are being dissolved in nitric acid. When dissolving iron or copper in nitric acid, in open vessels, as is done for the preparation of mordants, a dense red gas is seen to escape during the process. This red gas is produced by the binoxide of nitrogen combining with the oxygen in the atmosphere, and forming a peroxide; but when the metal is dissolved in a retort, or other close vessel, as described for hydrogen, and the gas collected in a glass jar, it is found perfectly colourless. The following is the reaction which takes place when a metal is being dissolved in nitric acid and dioxide of nitrogen evolved. Every three equivalents of metal, say copper, require eight equivalents of acid, two of which are decomposed as follows:—



**NITROGEN TRIOXIDE, or NITROUS ACID.**—This acid is prepared by taking four volumes of the binoxide of nitrogen, adding to them one volume of oxygen, and exposing this mixture to a low degree of cold: the gases, under these circumstances, unite, and form a greenish-coloured liquid, which is nitrous acid. As may be supposed, from the manner in



which it is prepared, this substance is very volatile. If put into water it is decomposed. But it can be obtained by several means, in combination with bases, such as potash, soda, lead, &c., with which it is more stable.

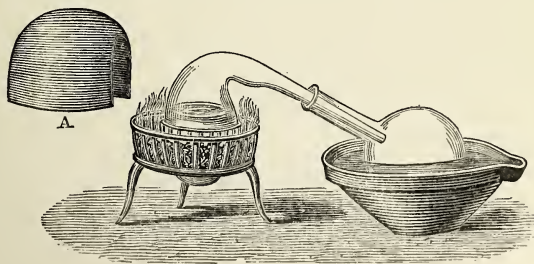
NITROGEN TETROXIDE, or PEROXIDE OF NITROGEN.—This compound is formed when the binoxide of nitrogen is allowed to escape into the atmosphere, and constitutes the red fumes observed when dissolving iron or copper in nitric acid. It is also obtained by distilling nitrate of lead in a retort, and allowing the fumes to pass into a bottle or flask kept cool by placing it in a freezing mixture, such as snow and salt. It condenses in this vessel, and forms a reddish-yellow liquid, which, however, passes off as gaseous fumes by the slightest elevation of temperature. These fumes are very corrosive: they are fatal to animal and vegetable life, and rapidly destroy all colours, and also the fibres of the cloth of yarn exposed to their action. The dissolving of metals in nitric acid should, therefore, never be carried on within or near the dye-house, or any place where goods are exposed. We have known a little inattention to these precautions destroy the labour of several days, and this, too, when the destructive agent was hardly perceptible to the senses, although its odour is amongst the most easily detected of gaseous compounds. This gas is also very suffocating and hurtful to health, and care should be taken that it is not breathed. It is its presence in nitric acid which gives that acid the reddish-brown colour which the aquafortis of commerce often has.

NITROGEN PENTOXIDE.—We have already stated that the compound  $\text{NO}_5$  was a sort of hypothetical substance to suit the theory of acids uniting with oxides; but when this theory was proven in error, the existence of a pentoxide was a desideratum, which, however, is not so now: such a compound may be formed by the action of dry chlorine on perfectly dry silver nitrate. It forms colourless needle-shaped crystals. It is a very unstable compound, decomposing at ordinary temperatures. It stands in a similar relation to nitric acid that Nordhausan oil of vitriol does to sulphuric acid. Its symbol by the new notation is  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ . When combined with water it forms nitric acid.

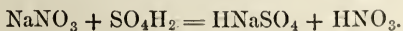
NITRIC ACID.—This acid exists abundantly in Nature, in combination with other substances forming nitrates. We have said before that nitrogen and oxygen do not combine directly in the same manner as oxygen and hydrogen. There is no doubt, however, that the nitric acid which is found united with bases in Nature has been the result of the union of the oxygen and nitrogen of the atmosphere. When a quantity of hydrogen is mixed with nitrogen in an open vessel and ignited, it burns rapidly in contact with the oxygen of the air, forming water; and the water thus formed is found to contain nitric acid. If electric sparks be passed through air, confined in a vessel above a solution of an alkali, a portion of the alkali is converted into a nitrate. Rain which falls during a thunderstorm,

almost always contains nitrate of ammonia. Ammonia is always being found in the air by the decomposition of animal and vegetable substances, and it is absorbed by the watery vapour; so that when electric currents pass through the air during a thunderstorm, the nitric acid formed combines with this ammonia, forming a nitrate. In warm climates, where electric currents are abundant, and the quantity of ammonia in the air is considerable, the formation of nitrate of ammonia is proportionably great; and this, being washed down by the rain in porous limestone soils, is decomposed by the nitric acid combining with the lime, and also with potash and soda, which are general constituents of soils, forming nitrates with these bases, and the ammonia is accordingly liberated, either to be given to the air again, or taken up by plants, as a constituent of their food. In this way immense beds of nitrates have been formed in the East Indies and in South America. In Chili and Peru there are found large deposits of nitrate of soda upon the surface of the soil. Great quantities of nitrate of potash and soda are imported from these localities for the various manufacturing purposes in this country, where they are now extensively applied. The nitrate of lime and other earths are converted into nitrate of potash, by mixing them with carbonate of potash before sending them to this country.

Nitric acid is prepared from the nitrate of potash or soda, by decomposing it with sulphuric acid. This may be done on a small scale by putting a little of any of these salts into a retort, adding some sulphuric acid, and then applying heat. The beak of the retort is inserted into a receiver, which must be kept cool by causing cold water to drop upon it. The arrangement of the apparatus is indicated by the following figure.



At the beginning of this experiment, red fumes of peroxide or tetroxide of nitrogen come off; but soon after a colourless liquid is seen to distil over, and drop into the receiver—this is nitric acid. The reaction which takes place may be represented by the following formula:



Nitrate of soda is now more generally used than potash, being cheaper; and having a lower combining equivalent, more nitric acid is obtained from a given weight. Thus, 100 lbs. of nitrate of potash give 62 lbs. of acid;

while 100 lbs. of nitrate of soda give 74 lbs. The best proportion of sulphuric acid to use with nitrate of potash is two equivalents, whereas less suffices with nitrate of soda.

Nitric acid is generally prepared, on the large scale, in iron cylinders, placed so that a fire plays round them. Into these cylinders are put the materials; and the acid vapours which are distilled over are conveyed to the condensing apparatus by glazed earthenware pipes.

The nitric acid of commerce has generally a light brown colour, caused, as before stated (page 42), by having a little peroxide of nitrogen in it. Sir H. Davy drew out the following table of proportions of nitrous gas contained in this acid, from its shades of colour. Thus, in 100 parts—

Colour.	Real Acid.	Water.	Peroxide of Nitrogen.
A pale yellow has.....	90·5	8·3	1·2
A bright yellow has.....	88·9	8·1	2·9
A dark orange has.....	86·8	7·6	5·5
A light olive has .....	86	7·5	6·4
A dark olive has.....	85·4	7·5	7·4
A bright green has.....	84·8	7·4	7·7
A blue green has.....	88·6	7·4	8

This table must be considered to refer only to strong acid, for the colour is changed by dilution. Thus, when water is added to the dark orange-coloured acid, it changes it to a greenish-yellow.

Exposure to the sun's light produces change of colour, by decomposing the acid, and liberating peroxide of nitrogen, which remains dissolved in the acid. A little oxygen gas is at the same time evolved; and, if the bottle is stoppered, will either drive out the stopper or burst the bottle, a fact too often experienced. The great effect of light upon this acid may be tried by placing a little of the colourless acid in the rays of the sun, and observing the change that follows; this will shew the propriety of keeping nitric acid always in the dark. Neither should it be exposed to the air, by leaving the stoppers out of the bottles or carboys, as it thereby loses its strength rapidly.

The nitric acid, formed as described, is often contaminated with iron from the retorts, and also with sulphuric and hydrochloric acids, from a little common salt and other impurities being in the *nitre* used. It is purified from these matters by redistilling in glass retorts. The acid coming off first in the distillation contains some hydrochloric acid; then nothing but pure nitric acid passes over, until nearly three-fourths of this acid is distilled. But if the operation be pushed further, there is danger of impurities passing over. Of course, what remains in the retort contains the most of the impurities.

Sometimes the quantity of impurities in the nitric acid of commerce is very considerable, and very deleterious to the dyer's operations. The general test applied to this acid in the dye-house is the specific gravity, taken by Twaddell's hydrometer; but density may be given to the acid by dissolving a little *nitre* in it, or adding sulphuric acid. We have seen nitric acid, with 8 per cent. of sulphuric acid, giving it a high specific gravity. We have also met it in commerce with as much as 5 per cent. hydrochloric acid. The presence of either of these acids is disadvantageous for the preparation of many of the mordants, as will be noticed under the proper heads.

When nitric acid contains *nitre*, or any other salt dissolved in it, the impurity may easily be detected by evaporating to dryness a little of the acid, either upon a piece of glass or a porcelain plate: when the acid is pure, no residue is left.

The presence of sulphuric acid is detected by diluting a small portion of the acid with four or five times its volume of distilled water, and adding a little of a solution of nitrate of barytes, which will give a white precipitate if sulphuric acid is present.

Hydrochloric acid, or chlorine, may be detected by adding a little nitrate of silver in solution to the dilute acid, which will also give a white precipitate if any hydrochloric acid be present.

Iron is detected by adding a little gall water to the dilute acid—a bluish-black colour then appears; or, if on evaporating a small portion of the acid there is a residue of a brown colour, it indicates the presence of iron.

After having tested for the presence of these substances, and finding the acid pure, or nearly so, then the specific gravity may be taken as a further certainty of the value of the acid. This varies much with the acids of commerce, but is generally about  $1.300 = 60^\circ$  Twaddell, although it may be made as high as  $1.500 = 100^\circ$  Twaddell. Nearly all the hydrometers used in this country are those known as Twaddell's, which is an arbitrary scale. The true specific gravity may be reduced to Twaddell's, by dividing the fractional figures by 5, as will be observed from the above. But in trying the acids by a Twaddell's hydrometer, the above rule is to be reversed: we then multiply the degree of Twaddell by 5, add 1000, and divide the sum by 1000. Thus, supposing the specific gravity to be  $60^\circ$  of Twaddell, then  $60 \times 5 = 300$ ; which, increased by 1000, becomes 1300; and this, divided by 1000, gives 1.300, the true specific gravity: or say  $64^\circ$  Twaddell, which is a common number, then  $(64 \times 5 = 320) + 1000 = 1.320$  specific gravity. The following table shews the quantity of acid in 100 parts, which may be called ounces or pounds, or any weight convenient, according to the true specific gravity.



TABLE OF THE QUANTITY OF ACID IN 100 PARTS  
BY WEIGHT.

Specific Gravity.	Acid in 100 parts.	Specific Gravity.	Acid in 100 parts.
1.5000.....	100	1.3376.....	58
1.4980.....	99	1.3323.....	57
1.4960.....	98	1.3270.....	56
1.4940.....	97	1.3216.....	55
1.4910.....	96	1.3163.....	54
1.4880.....	95	1.3110.....	53
1.4850.....	94	1.3056.....	52
1.4820.....	93	1.3001.....	51
1.4790.....	92	1.2947.....	50
1.4760.....	91	1.2887.....	49
1.4730.....	90	1.2826.....	48
1.4700.....	89	1.2765.....	47
1.4670.....	88	1.2705.....	46
1.4640.....	87	1.2644.....	45
1.4600.....	86	1.2583.....	44
1.4570.....	85	1.2523.....	43
1.4530.....	84	1.2462.....	42
1.4500.....	83	1.2402.....	41
1.4460.....	82	1.2341.....	40
1.4424.....	81	1.2277.....	39
1.4385.....	80	1.2212.....	38
1.4346.....	79	1.2148.....	37
1.4306.....	78	1.2084.....	36
1.4269.....	77	1.2019.....	35
1.4228.....	76	1.1958.....	34
1.4189.....	75	1.1895.....	33
1.4147.....	74	1.1833.....	32
1.4107.....	73	1.1770.....	31
1.4065.....	72	1.1709.....	30
1.4023.....	71	1.1648.....	29
1.3978.....	70	1.1587.....	28
1.3945.....	69	1.1526.....	27
1.3882.....	68	1.1465.....	26
1.3833.....	67	1.1403.....	25
1.3783.....	66	1.1345.....	24
1.3732.....	65	1.1286.....	23
1.3681.....	64	1.1227.....	22
1.3630.....	63	1.1168.....	21
1.3579.....	62	1.1109.....	20
1.3529.....	61	1.1051.....	19
1.3477.....	60	1.0993.....	18
1.3427.....	59	1.0935.....	17



Specific Gravity.	Acid in 100 parts.	Specific Gravity.	Acid in 100 parts.
1·0878.....	16	1·0430.....	8
1·0821.....	15	1·0375.....	7
1·0764.....	14	1·0322.....	6
1·0708.....	13	1·0267.....	5
1·0651.....	12	1·0212.....	4
1·0595.....	11	1·0159.....	3
1·0540.....	10	1·0106.....	2
1·0485.....	9	1·0053.....	1

The presence of free nitric acid in a solution is easily ascertained by the production of red fumes when a metal is put into it, such as iron or copper; or by adding to the solution supposed to contain it a drop of sulphate of indigo, and heating the solution to the temperature of boiling: the indigo will be discoloured if nitric acid is present. But if the acid is combined with a base, such as soda or potash, this test will not answer. In that case, the best mode of proceeding is to put a little sulphuric acid into the liquid suspected, and then to add a crystal of sulphate of iron (copperas). If nitric acid be present, a ring of an olive-brown coloured liquid will form round the crystal as it dissolves; and by applying heat the well-known smell of nitrous fumes is felt. By these simple means the dyer can easily ascertain if nitric acid is present, either free or combined, in any compound with which he is working.

Small portions of nitric acid is a common impurity in vitriol of commerce, and is very hurtful for some operations to which it is applied in the dye-house: this can be detected by sulphate of indigo, as stated above; or by adding a few drops of a solution of sulphate of iron, a dark colour is produced when the slightest portion of nitric acid is present.

The action of nitric acid on the different metals will be noticed under the proper heads; but one remarkable circumstance connected with this class of action must have been observed by most dyers when dissolving iron—namely, that on putting the iron into the acid, it often remains without any action: when this occurs with new acid, complaints are made that the acid is bad or weak, or that something is wrong which prevents it dissolving the iron; and not unfrequently have we seen carboys of acid returned on this account. We had a sample of such acid sent us to test for being bad, and found it to stand in specific gravity 1·425, and to contain a mere trace of salts and sulphuric acid, with 0·1 per cent. of hydrochloric acid. It was a strong and comparatively pure nitric acid. The cause of the iron not being acted upon, is from a condition which iron is known to assume, termed the *passive state*; in which condition acids do not act upon it. Strong and pure nitric acid places the iron in this state, and therefore it is not dissolved till the acid is diluted, or heat applied. We cite the above case as an illustration of the value a little attention to chemical principles would be in many dye-houses, not only in saving money, but also preventing the manufacturer being *necessitated* either to adulterate or dilute his acid, in order to preserve a good and profitable customer.

Nitric acid is very corrosive, from which property it was named aqua-fortis. It destroys all organic bodies, both vegetable and animal. It converts vegetable matter into oxalic, carbonic, and several other acids. Animal substances are acted upon by this acid, producing the yellow-coloured compounds, observed when it comes in contact with the skin or nails. It should be used at all times with great care.

AMMONIA.—Nitrogen combines with hydrogen, and forms a very important compound, ammonia; composed of one proportion of nitrogen and three hydrogen,  $\text{NH}_3$ . Ammonia is abundantly obtained from the destructive distillation of organic matters containing nitrogen, such as bones, horns, skins, blood, and other animal matters. It is also obtained as a product in the distillation of coal. When animal matters are decomposed by burning or putrefaction, ammonia is formed, and produces the disagreeable smell which these operations generally give.

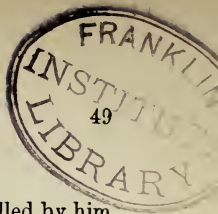
The ammoniacal liquors obtained from the distillation of coal, or by distilling animal matters, are saturated with hydrochloric acid, which converts the ammonia into hydrochlorate of ammonia (sal-ammoniac), which crystallises in a very impure state. These crystals are collected and put into iron pots, set in a furnace lined with fire tiles, and having a large cover or head of lead fitted to them. Fire is applied to the pots, the sal-ammoniac sublimes and collects as a crust upon the leaden top, from which it is removed from time to time.

Ammonia is prepared by mixing equal parts of slaked lime and sal-ammoniac, and applying heat. The lime combines with the hydrochloric acid, and the ammonia passes off as a gas, and is conducted by a pipe into water, with which it combines, and forms liquid ammonia.

If the crude liquor, obtained by the distillation of coal or animal matters, is not to be converted into liquid ammonia, sulphuric acid is used instead of hydrochloric, forming a sulphate of ammonia which is crystallised, and is extensively used for making up manures, and also for several operations in calico-printing.

Ammonia, long known as hartshorn, is a strong alkali, and has a very pungent, sharp smell. It is an exceedingly valuable re-agent in the laboratory, both as a test and for making many useful salts by combination with acids, the greater number of which are volatile. These salts are, however, not much used in the dye-house. Ammonia is sometimes used for the preparation of archil, for bringing out the colour. Its action upon the colouring matter of the woods is very powerful. It is the presence of ammonia and some of its salts in urine, which gives that fluid the peculiar properties for which it is used in the dye-house—as a cleansing agent for woollen, and for *raising* the colour of a decoction of logwood.

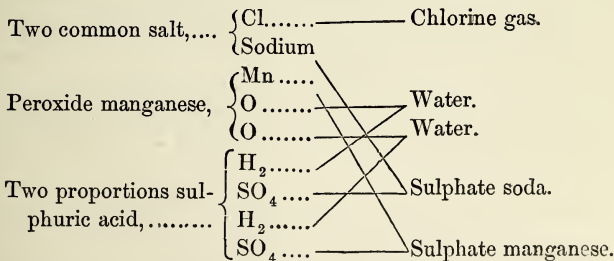
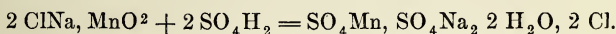
Nitrogen also combines with some of the other elements, forming compounds more or less interesting according to their applications, some of which will be noticed when treating of the elements with which these combinations take place. It is a common element in many organic compounds.



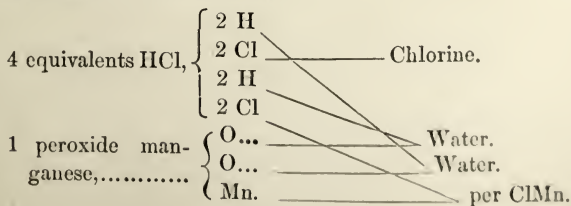
CHLORINE (35, 46).

Chlorine was discovered by Scheele, in 1774, and was called by him *dephlogisticated muriatic acid*. About eleven years after this, Berthollet considered that he had found it to be a compound of muriatic acid with oxygen, and hence termed it *oxygenised muriatic acid*—a name which was afterwards contracted into *oxymuriatic acid*; bleachers further contracted it to oxygen. In 1811, Sir H. Davy discovered it to be a simple or elementary substance, and gave it the name of chlorine, from its having a greenish-yellow colour. Chlorine has a very strong, suffocating smell, occasions violent coughing and debility, and gives an astringency to the mouth: therefore breathing it ought to be avoided as much as possible.

Chlorine exists in Nature in large quantities, in combination with other elements, particularly sodium, forming chloride of sodium (common salt). It is from this source that it is prepared for use in the arts. If we mix about 8 parts of salt with 6 parts of black oxide of manganese, and add to this about 3 parts of sulphuric acid, a portion of the oxygen of the manganese combines with the sodium, and the chlorine is set at liberty. The action may be thus defined:—



Chlorine is also manufactured from hydrochloric acid. This acid being obtained as a waste product in the manufacture of soda is utilised for this purpose; when four equivalents of liquid hydrochloric are put upon one equivalent of peroxide of manganese and heat applied, there is formed one equivalent of perchloride of manganese, and two equivalents of chlorine are given off, shewn thus—



Other peroxides may be used instead of manganese for the same purpose.

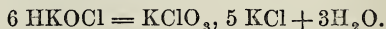
Chlorine combines with almost all the elements, and forms with them a series of compounds as numerous as they are important. Its power of combining with, and decomposing colouring substances, is remarkable, and has given it a prominent standing in the arts. It combines with oxygen in various proportions, giving origin to several compounds, both useful and interesting to the dyer.

Chlorine protoxide, or hypochlorous acid,	. .	$\text{Cl}_2\text{O}$ .
Chlorine trioxide, or chlorous acid,	. .	$\text{Cl}_2\text{O}_3$ .
Chloric acid,	. . . . .	$\text{HClO}_3$ .
Perchloric acid,	. . . . .	$\text{HClO}_4$ .

CHLORINE PROTOXIDE, OR HYPOCHLOROUS ACID.—This is a very unstable compound, supposed to be connected with many of the operations of bleaching. It may be prepared by diffusing some red oxide of mercury in a little water, and then introducing it into a bottle previously filled with chlorine gas. The chlorine is rapidly absorbed, and combines with both the mercury and oxygen. It produces, with the former, an insoluble oxychloride, and with the latter it forms hypochlorous acid, which is in solution in the water. This solution has a yellow colour, smells like chlorine, and bleaches powerfully; but it cannot be kept for any length of time, even in the cold, but passes into chloric acid. Hypochlorous acid combines with alkaline bases, and forms hypochlorites, which also possess bleaching powers. It is generally supposed that when chlorine gas is passed through solutions of the alkalis, such as potash and soda, a similar decomposition takes place as that described of the oxide of mercury, and that the hypochlorite of the alkali is the bleaching salt formed. This salt is decomposed by heat.

CHLOROUS ACID may be prepared by adding strong sulphuric acid to chlorate of potash. The process is a dangerous one, and we would not advise any workman not experienced in chemical manipulation to try it, especially as neither the acid nor its salts are of any great importance. The acid is a gaseous body of a yellow colour; it combines with bases, and forms salts termed chlorites. These also possess bleaching powers, and are very unstable.

CHLORIC ACID.—This acid is not of any value in a separate form, and is obtained with difficulty; but it is easily enough obtained in combination. When chlorine gas is passed through a solution of caustic potash, it is rapidly absorbed. This, by standing some time, or by the application of a little heat, becomes converted into a mixed salt of chloride of potassium and chlorate of potash. Thus—



The chlorate of potash being less soluble than the chloride, it is easily separated by crystallising. Chlorate of potash has very strong detonating

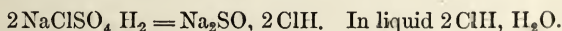


powers, and should be used with great care by the student, especially when mixing it with any other substance, as these compounds are often explosive. It is extensively used for lucifer matches. We are not aware that this salt is used to any extent as yet in the dye-house; but from the property it possesses of giving off oxygen easily, it may be made very useful in many operations, where oxydation is an object. It is extensively used in calico print-works, along with steam, for producing what is termed ageing.

Chloric acid combines with other bases besides potash. These compounds were for a long time, and are occasionally still termed *hyperoxymuriates*.

PERCHLORIC ACID is formed from the chlorate of potash. It may be obtained in combination with potash, by acting upon the above-named salt with nitric acid, and putting the whole afterwards into a small portion of boiling water: on cooling, the perchlorate of potash separates in crystals. The acid may be separated from the base by boiling it with fluosilicic acid, when the perchloric acid remains in solution. It is also obtained by the action of strong sulphuric acid upon perchlorates. The pure acid is a colourless oily liquid, and fumes strongly in the air. It is a powerful oxidising agent, and will set fire to paper, charcoal, and other dry organic substances. It produces a painful burn when it touches the skin, and dropped into water it hisses like hot iron. It is not yet of much use in the arts, and it has no bleaching properties. It forms salts by combining with the metals. Its potash salt is the least soluble salt of that metal known.

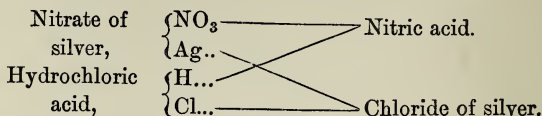
HYDROCHLORIC ACID.—Chlorine unites with hydrogen, and forms an important compound, hydrochloric acid (muriatic acid). It is a gaseous substance, very soluble in water, in which state it is used, and has been known since a very early period in history under the names of *marine acid*, *spirit of salt*, &c. Hydrochloric acid is easily obtained by the action of sulphuric acid on common salt. It is prepared on the large scale, by pouring vitriol on common salt, in a retort furnace prepared for the purpose; the fumes passing off are absorbed by water, which thus becomes the liquid hydrochloric acid of commerce. It is afterwards purified and concentrated by distillation. The reaction going on during the preparation may be thus represented:—



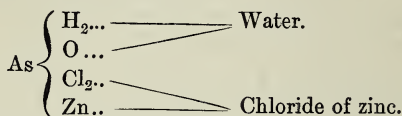
The sulphuric acid is generally used in a diluted state, so that there is always a quantity of watery vapour passing off with the gas. This acid combines with bases, and forms a series of important salts. That from which it is obtained—viz., chloride of sodium, is a good example. It used to be matter of inquiry, as we have before stated, whether this acid was capable of combining with bases, or if it is not decomposed, and water



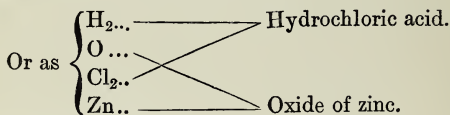
formed along with the chloride of the base. As for instance, if hydrochloric acid be added to nitrate of silver, a white precipitate is formed, which, if collected and analysed, will be found to be composed of chlorine and silver.  $\text{AgCl}$ , the action having been—



But if we dissolve a piece of zinc in hydrochloric acid, and evaporate to dryness, we get a white powder, which, on analysis, will give zinc, chlorine, and water, in single equivalents. The question then is, whether these elements do not arrange themselves—



Forming chloride of zinc with water.



Forming muriate of zinc.

We have, at the risk of repetition, introduced this here, knowing that there is still confusion in these names among practical men, and have only again to state that all called muriates are and should be properly termed chlorides. Authors used to make a distinction, and call salts that are in union with water, such as the zinc salt above, *muriates*, and only dry salts, as that of silver, *chlorides*. The terms, when thus understood, may be used synonymously, so that no confusion need occur on that head. When hydrochloric acid is exposed to the air it emits white fumes, which are hydrochloric acid gas with a little watery vapour; hence exposure weakens the acid, and should be avoided as much as possible in the dye-house. This gas, besides, corrodes rapidly any substance it comes into contact with, and destroys fabrics and colours. It is a colourless acid when pure, but exposure to the light renders it of a yellow colour; strong sunshine decomposes it, and such exposure should be avoided.

The common impurities in this acid are iron, sulphuric acid, and sulphurous acid. The iron may be detected by adding to a little of the dilute acid a drop of gallic acid. Sulphuric acid may be detected by adding a solution of chloride of barium to some of the acid diluted with distilled water, which gives a white precipitate with sulphuric acid. If the clear solution filtered from this test be boiled with a little nitric acid, any sulphurous acid will be converted into sulphuric acid, which will be pre-

precipitated by the barium, and its presence detected. Different chloride salts, such as common salt, are sometimes found in hydrochloric acid, which give weight and specific gravity. This admixture may be detected by evaporating a little of the acid in a small porcelain saucer, or on a piece of glass, and seeing if any residue be left. Pure acid should leave nothing; if the residue is of a brown colour, it indicates iron. If the acid is found by these tests to be pure, then the specific gravity may be taken to ascertain its strength. The following table will serve as a guide:—

Acid of Spec. Grav. 1·20 in 100 parts.	Specific Gravity.	Muriatic Acid.
100.....	1·2000.....	40·777
99.....	1·1982.....	40·369
98.....	1·1964.....	39·961
97.....	1·1946.....	39·554
96.....	1·1928.....	39·146
95.....	1·1910.....	38·738
94.....	1·1893.....	38·330
93.....	1·1875.....	37·923
92.....	1·1857.....	37·516
91.....	1·1846.....	37·108
90.....	1·1822.....	36·700
89.....	1·1802.....	36·292
88.....	1·1782.....	35·884
87.....	1·1762.....	35·476
86.....	1·1741.....	35·068
85.....	1·1721.....	34·660
84.....	1·1701.....	34·252
83.....	1·1681.....	33·845
82.....	1·1661.....	33·437
81.....	1·1641.....	33·029
80.....	1·1620.....	32·621
79.....	1·1599.....	32·213
78.....	1·1578.....	31·805
77.....	1·1557.....	31·398
76.....	1·1536.....	30·990
75.....	1·1515.....	30·582
74.....	1·1494.....	30·174
73.....	1·1473.....	29·767
72.....	1·1452.....	29·359
71.....	1·1431.....	28·951
70.....	1·1410.....	28·544
69.....	1·1389.....	28·136
68.....	1·1369.....	27·728
67.....	1·1349.....	27·321
66.....	1·1328.....	26·913
65.....	1·1308.....	26·505

## HYDROCHLORIC ACID.

Acid of Spec. Grav. 1·20 in 100 parts.	Specific Gravity.	Muriatic Acid,
64.....	1·1287.....	26·098
63.....	1·1267.....	25·690
62.....	1·1247.....	25·282
61.....	1·1226.....	24·874
60.....	1·1206.....	24·466
59.....	1·1185.....	24·058
58.....	1·1164.....	23·650
57.....	1·1143.....	23·242
56.....	1·1123.....	22·834
55.....	1·1102.....	22·426
54.....	1·1082.....	22·019
53.....	1·1061.....	21·611
52.....	1·1041.....	21·203
51.....	1·1020.....	20·796
50.....	1·1000.....	20·388
49.....	1·0980.....	19·980
48.....	1·0960.....	19·572
47.....	1·0939.....	19·165
46.....	1·0919.....	18·757
45.....	1·0899.....	18·349
44.....	1·0879.....	17·941
43.....	1·0859.....	17·534
42.....	1·0838.....	17·126
41.....	1·0818.....	16·718
40.....	1·0798.....	16·310
39.....	1·0778.....	15·902
38.....	1·0758.....	15·494
37.....	1·0738.....	15·087
36.....	1·0718.....	14·679
35.....	1·0697.....	14·271
34.....	1·0677.....	13·863
33.....	1·0657.....	13·456
32.....	1·0636.....	13·049
31.....	1·0617.....	12·641
30.....	1·0597.....	12·233
29.....	1·0577.....	11·825
28.....	1·0557.....	11·418
27.....	1·0537.....	11·010
26.....	1·0517.....	10·602
25.....	1·0497.....	10·194
24.....	1·0477.....	9·786
23.....	1·0457.....	9·379
22.....	1·0437.....	8·971
21.....	1·0417.....	8·563
20.....	1·0397.....	8·155

Acid of Spec. Grav. F-20 in 100 parts.	Specific Gravity.	Muriatic Acid.
19.....	1·0377.....	7·747
18.....	1·0357.....	7·340
17.....	1·0337.....	6·932
16.....	1·0318.....	6·524
15.....	1·0298.....	6·116
14.....	1·0279.....	5·709
13.....	1·0259.....	5·301
12.....	1·0239.....	4·893
11.....	1·0220.....	4·486
10.....	1·0200.....	4·078
9.....	1·0180.....	3·670
8.....	1·0160.....	3·262
7.....	1·0140.....	2·854
6.....	1·0120.....	2·447
5.....	1·0100.....	2·039
4.....	1·0080.....	1·931
3.....	1·0060.....	1·224
2.....	1·0040.....	0·816
1.....	1·0020.....	0·408

CHLORIDE OF NITROGEN.—Chlorine combines with nitrogen to form  $\text{NCl}_3$ , which is one of the most explosive compounds known. It is a heavy liquid substance, and, from its dangerous properties, cannot be of any use to the dyer.

Chlorine also combines with some of the other non-metallic elements, such as phosphorus, sulphur, carbon, &c., and forms compounds, some of which are interesting in a chemical point of view, but not in respect to their practical use in the dye-house. The chlorides of the metals, however, are some of them important, and will be described in course under the metals.

The great use of chlorine in the dye-house is as a bleaching agent—into the consideration of which we will now enter a little more in detail.

While treating of light (page 9), we had occasion to notice the necessity of goods being of a pure white previous to being dyed any light shade; otherwise the natural yellow colour of the goods, whether cotton, silk, or woollen, would interfere with the particular shade wanted. If, for example, the shade required be a light pink upon cotton, and if it be put upon cotton unbleached, the resulting colour would not be a pink, but a shade intermediate between a salmon and a brick colour, from the yellow ray reflected from the unbleached cotton mixing with the red reflected from the dye. We must, therefore, before dyeing a light pink upon cotton get rid of these yellow rays, and this is effected by the process of bleaching. Hence, the dyer must, of necessity, be also a bleacher.

Where and when the practice of bleaching cloth first began we have no account; but we may reasonably suppose that as soon as man became

so far civilised as to manufacture clothing, that the constant exposure of that clothing to the atmosphere, and occasional washing, would naturally suggest the idea of bleaching. However, we know that bleaching is of very ancient origin, mention being made of it in the oldest books extant. What was the nature of the process practised in these early times is not clear; but from the earliest description to the close of last century, no other process was known but alternate boiling, washing, and exposure to the atmosphere, a process which required a number of months to complete; but, since the application of chlorine to this purpose, an application which, as the late Professor Graham observed, "is one of the most valuable which chemistry has presented to the arts," the process is completed in a few days; nay, for the most of dyeing operations, in a few minutes.

As many are now unacquainted with the routine of the process of bleaching previous to the introduction of chlorine, it may be worth while to give a short description of it, to illustrate the advantages obtained from the application of science to the arts. The first operation was that of steeping, which was merely immersing the yarn in hot water or cold alkaline leys. When water was used, the steeping lasted for three or four days, but with alkaline leys forty-eight hours were sufficient; the goods were then washed, and boiled in an alkaline ley for four or five hours; washed and exposed on the grass for two or three weeks; again boiled or *bucked*, which is a technical term for boiling; washed and *crofted*, a technical term for exposing on the grass, as before. These alternate operations of bucking, washing, and crofting, were generally repeated four or five times, each time reducing the strength of the alkaline leys in which the bucking was performed.

The next process was that of souring, which, till nearly the middle of last century, consisted in steeping the goods for several weeks in soured butter-milk. This process was much shortened by Dr. Home, who suggested the use of sulphuric acid (vitriol) instead of milk; and twelve hours, with a sour of this acid, were sufficient.\* After the first souring, the operations of boiling, washing, souring, and crofting were repeated in regular rotation, until the cloth or yarn came to a good colour, and was considered perfectly clear. A quantity of soap was generally used in the last operations of boiling. The number of times these operations were repeated varied according to the quality of the goods; linen was seldom finished in less than six months, and cotton goods varied from six weeks to three months. The kind of weather hastened or retarded the operation.

Various opinions were advanced to explain the nature of the chemical changes induced during these operations; but such opinions could be only hypothetical so long as the composition of the atmosphere and of water were not known, two substances which acted a very prominent part in these operations, and also while they were ignorant of the nature of the colouring matter upon the goods, and its composition. We have already given the composition of water and air, but the composition of the colouring matter

\* Home On Bleaching.



upon cotton, &c., has not as yet been very accurately ascertained. Its properties are neutral, and it is composed of hydrogen and carbon with oxygen; a portion of which is soluble in alkalies and water, and therefore taken off by steeping and boiling. These colouring matters do not form a part of the cotton, but mechanically adhere to it, so that substances may act upon and decompose them without in the least destroying the cotton; indeed, from a number of experiments, cotton is found as strong when deprived of these substances as before.

In boiling cotton yarn in water alone, or with an alkali, it loses considerably in weight, different qualities of cotton varying in this respect; fine qualities lose least. When the alkaline ley in which the cotton has been boiled has acid added, there is a precipitate obtained of a light brown colour, which being washed from the alkaline salt was found by Dr. Schunck to contain

A colouring matter, easily soluble in alcohol.

A colouring matter, sparingly soluble in alcohol.

A waxy substance, termed cotton wax.

Manganic acid.

Pectic acid, and an albuminous matter.

The principal part was pectic acid, the ultimate analyses of each giving carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen, but the absence of this does not lessen the colour of the cotton much. From a number of experiments made to ascertain the loss of weight by bleaching various qualities of cotton, the average loss may be taken at 5 per cent. of the weight of the cotton.

In order to ascertain the chemical changes which take place when goods are bleached in the air, M. Berthollet, finding that those seasons when most dew was deposited, were the most effective upon the colour, examined the dew which condenses upon the grass, and found it to contain a sufficient quantity of oxygen to destroy the colour of turnsole paper.\* What errors led to these results we do not know, for although dew did contain oxygen, it would not give it acid properties to redden turnsole paper. Or whether M. Berthollet considered the bleaching property of dew was owing to its having free oxygen, or to the supposed acid property of oxygen, we do not know, not having seen the original details. Could we suppose the formation of peroxide of hydrogen (page 39), the effects would be easily explained. Ozone has probably something to do with it (see Ozone). The theory of croft bleaching has been explained variously as follows:—

1. The oxygen of the atmosphere combines with the colouring matter of the cotton, forming a new substance capable of solution in water or alkalies, and comes off by washing or boiling; or it combines with some of the elements of the colouring matter, such as the carbon, forming carbonic acid gas, which escapes into the air, or with the hydrogen, and forms

\* Parke's *Chemical Essays*.

water; those elements which are left form either colourless substances, or substances soluble in the next operation.

2. The oxygen combines directly with the colouring matter, forming a permanent and colourless oxide. This would add weight to bleached cotton.

3. The water acts otherwise than being merely a solvent; that it, or one of its elements, combines with the colouring substance producing the effects noticed in the first proposition. Hence dew being pure and free from any admixture which might retard this union, is better fitted for bleaching; consequently in seasons when most dew is deposited, the bleaching process will be accelerated. Which of these theories is the true one we cannot say; but we know that light facilitates the process of bleaching, and this circumstance, we think, favours the supposition of the colouring matter being decomposed. Other interesting theories might be advanced from phenomena observed during the process of croft bleaching; and also the part that boiling in alkali and the sours take in the operation.

The modern process of bleaching, and that which is now almost universally practised, is by means of chlorine. This substance, as has been mentioned (page 49), was discovered by Scheele, who also described its peculiar property of destroying vegetable colouring matters; but M. Berthollet was the first who called the attention of the public to its value as a bleaching agent, in 1785. About the time this chemist was prosecuting his inquiries into the nature of this substance, he was visited by the celebrated James Watt, to whom Berthollet related the results of his experiments upon bleaching, and from this circumstance the inventor of the modern steam engine became also the introducer of the new process of bleaching into this country. Some give this honour to Professor Copland of Aberdeen; but from the evidence we have seen, it belongs to Watt, although the difference of time was little.

The introduction of chlorine, as a bleaching agent, like all other discoveries which tend to overturn old practices, met with a host of opposition. The most prominent objections offered were, that it destroyed the cloth, did not give a permanent white, and that it killed the men who wrought with it. These statements were not altogether groundless, but the force with which they were urged hastened improvements and effected remedies. The first method of using chlorine was by saturating cold water with the gas, the water taking up about twice its volume of it. The goods were put into this water, after which it was heated to set free the gas, in order that it might act upon the colouring matter; but, the goods being impaired by this process, even when the greatest care was taken, suggested the diluting of the chlorine water; which diluted liquor was found to bleach equally well, and the goods were preserved. The defect of the goods becoming yellow after a few days, suggested alternate boiling with alkaline leys; and the difficulty arising from the workmen being unable to endure the effects of inhaling the escaping gas, led to the discovery that alkalies not only absorb a greater quantity of chlorine than water, but that they hold it with

greater affinity, not allowing the gas to escape so readily into the atmosphere, at the same time parting with it more regularly and effectively to the goods. The alkalies used were soda and potash, and each bleaching-work had its regular apparatus of retorts and carboys, or wooden chests, for the purpose of making chloride of potash or soda. This practice is still continued in some print-works, both in Scotland and England, for particular fabrics or delicate operations, as it is considered much safer and better adapted for certain purposes than the common bleaching powder. In the year 1798, Mr. Tennant of Glasgow patented a process for using a solution of lime for absorbing the chlorine instead of potash and soda; shortly after, the hydrate of lime (slaked lime) was substituted for lime-water, and this is the preparation now used for bleaching, under the names of bleaching powder and chloride of lime. Other minor improvements have been made regarding the quantity of chlorine absorbed by the lime under certain conditions, which will be noticed afterwards.

Notwithstanding all these discoveries and applications, the real nature of the decolouring agent was long unknown: it was prepared by digesting together a mixture of common salt, peroxide of manganese, and sulphuric acid. The decomposition was explained as follows:—The sulphuric acid combined with the soda of the salt and set the muriatic acid which was in union with the soda at liberty. The oxide of manganese gave off a part of its oxygen, which combined with the free muriatic acid, and formed oxygenated muriatic acid, a name which was first applied to this new substance; but after being introduced into the arts, this name was considered too unwieldy for common use, and was therefore contracted into *oxy-muriatic acid*. It was ultimately contracted, by the workmen into *oxygen*, and, notwithstanding the discovery of Sir H. Davy, in 1811, that *oxy-muriatic acid* was not common muriatic acid with more oxygen, but a simple body which he called chlorine, the name oxygen was and is still given to bleaching powder and all its preparations by old bleachers. This is a serious evil to the workmen; not practically, but for their own understanding; as it identifies chlorine with oxygen, a substance which effects reactions in the operations of dyeing quite distinct from those with which it is identified. We remember the difficulty and confusion we were in on learning that it was the oxygen of the air that supported life, and that it was the same oxygen which turned the green colour of the goods while in the vat to blue when exposed to the atmosphere, and at the same time seeing bleaching liquor, which was also termed oxygen, destroying blues, and felt that we could not breathe air containing its gas but with the greatest difficulty. To solve this puzzle, every chemical book we could find was examined for remarks on oxygen; but, to our mortification, not one of these works alluded to its bleaching properties. We doubt not but many others have been in the same dilemma. The following order will shew our young chemical friends the ridiculous position in which dyers and bleachers were placed by retaining such names:—

“GLASGOW, ———.

“MESSRS. \* \* Will please send, at their earliest convenience, a cask of their strongest oxygen, containing as near as possible 2 cwt., let it be newly made and dry: the last was damp, so that in a few days it became like as much clay, and lost the most of its strength.—Your attention will oblige yours,” &c., &c.

Such ignorance need not be now, from the many excellent works on chemistry within easy reach of the working dyer.

We are informed that *chemic* is still a common name for bleaching liquor in some print-works; and that there are many names for other substances equally unsuitable. We will give a table of these technical terms with their proper designations in another part of the volume. In the meantime, we state that there is no better name for the substance we have been describing than *bleaching powder*, or, if in solution, *bleaching liquor*.

Bleaching powder is prepared by exposing the hydrate of lime (slaked lime) to an atmosphere of chlorine gas till the lime ceases to absorb the gas. In practice, it is found that when the lime is in combination with an extra equivalent of water, it will absorb much more chlorine than when it has just as much water as slakes it. The chlorine is passed slowly into large vessels or chambers furnished with shelves, upon which the lime is placed, which combines with the chlorine forming bleaching powder. It is white and pulverulent, and has a hot, bitter, and astringent taste, and a peculiar smell.

Some of the continental chemists first suggested that the chlorine was not merely absorbed and retained by the lime, but that it combined with it, and formed one or more definite compounds. This has led to a great deal of research, but scarcely to any definite conclusions, as there are various compounds of chlorine with oxygen which may be formed during the preparation of bleaching powder, and which possess bleaching properties as well as the chlorine alone. The most general supposition is, that hypochlorite of lime is formed, and that on this salt, and its decomposition, depend the operations of bleaching. This opinion is well-founded and may be taken as expressing the true composition of bleaching powder, which is therefore to be regarded as a definite salt of lime and hypochlorous acid, with chloride of calcium and hydrate of lime.

The theory of the action of chlorine, when brought into contact with slaked lime, is as yet hypothetical. The following has been given as the probable reaction. Part of the oxygen of the lime combines with the chlorine and forms hypochlorous acid, which combines with part of the lime and forms hypochlorite of lime, and the calcium left combines with a portion of chlorine, forming chloride of calcium. If the whole of the lime was taken up according to this theory, the powder formed would have in 100 parts—



Hypochlorite of lime,	.	.	.	.	.	49.31
Chloride of calcium,	.	.	.	.	.	38.28
Water,	.	.	.	.	.	12.41
						<hr/>
						100.00

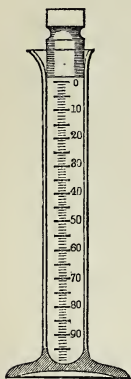
but the result is never found anything approaching to this, seldom over three-fourths of this. There are probably other reactions interesting to the chemist, although not affecting the practical results. When bleaching powder is put into cold water, there is always left a quantity of insoluble matter, composed of carbonate and hydrate of lime and other impurities, not taken into account in the above analysis.

The best bleaching powder of commerce seldom contains above thirty per cent. of chlorine available in bleaching; but there are few of the substances employed by the dyer or bleacher more liable to change; indeed, from its first formation there seems to be a constant chemical action going on between the chlorine and the lime; oxygen is disengaged, and chloride of calcium formed, a substance which possesses no bleaching properties. These changes may be much retarded by keeping the powder perfectly dry, or by dissolving it in cold water, and keeping the solution excluded from the air. Chloride of lime (bleaching powder) having in it so much chloride of calcium, a deliquescent salt, which, when exposed to the air, becomes moist, and the powder is thus rapidly changed, and allowing that the lime previously contained two equivalents of water, these combine with the chloride of calcium; and place this salt in the best circumstances for attracting more water from the air, thus hastening the destruction of the remaining hypochlorite of lime. We have seen good bleaching powder, by keeping it in a damp place, reduced to a pasty state in a few weeks, and its bleaching properties almost totally destroyed.

As chloride of lime loses its bleaching properties on standing exposed and by several other circumstances, it is of the utmost consequence to the consumer that he should have some means of determining its real value, both for the sake of safety and accuracy in his processes, and its commercial worth. We have seen bleaching powder, which did not contain above ten per cent. of chlorine, charged and paid for at the same rate as that which contained thirty per cent.; but not having the means of testing it previously, the quality was not discovered till the salt was in solution; indeed, we are not aware of any relative prices, according to the quality of this article, although with a very little care and trifling expense the dyer may know the value of the article he is about to purchase, and of course only pay accordingly. The first method of determining the value of bleaching powder was by sulphate of indigo, but the indigo solution alters by keeping, and is therefore objectionable. "Several exact methods," says the late Dr. Graham, in his *Elements of Chemistry*, "of which that in which sulphate of iron is used, appears to be entitled to preference. This method is based upon the circumstance that the chlorine of chloride of lime converts



a salt of the protoxide into a salt of the peroxide of iron. It is found by experience that ten grains of chlorine are capable of peroxidising 78 grains of crystallised sulphate of iron. In an experiment to determine the percentage of chlorine in a sample of bleaching powder, some good crystals of protosulphate of iron (copperas) are to be pounded and dried by pressing between folds of cloth; 78 grains are dissolved in about two ounces of water acidulated by a few drops either of sulphuric or muriatic acid; then 50 grains of the chloride of lime to be examined, are dissolved in about two ounces of water, by rubbing them together in a mortar, and the whole poured into a vessel graduated into a hundred parts. The common alkali-meter will do. This is a straight glass tube, or generally a very narrow jar about  $\frac{5}{8}$  of an inch in width, and 14 inches high, mounted upon a foot, as shewn in the accompanying figure, capable at least of containing



a thousand grains of water, and graduated into a hundred parts. The jar containing the 50 grains of chloride of lime is filled up to the highest graduation by the addition of water, and the whole is well mixed. The clear part of this solution is gradually poured into the solution of sulphate of iron, till the latter is completely peroxidised. This is known by means of red prussiate of potash, which gives a blue precipitate with the protoxide, but not with the peroxide of iron. A white plate of porcelain or glass is spotted over with small drops of the prussiate; a drop of iron solution is mixed with one of these after every addition of chloride of lime; and the additions continued so long as the prussiate drops are coloured blue. They may be coloured green, but that is of no moment. When the iron is peroxidised, the number of graduations or mea-

sures of chloride of lime required to produce that effect is noted; the quantity of chlorine in the 50 grains of bleaching powder is now known, being ascertained by proportion. Thus, if it required 68 measures of the bleaching solution, then, as 68 is to 10, so 100 is to 14.7, the chlorine in the 50 grains of powder; this being multiplied by two, gives the percentage of chlorine in the sample, which is 29.4." We have found, in operating in this way, a liability to lose a little chlorine as gas. This is obviated by having the iron solution in a stoppered bottle, and upon every addition of bleaching liquor to put in the stopper and shake the bottle.

Another process recommended by Gay Lussac, which combines simplicity with accuracy, is now in general use with the manufacturers of bleaching powder. A solution of arsenious acid is made in muriatic acid, and diluted with water. On adding a solution of chloride of lime, the muriatic acid takes the lime; the chlorine decomposes the water, combining with its hydrogen, while the oxygen unites with the arsenious acid, and converts it into arsenic acid. When the arsenious solution is tinged with sulphate of indigo, and bleaching liquor added, there is no change takes place on the indigo until the whole arsenious acid is transformed into

arsenic acid; but the first drop after this discolours the indigo. The correctness of this test is founded upon the knowledge of what proportion of chlorine is necessary to oxidise the arsenious acid in the test solution. Various proportions have been proposed as the standard strength of the solution; but it does not matter much what proportions are used, provided the operator knows what proportion of chlorine is necessary to transform it, and being careful always to have it the same. The best proportions for general use are those that require the least calculation. The following proportions we have found to do very well, and to be easily counted. Take two ounces of arsenious acid (common arsenic of the shops), and dissolve it by digestion for a few minutes at a boiling heat, in 24 ounces by measure of pure muriatic acid, then add 46 ounces by measure of distilled water; but in case of any loss by evaporation during digestion, it is better to have a vessel which contains up to a certain mark 70 ounces, and when the acid solution is put into it, to fill up to the mark with water. This may be bottled and put past as the standard test liquor. Every three ounces by measure of it are equivalent to twenty-five grains of chlorine. When a sample of bleaching powder is to be tried, two hundred grains are carefully weighed and dissolved in the manner already described, in twice as much water as will fill the alkalimeter, or any other vessel graduated into a hundred parts. Three ounces of the arsenious solution are measured out and put into a glass jar or tumbler, and tinged with sulphate of indigo. The alkalimeter is now filled with the bleaching liquor, which is added slowly to the arsenious solution, stirring constantly, and watching every drop that is added for the decolouring of the indigo. If the sample be so poor in chlorine that one measure of the alkalimeter will not change the colour of the indigo, it may be filled again, and the process continued till the indigo is decoloured, and the whole number of graduations taken to effect this carefully noted; the fewer the number of graduations required, the richer the sample is in chlorine. Now, as every three ounces of the test liquor contain arsenious acid equivalent to 25 grains of chlorine, if the hundred measures effect the change of the arsenious into the arsenic acid, the value of the sample is exactly 25 per cent.; in other words, every four graduations taken to effect this change indicate one per cent. of chlorine. These equivalents were practically determined, and may differ a little from the theoretical calculation by atomic numbers, but the difference does not vary above half a per cent., and is not of much consequence in practice. The following table will serve as a guide to those who may adopt our proportions.

The following table includes almost the whole range of percentage of the bleaching powder of commerce; but should the dyer meet with any not included in the table, the percentage may be calculated as follows. As the number of measures is to 100, so is 25 to the answer required. Say, for example, the measure is 160—then  $160 : 100 :: 25 : 15.62$ .

Any of the two methods just described may be performed in a few minutes; and in a substance that is liable to such deterioration, it is surely

Measures.	Per cent.	Measures.	Per cent.	Measures.	Per cent.	Measures.	Per cent.
150	16.66	127	19.68	104	24.03	81	30.86
149	16.77	126	19.84	103	24.27	80	31.24
148	16.89	125	20.00	102	24.51	79	31.64
147	17.00	124	20.16	101	24.75	78	32.05
146	17.12	123	20.32	100	25.00	77	32.46
145	17.24	122	20.49	99	25.25	76	32.89
144	17.36	121	20.66	98	25.40	75	33.33
143	17.48	120	20.83	97	25.77	74	33.78
142	17.60	119	21.00	96	26.04	73	34.24
141	17.73	118	21.18	95	26.31	72	34.72
140	17.85	117	21.36	94	26.58	71	35.21
139	17.98	116	21.55	93	26.87	70	35.71
138	18.11	115	21.73	92	27.17	69	36.23
137	18.25	114	21.93	91	27.48	68	36.75
136	18.38	113	22.12	90	27.77	67	37.31
135	18.51	112	22.32	89	28.08	66	37.87
134	18.65	111	22.52	88	28.40	65	38.46
133	18.79	110	22.72	87	28.73	64	39.09
132	18.94	109	22.93	86	29.06	63	39.68
131	19.08	108	23.14	85	29.41	62	40.32
130	19.23	107	23.36	84	29.76	61	40.98
129	19.38	106	23.58	83	30.12	60	41.26
128	19.53	105	23.81	82	30.48		

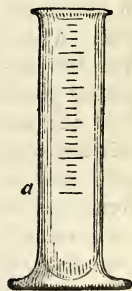
of importance that the purchaser should have some knowledge of the quality of the article he is purchasing, and that the workmen know something of the strength of the substance they are working with. Might not a certain price be fixed for a standard strength of bleaching powder, and to rise and fall according to the percentage of chlorine which it contains, in the same manner as practised with soda-ash? It would at least save much annoyance and the common complaint, "that the last cask was not so good as the former." The adoption of some such plan, we are confident, would be satisfactory to all parties.

To prepare chloride of lime for bleaching, an aqueous solution is requisite. For this purpose a quantity is put into a large vessel filled with water, well stirred, and allowed to settle; this is termed the stock liquor. There are no definite proportions for making up this vat: every bleacher makes up his stock-vat to a certain strength, indicated by Twaddell's hydrometer, a most fallacious test, as the chloride of calcium, and every other matter which is soluble in water, although it has no bleaching properties, affects the hydrometer. Care should be taken that this stock-vat be protected from the air as much as possible, as the lime absorbs carbonic acid, and the chlorine being set at liberty, occasions considerable loss. This may be illustrated by putting a little of the solution upon a flat plate, and allowing it to stand a few days, when it will be found to have lost its bleaching power altogether.

The first operation in bleaching cloth is steeping it in a waste ley, or



tepid water, for a number of hours, generally over night: this is termed the *rot steep*: its object is to loosen the paste and dirt that may have adhered to the cloth during its manufacture. This steep ought not to be hotter than blood heat, otherwise, if oil be upon the cloth, it is not saponified, neither is it so easily taken out after; in all cases when oil is observed, it ought to be taken out by rubbing with soft soap and cold water previous to putting the cloth into the steep. The goods are thoroughly washed from this steep in the dash wheel, but if a wheel is not convenient, they are tramped in water, and then washed by rinsing them through water with the hands; they are then ready for the boiler. The boiling ley is made up by taking strong caustic ley (see soda and potash), a quantity equal to about six pounds weight of alkali to one hundred pounds weight of cloth, having as much water in the boiler as will allow the goods sufficient play when boiling; they ought to boil for three hours. When goods are for light delicate colours, such as Prussian blues, the success of a bleach for such colours depends much upon a good boil. The goods are well washed from the boil, and allowed to drain; the draining is facilitated by pouring hot water upon them; they are then hanked up, taking out all the twists, and laid into the bleaching liquor as loose as possible. The vessels which contain this liquor are large, made either of stone or wood, and are termed bleaching vats or troughs. To prepare this liquor, these troughs are filled with water, and a quantity of the stock liquor added until the required strength is obtained, which is indicated by its action upon the sulphate of indigo, in what is termed the test-glass, a vessel of this form. It is filled to the mark *a* with the sulphate of indigo: this indigo is generally supplied by the manufacturers of the powder as test blue, the liquor is added drop by drop until the colour of the indigo is destroyed; the quantity taken to effect this is denoted by the graduations above; the weaker the liquor, the greater the number of graduations required; each of these graduations is termed its degree; two degrees are considered a fair strength for light goods, but for heavy fabrics it may be made stronger; they are allowed to steep in this for several hours, varying according to the nature of the goods. The objections we previously stated to the use of sulphate of indigo as a test in the former case are equally applicable here. We have found this test to be very uncertain. A much better method has been adopted by the late Mr. Walter Crum, a description of which was read by him to the Glasgow Philosophical Society, and published in the Report of that Society for 1841. We quote the following important paragraphs of the paper, reserving the old notations:—



“Chlorimetry requires to be practised by the bleacher for two purposes—First, he has to learn the commercial value of the bleaching powder which he purchases; and with that view he can scarcely desire anything better than the method either by arsenious acid or green

copperas. But the more important, because the hourly testing of his bleaching liquor, and that on which the safety of his goods depends, is the ascertaining the strength of the weak solutions in which the goods have to be immersed. If the solution is too strong, the fabric is apt to be injured. If too weak, parts of the goods remain brown, and the operation must be repeated. The range within which cotton is safe in this process is not very wide. A solution standing  $1^{\circ}$  on Twaddell's hydrometer (spec. grav. 1.005) is not more than safe for such goods, while that of half a degree is scarcely sufficient for the first operation of stout cloth, unless it is packed more loosely than usual. When the vessel is first set with fresh solution of bleaching powder, there is little difficulty, if the character of the powder be known; but when the goods are retired from the steeping vessels, they leave a portion of bleaching liquor behind unexhausted, which must be taken into account in restoring the liquor to the requisite strength for the next parcel. The chlorimeter must, therefore, be applied every time that fresh goods are put into the liquid. It must, consequently, be intrusted to persons who may not be expert either in figures or in chemical manipulation. Hence all the processes I have described are too delicate and tedious.

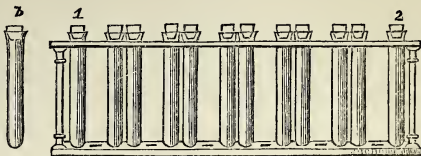
"I introduced another into our establishment some years ago, which has been in regular use ever since, and by which the testing is performed in an instant. It depends on the depth of colour of the peracetate of iron. A solution is formed of proto-chloride of iron, by dissolving cast-iron turnings in muriatic acid of half the usual strength. To ensure perfect saturation, a large excess of iron is kept for some time in contact with the solution at the heat of boiling water. One measure of this solution, at  $40^{\circ}$  Twaddell (spec. grav. 1.200), is mixed with one of acetic acid, such as Turnbull and Co. of Glasgow sell at 8s. a gallon. That forms the proof solution. If mixed with six or eight parts of water it is quite colourless, but chloride of lime occasions with it the production of peracetate of iron, which has a peculiarly intense red colour.

"A set of phials is procured, 12 in number, all of the same diameter. A quantity of the proof solution, equal to one-ninth of their capacity, is put into each, and then they are filled up with bleaching liquor of various strengths, the first at one-twelfth of a degree of Twaddell, the second, two-twelfths, the third, three-twelfths, and so on up to twelve-twelfths, or 1 degree. They are then well corked up, and ranged together, two and two, in a piece of wood, in holes drilled to suit them. We have thus a series of phials shewing the shades of colour which those various solutions are capable of producing. To ascertain the strength of an unknown and partially exhausted bleaching liquor, the proof solution of iron is put into a phial similar to those in the instrument, up to a certain mark, one-ninth of the whole. The phial is then filled up with the unknown bleaching liquor, shaken, and placed beside that one in the instrument which most resembles it. The number of that phial is its strength in 12ths of a degree of the hydrometer; and by inspecting the following table, we find at once



how much of a solution of bleaching powder, which is always kept in stock, at a uniform strength of 6 degrees, is necessary to raise the whole of the liquor in the steeping vessel to the desired strength.

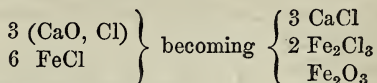
“The instrument is formed of long 2 ounce phials cast in a mould; those of blown glass not being of uniform diameter. The outside, which alone is rough, is polished by grinding, and in this state they can easily be procured at 4s. 6d. a dozen. They are placed two and two, so that the bottle containing the liquid to be examined may be set by the side of any one in the series, and the colour compared by looking through the liquid upon a broad piece of white paper stretched upon a board behind the instrument. The above figure represents the instrument fitted with tubes, which serve equally well.



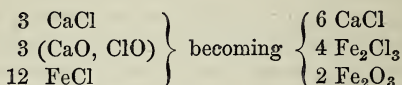
“To explain the table it is necessary to state that the steeping vessels we employ contain, at the proper height for receiving goods, 1440 gallons, or 288 measures of 5 gallons each,—a measure being the quantity easily carried at a time. In the following table, 0 represents water, and the numbers 1, 2, 3, &c., are the strength of the liquor already in the vessel in 12ths of a degree of Twaddell, as ascertained by the chlorimeter. If the vessel has to be set anew, we see by the first table that 32 measures of liquor at 6° must be added to (256 measures of) water to produce 288 measures of liquor at eight-twelfths of a degree. But if the liquor already in the vessel is found by the chlorimeter to produce a colour equal to the second phial, then 24 measures only are necessary, and so on.

To stand $\frac{8}{12}^{\circ}$				To stand $\frac{6}{12}^{\circ}$			
0	requires	32	measures.	0	requires	24	measures.
1	„	28	„	1	„	20	„
2	„	24	„	2	„	16	„
3	„	20	„	3	„	12	„
4	„	16	„	4	„	8	„
5	„	12	„	5	„	4	„
6	„	8	„				
7	„	4	„				
To stand $\frac{4}{12}^{\circ}$				To stand $\frac{2}{12}^{\circ}$			
0	requires	16	measures.	0	requires	12	measures.
1	„	12	„	1	„	8	„
2	„	8	„	2	„	4	„
3	„	4	„				

“Let us see what takes place on mixing chloride of lime with proto-muriate of iron. On the old view of the constitution of bleaching powder—that it is a combination of chlorine and lime, we have—



the peroxide of iron forming peracetate with the acetic acid which is present. Or, supposing with Balard that when two atoms of chlorine unite with two atoms of lime, the product is  $\text{CaCl} + \text{CaO}$ ,  $\text{ClO}$ , we have this formula—



“Here one-third only of the iron goes to form the deep coloured peracetate, while the whole might be employed for that purpose by using protoacetate instead of protochloride. The latter, however, is preferred, from the greater tendency of the acetate to attract oxygen from the air, and consequently the greater difficulty of preserving it. Even with the chloride it is best to give out small quantities at a time, preserving the stock in well closed bottles.”

From this description it will be seen that the method recommended by Mr. Crum may be adopted for testing the percentage of the powder, as well as the strength of the liquors. However, we prefer the arsenious acid process for strong solutions.

To return to the bleaching process. The goods being allowed to steep in the bleaching liquor for some hours, they are lifted and washed, after which, if they are thick stout goods, they are put into a sour for a little, then washed, and again put through the same operations of boiling, liquoring, and souring as before; but for all common fabrics, we have found it the best practice to *sweeten* the goods from the liquor, building the goods on a drainer and pouring water upon them till the water ceases to taste of liquor as it comes from them, hank them anew, and put them back into a new liquor of the same strength for a few hours, wash them from this, and allow them to steep for an hour in strong sour of vitriol and water, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pint of brown acid to four gallons of water. Hydrochloric or muriatic acid may be used instead of vitriol.

There is perhaps no single branch connected with the art of dyeing upon which there is greater difference of opinion than bleaching. Every one has some peculiarity of his own; but, when the peculiarities are all compared, the difference in general is only nominal. One thing may be noticed, namely, the necessity of washing the goods well from the liquor before souring with vitriol, as any lime remaining upon the cloth will be formed into an insoluble sulphate, and resist the dye. This, however, is avoided by using muriatic acid. Some maintain that the

presence of sulphate of lime is of no consequence; in our opinion, it depends wholly upon the colour which is to be dyed on the cloth. We have found that light pinks, light greens, light lavenders, and sometimes light blues, when not washed well from the liquor, were often full of white or lighter coloured spots, which we ascribed to that cause, although there are white spots often occurring both on yarn and cloth from other causes; but for dark shades we found no difference, and for colours to be dyed with the bichromate of potash (chrome), such as yellows, ambers, and orange, we seldom gave them any sour, only washed from the first liquor, and then dyed. In souring fine piece goods with vitriol in a vessel lined with lead, there was experienced for a long time a constant occurrence of small holes in the goods. On changing the vessel for a wooden one, this evil entirely disappeared. The cause of the holes we could not determine.

Cotton, in the hank (yarn), when it is to be finished white, goes through the same process as cloth, with the exception of the *rot steep*; but for dyeing a quicker operation is adopted. All cotton yarn must be boiled in water for three or four hours previous to being dyed, whether requiring to be bleached or not. Every lot of ten pounds weight, constituting what is termed a bundle, is divided into six equal numbers of *spindles*, and hung upon wooden pins about three feet long and two inches thick; this is termed *sticking*.

The stock-liquor for bleaching is generally prepared in a cask containing about 120 gallons of water; to this is added about 20 lbs. of good bleaching powder, stirred, and allowed to settle. A small tub of a size in which a bundle is wrought freely, termed a ten pound tub, is filled nearly two-thirds full with boiling water, and a bucket or *pailful* (about four gallons) of the stock liquor added. The bundle is now let down as quickly as possible, and turned over for about ten minutes, after which it is put through a second tub of the same size, with water made a little sour by adding about an imperial gill of strong vitriol or half a pint muriatic acid. It is wrought in this for about five minutes. Being then well washed, it is ready to be dyed almost any light shade. By this method two men can bleach and wash two hundred pounds weight of yarn in about three hours, a quantity which, by the other process of boiling, steeping, and souring, would have occupied two days.

Having detailed the present method of bleaching cotton goods for dyeing, we may say a little upon the chemical nature of these processes. Previous to the discovery of the elementary nature of chlorine, when that substance was considered a compound of muriatic acid and oxygen, it was thought that the acid parted with its oxygen, and that this constituent bleached the goods in the same way as atmospheric air was thought to do in croft bleaching, but more rapidly. When the true nature of chlorine was discovered, the theory was somewhat changed; finding, as was then supposed, that chlorine did not bleach except water was present, it was considered that the chlorine united with the hydrogen of the water form-



ing muriatic acid, and that the liberated oxygen was still the bleaching agent.

This theory is still maintained and supported by various analogies. We quote the following from Gregory and Liebig's edition of *Turner's Chemistry*:—"One of the most important properties of chlorine is its bleaching power. All animal and vegetable colours are speedily removed by chlorine, and when the colour is once destroyed, it can never be restored. Davy proved that chlorine cannot bleach except water be present; thus dry litmus paper suffers no change in dry chlorine, but when water is admitted, the colour speedily disappears. It is well known also, that hydrochloric acid (muriatic acid) is always generated when chlorine bleaches. From these facts it is inferred that water is decomposed during the process, that its hydrogen unites with chlorine, and that decomposition of the colouring matter is occasioned by the oxygen liberated. The bleaching property of binoxide of hydrogen, and of chromic, and permanganic acids, of which oxygen is certainly the decolouring principle, leaves little doubt of the accuracy of the foregoing explanation."

Another theory has been advanced, and equally, if not more tenable, by which the chlorine is supposed to act directly upon the colouring matter. The following is from Sir Robert Kane's *Treatise on Chemistry*:—"Formerly it was considered that water was necessary for this bleaching, and that the chlorine combined with the hydrogen, while the oxygen of the water being thus thrown upon the organic substance, oxidised it, and formed a new body, which was colourless. I have shewn, however, that this is not the case, but that the chlorine enters into the constitution of the new substance formed, sometimes replacing hydrogen, at others simply combining with the coloured body, and in some, the reaction being so complete, that its immediate stages cannot be completely traced."

This theory is also supported by several analogies, such as the action of chlorine upon indigo already noticed; but which of the changes alluded to by Sir Robert Kane takes place during the bleaching of cotton, is not yet known. Chloride of lime, says the same author, does not bleach except an acid be present to combine with the lime, and set the chlorine at liberty; but this is only conditional. It is true, that if blue litmus paper be put into a solution of newly dissolved chloride of lime, it is not bleached; but if the solution be allowed to remain in contact with the air for an hour or two, the lime combines with the carbonic acid of the atmosphere; and if the blue litmus paper be put into this solution, it is instantly bleached by the liberated chlorine. Cotton that has not been boiled in alkalies is acted upon as the litmus paper in both cases; but if the cotton has received a good alkaline boil, and is well washed, the bleaching process goes on, although the bleaching powder be newly dissolved. This shews that the alkaline leys effect a change upon the colouring matter. The nature of this change we are not as yet prepared to state: several opinions have been given, but they are hypothetical, and some of them are not borne out by practice. The theory of the forma-

tion during bleaching of a colourless chloride, or oxide upon the fabric, is not at all admissible, at least as regards cotton. According to this theory, goods being bleached by having formed upon them a new compound would become heavier, whereas practice shews that the operation of bleaching causes the goods to lose in weight. Ozone is supposed by some to play an important part in the relations of bleaching cotton.

It is known in practice, that whenever the cloth is put into the bleaching liquor, there are acids formed, the principal of which is the hydrochloric; but whether it is from the chlorine combining with the hydrogen of the water, or the colouring matter of the goods, we cannot say, the latter we think most probable. Our opinion is, that the chlorine combines with the hydrogen of the colouring matter; and according to a law we have several times alluded to, the remaining elements of the colouring matter form a new substance, which is soluble, and thus the whole colouring matter is taken off the cloth. In vats, where several hundred pounds weight of cotton have been bleached before changing the liquor, there is evidence of more substances remaining than merely a solution of chloride of calcium; but what these are have not, so far as we know, been examined.

The effects of light in the operation of bleaching also favours this hypothesis, for we know that exposure to the sun facilitates the process very much. This circumstance, however, tells in favour of the theory that the oxygen is the bleaching agent, as well as in favour of the theory which makes the chlorine the bleaching agent. There is this difficulty, however, which must not be overlooked, namely, that if a solution containing chlorine is exposed to the light, there is a decomposition of the water; for the chlorine combines with the hydrogen, and liberates the oxygen. The oxygen, by this theory, requires to combine with the hydrogen of the colouring matter to form water—a series of affinities or reactions which we cannot conceive—for if the affinity of the chlorine be stronger for the hydrogen of the water than it is for the oxygen, it would take the hydrogen from the colouring matter in preference, seeing that oxygen, which by this theory has the weaker power, decomposes it to form water again—a series of reactions altogether irreconcilable with one another.

Such is a brief outline of the processes of bleaching cotton goods for dyeing, as practised in most dyeworks at the present day. Woollen and silk are bleached by exposing them after being boiled or scoured to the vapour of sulphurous acid, which process will be noticed under sulphur; but they are not thus bleached for dyeing.

OZONE.—It has long been known that when working with an electric machine for some time, there was produced a peculiar smell. The same kind of smell is often felt during a thunderstorm, when the lightning is near giving, to the popular notion, the idea of brimstone. This smell is due to the action of the electric discharges on the oxygen of the air. If a little phosphorus be placed in a large bottle having a little water at



bottom, and corked, the same smell is produced, and the air in bottle is found to possess peculiar properties, somewhat like chlorine. It has bleaching properties, decolours sulphate of indigo; it attacks mercury, and liberates iodine from iodide of potassium; indeed, this substance is employed for detecting the presence of ozone. These reactions were first found out by Professor Schönbein, who considered it to be a distinct substance, either elementary or compound, and called it Ozone, from a Greek word, *to smell*. Much attention has been given to this substance by different chemists, and the result of the inquiry is that ozone is oxygen in an allotropic state—that is, existing in a different state. It is found that certain elements, by the action of different forces, may be changed in their physical properties, such as colour, specific gravity, transparency, &c., although still remaining an element. An excellent example of this is the element carbon, existing as charcoal, graphite, and the diamond. Other elements, as chlorine, hydrogen, &c., exist in different conditions. Ozone is found to be oxygen in a condensed state, or rather oxygen combined with oxygen. If pure dry oxygen gas be submitted to the silent discharge of an electric current, it contracts in volume. If after this contraction it be brought into contact with iodide of potassium, the iodide is decomposed by taking up oxygen, and the original bulk of gas is not altered. On examining the solution of iodide, it is found that the amount of decomposition effected corresponds with the amount of oxygen which has suffered condensation. These results shew that three volumes of oxygen have been condensed into two volumes by the electric current, and consequently ozone is one and a-half times heavier than oxygen. Ozone is produced in many operations, especially during combustion of bodies containing hydrogen. Its great tendency to throw off one of its equivalents, and to pass into ordinary oxygen, gives it great chemical energy in oxidising bodies, and no doubt causes many important changes in nature not yet investigated. If there were an easy method of forming ozone, it would be found invaluable in many of the arts; and, judging from past experience, we have no cause for despair. We will have occasion to refer to other bodies having different conditions when speaking of *isomerism*.

---

#### SULPHUR (S. 32).

Sulphur has been known from the earliest ages. It is found in large quantities, uncombined, in the neighbourhood of volcanoes; and is also extensively diffused through Nature in combination, especially with metals. It is obtained in great abundance by roasting the sulphurets of iron, lead, copper, and zinc.

Sulphur is a hard, brittle substance, of a greenish-yellow colour. It is not soluble in water, and is not changed by exposure to the air. When heated to a high temperature it volatilises, and deposits in the fine powder well known as the *flowers of sulphur*. If heated in a close

vessel, say a glass flask, to  $218^{\circ}$  Fah., it melts and becomes liquid as water, but by increasing the heat it undergoes some curious changes; at  $340^{\circ}$  it begins to get thick, and assumes a reddish colour; and if the heat be continued, it becomes so thick that it will not pour from the vessel. At  $482^{\circ}$  it begins to become thinner, and continues thinning until it boils at  $750^{\circ}$ . When suddenly cooled from its most fluid state, which is about  $224^{\circ}$  Fah., by throwing it into cold water, it becomes instantly brittle; but if cooled in the same manner, when thick (about  $400^{\circ}$ ), it remains quite soft, and may be drawn into threads. If heated in the open air to about  $300^{\circ}$  it takes fire, and burns with a pale blue flame, and gives off most suffocating fumes of sulphurous acid gas.

Sulphur combines with oxygen in several proportions, forming acids of considerable importance in the arts. These are—

Sulphurous acid, $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_3$ ,	. . .	$\text{SO}_2$ Anhydrous.
Sulphuric acid, $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,	. . .	$\text{SO}_3$ Anhydrous.
Hyposulphurous acid,	. . .	$\text{H}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_2$ .
Hyposulphuric acid,	. . .	$\text{H}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ .

SULPHUROUS ACID is a gaseous substance, and is always produced when sulphur is burned in the air, or in oxygen. It may be prepared also from the compounds of sulphur. If sulphuric acid be heated in contact with metallic copper, or charcoal, sulphurous acid is given off. We have—

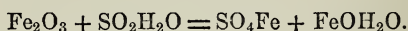


If charcoal be used instead of copper in this experiment, carbonic acid gas is also liberated. It may also be prepared by heating together three parts flowers of sulphur and four parts black oxide of manganese, in a similar apparatus to that described for the preparation of oxygen from manganese.

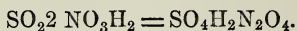
This gaseous acid, as has been stated, is much used in bleaching animal substances, as silk and woollen; and also some vegetable substances, as straw. For these operations the gas is procured by merely burning the sulphur in the air. The articles to be bleached are put into a chamber or box, made as tight as possible, in which is placed a small pan of sulphur, which is kindled by putting into it a piece of red-hot iron. The chamber is then closed, and the articles, damp and well spread out, are thus exposed to the sulphurous fumes. The gas is absorbed in the first place by the water on the goods, and is thus brought into immediate contact, and enabled to combine with the fabric. Goods bleached by this gas are increased in weight, shewing that a combination has taken place: they are not permanently white, the compound formed is decomposed; indeed, the gas gradually escapes, and by immersing the goods in a stronger acid, the white is destroyed. This may be beautifully illustrated by exposing a red rose to the fumes of sulphurous acid gas: it is bleached white, but by putting it into a *sour* (vitriol and water), the red colour is restored. This shews the distinctive characters of this gas and chlorine

as bleaching agents. Some bleachers of woollen pass the goods through a solution of sulphurous acid in water, instead of *stoving* them. Bleaching by this gas is not done with goods that are to be dyed.

Sulphurous acid passes readily into sulphuric acid by absorbing more oxygen. In newly distilled water, or water having no air or oxygen dissolved in it, sulphurous gas may be kept a long time if well corked up, but without these precautions it very soon combines with the oxygen dissolved in the water. If a quantity of peroxide of iron is put into a solution of this gas, it passes into the state of sulphuric acid and protoxide of iron. The formula is—



SULPHURIC ACID is one of the most important of the compounds of sulphur; it is not produced by the direct action of its elements, but generally from the oxidation of sulphurous acid. We mentioned when treating of nitrogen (page 41), that the binoxide of nitrogen on coming into contact with the air combines with more oxygen, and is converted into the peroxide or tetroxide of nitrogen; and that this compound readily yields its oxygen again to other bodies which have a strong attraction for it. If sulphurous acid is brought into contact with peroxide of nitrogen in the presence of water, a decomposition takes place, and there is formed sulphuric acid and nitrous acid, which may be represented by the formula—



The manufacture of vitriol on the large scale is conducted, with slight modifications, according to the fancy or experience of the manufacturer, as follows, supposing that brimstone is the substance used:—A row of brick-built chambers, about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet wide, 5 feet long, and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  feet high, arched over with a hole in roof leading into a flue running along the top—the front being left open for a cast-iron door and for charging. A cast-iron plate the whole length and breadth of the chamber or burner, with a flange of  $2\frac{3}{4}$  inches, forms the bottom of each; this is built in about two bricks above the floor, to allow a current of air to pass under. On starting, the burner-plate, as it is called, is heated sufficient to kindle the sulphur, but afterwards this is not necessary. Fifty pounds of brimstone is thrown upon this plate, and along with it is put in an iron pot containing 5 lbs. of nitrate of soda, with which is mixed 7 lbs. of brown vitriol; the door in front is then closed, leaving a small space for the admission of air. The sulphur is kindled by the heat of the plate, and the fumes are carried off by the flue on the top leading into large lead chambers. The heat produces decomposition of the nitrate of soda and vitriol in the iron pot, forming sulphate of soda; and the nitric acid is evolved and passes off with the sulphurous gas to perform the actions and reactions in the chambers. Small jets of steam are blown into the chambers at certain intervals. These chambers are generally in sets of three, joined to-



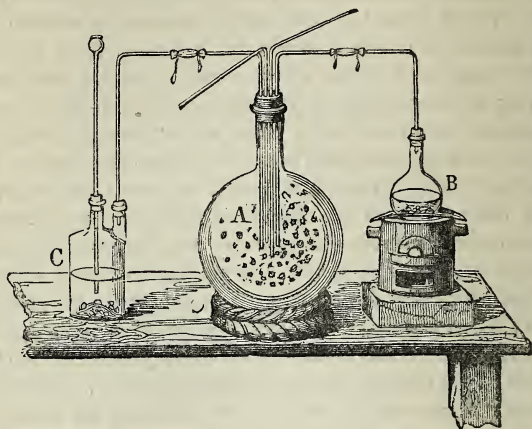
gether by a small lead tunnel. In one work we know the first two of the set are 80 feet by 20 wide and 18 high, the third stands across the end of these two, and measures 42 by 20 by 18 feet. The real action and reaction that takes place within the chambers between the sulphurous and nitrous acids and steam are yet only hypothetically defined, and various ingenious theories have been proposed, all having certain weak points in them. Following the ordinary explanation:—In the first place, as already stated, the nitric acid evolved from the soda salt, is reduced by the sulphurous acid liberating dioxide of nitrogen, which takes oxygen from the air it meets with in the chamber, forming with it compounds that are again decomposed, giving up their oxygen to the sulphurous acid—these combinations and decompositions go on during their whole passage through the chambers until all the sulphurous acid is converted into sulphuric acid or vitriol.

From the formula given above, it will be seen that one equivalent of nitric acid liberated from the nitrate of soda gives up three equivalents of oxygen to convert three equivalents of sulphurous acid into sulphuric acid. There will thus be required, according to theory, about 2 lbs. of nitrate of soda for every pound of sulphur; but as we have stated, in practice, only 10 lbs. of nitrate of soda are used for 100 lbs. of sulphur, the oxygen that is required further is taken from the air present in the chambers by the reactions of the nitrous compounds just referred to; hence the necessity of chambers of large capacity to allow of sufficient air to supply oxygen and time for the reactions to take place during their passage through the chambers. The gases leaving the chambers to the chimney are per or trexide of nitrogen, a little oxygen, the nitrogen of the air, and acid vapour. Some manufacturers cause these to pass up through towers filled with coke, placed between the chambers and chimney, down which is caused to percolate strong vitriol, which possess the property of absorbing the peroxide of nitrogen, and is led into the first chamber where the acid is diluted, and it thus gives off the peroxide to do its work over again, and thus save much nitrate of soda.

The vitriol found in the chamber falls as a heavy dew, and collects in what may be termed the saucer of the chamber—the chambers being made like a large dish, placed mouth down in a saucer. Small trays are placed in different parts of the chambers, with pipes leading outside, through which acid drops, and is caught and tested from time to time, care being taken not to let it come under  $90^{\circ}$  Twad., or above  $120^{\circ}$  Twad.; hence peroxide of nitrogen is absorbed. The vitriol is drawn off by lead syphons, and led to lead pans placed over a fire, and there evaporated until the acid reaches  $144^{\circ}$  Twad., which is brown acid. If it is to be further concentrated, this is done in platinum or glass vessels, until its gravity rises to  $168^{\circ}$  Twad.—the ordinary strength of concentrated vitriol. It can be concentrated to  $169\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  Twad.; but to do so requires extra time and care, and is only done for special purposes.

The whole of the operation of making sulphuric acid may be shewn, for illustration, by the following simple apparatus:—

Generate sulphurous acid in one bottle (B), and peroxide of nitrogen in another (C), and cause the two gases to meet in a third bottle (A), having a little water at bottom; the formation of sulphuric acid will go on as described, and be found in the water of the condensing vessel (A) after the operation; or instead of water at bottom of (A), a jet of steam from another flask may be led into it.



A great quantity of sulphuric acid is made by burning iron pyrites, a native compound of iron and sulphur,  $\text{FeS}_2$ . This mineral often contains arsenic, which volatilises with the sulphurous acid and passes into the acid-chamber; and therefore the vitriol made from this source contains arsenic as an impurity.

Recently the principal source of pyrites is Spain. It is brought to this country in large quantities, as much for the copper it contains as the sulphur; although, but for the acid makers burning out the sulphur, the quantity of copper it contains would not pay to extract. The average composition of the ore is shewn thus in 100 parts—

Sulphur,	.	.	.	.	.	46.00
Iron,	.	.	.	.	.	44.00
Copper,	.	.	.	.	.	2.50
Arsenic,	.	.	.	.	.	.30
Lead,	.	.	.	.	.	.20
Silica,	.	.	.	.	.	7.00
						<hr/>
						100.00

This ore is burned in furnaces made somewhat similar to the sulphur burners, only instead of an iron plate at bottom, there are iron bars between which a current of air passes up through the ore. They are arranged in rows, and all joined by a flue running along the top, which is continued to



the chambers. A recess or oven is made in the flue, into which is put the iron pot with the nitrate of soda and acid. The pyrites being once kindled, burns without fuel. The greater portion of the sulphur of the ore is burned off, the burned ore or cinder when properly done contains from 3 per cent. to 5 per cent. of sulphur. This cinder is afterwards ground fine and mixed with common salt, and subjected to roasting in a close furnace, whereby the copper is converted into chlorides, which is afterwards dissolved out by water, and the copper precipitated as metal by old iron, and then refined. The reactions and management of the vitriol chambers are the same as described for brimstone. The acid, however, contains arsenic—so that for some operations in the dye-house this is objectionable; besides, there is a tendency in burning such ore, when the heat is high, for a little iron being carried over by the arsenic, which is not good for many dyeing operations. Pyrites acid is generally darker in colour than that made from brimstone direct. It is seldom concentrated to a higher specific gravity than  $146^{\circ}$  Twad., which can be done in lead pans. It is used by soda makers for decomposing the salt, and for the manufacture of manures, and several other processes where its ordinary impurities are not hurtful.

Sulphuric acid may also be prepared by putting a quantity of sulphate of iron into an earthenware retort, and applying a strong heat to it; the sulphuric acid is distilled over, and peroxide of iron remains. This is the oldest method of obtaining sulphuric acid, and is still practised in some parts of Germany. The acid so obtained is very strong, has a dark colour, and gives off a quantity of white fumes; hence it is called *fuming sulphuric acid*. It is also called Nordhausen acid, from its being manufactured there. It is a mixture of  $\text{SO}_3$  and  $\text{SO}_4\text{H}_2$ . When this acid is poured into cold water, it produces a hissing noise, like that produced by putting a red hot iron into water. This acid is excellently adapted for making sulphate of indigo.

Sulphuric acid may be mixed with water in any proportion, but there seems to be certain definite quantities with which it will combine with water chemically. When added to water, there is always heat evolved in a definite quantity, and accompanied by a condensation of bulk, as the dyer may easily convince himself by taking measured quantities of strong vitriol and water, and mixing them; when the mixture is cool, he will find a considerable diminution of bulk. The following experiments upon the amount of condensation, and heat given out, were performed with a common alkalimeter and thermometer:—

Measure of Water.	Measure of Acid.	Heat when mixed.	Increase of heat.	Loss by condensation.
90	10	86°	40°	5
80	20	116°	70°	7
70	30	154°	108°	8
60	40	188°	142°	9½
50	50	210°	164°	11
40	60	212°	166°	11
30	70	200°	154°	9
20	80	164°	118°	8½
10	90	136°	90°	7

The above is the mean of three trials. The proportions of acid and water were taken to make 100 graduations, and mixed. The heat was observed immediately after mixing, and the mixture was kept in a stoppered bottle until cold, when it was measured by the alkalimeter, and the loss by condensation noted. The heat of the water and acid separately was 46°. The acid used was specific gravity 1.795, by Twaddell, 159°. When the acid has the specific gravity of 150° Twad. it will crystallise in large and regular crystals at a temperature of 32°, while stronger or weaker acid at the same temperature will not crystallise. When this takes place, it is commonly taken as an evidence of impurity in the acid, which, however, it is not. These crystals take long to melt.

The ordinary impurities in sulphuric acid are lead, nitric acid, and arsenic. The presence of lead is easily detected by diluting a little of the acid with distilled water; sulphate of lead is not soluble in dilute acid, and when present there is produced a milkiness in the solution, as is often seen in the dye-house when the acid is added to water. Nitric acid may be detected, as described page 47, by putting a clean crystal of sulphate of iron in the acid and heating it; a black ring is then seen, or the smell of peroxide of nitrogen perceived. Sometimes a little of this peroxide is present in the acid, and either of these impurities is very bad when the sulphuric acid is to be used for indigo, garancine, or any organic substance. Arsenic may be detected by diluting the acid, and passing a current of sulphuretted hydrogen through it, which gives a yellow precipitate when arsenic is present. Should there be any sulphate of potash or soda, they may be detected by putting a few drops of acid into a small basin, and saturating it with ammonia, then evaporating to dryness, and continuing a strong heat until all white fumes of sulphate of ammonia cease; nothing will remain if the acid is pure. Should a little lead be present that will also leave a white stain, but will turn brown by a drop of sulphide of hydrogen. If iron be present the stain left will be brownish.

After ascertaining that the acid is pure, the hydrometer may be used to discover its strength. The following table will be useful in this operation:—

Liquid acid.	Specific gravity.	Dry acid SO <sub>3</sub> in 100 parts.	Liquid acid.	Specific gravity.	Dry acid SO <sub>3</sub> in 100 parts.
100	1·8485	81·54	50	1·3884	40·77
99	1·8475	80·72	49	1·3788	39·95
98	1·8460	79·90	48	1·3697	39·14
97	1·8430	79·09	47	1·3612	38·32
96	1·8400	78·28	46	1·3530	37·51
95	1·8376	77·46	45	1·3440	36·59
94	1·8336	76·65	44	1·3345	35·88
93	1·8290	75·83	43	1·3255	35·06
92	1·8233	75·02	42	1·3165	34·25
91	1·8179	74·20	41	1·3080	33·43
90	1·8115	73·39	40	1·2999	32·61
89	1·8043	72·57	39	1·2913	31·80
88	1·7962	71·75	38	1·2826	30·98
87	1·7850	70·94	37	1·2740	30·17
86	1·7774	70·12	36	1·2654	29·35
85	1·7673	69·31	35	1·2572	28·54
84	1·7570	68·49	34	1·2490	27·72
83	1·7465	67·68	33	1·2409	26·91
82	1·7300	66·86	32	1·2334	26·09
81	1·7245	66·05	31	1·2260	25·28
80	1·7120	65·23	30	1·2184	24·46
79	1·6993	64·42	29	1·2108	23·65
78	1·6870	63·62	28	1·2030	22·83
77	1·6750	62·78	27	1·1956	22·01
76	1·6630	61·97	26	1·1876	21·20
75	1·6520	61·15	25	1·1792	20·38
74	1·6415	60·34	24	1·1706	19·57
73	1·6321	59·52	23	1·1626	18·75
72	1·6204	58·71	22	1·1549	17·94
71	1·6090	57·89	21	1·1480	17·12
70	1·5975	57·08	20	1·1410	16·31
69	1·5868	56·26	19	1·1330	15·49
68	1·5760	55·45	18	1·1246	14·68
67	1·5648	54·63	17	1·1165	13·86
66	1·5503	53·82	16	1·1090	13·05
65	1·5390	53·00	15	1·1019	12·23
64	1·5280	52·18	14	1·0953	11·41
63	1·5170	51·87	13	1·0887	10·60
62	1·5066	50·55	12	1·0809	9·78
61	1·4960	49·74	11	1·0743	8·97
60	1·4860	48·92	10	1·0682	8·15
59	1·4760	48·11	9	1·0614	7·34
58	1·4660	47·29	8	1·0544	6·52
57	1·4560	46·48	7	1·0477	5·71
56	1·4460	45·66	6	1·0405	4·89
55	1·4360	44·85	5	1·0336	4·08
54	1·4265	44·03	4	1·0268	3·26
53	1·4170	44·22	3	1·0206	2·45
52	1·4073	42·40	2	1·0140	1·63
51	1·3977	41·58	1	1·0074	0·82

The presence of sulphuric acid in a solution is detected by adding to it a few drops of a solution of a salt of barium, which gives a white

precipitate not soluble in nitric acid. Sulphuric acid has a strong attraction for water, so much so, that if left exposed to the atmosphere, it will absorb moisture and become dilute. A saucer half filled with strong sulphuric acid will become full in a few days by exposure to the atmosphere of a dye-house. This shews the evil of leaving the stoppers out of the carboys, or, as is often the case, leaving quantities of this acid in an open jug. Animal and vegetable substances put into sulphuric acid become charred; the hydrogen and oxygen of these bodies go to form water, which combines with the acid, and the carbon is left as charcoal; this same effect is produced upon the skin, causing a sore. The presence of organic matters also tends to weaken the acid, as well as blacken it, and should therefore be avoided as much as possible. This may be the proper place to refer to a bad practice we have seen in the dye-house. When using vitriol, the jug containing it is often placed upon the floor for convenience, and a workman passing that way comes against it with his foot, and not only spills the acid, but occasionally his shoe is filled with it. When this happens, the first impulse, which is often obeyed, is to plunge the foot into water, when, of course, the mixture of vitriol and water in the shoe is brought nearly to the boiling point, as may be learned from the table above. Severe accidents by this reckless habit are not uncommon. When such an accident does take place, the person ought to take off his shoe and stocking before putting his foot in water; and if his foot has been previously dry, or merely moist, he will escape unhurt. The hand, if dry, may be put into strong vitriol without burning, if washed immediately after.

**HYPOSULPHUROUS ACID.**—This acid is of singular composition; although it is composed of equal equivalents of sulphur and oxygen, what might be termed  $\text{SO}$ , yet it is represented double,  $\text{S}_2\text{O}_2$ . This seeming anomaly is got over by supposing it to be a compound of sulphurous acid with sulphur, thus:  $\text{SO}_2 + \text{S}$ . This acid is not prepared directly from its elements, but formed either in combination as a salt or by double decomposition. If a current of sulphurous acid gas  $\text{SO}_2$ , and sulphuretted hydrogen gas  $\text{SH}_2$  are passed through water together, four parts or equivalents of the former and two parts or equivalents of the latter combine to form three equivalents of hyposulphurous acid, and two of water. The formula may be accordingly this:— $4\text{SO}_2$  and  $2\text{SH}_2 = 3\text{SO}_2\text{S}$   $2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The acid when uncombined is very unstable: after exposure for a short time it deposits sulphur, and sulphurous acid remains as a liquid.

When a solution of soda or potash is boiled with sulphur, there is formed in the liquid hyposulphate and sulphide, of the base; supposing that soda is employed, then four proportions of sulphur and six of soda produce—

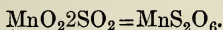
Two hyposulphite of soda  $\text{Na}_2 \text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ , and

Two sulphide of sodium  $2\text{Na}_2\text{S}$ .

The hyposulphites are not yet much used in dyeing; but from the property which the alkaline salts of this acid has of dissolving many metallic oxides, it might undoubtedly be advantageously applied for several purposes. Hyposulphite of soda is extensively used in photography.

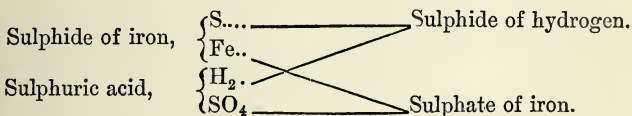


**HYPOSULPHURIC ACID.**—This acid is easily formed in combination with a base, by passing a current of sulphurous acid through water in which is diffused a quantity of black oxide of manganese; two proportions of the acid combine with one proportion of oxygen from the manganese; and form the hyposulphuric acid, which combines with the remaining manganese to form the hyposulphate of manganese—

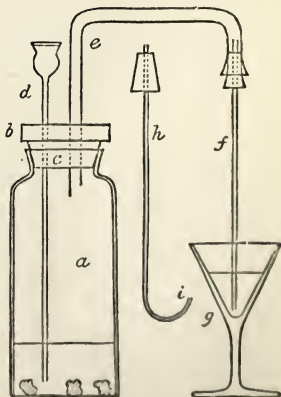


This acid may be obtained free from the manganese by precipitating that metal, but cannot be freed from water. Its hydrate is moreover very unstable, but in union with bases it forms salts of great stability. Its formula is  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_6$ .

**HYDROGEN SULPHIDE.**—Sulphur combines with hydrogen and forms a gaseous compound termed hydrogen sulphide, or sulphide of hydrogen,  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ , which is sometimes not inappropriately termed hydrosulphuric acid, as the gas has acid properties. This gas is prepared by acting upon a metallic sulphide, with an acid, in this manner:—A few pieces of protosulphide of iron are put into a glass or porcelain vessel containing a little water, and a small quantity of sulphuric or hydrochloric acid is added; a gas of a strong, suffocating smell, like rotten eggs, immediately begins to come off, which is hydrogen sulphide. The reaction which takes place is as follows:—



This gas is used as a test for metals: it is absorbed by water, and may be thus used in solution as a test. It is also taken up in great quantity by a solution of ammonia, forming hydrosulphide of ammonia, or ammonium sulphide, which is also much used as a test. When used in the gaseous state, such an apparatus as the accompanying will serve. The sulphide of iron, or other sulphide, is put into the bottle *a*, containing some water, and the acid is added by the long funnel *d*. The gas escapes by the tube *e, f*, and passes through the solution to be tested, contained in the glass *g*. The same apparatus serves for passing the gas through water or liquid ammonia, when it is required to produce the test in solution. The precipitates formed by passing this gas through solutions of various substances are very characteristic. Thus, a solution containing—



Antimony produces . . . . .	Orange precipitate.
Tin and arsenic . . . . .	Yellow precipitate.
Manganese . . . . .	Flesh coloured precipitate.
Zinc . . . . .	White precipitate.
Lead, copper, iron, &c., . . . .	Black precipitate.

In acid solutions of some of these substances, such as manganese, zinc, and iron, the metal is not precipitated by the gas—the solution has to be made alkaline, or ammonium sulphide is used to obtain these results.

Sulphide of hydrogen is evolved from decaying animal and vegetable matters, and from dunghills, common sewers, and putrefying bodies that contain sulphur. It is very deleterious to health, and care should be taken to avoid breathing it. The effect of this gas upon many dyes is so very great that the slightest quantity in the atmosphere is hurtful. It gives to chrome yellows and oranges a smoky appearance, which cannot be removed; and to spirit reds it gives a rusty brown appearance. Wherever, indeed, there is a metal present in the dye, this gas affects the colour. Sulphurous fumes given off by burning sulphury coals in a drying stove often produce similar effects. We have seen a whole stove-charge of goods, yarn and cloth, spoiled in this way—the colours appearing as if dried in smoke, and the watchman superintending the stove, notwithstanding his protestations that there was no smoke, compelled to bear the blame of negligence.

---

#### SELENIUM (Se 79, 46).

This element very much resembles sulphur in its properties and in some of its combinations. It is solid, of a dark brown colour and metallic lustre, and is found in Nature in combination with some of the metallic sulphides, as those of copper, silver, lead, &c. It is very rare, and as it has only been obtained in minute quantities, it has not yet been introduced in the arts, or applied to any useful purpose.

---

#### PHOSPHORUS (P 31.)

Phosphorus is a soft, solid substance, of a light amber colour, and insoluble in water. It is very abundant in Nature in combination with other substances, but principally with lime, giving the extensive supply of mineral phosphates used by chemical manure-makers, both as crystallised minerals and fossil coprolytes, and also the principal compound of the bones of animals. It is exceedingly inflammable, oxidises rapidly when exposed to the air, and emits light visible in the dark, from which circumstance it derives its name. It is manufactured from the bones of animals, by various complicated methods, not very easily imitated on a small scale.

This element unites with oxygen in various proportions, and most of the compounds formed when united with water have acid properties, as—

Hypophosphorous acid,..... $\text{PO}_2\text{H}_3$ .

Phosphorous acid,..... $\text{PO}_3\text{H}_3$ .

Phosphoric acid,..... $\text{PO}_4\text{H}_3$ .

These acids all unite with bases, forming salts which are interesting in their relations to each other, and also to salts of other acids. Phosphoric acid and the phosphates evince peculiar properties in combining with various proportions of water, and producing compounds which differ characteristically from one another. These combinations have been extensively investigated by the late Professor Graham and other chemists. Most of the phosphates are tribasic, having three of the metal or base to one of acid. We are not aware that any of these salts are used in the operations of dyeing, except in so far as they constitute a portion of the salts in dung, and the substance called *dung substitute*, used in dyeing turkey reds and other madder colours.

Phosphorus combines also with hydrogen, nitrogen, chlorine, and sulphur, and likewise with many of the metallic elements, forming the class of compounds termed phosphides.

---

#### IODINE (I 127).

Iodine is obtained from the ashes of seaweed, known as kelp. The ashes are put into water, and the soluble portions are withdrawn, and boiled down. During the boiling, common salt and other salts are deposited and withdrawn; and when the liquid is reduced to a very small quantity and attains a dark colour, a little sulphuric acid is added; the whole is then allowed to remain at rest for a day or two. The liquor is then mixed with oxide of manganese, and put into a retort, to which heat is applied. The iodine distils over, and is condensed in receivers fitted to the retort. Mr. Stanford has improved upon the formation of kelp. He dries the seaweed and distils it in iron retorts, getting gas, ammonia, &c.; the salts are dissolved from the charcoal and treated as stated.

Iodine is a solid substance, with a metallic lustre, and a bluish-black colour; it stains the hands yellow, and is volatile at a low heat, rising in vapour of a beautiful violet colour. It combines with nearly all the non-metallic elements, and also with the metals; with many of the latter it forms compounds having beautiful colours, suitable in every way as dyes. But from the volatile nature of iodine, the colours produced by it are fugitive, and do not bear exposure. Many attempts have been made to employ the salts of iodine as dye-drugs, and to fix the colour, but they have all failed. It is now used in the preparation of Hoffman's blue.

The compounds of iodine with oxygen are the two acids—

Iodic acid,..... $\text{HIO}_3$                       |                      Periodic acid,..... $\text{HIO}_4$ .

These acids combine with bases to form salts, termed iodates. Iodine forms an acid with hydrogen, named—

Hydriodic acid,..... $\text{HI}$ .

The salts which this acid forms are termed hydriodates.

Iodine combines with starch, and forms a deep blue violet colour, which soon passes away. Starch is used as a test for the presence of free iodine; or, if combined with a base such as potash, by adding a little acid to take the potash, iodine is liberated and colours the starch. The principal iodine compound with which experiments upon the colours produced by iodine and the metals is the iodide of potassium,  $\text{KI}$ . This is easily prepared by boiling iodine in a solution of caustic potash to dryness, then fusing the dry mass in an iron vessel or crucible. The result is iodide of potassium, which is easily soluble in water. This salt is abundant in commerce, and always very pure. A little of the solution of this salt added to a salt of lead produces a beautiful yellow precipitate, which, when boiled, and the clear of the liquid set aside to cool, gives brilliant golden-coloured crystals in scales. The salts of mercury give with iodide of potassium a deep orange red precipitate. Iodine of potassium, indeed, gives precipitates and colours with the salts of nearly all the metals; and, were it possible to render the colours it affords permanent, it would no doubt become a most useful drug in the hands of the operative dyer.

### BROMINE (Br 80).

Bromine is another element obtained from the ashes of seaweeds, but not in nearly so great abundance as iodine. When all the iodine is distilled off more oxide of manganese is added to the still, and the heat continued, bromine comes over and is condensed, in passing through a leaden pipe or worm placed in cold water. It is a liquid at ordinary temperatures; has a deep red colour, and is much heavier than water, in which it is generally kept to prevent it volatilising, as it does rapidly when exposed to the air. It has a very penetrating odour, and its fumes destroy vegetable colouring matters, leaving merely a yellow stain.

Bromine is known to combine with oxygen and hydrogen in various proportions, forming—

Hypobromous acid,..... $\text{HBrO}$ .

Bromic acid,..... $\text{HBrO}_3$ .

Perbromic acid,..... $\text{HBrO}_4$ .

Bromic acid, which combines with bases, forming the salts termed bromates. With hydrogen it combines and forms hydrobromic acid =  $\text{HBr}$ ,



the salts of which are termed hydrobromates. It also unites directly with some of the other elements forming bromides, of which the bromide of potassium is an example, a salt much used in medicine. The compounds of bromine with some of the metals might also form dyes were they procured abundantly; but the objection to the use of iodides is also applicable to bromides—they are unstable, and vanish on exposure.

### FLUORINE (Fl 19).

This element is only known in combination, and has never been obtained free. By its powerful attraction for every other substance, it fulfils in some degree the old hypothetical notion of a universal solvent. It is, however, very abundant in Nature combined with calcium as a fluoride, forming the mineral *fluor spar*,  $\text{CaFl}$ ; it is also found in bones, blood, and milk. It is not known to combine with oxygen, but it combines very readily with hydrogen, and forms hydrofluoric acid  $= \text{HFl}$ . This acid may be evolved from fluor spar by acting upon it with sulphuric acid; it dissolves glass, and all matters containing silica, and therefore cannot be kept in glass, china, or earthenware vessels; it dissolves all metals except lead, silver, gold, and platinum; it can be kept in vessels made of any of these metals; lead bottles were commonly used until gutta-percha was introduced, and vessels made of this material are now used. By mixing fluor spar and pieces of glass or fine sand, and acting upon the mixture by strong sulphuric acid, an acid gas is given off, called fluosilicic acid  $= \text{SiFl}_4$ , which, together with hydrofluoric acid, combines with water, and is termed *hydrofluosilicic acid*. This solution is occasionally used in the laboratory as a test for potash and soda.

### SILICIUM (Si 28).

Silicium is a light brown powder. It is one of the most extensively diffused elements in Nature, but it always exists in combination with oxygen, forming silica or silicic acid  $= \text{SiO}_2$ . The substances known as *flints*, *agates*, *quartz*, *sand*, &c., are nearly pure silica, and every other earthy substance in nature contains more or less silica combined with it. This substance is of essential importance to the potter and glassmaker, but it is of little consideration in dyeing.

### BORON (B 11).

Boron is a solid, and is generally obtained as a greenish-brown powder, destitute of metallic lustre. It is not found in Nature except in combination with oxygen and water, forming boracic acid  $= \text{BO}_3\text{H}_3$ . This acid

combines with bases forming borates; but it is found in Nature uncombined, especially among the volcanic products of the Lipari Islands. The sources of the compounds of boron are, however, some springs in India, and the waters of Sasso, which hold in solution a quantity of borate of soda (borax). In some lakes in the neighbourhood of volcanoes there are great quantities of boracic acid uncombined. These waters are concentrated by evaporation sufficient to allow the acid to crystallise, and in this state it is known in commerce as raw borax. Arrived in this country it is dissolved and saturated with soda to form borate of soda, which is obtained in large crystals; this is the refined borax of commerce, and the principal compound of boron known in the arts. It is much used in medicine and as a flux in the assaying of metals.

---

### CARBON (C 12).

Carbon is very extensively diffused throughout Nature, and the complete description of this element and its compounds would embrace the whole chemistry of organic matter. It is met with also in various forms and combinations in the mineral kingdom. Carbon exists pure in diamond and coal, and forms nearly the whole of plumbago and graphite (popularly *blacklead*). It may be obtained by submitting either animal or vegetable matter to a high heat in a close vessel: the oxygen, hydrogen, and nitrogen of these bodies pass off, and the carbon is left. Charcoal is therefore carbon with a little earthy matter; and coke, ivory-black, and lampblack, are other familiar names for it in an impure state. These substances differ in character from each other in having different proportions of earthy ingredients in combination or mixture with the principal element. Carbon is infusible, therefore we only know it in a solid form. It possesses many singular properties connected with the principles of dyeing; some of these we will state here, and reserve the applications till we come to consider the methods and theory of dyeing.

Carbon has the property of absorbing gases within its pores. One cubic inch of the best charcoal made from boxwood has been found to absorb or imbibe the following quantities of the different gases named in first column. One volume of carbon from the shell of a cocoa-nut quenched in mercury absorbs the following quantities in second column:—

Cubic inches.	
90 Ammoniacal gas.	171 Ammonia.
85 Hydrochloric acid gas.	107 Cyanogen.
65 Sulphurous acid.	86 Nitrogen dioxide.
55 Sulphide of hydrogen.	67 Carbonic acid.
40 Peroxide of nitrogen.	21 Protoxide carbon.
35 Carbonic acid.	18 Oxygen.
9 Oxygen.	
7 Nitrogen.	
1.7 Hydrogen.	

This curious property is not well understood: it is generally supposed that it results from the powerful cohesive attraction between the gas and the surface of the charcoal particles, by which means the gas is liquefied. 171 volumes of gas condensed into one volume should produce a great amount of heat. This has not been referred to, so far as we have seen. Somewhat analogous to this property is its power of absorbing or imbibing colouring matters, and on this account it is extensively used for discolouring sugar. This power of taking up colours from solution is possessed in the highest degree by bone black—that is, ground bone charcoal, although this may be said to be the most impure form of charcoal. Its composition when clean bones are burned is—

Carbon,.....	10·0
Phosphate of calcium,.....	88·0
Other salts,.....	2·0
	<hr/>
	100·0

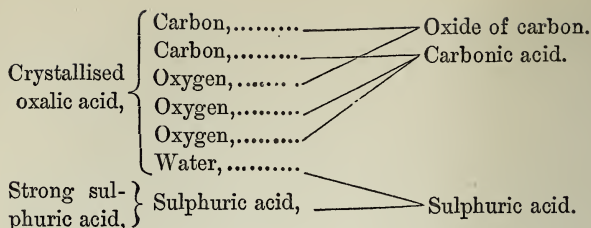
This, it will be seen, is rather a highly porous mass of phosphate of calcium with finely divided carbon diffused through it. After being used for a short time it loses its power of decolouring the syrup, but is revived by washing and re-heating in close vessels. Bone black has also the property of abstracting lime and acetate of lead from solutions. Other kinds of charcoal have also the power of extracting colouring matters from solutions. Different kinds of charcoal possess this property in different degrees. Charcoal has also the property of keeping water sweet for a long time, and of decomposing certain gases, and, as proposed by Dr. Stenhouse, has been used as a filter for obnoxious gases, which it decomposes. It is thus of use for sanitary purposes.

This property of absorbing colours is considered of the same nature—an attraction by the charcoal surfaces—and it is found in some cases to be sufficiently strong to overcome chemical affinity. The same property of imbibing colours is possessed by other porous matters to some extent; and the porous nature of the fibre of cotton, woollen, and silk may exercise an influence of a similar kind—a subject which we intend to consider further on.

Carbon combines with oxygen in three proportions, forming—

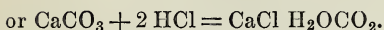
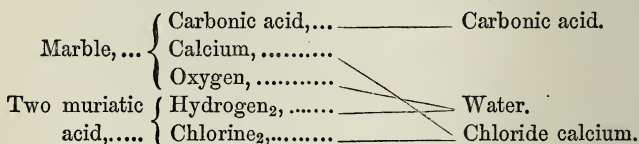
Carbonic oxide,.....	CO.
Anhydrous carbonic acid,.....	CO <sub>2</sub> .
Hydrous do., .....	CO <sub>3</sub> H <sub>2</sub> .
Anhydrous oxalic acid,.....	C <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> .
Hydrous do., .....	C <sub>2</sub> O <sub>4</sub> H <sub>2</sub> .

CARBONIC OXIDE is obtained by heating together strong vitriol and crystallised oxalic acid. This operation may be performed in a retort or flask, as described for hydrogen (page 31); the action which takes place is—



The action is simply the sulphuric acid taking the water from the crystallised oxalic acid and setting the elements free. By passing the gases through a solution of caustic potash or lime water, the carbonic acid is absorbed, and carbonic oxide is obtained pure. It is a colourless gas, inodorous, and burns with a blue flame. It is the presence of this gas which gives the blue flame of a coke fire. The product of its combustion is carbonic acid.

**CARBONIC ACID.**—When carbon is brought to a red heat in air, it burns and dissipates; oxygen combines with the carbon, and produces gaseous carbonic acid. This gas is generally obtained for experiment from its compounds. Thus, when a few pieces of marble or chalk are put into a flask or retort, and some dilute muriatic acid is added, effervescence takes place, and the action is—



Carbonic acid is absorbed by the water over which it is collected in considerable quantity; but the materials from which it is prepared are so cheap, that this absorption does not signify much in an experiment. The gas is colourless, and heavier than atmospheric air, so that it may be poured from one vessel to another as if it were a liquid. A light is instantly extinguished by immersion in it, and an animal soon dies if kept in air containing nine per cent. of it. Combined with water, it manifests acid properties, and gives the water an agreeable taste and pungency, as experienced in aerated waters. It combines readily with alkaline and earthy bases, producing carbonates. Its affinity for lime is very great; but it is liberated from all its compounds with effervescence by a stronger acid. When the dry gas is passed over redhot charcoal, it is decomposed; the charcoal combines with half its oxygen, and forms oxide of carbon.

**OXALIC ACID** has been long known in commerce as *salt of sorrel*. It was formerly obtained from the *Æalis acetesella*, a plant which contains



it as oxalite of lime; but it is now manufactured in large quantities from sugar and starch, by acting upon these substances with nitric acid, which oxidises and decomposes them, giving off carbonic acid and nitrous gas; and from sawdust, by acting upon it with caustic potash. The oxalic acid crystallises from the solution with water, which, as has been shewn at page 87, is essential to its existence. It combines with bases, and forms salts of great importance in the laboratory. Thus the oxalates of potash and ammonia are excellent tests for lime; and they are also of some importance in the dye-house. Oxalic acid is easily distinguished from any of the alkaline and earthy salts, such as the sulphate of magnesia (Epsom salts), for which it has occasionally, through ignorance, been mistaken by its strong acid character. It is easily distinguished from magnesia; by heating it to redness upon a piece of metal it will all evaporate, and leave no residue, while the magnesian salt leaves one. It sometimes contains nitric acid, peroxide of nitrogen, and Epsom salts; the two first may be detected by dissolving a little of the acid, and adding a minute colouring of sulphate of indigo, and then boiling: the presence of these impurities decolours the indigo. The presence of Epsom salts may be detected by chloride of barium, or by evaporation, as directed above. There is often about one per cent. of this salt in the commercial oxalic acid.

This acid has been long used in the dye-house, and acts powerfully upon many substances, but it is not now so generally used. A curious salt, of a beautiful colour, may be obtained by taking—

One part of bichromate of potash,  
Two of binoxalate of potash,  
Two of oxalic acid;

and dissolve the whole together in hot water, carbonic acid is evolved, and a double salt of oxalate of potash and chrome, having a fine purple colour, is formed in solution. Crystals of the salt, possessing a very deep blue colour, may be obtained by evaporation.

CYANOGEN.—Carbon combines with nitrogen, and forms cyanogen, a very important compound, consisting of one equivalent of nitrogen and one equivalent of carbon = CN or Cy. It is a gas, and has the property of combining with other elements, as if it were itself an element. It belongs, therefore, as was stated at page 27, to the class of compounds known as salt radicals. It is not obtained by directly bringing nitrogen into contact with carbon, but by the decomposition of animal compounds in contact with metallic bases, as we will have occasion to describe further on. The gas is obtained for experiment from its salts generally by heating cyanide of mercury in a retort. The mercury comes over in a metallic state, and the cyanogen escapes as gas, and may be caught at the pneumatic trough. Cyanogen combines with oxygen, and forms an acid called cyanic acid, and this combining with bases forms *cyanates*.

Cyanogen combines also with hydrogen, and forms an acid termed hydrocyanic acid, or more commonly prussic acid,  $CN + H$  or  $HCy$ ; and although certain salts are termed prussiates, from this acid being first termed prussic acid, they are properly cyanides. Some of them are highly important in the arts, and will be noticed in their proper places.

Cyanogen also combines with the metals in the same manner as chlorine and iodine, and forms that class of salts termed *cyanides*, which will be described under metallic salts.

Carbon combines with hydrogen in various proportions, forming different kinds of gases, such as *light* carbide of hydrogen, olefiant gas, and common coal gas, and some other hydrocarbons have those gases as constituents. Since the introduction of gas and paraffin to the manufacturing arts, the investigation into the compounds of carbon and hydrogen has yielded a large harvest of important discoveries, which is not yet exhausted. Some are liquid, such as benzine, petroleum oils, &c. Some are solid, like paraffin and anthracine, while some are gaseous, such as referred to above; and to systematise these combinations they have been formed into groups with suitable names, according to certain laws. Thus, for example—

Methane, or marsh gas, or light carburetted hydrogen =  $CH_4$ .

Starting from this, there is a series that seems to be methane with an addition of  $CH_2$ , thus—

Ethyl hydride, . . . . .	$C_2H_6$ .
Propane, or propyl hydride, . . . .	$C_3H_8$ .
Quartane, or butyl hydride, . . . .	$C_4H_{10}$ .
Quintane, or amyl hydride, . . . .	$C_5H_{12}$ .

and so on for a long series.

Again, there is olefiant gas, or heavy carburetted hydrogen, now called

Ethene, composed of . . . . .	$C_2H_4$ .
Propene, or propylene, . . . . .	$C_3H_6$ .
Quartene, or butylene, . . . . .	$C_4H_8$ .
Quintene, or amylene, . . . . .	$C_5H_{10}$ .

and so on for another long series. There are several other series equally interesting chemically, and of great importance in the study of organic matters, but meantime of little interest to the dyer, except to shew how apparently small discoveries effect great and important changes, and that upon such changes has risen coal-tar colours, to be noticed in their proper place. Carbon also combines with sulphur, and forms with it a colourless, volatile, and inflammable liquid, possessing a most putrid smell, termed bisulphide of carbon. It is much used in the arts as a solvent for caoutchouc and gutta-percha in vulcanising, and also in the extraction of quinine. In organic bodies, carbon is combined with oxygen, hydrogen, and nitrogen, in an endless variety of proportions. Some of these compounds will be brought under notice when treating of the organic substances which fall within the scope of our subject.

## METALLIC SUBSTANCES.

---

### GENERAL PROPERTIES OF METALS.

WE now proceed to consider that division of the elements commonly known as metals. To define the peculiar properties of a metal is somewhat difficult, for whichever property we select, it is either absent in some metal, or is possessed by some non-metallic element. A few of the more prominent physical properties may, however, be named.

1st. They all possess a peculiar lustre. 2nd. They all reflect light, which is the cause of that lustre. 3rd. They are all fusible by heat. 4th. They are all conductors of heat. 5th. They have all to a certain degree the property of extension: they are *malleable* under the hammer, and *laminable* under the roller; and being capable of extension by drawing into wire, they are termed *ductile*.

There are also chemical distinctions which are much more universal. They are all *basic*, that is to say, capable of combining with oxygen, and forming oxides; and with acids they form a series of compounds termed salts, of which the metal is termed the *base*. It is on account of the possession of these general properties that hydrogen is regarded as a metal in a gaseous state: it is pre-eminently basic.

When metals combine with one another the compound is termed an alloy. Brass is a chemical mixture of copper and zinc; and German silver is a like mixture of copper, zinc, and nickel; both brass and German silver are therefore alloys. Alloys retain most of the physical properties of the metals of which they consist. A great many of the recently discovered metals are very rare, and have only been found in certain localities, and in minute quantities. The alkalis and earths were long looked upon as elements; they had never, indeed, been decomposed till 1807. What was until that time known as the element

Potash, we now know to be the oxide of the metal Potassium.

Soda,	"	"	"	Sodium.
Lithia,	"	"	"	Lithium.
Lime,	"	"	"	Calcium.
Barytes,	"	"	"	Barium.
Magnesia,	"	"	"	Magnesium.
Alumina (pure clay),	"	"	"	Aluminum.

---

### POTASSIUM (K 39.1).

Sir H. Davy decomposed potash by a powerful electric current, and demonstrated it to be the oxide of a peculiar metal which he termed

potassium. This metal may be obtained by roasting a quantity of bitartrate of potash (cream of tartar) in a covered crucible: the immediate product is what is termed by assayers *black flux*; then, mixing this matter with a quantity of finely ground charcoal, and putting the mixture into a wrought-iron bottle, or submitting it to a high heat, the metal comes over, and is caught in a vessel containing naphtha, or a hydrocarbon that contains no oxygen. Only such a fluid can be used for this purpose, as the attraction of potassium for oxygen is so great that it decomposes all substances which contain that element.

Potassium is a white metal, with a lustre somewhat like silver; at ordinary temperatures it is soft, and may be flattened between the fingers, but at 32° Fah. it is hard and brittle. It melts at 150°. When exposed to the air it becomes covered immediately with a white crust of oxide. It is lighter than water, and when thrown upon that fluid it swims, and instantly bursts into flame, combining with the oxygen of the water so rapidly as to produce heat sufficient to kindle the hydrogen as it makes its escape. The metal not only fuses, but a small portion of it goes off as vapour, and burning with the hydrogen produces a beautiful red-coloured flame. In this experiment potash is formed and is dissolved in the water. Pure potash is the oxide of the metal potassium, but it is not prepared from the metal for manufacturing purposes.

POTASH—Sometimes termed the *vegetable alkali*—takes its name from its having been prepared in iron pots. When a piece of wood or other vegetable substance is slowly burned until all inflammable matters are consumed, there is left a white substance called *ash*. This ash consists of the mineral ingredients of the vegetables. The potash and other soluble ingredients are extracted by treating the ash with water.

Different vegetables vary greatly in the amount of ash they contain and the amount of potash that is in the ash. The following shews this in a few of the most common vegetable substances:—

	Per cent. of Ash.	Per cent. of Potash in Ash.
Oak, as it grows, . . . .	3.30 . . . .	1.53
Birch, . . . .	1.00 . . . .	9.63
Firs, average, . . . .	0.92 . . . .	8.75
Elm, . . . .	2.28 . . . .	3.90
Elder, . . . .	1.64 . . . .	1.08
Hazel, . . . .	0.50 . . . .	2.80
Whin, . . . .	1.64 . . . .	2.40
Broom, . . . .	1.48 . . . .	3.00
Potato stems (shaws), . .	15.00 . . . .	4.69
Pease straw, . . . .	8 . . . .	20
Oat straw, . . . .	5.10 . . . .	0.87
Wheat straw, . . . .	7 . . . .	3.90
Nettles, . . . .	10.67 . . . .	25
Thistle, . . . .	4.03 . . . .	5.00
Ferns, average, . . . .	3.30 . . . .	6.22



The quantity of potash in any vegetable varies according to the nature of the soil; and potash to some extent is essential to the health of the vegetable, so that care should be taken by farmers and others that manures containing potash be supplied to the soil.

The average quantity of ash obtained from wood is about one per cent. In America, where wood is an incumbrance, it is felled, piled up in masses, and burned for the manufacture of potash. The ashes of the wood are collected and put into cisterns provided with false bottoms, and run-off plugs underneath. A quantity of water is thrown upon the ashes in the cistern, and after stirring and settling a few hours, all the soluble matters are dissolved, and the liquor is drawn off by the plug-hole and evaporated to dryness, the residue is afterwards fused at a red heat into compact masses, and in this state constitutes the commercial *black ash*. As other matters in the ash besides the potash are soluble in water, the black ash thus prepared contains these substances as impurities. These are mainly sulphites, sulphides, and chlorides of potash and soda, along with some earthy matters.

Pearl-ash is prepared by calcining the black ash in a reverberatory furnace until all the carbonaceous matters and the sulphur are driven off. The remaining mass is then dissolved in water, and the solution evaporated to dryness in large iron pans. Towards the conclusion of the process the mass is stirred to give it a lumpy granulation. This ash contains much less extraneous matter than black ash. It is more fully carbonated. Dr. Ure states (*Dictionary of Arts, &c.*) that he found the best pink coloured Canadian potash to contain 60 per cent. of real potash, while the best pearl-ash contained only 50 per cent. These are the two states in which potash is used in the dye-house. The methods for testing the quantity of real alkali they contain will be given when we come to speak of soda.

The following are a few analyses of pot and pearl-ash:—

POTASH.			PEARL.		
Carbonate of potash,	43·68	24·57	Carbonate of potash,	56·01	71·38
Hydrate of potash, .	49·68	44·43	Hydrate of potash, .	5·61	...
Sulphate of potash, .	4·07	16·14	Sulphate of potash, .	27·70	14·38
Chloride of sodium, .	1·64	4·40	Chloride of sodium, .	10·49	...
Carbonate of soda, .	...	4·27	Carbonate of soda, .	...	2·31
Insoluble matter, and			Insoluble matter, and		
other matters, .	0·72	6·19	other matters, .	0·19	3·73
	99·79	100·00	Moisture, . . .	...	4·57
			Chloride potassium, .	...	3·63
				100·00	100·00

These are American ashes; but there are also large imports of potash from Russia and other parts of the Continent.

The principal use of potash is to destroy or take off any grease or oil

which may exist in or upon the fibre to be dyed, and it does this by combining with these substances and forming soap, which, being soluble in water, is easily removed. Dyers are often in the habit, when about to steep or boil their goods, of simply adding to their solution or boiler some pearl ash or potash, but when the alkali is in union with an acid such as carbonic acid forming a carbonate, its power of combining with oil or grease is to a great extent neutralised. The white obtained upon the fabric may be good enough, and as was before remarked when speaking of chlorine, a good white can be got without potash; but it is not so permanent. If grease or oil spots be present they are not removed, only concealed, and the dyer is often annoyed by large resist spots which he cannot account for, and which are not so easily removed after the goods are bleached as before. The alkali, whether pearl or potash, before being used ought to be made caustic, that is, deprived of its carbonic acid, and converted into hydrate of potash. This is done by boiling the carbonated alkali with newly slaked lime; the lime combines with the carbonic acid of the alkali and falls to the bottom, while the caustic alkali remains in solution. Without detailing the various methods practised, some of which are not good, we shall rather give what we consider the best. The carbonate of potash ought to be dissolved in not less water than six times its weight; it is better, however, to use ten times its weight, as if a less quantity of water be used, the potash is not deprived of all its carbonic acid. The reason assigned for this singular phenomenon is, that both caustic potash and carbonate have a strong affinity for water, and when less than six times its weight is used, there is sufficient water to supply the carbonate but not the caustic alkali, and hence the carbonate is not all converted into the caustic state. The exact quantity of lime is not material, provided there be enough. The lime ought to be added when the alkali is boiling, and from time to time, until a little of the solution being taken out, it does not effervesce by the addition of a little dilute sulphuric acid. If strong acid is used, care must be taken before adding it that the solution be cold, for if not it will spurt, and may injure the manipulator. The best way is to take a little of the alkali and dilute it with cold water, and then add the acid. When there is no effervescence, the alkali is caustic. The boiling is then stopped, and when the lime settles the clear liquor is taken off and kept in an iron vessel covered closely, as the potash readily takes up carbonic acid from the air. For bleaching, and other cleansing operations, and also for many purposes in the dye-house, the supply should be taken from this stock vessel. It will be necessary, however, that the operator knows the exact strength of the solution, in order that he may know the proper quantity of it he ought to use for particular purposes. On this point a pretty correct approximation is obtained by knowing the percentage of pearl or potash used in making the solution, and then calculating the quantity to each gallon: but greater exactness is attained by using the following table (drawn up by Dr. Dalton), in which the specific gravity is supposed to be known, and hence the quantity of the alkali present in solution:—

Potash, per cent. in solution.	Specific gravity of solution.	Specific gravity by Twaddell's.	Boiling point of solution.
72.4	2.000	200°	600°
63.6	1.880	176	420
56.8	1.780	156	360
51.2	1.680	136	320
46.7	1.600	120	290
42.9	1.520	105	276
39.6	1.470	94	265
36.8	1.440	88	255
34.4	1.420	84	246
32.4	1.390	78	240
29.4	1.360	72	234
26.3	1.330	66	229
23.4	1.280	56	224
19.5	1.230	46	220
16.2	1.190	38	218
13.	1.150	30	215
9.5	1.110	20	214
4.7	1.060	12	213

In the first column of this table the percentage of alkali is given by weight. Thus, a gallon of water is 10 lbs. weight, therefore a gallon of the caustic ley solution will have one-tenth part of the potash indicated by the table according to the specific gravity. Say the solution stands 30° by Twaddell,—the percentage of this is 13, and this divided by 10 gives 1.3 lb. = 1 lb. 5 oz. nearly of caustic potash to a gallon of the ley. The stock ley should not be made stronger than this.

In the last column the boiling points of the solution at different strengths are entered. These numbers are important, and explain to some extent why boiling by steam is not so effective as by fire; for the steam heat, as was stated at page 6, is not higher than 210°, whereas the lowest temperature noted in the table is 213°.

Potash, as used in the dye-house, as already seen from the analysis given, is never chemically pure. Even when used as caustic it generally contains lime and soda, and often chlorides and sulphides. Lime may be detected by adding a little clear solution of bicarbonate of potash to a clear solution of the potash, when its presence will be known by the milkiness produced. It is not, however, detrimental to the dyer in the operations in which potash is commonly used. Sulphides may be detected by adding to a dilute solution of the potash some acetate of lead; if a sulphide is present, there will be a blackish precipitate. Sulphides are destructive to gold ornaments on muslin and other cloths, for the metal used is rarely pure; commonly it is an alloy of gold with copper, &c. The sulphides act upon all the inferior metals by contact, and destroy, or at least blacken them. Potash containing sulphides should therefore be avoided for goods having such ornaments.

## CHLORATE OF POTASH.

Caustic potash is evaporated to dryness, fused, and poured into moulds to form it into small cylinders; in this state it is sold by druggists under the name of *stick-potash*.

Potash has a strong affinity for water, and deliquesces rapidly when exposed to the air; this property is also possessed by the carbonates.

Potassium combines with chlorine, and forms chloride of potassium—technically termed muriate of potash; which may be prepared by adding hydrochloric acid to caustic potash, or its carbonate. It combines also with iodine, and forms iodide of potassium (page 84); with bromine it forms bromide of potassium; and with sulphur it forms the sulphide of potassium. We have already noticed most of these salts.

**SULPHATE OF POTASH.**—When sulphuric acid is added to potash it forms a salt which has neither acid nor alkaline properties, and which is easily crystallised. This neutral salt is produced abundantly in the manufacture of iodine. It is not deliquescent, and requires 15 times its own weight of water to dissolve it.

**BISULPHATE OF POTASH.**—This salt is obtained in the process of making nitric acid from nitre, as two equivalents of acid are used; but it may be prepared by adding to the sulphate half its weight of sulphuric acid, and bringing the mixture up to a red heat in a porcelain or platinum vessel. This salt has strong acid reactions, is very soluble in water, melts easily with heat, and is exceedingly useful for dissolving metals, many of which may be dissolved in it easily, although of very difficult solution in the pure acid.

**SULPHITE OF POTASH** is prepared by passing a current of sulphurous acid gas through a solution of carbonate of potash till saturated. It crystallises, and should be kept close, as it rapidly passes into the state of sulphate by exposure to the air.

**NITRATE OF POTASH** may be prepared by saturating potash with nitric acid; but it is obtained abundantly in native beds (page 43). It is prepared artificially in Germany and France, by forming large beds of animal and vegetable refuse, in which decomposition is effected by putrefaction. Potash is present in the organic matter, and these also yield nitrogen and oxygen to form nitric acid; and by combination the nitrate of potash is formed. It is also largely prepared by mixing chloride of potassium with nitrate of soda: a mutual exchange takes place, and there is formed chloride of sodium and nitrate of potash, which is crystallised from the solution of common salt. The chief uses of nitrate of potash are in the manufacture of gunpowder and nitric acid.

**CHLORATE OF POTASH** is prepared by passing chlorine gas through carbonate of potash. When the solution is saturated, crystals of this salt



are formed (page 50). This salt, as already stated, is advantageously used in several operations in the dye-house in which oxidation is required; also with decoctions of some of the woods. When mixed with substances containing carbon, it gives them great combustibility. Thus, if to a mixture of chlorate of potash and sugar a drop of sulphuric acid is added, combustion ensues, and the mixture burns with great rapidity.

**PHOSPHATE OF POTASH.**—This salt is obtained by adding carbonate of potash to a hot solution of phosphoric acid, until the solution ceases to redden blue litmus paper. By careful evaporation, the salt may be crystallised.

If the carbonate of potash be added to the phosphoric acid while cold, in sufficient quantity to saturate it, the solution by evaporation gives crystals of a salt having two proportions of acid—a biphosphate of potash.

**OXALATE OF POTASH.**—This salt is obtained by saturating carbonate of potash with oxalic acid, and crystallising. In this state it contains one equivalent of water.

The *Binoxalate* is obtained from wood sorrel, in which it exists ready formed. It is obtained by reducing the expressed juice of the sorrel to the consistence of a syrup, and setting it aside to crystallise. It is sold as *salt of sorrel* and *essential salt of lemons*. The salt is acid to the taste; it is employed for removing ink stains and recently-formed iron moulds from goods. Its crystals are composed of two equivalents of acid, one potash, and two water.

**FERROCYANIDE OF POTASSIUM.**—This salt is known as yellow prussiate of potash. We have already referred to the compound radical termed cyanogen, Cy, and stated that it combines with other bodies, and forms salts resembling the chlorides; it is found that two such salts combine together and form a distinct compound. Thus, one proportion of cyanide of silver will combine with one of cyanide of potassium, and forms a double salt,  $\text{AgCy} + \text{KCy}$ ; or take the protocyanide of iron  $= \text{FeCy}_2$ , it combines with four proportions of cyanide of potassium,  $= 4\text{CyK}$ , and forms the *ferrocyanide of potassium*. This proportion of potassium may be replaced by an equivalent proportion of another metal, but the iron and the six equivalents of cyanogen maintain themselves together. It has, therefore, been inferred, that  $\text{FeCy}_6$  is a distinct salt radical, which may be termed *ferroprussic acid*; a theoretical deduction very interesting to study, and which will be more fully developed as we proceed. The salts formed by this radical or acid are distinguished by the prefix *ferro*.

The ferrocyanide of potassium, or prussiate of potash, is prepared on the large scale by calcining together dried blood, hoofs, horns, hides, old woollen rags, or similar materials, with carbonate of potash in an iron vessel: commonly those substances are partially carbonised or burned in large cast-iron cylinders previously to being mixed with the potash. If

the animal matters are used without being subjected to this preliminary process, they are mixed in the ratio of about 8 to 1 of pearl ash; but if burned previously, one and a half of the charcoal is mixed with one of pearl ash. When the animal matters are used without being charred, the calcining pot is left open to allow the materials to be stirred and the noxious vapours to escape; after which the vessel is closed, and the heat is increased. This is continued for some time, and at intervals of half an hour the top of the vessel is uncovered for the purpose of stirring the matter within. This process is continued until the flame ceases to rise from the surface, and the materials are reduced to a red semi-fluid mass; this generally takes place in about eight hours after the pot is closed. From this description, the nature of the action may be easily understood. The animal matters which contain nitrogen and carbon abundantly, are decomposed by the heat; but, on account of the presence of the potash and iron of the pot, definite portions of the carbon and nitrogen combine and form cyanogen, which is simultaneously taken up by the potassium and iron; and we have four proportions of cyanide of potassium, with one proportion of cyanide of iron,  $\text{FeCy}_2$ . The molten mass is scooped out with iron ladles, and allowed to cool. When the mass has cooled, it is dissolved in cold water, and the solution is filtered through cloth. Lest any cyanide of potassium should remain which had not received the necessary proportion of iron obtained from the pot, sulphate of iron (copperas) is added by degrees to the solution, so long as the Prussian blue which is formed on adding the iron salt is redissolved. The whole is then evaporated to a proper consistency; after which, pieces of coarse cord are suspended throughout the liquid, upon which crystals of ferro-prussiate are formed in regular bunches, and of a beautiful light citron yellow.

Ferrocyanide of potassium crystallises with three proportions of water, which it loses at  $212^\circ$ . It dissolves in 4 parts of cold and 2 parts of boiling water. From this salt all other ferrocyanides are derived as precipitates; those of the metals are formed by adding a salt of the metal to a solution of the prussiate. The following are the appearances of a few of those precipitates, corresponding to the metals employed:—

Protoxide of manganese,	.	White, turning to a deep red.
Peroxide of manganese,	.	Greenish grey.
„ lead,	.	White, with a yellowish hue.
„ iron,	.	Deep blue.
Protoxide of iron,	.	White, turning blue by exposure.
„ copper,	.	Brown.
„ zinc,	.	White.
„ tin,	.	White.
Peroxide of tin,	.	Yellow.

Each of these precipitates is a ferrocyanide of the metal which has taken the place of the potassium; they are all insoluble in water, but

where colour can be obtained from them, they are suitable for dyes, although the colours dyed by the yellow prussiate are fugitive. Every alkaline substance destroys them, and they are easily affected by soap and by sunlight.

The principal use of the ferrocyanide salt in the dye-house is for dyeing Prussian blue. To dye this colour, the goods are impregnated with a persalt of iron, and then passed through a solution of yellow prussiate of potash; but this mode is objectionable for light shades and light goods, as it causes much loss of the Prussian salt. The general method of dyeing light Prussian blues upon cloths is, to put a little nitrate of iron into the dye-tub filled with water; the cloth is wrought in this for about ten or fifteen minutes, and then washed two or three times in clean water, to take off all the superfluous acid and iron. Whether the cause of the retention of the iron be an attraction of the material of the cloth for the iron, or the simple power of absorption by the fibres, we shall not stay to examine here; but although the nitrate of iron is an exceedingly soluble salt, a portion of the peroxide of iron remains fixed in the fibre, and this no washing will remove. The cloth, being well washed from the acid, is put into the prussiate. A small quantity of an acid must be added to the ferrocyanide of potassium solution, to take up the potassium, and to set the ferrocyanogen at liberty, to unite with the iron upon the cloth, which forms ferrocyanide of iron or Prussian blue, and constitutes the dye. Care ought to be taken in adding acid to the prussiate, not to add more than can be tasted, otherwise the colour is liable to change, becoming grey or reddish when dried.

The following mode of adding sulphuric acid to the prussiate, when a considerable quantity of goods is to be dyed at once, is sometimes practised. What the dyer considers the proper quantity of yellow prussiate of potash for the quantity of goods to be dyed, is dissolved in as much boiling water as is necessary for solution. To this solution a quantity of sulphuric acid is added, sufficient to make it strongly acid; and a portion of the mixture thus prepared is added to the *prussiate tub* as required. This method of adding the sulphuric acid is exceedingly objectionable, as it causes loss by the evolution of cyanogen, which may be detected by the pungent smell it excites; and in proportion to the escape of that gas, there is a loss of the dyeing power of the prussiate. If three parts of acid be added to seven of yellow prussiate, the loss would amount to one-half, and the remaining half would be so changed in its properties as to produce only a bad blue. Thus the dyer must use an additional quantity of prussiate, and after all he produces but an indifferent colour.

The proper method of using the acid is to dissolve the prussiate in hot water, and to add the necessary quantity of this solution to the water in the tub in which the goods are to be dyed. Previous to putting in the cloth, a few drops of sulphuric acid are added, just sufficient to be perceptible to the taste; or, what is a much better test, sufficient to redden blue litmus paper. The goods being wrought for some time in this mixture, they are



washed in clean water, having a small quantity of alum in solution. For light shades of sky-blue, they should not be dried from the alum solution, as there is a great tendency to assume a lavender hue. A better plan is to employ two tubs of water, the one being touched with alum, and the other pure, for washing from it. Cloths dyed by the prussiate should be exposed to a very dry atmosphere when hung up to be dried.

Deep blue is dyed by passing the goods through strong nitrate of iron, then through potash ley, which fixes a large quantity of the oxide of iron upon the cloth washed, and then passed through the prussiate.

Royal blue is dyed by adding protochloride of tin (*salts of tin*) to the nitrate of iron; entering the goods immediately, and passing them from the iron through the prussiate without washing. This method gives a rich deep blue, and is now much practised. Some of the peculiarities of the process will hereafter be described; meantime, it will be sufficient to observe, that a peculiar purple bloom is given, by using hydrochloric acid in the prussiate solution instead of sulphuric acid.

**FERRICYANIDE OF POTASSIUM.**—This is technically called red prussiate of potash. If a current of chlorine gas be passed through a strong solution of yellow prussiate of potash, till the solution changes to a reddish colour, and a drop of it added to nitrate or any persalt of iron gives no precipitate, there is formed chloride of potassium, a salt differing materially from yellow prussiate. The solution being evaporated, this salt is obtained in beautiful ruby-red crystals, termed, from their colour, red prussiate of potash. They are anhydrous, soluble in four parts of cold and a less quantity of hot water. The red prussiate is well adapted for many operations in dyeing. It yields the following colours with the salts of the different metals undernamed:—

Bismuth,	.	.	.	.	Pale yellow.
Cadmium,	.	.	.	.	Yellow.
Cobalt,	.	.	.	.	Dark-brown red.
Copper,	.	.	.	.	Yellowish-green.
Protosalts of iron,	.	.	.	.	Deep blue.
Persalts of iron,	.	.	.	.	No precipitate.
Manganese,	.	.	.	.	Brown.
Mercury,	.	.	.	.	Red-brown.
Nickel,	.	.	.	.	Yellow-green.
Tin,	.	.	.	.	White.
Zinc,	.	.	.	.	Orange-yellow.

It will be observed by comparing this table with the one given above, that the salts of iron, which yield a blue with yellow prussiate of potash, give no colour with the red prussiate; and the protosalts of iron, which give only a grey with yellow prussiate, yield a deep blue with red prussiate.

The constitution of this salt, or rather the arrangement in which these elements unite, is considered to be as follows—In the *ferrocyanide* the iron exists as a *protocyanide*, with the cyanide of another metal; but



in the *ferricyanide* we have iron as a percyanide, with cyanides of other metals. Thus—

Ferrocyanide,..... $\text{FeCy}_2 + 4\text{CKy} = \text{Protocyanide}$ .

Ferricyanide,..... $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cy}_6 + 6\text{CyK} = \text{Percyanide}$ .

Those who suppose that the compound  $\text{FeCy}_6$  of the yellow prussiate forms the salt radical of all the ferrocyanides, must also suppose that the red prussiate has  $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cy}_2$  consisting of the same number of elements combined together in double proportions, corresponding to the *pro* and *per* oxides of iron. But whatever may be the true relation in which the elements are united, the two salts are distinct in their reactions, and we would suggest to the dyer to give particular attention to the difference of the salts, with reference to salts of iron, as they are important, and will be referred to hereafter.

**CYANIDE OF POTASSIUM.**—If yellow prussiate be dried at a heat of about  $220^\circ$  to  $300^\circ$ , and eight parts of this dried salt be mixed with three parts of dry carbonate of potash, and the mixture put into a crucible and kept fused until effervescence ceases, then removed from the fire, and allowed to settle for a few minutes: on pouring off the clear into an iron vessel, it solidifies into a white crystalline mass, which is cyanide of potassium =  $\text{CyK}$ . This salt has a strong alkaline reaction, and is peculiar for its power of dissolving metals and giving precipitates which might be advantageously applied to some of the operations of dyeing.

**CYANATE OF POTASH.**—This salt is prepared in the same way as the last, but with the addition of some oxide of manganese, or other oxide, which converts the cyanogen into cyanic acid, and forms cyanate of potash =  $\text{CyK}_2\text{O}$ . The cyanates of the alkalies are all soluble in water, and in this they differ from the cyanates of the other metals.

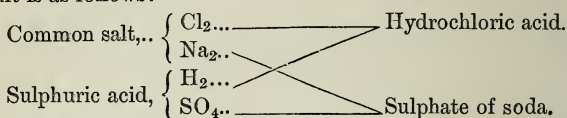
---

### SODIUM (Na 23).

Soda was not distinguished from potash till near the middle of the eighteenth century, when their distinctive characters were recognised. The potash was termed the vegetable, and the soda the mineral alkali. In 1807, Sir H. Davy demonstrated that soda, like potash, is the oxide of a metal which he named *sodium*. It is a white metal, having much the appearance of silver, but is sufficiently soft to yield to the pressure of the fingers, and to be cut by the nail. It oxidises spontaneously in the air, but not so rapidly as potassium. When a small piece is thrown upon water, it floats; the heat, generated by combining with the oxygen of the water, melts it, and it forms a silvery globe, which gyrates rapidly on the surface of the water; but it does not inflame the hydrogen unless it be kept stationary, and then an explosion takes place. If, however, the temperature of the water is as high as  $110^\circ$  Fah., the hydrogen burns as it is evolved, with a bright yellow flame. In this experiment oxide of sodium is formed and dissolved in the water, which thus becomes a solu-

tion of *caustic soda*. Sodium is a very abundant element in Nature, but is always found in combination—*e.g.*, as nitrate or carbonate of soda and chloride of sodium (common salt). This latter is the great source for soda manufacturing purposes; and since the process of making soda from it was discovered. Soda, owing to its cheapness, has been used instead of potash in almost all the processes of the arts that admit of the substitution.

SODA, as sold to dyers and bleachers, is in the state of a dry white powder, or granular substance, termed *soda-ash*, which is an impure carbonate, prepared as follows:—A quantity of about 600 lbs. of common salt is put upon the bottom of a reverberatory furnace, previously heated; upon this is let down, from an apparatus on the roof of the furnace, a quantity of sulphuric acid, of the specific gravity 1·600; and the salt is decomposed. The result is as follows:—



The hydrochloric acid passes off with the steam occasioned by the dilute sulphuric acid. This operation, during which the materials require to be stirred occasionally, lasts about four hours: the charge is then withdrawn from the furnace. The sulphate of soda thus prepared is reduced to powder, and mixed with an equal weight of ground chalk, and half its weight of coal, well ground and sifted. This mixture is introduced into a very hot reverberatory furnace, about two hundredweights at a time, and is frequently stirred until it is uniformly heated. In about an hour it fuses; it is then well stirred for about five minutes, and drawn out with a rake into a cast-iron trough, in which it is allowed to cool and solidify. This is called ball soda, or British barilla, and contains about 22 per cent. of alkali. To separate the salts from insoluble matter, the cake of ball soda, when cold, is broken up, put into vats, and covered with warm water. In six hours the solution is drawn off from below, and the washing repeated about eight times, to extract all the soluble matter. These liquors being mixed together, are boiled down to dryness, and afford a mixture of salts of extraordinary composition. The analyses of two samples will give the reader some idea of their character:—

Carbonate of soda, . . . .	68·907	...	65·513
Caustic soda, . . . .	14·433	...	16·072
Sulphate of soda, . . . .	7·018	...	7·813
Sulphite of soda, . . . .	2·231	...	2·134
Hyposulphate of soda, . . .	trace.		trace.
Aluminate of soda, . . . .	1·016	...	1·232
Silicate of soda, . . . .	1·030	...	0·802
Chloride of sodium, . . . .	3·972	...	3·860
Sulphide of sodium, . . . .	1·314	...	1·542
Insoluble matters, . . . .	0·814	...	0·974
	100·735		99·942

For the purpose of getting rid of the sulphur and carbonating the soda, the salt is now mixed with one-fourth of its bulk of sawdust, and exposed to a low red heat in another reverberatory furnace for about four hours, which converts the caustic soda into carbonate, while the sulphur is carried off. This product, if the process is well conducted, contains about 50 per cent. of alkali, and forms the soda-ash of the best quality. When it is to be converted into crystallised carbonate of soda, it is dissolved in water, allowed to settle, and the clear liquid boiled down until a pellicle appears on its surface. The solution is then run into shallow boxes of cast iron to crystallise in a cool place, and after standing for a week the mother liquor is drawn off, and the crystals drained and broken up for the market. This mother liquor is evaporated to dryness, and yields a very impure soda-ash, containing about 30 per cent. of alkali, which is often employed for making soap.

The common crystallised carbonate of soda of the shops is very pure. The crystals contain ten equivalents of water. When exposed to the air, these crystals lose a portion of their water, and assume a chalky white appearance; if they are subjected to heat, they dissolve in their water of crystallisation. We have known of these crystals being used for the operations of bleaching merely dissolved; but they are neither well nor profitably used in that way.

They contain in 100 parts by weight

Caustic soda, . . . . .	21·81
Carbonic acid, . . . . .	15·43
Water, . . . . .	62·76
	<hr/>
	100·00

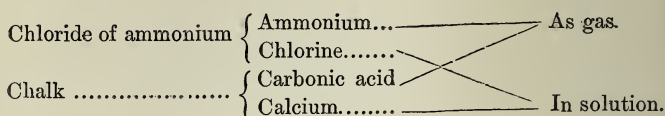
Thus fully more than three-fifths of their weight is water.

The dry carbonate of soda of the shops, so much used for domestic purposes, is the same as the crystallised soda deprived of its water of crystallisation.

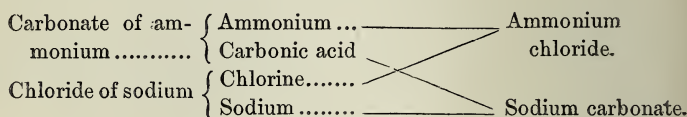
SODA MADE DIRECT FROM COMMON SALT.—Some years ago, a patent was taken out by Hemmings and Dyar for making carbonate of soda direct from common salt by the mutual decomposition of carbonate of ammonia and chloride of sodium; but from certain practical defects in the process it was not commercially successful. Several manufacturers endeavoured to overcome these defects by certain forms of apparatus, but without that success that warranted them giving up the old process for the new, although, looking at it theoretically, it was perfect and beautiful.

Lately, Mr. James Young, of Kelly, has proposed such improvements in the apparatus for carrying out this new process that give hopes of success, a description of which will enable the reader to understand both the theory and practice of the process. Into an air-tight boiler there is put a solution of chloride of ammonium (sal-ammoniac) and a quantity of finely ground chalk or carbonate of lime, and the solution brought to boil, when

a mutual transfer takes place between the chalk and the ammonium chloride; the chlorine of the latter combines with the calcium of the chalk, forming chloride of calcium, and the ammonium and carbonic acid unite and form carbonate of ammonium, which, being volatile at a boiling heat, passes off with a little steam. Thus—



This gaseous carbonate is conducted by a pipe into a second air-tight boiler, containing a saturated solution of chloride of sodium (common salt), giving rise to another double decomposition. The chlorine of the chloride of sodium combines with the ammonium of the carbonate, and the sodium combines with the carbonic acid. Thus—



Both these salts remain in solution. There is now passed through this solution a current of carbonic acid gas, an equivalent of which unites with the carbonate of soda and forms a bicarbonate which requires a much larger quantity of water to dissolve it than is present; it consequently separates from the water as a crystalline precipitate, leaving the chloride of ammonium in solution with a small quantity of bicarbonate of soda; this solution is run off into another air-tight boiler to be treated with chalk as at first, when the same reactions take place as above described. Water is now let into the boiler containing the bicarbonate of soda and brought to boil, which drives off the second equivalent of carbonic acid, leaving a solution of pure carbonate of soda, which is run from the boiler, and may be crystallised as washing soda or evaporated to dryness, forming pure carbonate of soda. It will be observed from this description that the ammonium salt is used over and over again, and it was the loss of this salt during the process that has hitherto prevented its success. Mr. Young has avoided this source of loss by having three air-tight boilers all connected together by pipes and stopcocks, and effects all the decompositions in the liquid state; there is no exposure until the operations are completed. The carbonic acid driven off from the bicarbonate being led into the mixed solutions of carbonate of soda and chloride of ammonium, everything is utilised. The adoption of such a process would put into the hands of the dyer a pure carbonate of soda, which for many operations in the art would be of great benefit.

SODA - ASH.—Owing to various circumstances attending the manu-



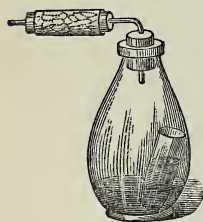
facture of this salt, its percentage is very uncertain, varying from 40 to 50 per cent., and it is, therefore, generally priced according to its percentage. The percentage may be determined by some such means as we have described for bleaching powder, that is, by having an acid exactly of the strength at which 100 measures of it will saturate 100 grains of caustic soda. To form the test acid, according to the late Professor Graham's directions, 4 ounces avoirdupois of oil of vitriol are diluted with 20 ounces of water, or larger portions of acid and water may be mixed in these proportions. About three-fourths of an ounce of bicarbonate of soda is heated strongly by a lamp for a few minutes to obtain pure carbonate of soda (or what will do for ordinary purposes of the dye-house, take some crystals of soda and dry in a basin until all water is given off; when boiling has ceased, bring the heat to about a dull red, this will give the soda salt), of which 171 grains are immediately weighed, this quantity contains 100 grains of soda; it is dissolved in 4 or 5 ounces of water, and the alkalimeter is filled up to the highest graduation with the dilute acid. The acid is poured gradually into the soda solution till the action of the latter upon litmus test-paper ceases to be alkaline and becomes distinctly acid, then the measures of acid necessary to produce that change are accurately observed. Say it requires 90 measures: a plain cylindrical jar, of which the capacity is about a pint and a half, is graduated into 100 parts, each containing 100 grain measures of water, or ten times as much as the divisions of the alkalimeter. This jar is filled up with the dilute acid to the extent of 90, or whatever number of the alkalimeter divisions of acid were found to neutralise 100 grains of soda, and *water* is added to make up the acid liquid to 100 measures. This forms a test acid of which 100 measures neutralise and are equivalent to 100 grains of soda, or one measure of acid to one grain of caustic soda. This acid ought to be kept in a well-stoppered bottle. By a curious coincidence, strong oil of vitriol diluted with eleven times its weight of water, gives this test acid exactly; but, as oil of vitriol varies a little in strength, it is better to form the test acid in the manner described, than to trust to that mixture. Twenty-one measures of the test acid should neutralise 100 grains of crystallised carbonate of soda, and 58·5 measures of it should neutralise 100 grains of pure anhydrous carbonate of soda.

To test a sample of soda-ash, 100 grains are weighed and dissolved in two or three ounces of hot water. The alkalimeter is filled with the test acid, which is gently poured into this solution, stirring, as each drop is added, until a piece of blue litmus-paper, which may be kept in contact with the liquor, is turned red. The number of graduations taken to effect this indicates the percentage of caustic alkali in the sample.

Another method of using test acid is by weight. The acid is made of such a strength as one or two grains by weight will exactly neutralise one grain of pure alkali. The vessel commonly used for this purpose is of the annexed form, but any convenient vessel will do. It is filled with the test acid, and the whole correctly weighed. The acid is then dropped from the small orifice into a weighed quantity of the carbonate until a neutral

sulphate is produced, indicated as above by test-paper. The bottle with its contents is then again weighed; the loss of weight gives, by calculation, the quantity of real alkali in the sample. Say that every two grains of the test acid are equivalent to one grain of pure soda, and that twenty-five grains of soda-ash require twenty grains of acid to neutralise it, the real alkali present will be ten. Now 25 being the fourth of 100, the 10 is multiplied by 4, giving 40 as the percentage of the sample. This method of testing carbonated alkalies, provided the operator has a good balance, is very correct and simple.

An indirect method is sometimes recommended, thus:—Take a small flask and a test-tube that can be put inside, and stand nearly upright. Fifty grains of the soda-ash are dissolved in a little water in the flask, and the tube, which is nearly filled with dilute sulphuric acid, is carefully placed in the position shewn in the figure. A small chloride of calcium tube is fitted



into the mouth of the flask, and the whole is then carefully weighed; after which, by holding the flask a little on one side, the acid is poured from the tube into the soda solution. This should be done gradually, that the effervescence may not be too violent. When all effervescence ceases, and the flask is well shaken, the cork is taken out, that the rest of the carbonic acid may freely escape; it is then put back, and the flask is again weighed: the loss of weight will of course indicate the loss of carbonic acid, and by this the quantity of soda present may be calculated. If the loss of weight be 10 grains, then as 44, the equivalent of carbonic acid, is to 62, that of soda, so is 10 to 14·09, which, being multiplied by 2, there being only 50 grains of soda used, gives 28·18 as the percentage of alkali in the sample. This method, however, is not much to be relied upon in testing the value of soda-ash, as it takes no cognisance of caustic soda present; it is a very good method, however, for taking the quantity of carbonic acid present in soda or other carbonates.

The following analyses shew the composition of what is termed common soda-ash and refined soda-ash:—

	Soda-Ash.	Refined-Ash.
Chloride of sodium (common salt), . . . . .	3·665	3·310
Sulphate of soda, . . . . .	9·676	10·012
Carbonate of soda, . . . . .	72·037	84·517
Caustic soda, . . . . .	12·181	0·280
Aluminate of soda, . . . . .	0·828	0·474
Silicate of soda, . . . . .	1·014	0·366
Insoluble matter, . . . . .	0·390	0·374
	<hr/> 99·791	<hr/> 99·333

From these analyses it will be seen that the carbonic acid process for testing the value of soda-ash as a bleaching or dyeing agent is not good; but it may be adopted when other means are not at hand for the crystallised soda, or what is termed washing soda. There are several other methods and forms of apparatus for testing the value of soda-ash, all based however upon the principles here detailed of neutralising the alkali with a standard strength of acid.

We may observe that the same principle applies to potash as to soda. The test acid is obtained of such strength that one graduation will be equal to one grain of potash, which will be found in the same way as for soda, namely, by neutralising a known weight of pure dry carbonate of potash.

Where both alkalies are used there is prepared a test acid, which does for either soda or potash. Prepare pure anhydrous carbonate of soda as described for the soda test; weigh 106 grains, which is an equivalent, and dissolve it in water, then take dilute acid in the alkalimeter, and add it to the soda until it is perfectly neutral; mark the number of graduations it takes for this: say it takes 60; then to every 60 graduations of the acid left add 40 of water, and thus we have a stock acid, of which 100 graduations is equal to an equivalent of either alkali. Thus,

100 graduations is equal to 62 grains caustic soda,  
94 ..... potash.

To test by this method, take 100 graduations of the test acid, and weigh 200 grains of the alkali, and dissolve in 200 measures of water; add this solution to the acid till it is neutralised, and mark how many measures have been necessary to effect this; then the percentage of alkali is easily calculated. Say that 140 measures of the alkali solution have been necessary to neutralise the acid; if the alkali is soda, then the 140 grains of soda-ash will contain 62 grains of caustic soda; and the percentage is found by the following calculation:—

140 : 62 :: 100 : 44.29 per cent.

If the alkali is carbonate of potash, the 140 grains will contain 47.2 grains of caustic potash; and then the percentage is found by the proportion:—

140 : 94 :: 100 : 67.14 per cent.

Care should be taken that the test acid when used is always of the same temperature, as the bulk varies by heat.

It may be observed that the acid test for soda, derived from a coincident in their equivalents, will serve equally, in ordinary circumstances, for potash, each graduation indicating 1 of caustic soda, and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  of potash.

The process for making caustic soda from soda-ash is the same as described for making caustic potash, namely, a quantity of ash is boiled, and, when boiling, slaked lime is added until a small portion taken out does not effervesce on adding an acid; but the equivalent of soda being less than that of potash, it requires more lime for a given weight.

The following table, constructed by Dr. Dalton, will be found useful to the bleacher, shewing the quantity of caustic soda in his solutions, indicated by the hydrometer :—

Specific Gravity.	Alkali per cent.	Twaddell's Hydrometer.	Specific Gravity.	Alkali per cent.	Twaddell's Hydrometer.
2·00	77·8	200	1·40	29·0	80
1·85	63·6	170	1·36	26·0	72
1·72	53·8	144	1·32	23·0	64
1·63	46·6	126	1·29	19·0	58
1·56	41·2	112	1·23	16·0	46
1·50	36·8	100	1·18	13·0	36
1·47	34·0	94	1·12	9·0	24
1·44	31·0	88	1·06	4·7	12

The remarks (page 95) in reference to the presence of sulphides in potash-ley injuring the gold ornaments of light muslins, &c., are equally applicable here; and the same tests for ascertaining the presence of these impurities in potash may be employed to detect their presence in soda solutions. With respect to the solubility of soda—

100 parts water at 62° Fah. dissolve 41 parts of caustic soda.

100	„	90°	„	46	„
100	„	131°	„	64	„
100	„	158°	„	72	„
100	„	176°	„	78	„

Cold water saturated with soda, and brought to boil, attains a temperature of 266° Fah.

Crystallised carbonate of soda dissolves in water in the following proportions and temperatures, as given in *Chemical Technology* by Richardson and Watts—

100 parts water at 57° Fah. dissolves 60 parts of soda crystals.

100	„	97°	„	133	„
100	„	100°	„	1666	„
100	„	219°	„	445	„

This table shews the importance of attention being paid to the temperature of the water in dissolving this salt.

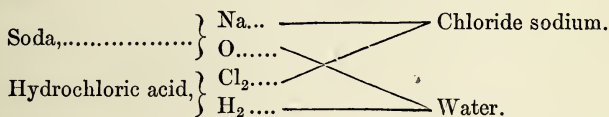
The salts of soda are in general the same in their chemical characters as the corresponding salts of potash, and form cyanides, prussiates, and



chromates; but they are not so generally used, on account, perhaps, of the disposition which almost all soda salts have to effloresce when exposed to the air.

**SULPHATE OF SODA.**—Soda, saturated with sulphuric acid, forms sulphate of soda, which crystallises easily, and is known by the name of *Glauber Salts*. An impure sulphate of soda is sold under the name of *salt cake*, obtained in making hydrochloric acid. It always contains common salt. A purer sort of salt cake is obtained by the makers of nitric acid, or in the making of vitriol where nitrate of soda is acted upon by sulphuric acid, the product being valuable, considerable care is taken to have the nitrate decomposed; *salt cake* from this source contains an excess of sulphuric acid. By heating this in a furnace, to drive off excess of acid, or neutralising with carbonate of soda, and crystallising, there is obtained Glauber salts, which are used in calico-printing.

**CHLORIDE OF SODIUM.**—Hydrochloric acid, added to soda, forms hydrochlorate of soda; in the language of the dye-house (muriate of soda), common salt, properly chloride of sodium. The action is as follows:—



This salt is sometimes made artificially to be used with nitric acid to make the *aqua regia* for dissolving tin. It is often amusing to see the care taken to mix the acid and the soda to form what may be got so conveniently as common salt.

**NITRATE OF SODA.**—Nitric acid added to soda forms nitrate of soda. This salt, as already stated (page 43), is found abundantly in Nature, and is termed *cubic nitre*, from the shape of its crystals, and to distinguish it from nitrate of potash (*nitre*). When heated to redness it is decomposed, and gives off much oxygen gas; it is often employed for this purpose, and for oxidising metals in a fused state. It is also occasionally used along with hydrochloric acid for preparing some of the salts of tin for mordants.

**BORATE OF SODA.**—Boracic acid with soda forms borate of soda (*borax* or *tinkal*). This, as we have before noticed (under Boron), is also a natural product; it is used as a blowpipe re-agent for fluxing metals.

**PHOSPHATE OF SODA.**—Phosphoric acid with soda forms phosphate of soda, also a useful salt as a test for the presence of magnesia in water solutions.

Soda, on account of its cheapness, has been substituted for potash in the manufacture of some of the salts most extensively used, such as ferro-

cyanides, chromates, alum, &c., but none of these modified salts have come into common use, not that they are less suitable in the dye-house, but for other reasons, which we indicated above.

### LITHIUM. (L 7.)

This is another alkaline metal, the oxide of which is termed lithia. It has properties somewhat resembling those of soda and potash, and combines with acids as a base in the same manner as these other alkalies. It is, however, very rare, and only got in small quantities, from a mineral termed *Lepidolite*. It has not as yet been used in any process of manufacture, so far as known to us, and therefore we pass it without further consideration.

---

### SOAP.

In connection with the alkalies, it will be necessary to direct attention to *Soap*, an article of great importance in the dye-house. If we take a quantity of oil, and add to it some caustic alkali, a milk-white solution is obtained, which is found to be soluble in water. This solution boiled down to a proper consistence, and cooled, forms soap. All sorts of fats and oils are used in soapmaking; they all contain certain acids capable of combining with the alkali, and giving a deterative character to the compound. Soap may be considered as a salt. The soap made with soda is hard, that with potash soft; and the degree of hardness, in either case, varies according to the nature of the oil or fat employed. In manufacturing soap, care is taken to obtain a proper mixture of these fats and oils, so as to produce a soap of proper consistence. We quote from an article by the late Professor Crace Calvert, upon different soaps made and used by dyers and calico-printers.

“It is easy to understand that a great variety of soaps must be manufactured to suit the various purposes to which soaps are applied in domestic and manufacturing concerns, and so we find that different qualities of soap are manufactured for boiling silks, clearing wool, or for clearing madder goods, and giving to the different colours obtained from this root a greater brilliancy and fixity. I have thought that it might be interesting if I were to offer a statement of the results I have obtained in connection with this point. To arrive at a medium, shewing the real difference which exists between soaps employed for the above purposes, I have been obliged to make a great number of analyses. This will be easily understood if we reflect that the quality of the soaps used by different parties in a given trade, is so little examined, that even the soap used by a single firm varies as much as 25 per cent. in quality. The following general results I have, however, arrived at in calculating the composition of these soaps as containing 30 per cent. of water:—

## COMPOSITION OF SOAPS, PER 1,000 PARTS.

	Calico Printers' Soap.	Silk Dyers' Soap.	Wool Scourers' Soap.
Fatty matters,.....	640.....	619.....	614
Soda,.....	60.....	81.....	86
Water,.....	300.....	300.....	300
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
	1000	1000	1000

From these results we find that the soaps employed vary in the quantity of alkali, according to the nature of their application ; thus, in 1,000 parts of soap there are 21 parts more alkali in the one used for boiling silk, and 26 parts more alkali in that employed for clearing wools, than there are in the soaps best suited for clearing madder purples. These facts shew us at once how important it is to inquire into the real composition of a soap before employing it for a given purpose. If, on the one hand, a calico-printer were to use a soap which had the composition of the one used by the wool-scourer, he would cause to fade the shade of his madder purples; and if, on the other hand, the wool-scourer were to employ the neutral soap of the calico-printer, he would have but imperfect results, owing to this circumstance, that in the latter case an excess of alkali is essential, not that the alkali may combine with the fatty matters of the wool, but that it may form an emulsion with the stearine and elaeirine discovered by M. Chevreul, and thus liberate the dirt which they fix on the wool. There is another point which deserves the serious attention of calico-printers, and that is, the influence which soaps of different compositions must have on the different shades obtained in madder dyeing; for it must be obvious that the soap containing a slight excess of alkali, which is the best suited for clearing madder reds or dark pinks, would deteriorate the beauty of the madder purples. In the first case, the dyer has in view, not only to fix and brighten his reds or pinks, but further to remove the yellow colouring matter, and also partially the red; whilst in the latter a soap containing as little alkali as possible appears to me to give the best results. I have found by experiment the two following soaps to be best suited for these purposes :—

	Soap for Purples.	Soap for Dark Pinks.
Fatty matter, .....	60·4.....	59·23
Soda,.....	5·6 .....	6·77
Water,.....	34·0.....	34·00
	<hr/>	<hr/>
	100·0	100·00

Still we find that calico-printers in general employ the same quality of soap for all shades of madder goods. Some dyers think that they over-

come this difficulty by employing less or more of the same soap; but this is an error, not only manifested by the above remarks, but because, as we shall shew presently, the different soaps sold in the market offer in their relative composition the differences which are equal to the different proportions they are in the habit of using for given styles or shades of madder prints. This fact can be easily proved by examining the qualities of soap which are supplied to a firm during a period of twelve months; for we find, as the following results shew, that the quality of soap sometimes varies as much as 25 per cent. in value:—

	No. 1.	No. 2.	No. 3.	No. 4.	No. 5.
Water, .....	26·00	29·3	34·81	38·0	46·00
Fatty matter,.....	66·00	64·0	56·00	55·4	46·01
Alkalies,.....	7·56	6·3	6·98	6·1	5·80
Impurities, .....	0·43	0·4	2·21	0·5	2·19
	99·99	100·0	100·00	100·0	100·00

The figures also shew that the quantity of the really effective agent—viz. the fatty matter—in a soap can vary from 46 to 66 per cent; consequently it may be seen that a large sum of money is wasted by some of our large firms annually, for want of paying proper attention to one single article. It must be remembered that each piece of madder-dyed goods requires from 1 ounce to 4 ounces of soap to clear it. If we take the average at 2 ounces per piece, and admit that a print-work produces 100,000 pieces per annum, the quantity of soap used would be 12,500 lbs.; and if the soap be 25 per cent. under value, the loss would equal 4,125 lbs.

“There is another fact connected with the use of soap by calico-printers which deserves most serious consideration, and to which attention has not, so far as I am aware, been drawn—viz., that soaps are not at the present day, as formerly, made with one kind of fatty matter, but are manufactured sometimes from palm oil, at other times with vegetable fluid oils, such as rapeseed oil, Gallipoli oil, again with animal fatty matters, and lastly with the oily liquid called oleine, which is obtained when solid fatty matters are submitted to pressure to obtain a fatty matter, having a higher fusing point, and consequently more fit for the manufacture of composite candles. The liquid oleine, containing small amounts of margarine and stearine, is extensively employed at the present day in the manufacture of soaps. I have ascertained from direct experiment, that such a soap will not give the same brilliancy and fixity of colour to the shades obtained from madder roots, as a soap made with a vegetable oil, composed of margarine and oleine, or with an animal fatty matter, composed of margarine, stearine, and oleine; consequently, if a dyer uses a soap of the former composition, it will prove, if not a direct loss to him, at least an injury to his goods, in



disabling him from producing the maximum effect. I should also mention here, that I have found in print-works household soap of an inferior quality, and containing 10 per cent. and upwards of resins. These soaps have none of the properties required in calico-printing, and must, therefore, prove a loss to the printer, as well as those soaps which are sometimes found to contain glue. I hope these facts will prove how highly desirable it is, that with the existing competition, both amongst our local firms, and those of the continent, the indifference which exists as to the qualities of the drugs employed in print-works should cease, and that science, united with practical knowledge, should step in and guide the application of chemical art in manufactures. Then, and then only, will our manufacturers progress in a sound and remunerative manner.

“I have also examined a great variety of soaps employed for domestic purposes, and have found their qualities to vary materially, as the figures underneath shew:—

	HARD SOAP.			SOFT SOAP.	
	No. 1.	No. 2.	No. 3.	No. 1.	No. 2.
Fatty matters, &c.,....	67·00	57·52	56·09	41·67	58·95
Water, .....	26·81	36·00	39·14	49·49	32·15
Alkali,.....	6·19	6·48	4·77	8·84	8·90
	100·00	100·00	100·00	100·00	100·00 ”

The quantity of water in soap may be ascertained by taking 100 grains of the sample in thin parings, putting them into a water bath or oven, of which the heat does not exceed 212°, and allowing them to stand as long as they continue to lose weight, which is known by occasional weighing; the loss of weight indicates the water evaporated.

The other impurities in soap may be detected by dissolving 100 grains in strong alcohol, and applying a gentle heat; the soap is thus dissolved and the impurities remain insoluble. The best soap should not contain above one per cent. of matter insoluble in alcohol. Good soap may be known by its comparative transparency. When cut thin, the purer the soap is, the more translucent. Dry soap is also more transparent than moist.

The earths combine also with fats and form soaps, some of which are sparingly soluble in water, so if there be oil or grease upon goods, and they are put into water or other liquid containing earths which form an insoluble or sparingly soluble soap, these will be so many white stains in the dyed goods; when ordinary soap is put into water that has earthy salts in it, such as carbonate or sulphate of lime, these salts are decomposed by the alkali of the soap taking the acid of the salt, and greasy or

insoluble soapy spots are produced. This is often experienced when washing with soap in hard water: these spots are sources of annoyance to the dyer.

When soap is dissolved in water there should be no oily or fatty matters visible on the surface—this would indicate that too little alkali had been used in the manufacture of the soap. The following method of testing the quality of soaps is given by M. Dumas, in the *Chimie Appliquée aux Arts*, tome vi:—

“To determine the quantity of water, thin slices are cut from the edges and from the centre of the bars. A portion is then weighed, about 60 to 70 grains, and exposed to a current of air, heated to 212° Fah., or in an oil-bath until it ceases to lose weight. The dry substance is then weighed; the difference between the first and last weighing will indicate the quantity of water evaporated. If it be a soft soap it is weighed in a counterpoised shallow capsule. In good soap the amount of water varies from 30 to 45 per cent., in mottled and soft soaps, from 36 to 52 per cent.

“The purity of soap may be ascertained by treating it with hot alcohol; if the soap be white, and without admixture, the portion remaining undissolved is very minute, and a mottled soap of good quality does not leave more than about one per cent.

“If there should be a sensible amount of residue from white soap, or more than one per cent. from mottled soap, some accidental or fraudulent admixture may be suspected—silica, alumina, gelatine, &c.—the quantity and nature of which may be determined by analysis.

“The quantity of alkali contained in the soap is easily determined by means of the alkalimeter: a known quantity of the soap is dissolved in water and tried by the test acid.

“There is no difficulty in ascertaining in the same assay the quantity of the fatty substance. For this purpose 150 grains of pure white wax, free from water, are added to the liquid after saturation with the test acid, and the whole heated to complete liquefaction; it is then allowed to cool, and when it has become solid, the cake of wax and fatty matter which have united is removed and washed, dried and weighed; the augmentation in weight beyond the 150 grains employed will give the weight of the fatty matter.

“The liquid decanted from the solidified wax may afterwards be tested to ascertain the purity of the base.

“The solution of the sulphate may also be evaporated, and by an examination of its crystalline form, or by means of chloride of platinum, it may be ascertained whether the base be soda or potash, or a mixture of the two.

“As to the nature of the fatty substance, it is ascertained, with more or less certainty, by saturating the solution of the soap with tartaric acid, collecting the fat acids, and taking their point of fusion. It is possible, at least, by this to prove the identity or the absence of identity with the

sample in the soap supplied, for instance whether it is made from oil or tallow, &c. The odour developed by the fatty acids at the moment of the decomposition of the soap by acids assisted by heat, will often indicate the nature of the fatty substance employed in its fabrication, or that at least of which the odour may prevail."

The impurities found in soaps are many, and often used to enable them to retain water. They are gelatine, dextrine, potato starch, pumice stone, silica, plaster of Paris, clay, salt, chalk, resin, and carbonate of soda.

---

#### BARIUM. (Ba 137.2.)

This is a metal having a silver-white lustre and considerable ductility; it is four times heavier than water, oxidises rapidly when exposed to the air, forming barytes; it is one of those substances termed earths, and has strong alkaline properties. This earth, which was decomposed and its metallic basis discovered by Sir H. Davy in 1808, exists abundantly in Nature in combination with sulphuric acid, in the form of sulphate of barytes (*heavy spar*), and with carbonic acid forming carbonate of barytes, both insoluble. The soluble salts are generally prepared from the sulphate, which is ground fine, mixed with charcoal, and kept at a strong red heat in a crucible for about an hour. Sulphide of barium is thus formed. This is acted upon by nitric or hydrochloric acid, to form the nitrate or chloride, according as one acid or the other is used. These salts may also be obtained from the carbonate direct by merely digesting the mineral in the acid. The sulphate is occasionally used for giving weight to goods and diluting pigment colours in calico-printing.

CHLORIDE OF BARIUM is a crystalline salt; 100 parts of cold water dissolve about 43 parts of it. A solution of this salt forms the common test for the presence of sulphuric acid in any substance.

NITRATE OF BARYTES is also a crystalline salt, but not so soluble in water; 100 parts of cold water dissolve only about  $8\frac{1}{2}$  parts of it. The affinity of barytes for sulphuric acid is so great, it takes it from every soluble substance, and forms with it an insoluble precipitate. Hence it is that barytes is pre-eminently the test for sulphuric acid.

The Acetate of Barytes is sometimes used to precipitate the sulphuric acid of alum and form an acetate of alumina; but this use of the salt is not very extensive.

---

#### STRONTIUM. (Sr 87.5.)

This is a metal very similar to barium in appearance and properties. Its oxide is termed Strontia. It is another of the earths which has alkaline properties, and which occurs in Nature in combination with carbonic and sulphuric acids, although not very abundantly. The soluble salts are prepared from the carbonate, by acting upon it with nitric or hydrochloric acids by which are formed nitrate of strontia, or chloride of strontium, both

crystallisable salts. Their solutions precipitate sulphuric acid, but not so fully as the solutions of barytes. The salts of strontium are used for fireworks, having the property of communicating a red colour to flame.

---

CALCIUM. (Ca 40.)

This is a metal the oxide of which is lime—one of the most widely diffused of all the earths, and also one of the most generally useful. It exists abundantly in Nature as carbonate and sulphate of lime. Ordinary limestone, chalk, marble, &c., are carbonates; gypsum, plaster of Paris, &c., are sulphates.

CAUSTIC LIME, or calcium oxide, is obtained by heating the carbonate to redness—as done in the ordinary process of lime-burning in a kiln. The carbonic acid is driven off, and caustic or burned lime remains. Caustic lime combines rapidly with one equivalent of water, becoming a hydrate, and falls into a fine powder, commonly termed *slaked lime*. During this operation, much heat is evolved from the water passing from a fluid to a solid state in combining with the lime.

Lime is soluble in water, and the solution is termed lime water. It has an alkaline reaction, and is much used in the dye-house. It takes 78 gallons of water at 60° to dissolve one pound of lime; 97 gallons at 130°; and 127 gallons at 212°. So that cold water dissolves more lime than hot water; and the practice of putting boiling water upon lime, in order to get a strong solution, is erroneous. When a boiler is filled with cold lime water and brought to a boil, as when oranges are to be raised, we see why there is always a quantity of powder deposited; for, as the hot water does not hold the same quantity of lime in solution as the cold, the surplus is deposited in fine crystalline grains. Lime water exposed to the air absorbs carbonic acid rapidly, forming thin pellicles on the surface, which, falling down from time to time, the lime in the solution ultimately gets all deposited. Lime in solution is extensively used in the dye-house, and will be referred to when describing the operations in which it is used.

Lime combines with different acids, forming a series of salts, most of which are of little practical use to the dyer. With hydrochloric acid it forms the chloride of calcium—a very deliquescent salt, which is sometimes on that account used for absorbing moisture from gases, &c. It is formed in the spontaneous decomposition of bleaching powder, which it makes damp. (See page 59.)

SULPHATE OF LIME.—Sulphuric acid and lime have a strong affinity for each other, forming sulphate of lime or gypsum. It is nearly insoluble in water, and is formed in the common blue vat by the lime decomposing the sulphate of iron. It is held in solution in very minute quantities in some spring waters.



CARBONATE OF LIME (*Limestone*) is insoluble in water, but if the water holds carbonic acid in solution there is formed a bicarbonate of lime, which is slightly soluble in water.

The best test for the presence of lime is a solution of oxalate of ammonia, which gives with lime a white precipitate.

---

#### MAGNESIUM. (Mg 24.)

This is a silver-white metal, ductile and hard; it oxidises rapidly when exposed to moist air or water. It has of late become of great importance in many operations of philosophical research from its property of burning in the air. When made into wire or thin plates and heated at one end, it burns and gives out an intense white light; it continues to burn like an organic substance, giving ample time for taking photographs by it, and examining dark places, &c., leaving a white ash of pure magnesia.

MAGNESIA.—This oxide is the well-known alkaline earth magnesia, which is found abundant in Nature in the state of carbonate. There are immense beds of it in combination with lime, termed magnesian limestone. The carbonate is soluble in water, which contains free carbonic acid, and imparts to the water a slightly alkaline reaction. Magnesia combines with the acids, and forms with them a series of salts of considerable importance in several manufactures and in medicine, but they are not much used in dyeing. The salt principally used is the sulphate (Epsom salt), which is easily prepared by saturating magnesia or carbonate of magnesia with sulphuric acid, and evaporating the solution to crystallise the salt. Salts of magnesia are found in several springs; such salts in water are very bad for delicate colours. The best test for its presence is phosphate of soda, with which, after long stirring, it gives a white precipitate, even with very minute quantities.

---

#### ALUMINUM. (Al 27.3.)

The metal aluminum is obtained by decomposing a compound of chloride of sodium and aluminum by heating it with sodium. It is a white metal resembling zinc in colour and hardness, and is both malleable and ductile. It preserves its brightness in the air, and is now much used for trinkets and also for some philosophical purposes; it is very light and used for making fine weights for chemical purposes. It is easily dissolved in hydrochloric acid; it forms alloys with copper resembling gold, which are used for cheap jewellery.

ALUMINA.—There is only one oxide of aluminum,  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ . This is termed alumina, which is the pure plastic principle of clay, and is exceedingly abundant in Nature. It combines with acids, forming salts.

ALUM.—Alumina is easily dissolved in sulphuric acid, forming the sulphate of alumina, which crystallises with much difficulty; but this

salt has a strong affinity for some other sulphates, such as the sulphate of potash, so that when these two salts are mixed, or when a salt of potash is added to a strong solution of sulphate of alumina, they combine and form common alum, which is easily crystallised. This is what chemists denominate a double salt, being composed of two sulphates—the sulphate of alumina and the sulphate of potash. This salt has been known, and in general use among dyers, since the earliest accounts we have of their processes; but the true nature of its composition was not known till the present century. The alchemists knew that sulphuric acid was one of its constituents; and during the last century it was discovered that the precipitate which falls when the acid is neutralised by an alkali, was a particular kind of earth which chemists called alumina, because of its being obtained from alum. Amongst other peculiar properties of alumina it has a strong attraction for organic matter, which it withdraws from solutions with such force, that if the purest water be not used when preparing it, the alumina is coloured; and when digested in solutions of vegetable colouring matters, provided the alumina be in sufficient quantity, it will carry down all the colouring matter from the liquid. By this means the pigments called lakes are formed, and it is this property that makes it so valuable as a mordant. The fibre of cotton, when charged with this earth, attracts and retains colouring matters.

A very pure alum is obtained in the Roman States from *alum stone*, a mineral which is continually produced at the Solfatara, near Naples, and other volcanic districts, by the joint action of sulphurous acid and oxygen upon some of the felspathic rocks. This mineral contains an insoluble subsulphate of alumina with sulphate of potash; but it is partially decomposed by heat; so that, for the preparation of alum, the mineral is simply heated, till sulphurous acid begins to escape, and is then treated with water, by which process a very pure and excellent alum is procured—much superior to that manufactured in this country. A large proportion of the alum of this country is manufactured from a mineral termed *alum shale*, a kind of clay slate much impregnated with sulphide of iron, which is essential to this mode of manufacture. The general composition of this *alum ore*, as it is also called, is as follows, observing that the proportions of the several components vary according to the depth from which the ore is obtained: the table is therefore to be considered as giving only the average constitution:—

Sulphide of iron,	.	.	.	.	26·5
Oxide of iron,	.	.	.	.	3·1
Alumina,	.	.	.	.	18·3
Silica,	.	.	.	.	10·5
Lime and magnesia,	.	.	.	.	3·0
Magnesia, potash, soda,	.	.	.	.	1·4
Coaly matter,	.	.	.	.	28·7
Water,	.	.	.	.	8·5

---

 100·0

The ore is built up in large heaps with alternate layers of coal: these heaps are set on fire, and allowed to burn for several weeks. During this roasting process, a portion of the sulphur is expelled as sulphurous gas; but the greater portion of it is converted into sulphuric acid, by taking a proportion of oxygen from the peroxide of iron formed in the burning. The sulphuric acid does not, however, remain isolated, but combines with the iron and alumina, and forms sulphates. The roasting being completed, the material of the heap is removed to large tanks or pits, into which water is allowed to flow, which dissolves out the sulphates formed in the roasting process. The solution is run into large tanks or pans and evaporated, either by causing a current of dry heated air to pass over the surface of the liquid or by fire. When the solution is sufficiently concentrated, the sulphate of iron crystallises, and is then removed; the sulphate of alumina being very difficult to crystallise, remains in solution. All the iron having by this means been separated, the sulphate of alumina in solution is removed to other vessels, where there is added to it sulphate of potash, chloride of potassium, or other salts of potash. There is then formed the double salt of potash and alumina (*alum*), which, after a few days standing, crystallises, and is removed and packed for the market. There are some modifications of this process adopted by different makers, but this description exhibits the general practice of the manufacture, and illustrates sufficiently the principle upon which the practice is necessarily based. Large quantities of alum are also manufactured by digesting pure clay, previously calcined in strong vitriol, by which means sulphate of alumina is formed, which is afterwards treated with salts of potash, as described above.

Soda or its salts may be used in the operation instead of potash, these would give a soda alum; but, notwithstanding its being cheaper, there are practical objections to it. Soda alum is not so easily crystallised as common alum, and it effloresces when exposed to the air, which makes it take the appearance of a dry powder. Sulphate of ammonia may also be used instead of potash, giving an ammonia alum, which, however, is expensive, and possesses no corresponding advantage over the ordinary article.

The following analysis by Dr. Thomson, of the alum made in in this country, will be useful:—

Potash, .....	9.86	} Symbols. KAl <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> + 12H <sub>2</sub> O.
Alumina, .....	11.09	
Sulphuric acid, .....	32.85	
Water, .....	46.20	
<hr/>		
100.00		

Thus every 100 lbs. of alum contain 46 lbs. of water. From the nature of the processes by which the alum is manufactured, we may expect it to contain small traces of sulphate of iron, a substance very deleterious to its

use as a mordant or alterant. Iron may be detected by dissolving a little of the alum in distilled water, and adding a few drops of a solution of red prussiate of potash; or boiling a little with the addition of a few drops of nitric acid, and adding yellow prussiate of potash. In both cases a deep blue colour is immediately produced if iron is present. The addition to a solution of alum of a few drops of gallic acid will give a black colour if iron be present. Or, if a little alum be put into a vessel, and caustic potash added till the solution is strongly alkaline, then the whole boiled and set aside to cool and settle, the alumina will be dissolved, and if iron be present, it will subside to the bottom as a brownish precipitate. When the proportion of iron is considerable, it is better to reject the alum altogether, especially for bright light shades. We have often experienced bad effects from the use of such alum upon light shades when dyeing to a particular pattern. Having obtained the particular depth of shade, and adding a little alum as *raising*, the iron, by combining with the sumach upon the cloth, produced a colour two or three shades darker than required, leaving no alternative but to take off the colour and dye anew—a process much more difficult, and which produces a colour much less brilliant than is the first.

Pure alum is soluble in water, and should give a colourless solution.

One gallon of water at 54° Fah. dissolves 1 lb. alum.				
One	„	86°	2	„
One	„	140°	3	„
One	„	158°	9	„
One	„	212°	35	„

Alum forms but a weak mordant for cotton goods, owing, probably, to the strong attraction which the sulphuric acid has for the alumina; there are three proportions of acid to every two of alumina. But if we neutralise a portion of the acid, so that no more remains than is necessary to hold the alumina in solution, which, according to experiment, is not above a third of the acid contained in common alum, its properties as a mordant are greatly improved. This may be done by taking a quantity of carbonate of soda in solution, and adding this gradually to the alum solution, stirring all the time: the alumina is at first precipitated; but by keeping up the agitation, the precipitate again dissolves: continue till all the precipitate is redissolved. In this state alum is a more powerful mordant for cotton, as the base is held more feebly by the sulphuric acid, and is readily detached by the superior affinity of the cloth to form a mordant; and thus prepared, it is perfectly pure—any iron formerly present is precipitated in the process. Alum in this state is known by the name of cubical or basic alum, from the form in which it crystallises. We have already referred to Roman alum being superior to other alums.

This cubical alum, as it is termed, is also prepared on the large scale, by boiling twelve parts of alum with one part of pure slaked lime. On



cooling, the alum crystallises, or the solution may be used without crystallising and redissolving. The composition of alum prepared in this way is—

Sulphuric acid,.....	33·95
Alumina,.....	11·40
Potash,.....	9·04
Water,.....	45·61
	<hr/>
	100·00

**SULPHATE OF ALUMINA.**—We have already stated above that alum is occasionally made by digesting clay in vitriol. There is a large quantity of sulphate of alumina made in this way; and instead of converting it into alum, the solution is evaporated to dryness, and the salts caked and sold as cake alum, or patent alum. This salt is seldom pure, and very irregular in composition. It is not well suited for light dyes, but may be used for some dark shade and for the preparation of other aluminous salts; it contains more alumina than alum.

**ACETATE OF ALUMINA.**—The most common, and we believe the best method of using alumina as a mordant for cotton, is by substituting acetic acid for sulphuric acid in combination with it. The acetate of alumina has several advantages over the sulphate: 1st, the acetic acid is not so hurtful in its action upon the vegetable colouring matters; 2nd, it holds the alumina with much less force than sulphuric acid, and consequently yields it much more freely to the cloth; and 3rd, being volatile, a great portion of the acid flies off during the process of drying. When strong colours are wanted, and the mordant is of such a nature as will admit of being dried, it is better to dry the cloth from the mordant previous to dyeing. This last property of acetic acid is, therefore, very convenient, as it frees the cloth from any superfluous acid which may have been in the mordant; besides, it has been found that during the drying by heat, the soluble acetate is converted into a less soluble subacetate. We may here put the dyer in mind that when goods containing volatile acids are drying, no other kind of goods should be allowed to be in the same apartment, as the acid will be absorbed by them, and will affect almost any colour that either has been or may be put upon them. Many unpleasant and also expensive consequences occur from the neglect of these precautions.

The acetate of alumina is easily prepared by mixing a solution of acetate of barytes, lime, or lead with alum. When any of these salts are added to alum, a double decomposition takes place; the sulphuric acid of the alum combines with the base of the salt, which falls to the bottom, and the acetic acid unites with the alumina, forming acetate of alumina, which remains in solution mixed with the sulphate of potash, which formed a constituent of the alum. The acetate of lead is the salt generally used for this purpose in the dye-house; the proportions of the lead and alum are seldom taken in their equivalents, but vary according to the nature of

the colour to be dyed, or rather, the peculiar taste of the dyer, for the preparation of this substance is one of those operations which every one who practises it thinks he has the best method; but so far as we have had an opportunity of knowing, the superiority only existed in the mind of the individual, or rather in its being his secret. In the proportions generally used for the preparation of this mordant there is never a sufficient quantity of acetate of lead to precipitate all the sulphuric acid in the alum. The alum having 4 equivalents of sulphuric acid, would require 4 equivalents of acetic acid to take its place. Thus—

Alum contains, exclusive of water,	{	2 Al.....	—	Acetate of alumina.
		3 SO <sub>4</sub> .....	—	Acetate of potash.
		1 K.....	—	Acetate of potash.
		1 SO <sub>4</sub> .....	—	Acetate of potash.
It would take 4 proportions acetate lead.	{	3 Acetic acid	—	Sulphate lead.
		1 Acetic acid	—	Sulphate lead.
		4 Pb.....	—	Sulphate lead.

So that the proper equivalent of acetate of lead is as near as possible  $6\frac{3}{4}$  lbs. to  $4\frac{3}{4}$  lbs. of alum. This is far from the proportions used, shewing that the mordant is not a pure acetate of alumina, but a mixture of salts, probably of cubic alum, with acetate of alumina and sulphate of potash.

The following method and proportions for dyeing light shades on fine muslin cloths we have generally found to answer very well:—Into a boiler or pot put 20 lbs. of crystallised alum with about 9 gallons water, and boil till the alum is completely dissolved. In a separate vessel dissolve 20 lbs. of acetate of lead in about 3 gallons of boiling water. This is added to the alum while at a boiling heat, and well stirred. The sulphuric acid combines with the lead, forming an insoluble sulphate of lead, which falls to the bottom as a heavy white precipitate; the soluble part constitutes the mordant. The differences in the preparation of this mordant lie in the proportion of lead varying from one-half to equal weights with that of the alum. There is also added to the alum and lead a quantity of carbonate of soda, varying from 4 to 8 ounces to the 5 pounds of alum. This is added for the purpose of neutralising a portion of the acid; but there are many dyers who will not use soda or any other alkaline substance when light bright shades are wanted, under the impression that the colour is much brighter without alkalies. Some use lime; soda, however, is best. Without soda or some other alkaline substance, the mordant is not so effective. There are also some who object to the use of soda, as it throws down the alumina; but we have already noticed that a very little acid holds the alumina in solution; so that although soda, when added to the acetate of alumina, appears to precipitate the alumina, by a little agitation the precipitate is again dissolved, forming a mordant better adapted for a strong colour. From the following recipes, taken from a French work on dyeing, it will be observed that the quantities of the aluminous mordants are similar both in England and France:—

60 gallons boiling water,	}	This mordant is best adapted for reds.
100 pounds alum,		
100 pounds acetate of lead,		
10 pounds crystallised soda,		

80 gallons boiling water,	}	This is the best for bright yellows.
100 pounds alum,		
50 pounds acetate of lead,		
6 pounds soda,		

In addition to the above, Dr. Ure, in his *Dictionary of the Arts and Manufactures*, article "Calico-Printing," gives another proportion—

50 gallons boiling water.  
 100 pounds alum.  
 75 pounds acetate of lead.  
 10 pounds soda.

The following curious phenomenon was observed by Gay Lussac—viz., that the solution of a pure salt of the acetate of alumina may be boiled without decomposition; but if sulphate of potash, or any other neutral salt of an alkali, be present, the solution becomes turbid when heated, and a basic salt precipitates, which dissolves again on cooling. Now the acetate of alumina prepared from the common alum always contains sulphate of potash. If by the presence of this salt a portion of the acetate of alumina is thrown down when hot, and incorporated with the sulphate of lead, which falls in a very dense state, it may there be lost to the dyer. After decanting the clear acetate, put a quantity of cold water on the precipitate and stir well, and when it settles remove the clear and mix with the first.

Nearly all the acetate of alumina used in dyeing is prepared from pyroligneous acid, as a separate manufacture, and sold to the dyer in a liquid state ready for use; it is called by calico-printers *red liquor*, but by dyers *mordant*. No other substance is distinguished as mordant. All other mordants have their technical names. The pyroligneous acid is one of the products of the destructive distillation of wood. The hardwoods, such as oak, ash, birch, and beech alone are used: they are put into large cast-iron cylinders, so constructed that a fire plays about them so as to keep them at a red heat, and having openings through which all volatile matter escapes by pipes, which lead into condensing vats. The products thus obtained consist principally of pyroligneous acid, mixed with a black tarry matter, having a very strong smell, from which the acid had its name, although it has been long since known that it is simply acetic acid (vinegar). There is a great variety of other substances present, some of which have very singular properties, such as pyroxilic spirit, or mithylene. The products of the distillation of the wood are allowed to stand for some time, after which as much of the tarry matter as swims is skimmed off; the remainder is filtered and is put into a boiler and heated a little, and lime

added by degrees, till the acid is neutralised; then a quantity of lime is added in excess, and the whole is made to boil; this throws up the tarry matter to the top, where it is taken off. When it is purified as much as it can be by this means, it is syphoned off into another boiler, and a quantity of alum is added; the acetate of lime, the sulphate of alumina and potash mutually decompose each other; the sulphate of lime falls to the bottom, and the acetate of alumina remains in solution, which is the red liquor or mordant of the dyers. When sent to the dyers it has a specific gravity of 1,090 (18 Twaddell), although it is often weaker. It has a dark-brown colour, and a very strong pyromatic odour. When the acetic acid is wanted pure, it passes through a number of other processes, which do not come within our province to describe in this place.

There are considerable differences in the quality of red liquor, which the mere specific gravity does not indicate; the specific gravity can be brought up by the addition of foreign matters, such as British gum, dextrine, and such like. A very simple method may be adopted to test the effective quality of the mordant:—Take a little of the liquor and evaporate to dryness, then burn the residue at a red heat until white in colour; put this into distilled water, which will dissolve out all but the alumina. Another way is by digesting a little of the red liquor in nitric acid, adding ammonia until the liquor smells of it, and then by filtering, the alumina is obtained upon the filter-paper, which is dried and weighed. We will give four varieties here, to shew the variableness in quality of the liquor as supplied to the dyer. The quantity given refers to the percentage in solution:—

English red liquor—14° Twadd....	{	acetate of alumina.....	15·3
		sulphate of potash.....	·8
			<hr/> 16·1
Scotch, No. 1— 13½° Twadd....	{	acetate of alumina.....	11·5
		sulphate of potash.....	2·3
			<hr/> 13·8
Scotch, No. 2— 14° Twadd....	{	acetate of alumina.....	14·
		sulphate of potash.....	1·2
			<hr/> 15·2
Scotch, No. 3— 15° Twadd....	{	acetate of alumina.....	12·2
		sulphate of potash.....	2·6
			<hr/> 14·8

We have given these varieties to shew how little reliance ought to be placed on the indications of the hydrometer. No. 3 is of a higher specific gravity than the English red liquor, but far inferior as a mordant. Again, such a mordant as No. 1 has a tendency to make light spots upon goods dyed green by fustic or bark, the alumina being the effective agent in the red liquor. The above is an ample illustration of the necessity of some better mode of testing than by the hydrometer.



During the various applications of these aluminous mordants and the manipulations attending them, many curious and interesting chemical phenomena are witnessed by the dyer, although his familiarity with them often prevents any particular remark; we shall instance one or two of those attendant upon the process of dyeing madder reds by means of acetate of alumina. The cloth to be dyed is first thoroughly bleached and dried, it is then padded or soaked in acetate of alumina, about the specific gravity of 1,040 (8 Twaddell), and passed at full breadth through *nipping* rollers (squeezers). These are large rollers covered with cloth, which revolve one upon another. The pressure upon the piece, as it passes through for the purpose we are describing, ought to be such that it will dry in five minutes, on passing over rollers in a stove heated to 160° Fah. Pieces mordanted with acetate of alumina and dried at a great heat, are highly charged with electricity. If the hand be suddenly drawn along the piece, a complete shower of fire is observed, with a sharp cracking noise, at the same time a prickling sensation is felt. Whether this has any effect upon the mordant, in its immediately combining with other substances, we do not know; but cloth in this state is very difficult to moisten: water runs off it as off a duck's wing; but we offer no explanation. After being dried, the goods are passed through a dung bath, made up with about one part cow's dung to fifty parts water, at a heat of 130° Fahrenheit; from this they are well washed through the dash wheel. Into a boiler of cold water is put from one to three pounds of madder, according to the colour wanted, for every pound of cloth. The cloth is put in, and a fire is kindled under the boiler, and so regulated that it will boil in two hours, during which time the cloth is kept running over a *winch* or wheel, first in one direction and then in the other, and kept spread as much as possible, so that the whole surface may be equally exposed to the dyeing operation. The infusion is kept at the boiling point from twenty to thirty minutes: this, with washing first through bran and then water, completes the dyeing operation. If a white pattern be wanted upon these reds, the pattern is printed upon the goods with citric acid (about 25° of Twaddell, thickened with pipe-clay and gum), about twelve or twenty-four hours after being dried from the mordant. This decomposes the aluminous mordant upon these parts, so that no dye adheres to them afterwards. It is of the utmost consequence that the goods be thoroughly cooled previous to printing on the resist, otherwise there is danger of it not being successful.

Owing to differences in the manipulation, or a little variation upon some of these processes, several curious changes take place upon the mordant. For example, were the pieces merely washed with water from the mordant, previous to printing on the resist acid, although the treatment were every way else the same, the discharge of the mordant is not effected; those parts upon which the citric acid is printed will be scarcely observable after the cloth is dyed, while in the other case they are perfectly white.

A somewhat similar result, in reference to the action of the discharge

acid, takes place if the heat of the stove in which the goods are dried from the mordant exceeds a certain temperature, or if dried upon steam rollers. No acid printed upon the cloth after this will produce a white, except it be of a strength that will destroy the fabric of the goods; besides this, the colours afterwards dyed upon mordants heated in this manner are extremely bad, being heavy and dull.

Various opinions have been offered by practical men upon the probable cause of these changes: some suppose that by the excess of heat the acetate of alumina is altogether decomposed, the acetic acid flying off, and the alumina left in the goods adhering with such an affinity, that it requires a stronger acid than the cloth will bear to disengage it; but from the similarity of the effects which take place by merely washing the piece from the mordant, this opinion is liable to objection, for the subacetate of alumina is not decomposed by washing with water; however, different causes may produce the same effects. If this opinion be correct, the circumstance of a bad colour resulting from the acetate being decomposed, will be a proof that it is not the alumina alone which constitutes a mordant, but its salt; in this case, it is the subacetate of alumina—the acetic acid being an essential ingredient to the dyeing process. This we are inclined to believe, for in those mordants, as we have already stated, where the acid can be separated by washing, the proper colour is not produced until some salt or acid be added to the colouring matter as an alterant. It is supposed by some writers that the dunging and washing extract the acid from the mordant, and leave the base upon the cloth. This we conceive to be an error; for although the part which dung acts in these processes is not well understood, yet, from the analysis of this substance, and the nature of the salts which are supposed to be useful in these operations, there is no probability of the aluminous salt being decomposed. One principal use of the dung bath is to combine with and carry off any loose or supernatant mordant which may be upon the cloth, not combined, and which might affect the colour, or more particularly the parts wanted to be white.

Alumina combines with all the acids, forming salts similar to those already described, and all difficult to crystallise, except as double salts—such as alum—which they form with other salts besides those named; but none of the others have been introduced into the dye-house.

Alumina, as an earth, is of great value in many other arts, as in pottery, brickmaking, &c. It also forms the bases of some of the finest precious stones: the sapphire and ruby, for example, are nearly pure alumina.

The salts of alumina, such as alum, act towards other salts and reagents, as under:—

Potash .....	White precipitate, which is redissolved in an excess of the precipitant.
Ammonia .....	White precipitate, insoluble in an excess of the precipitant.

Carbonate of potash.....White precipitate, not soluble in an excess of the precipitant, but soluble in caustic potash.

Caustic soda and its carbonate act in the same way as caustic potash and its carbonate.

Carbonate of ammonia and phosphate of soda act in the same way as carbonate of potash.

All these precipitates are soluble in acids.

Oxalic acid .....No precipitate.

Yellow prussiate of potash.....Precipitate, after standing for some time.

Red prussiate of potash .....No precipitate.

All these precipitates of alumina have a bulky and a kind of plastic appearance, easily recognised and distinguished.

When a substance containing alumina is heated to redness, especially before the blowpipe, and is touched with a solution of nitrate of cobalt, and then again heated, it takes a beautiful blue colour. In this way a very small portion of alumina may be detected in any solid substance; but when the substance is in solution, it must be detected by the reaction of some of the re-agents given above. It may also be noticed, that when operating to obtain a precipitate, it is necessary to be careful that only pure water is used for washing the precipitate. If the water is not pure, the precipitate will attract the impurity, especially if it consists of any organic matters, and thus become tinged, and assume an appearance as if iron were present.

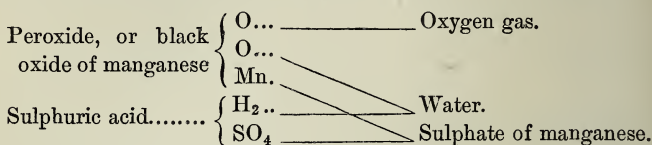
The next general division of chemical elements consists of the METALS PROPER. These are very numerous; but a great many of them are so rare that they have been seen by a very few chemists, and are only obtained in particular localities, consequently their properties have not been much investigated, and no practical applications have been made of them. Of these a very short description will suffice, so that our remarks may be more extended upon those which have a known practical value.

#### MANGANESE (Mn 54).

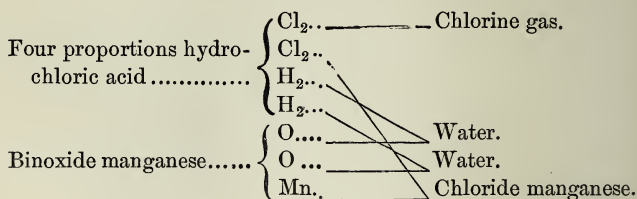
This metal is not found in Nature in a metallic state, but exists abundantly in combination with oxygen. From this circumstance it was long considered a species of earth, like magnesia, and was consequently called *magnesia nigra*; but it was discovered to be the oxide of a metal in 1774 by Scheele and Gahn, and was then named manganese.

As a metal, it has a greyish-white lustre, resembling cast iron; it is very difficult to fuse, and it combines with oxygen so quickly that it cannot be kept in the open air. It passes into several states of oxidation. The

one in which it generally exists in nature is the peroxide or dioxide, having 2 proportions of oxygen to 1 of metal =  $\text{MnO}_2$ . When this oxide is heated at a low red heat, it loses a part of its oxygen, and passes into the state of sesquioxide =  $\text{Mn}_2\text{O}_3$ . When heated to bright redness, it loses more oxygen, and becomes what is termed red oxide, or a mixture of the protoxide  $\text{MnO}$  and of the sesquioxide  $\text{Mn}_2\text{O}_3$ . The peroxide does not unite with either acids or alkalies. When boiled with sulphuric acid, one proportion of the oxygen is evolved, and the protoxide  $\text{MnO}$  unites with the acid, and forms sulphate of manganese, which is used in dyeing.



When the peroxide is digested in hydrochloric acid, chlorine is evolved, and chloride of manganese formed. This is often done in houses for the purpose of fumigation. The reaction is thus expressed:—



The oxide of manganese is extensively used in the manufacture of bleaching powder, for obtaining the chlorine from common salt. (See page 49.)

Manganese combines with almost all the acids forming salts, which in their crystallised or dry state have less or more of a pinky hue. In making these salts from the peroxide, there is always oxygen liberated; they are therefore all what are termed salts of the protoxide. But by removing the acid the protoxide soon combines with more oxygen, and becomes brown. It is this circumstance that has made it applicable in dyeing. In preparing any of the salts of manganese for dyeing purposes, care should be taken that the salt is free of iron, as that metal is deleterious. The sulphate of manganese may be freed from iron by exposing it to a red heat, then dissolving the residue in water. By this means the iron present is peroxidised, it is thus rendered insoluble, and consequently sinks to the bottom.

When cotton is passed through a solution of sulphate of manganese, and then through a weak solution of an alkali, the manganese oxide is left within the fibre, and by exposure becomes brown by attracting more oxygen. Or if the cloth be immediately passed through a solution of weak



bleaching liquor, the protoxide is converted into a higher oxide without exposure. This is the method generally adopted; it gives a brown, which is dull and heavy, wants lustre, but is very permanent.

**MINERAL CAMELEON.**—When peroxide of manganese is fused with carbonate or caustic potash, there is formed what has been long known as the *mineral cameleon*. When this is put into water it produces first a deep green solution, which passes rapidly to a red by absorbing oxygen. It illustrates very forcibly the effects of oxygen in changing the colour of substances, and the rapidity with which these changes take place; thus teaching the necessity of attending to every condition, no matter how apparently trifling, as often the merest trifle may be of the greatest consequence in a process.

Manganate of soda is now prepared on the large scale by heating a mixture of caustic soda and finely-powdered manganese oxide to dull redness for several hours. Solutions of this compound forms Condry's disinfectant liquid, which is now very extensively used in disinfecting houses and clothes. A little of this liquid put into a tub of water, and infected clothes put into it for a short time, removes infection, and will not stain the cloth. Caustic potash may be used instead of soda in preparing this salt.

The salts of manganese, in solution, are affected by the following re-agents:—

Potash, . . . . .	Brown precipitate.
Soda and ammonia, . . . . .	Brown precipitate.
Carbonates of potash and soda, . . . . .	Brown precipitate.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . . .	Dirty-green precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . . .	Brown precipitate.

Manganese is easily detected by this general property of turning brown when exposed to the air, and giving a brown with all the alkaline re-agents.

---

### IRON (Fe 56).

This is one of the most useful, generally diffused, and abundant of the metals. There is almost no substance, whether organic or inorganic, quite free from iron. Its uses in the various arts and purposes of life are innumerable. The most common iron ores of this country are the black and clay-band iron-stones, of which there are several varieties, and in which the iron exists as a carbonate along with silica, alumina, carbon, and a little sulphur. The ore is first calcined at a red heat, which expels the carbonic acid and sulphur; it is then mixed up with limestone and coal, and put into a blast-furnace, and subjected to intense heat, the effect of which is, that the silica and alumina combine with the lime and form glass; the coal takes the oxygen from the iron, and passes off with it as carbonic acid; the metal meantime fuses, and, in consequence of

its superior gravity, sinks to the bottom of the furnace, while the glass and scoræ float above it, and are run off separately when the furnace is tapped.

Iron combines with oxygen in two proportions—

Protoxide of iron,	. . . .	FeO.
Peroxide of iron,	. . . .	Fe <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> .

Both of these oxides unite with acids, and form with them two classes of salts, distinguished from each other by affixing *pro* and *per* to their names. Both salts are extensively used in the dye-house.

There is also what is termed the black or magnetic oxide of iron, which is found as a distinct mineral in Nature; and, also when peroxide of iron is subjected to a high heat, it loses a part of its oxygen and forms the magnetic oxide, which is considered a compound of protoxide and peroxide  $\text{FeO} + \text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ .

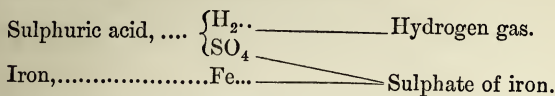
M. Fremy found what may be called a fourth oxide of iron, which he obtained in combination with potash. This oxide can be obtained by heating a mixture of nitrate of potash and peroxide of iron; a brown mass is the result, which, by digestion in water, gives a beautiful violet-red coloured solution. The compound is very soluble in water. A large quantity of water, however, decomposes it in course of time; it becomes insoluble in alkaline water, forming a brown precipitate, which readily dissolves in pure water, and affords a fine purple-coloured solution. A temperature of 212° dissolves it immediately; all organic substances decompose it; and hence it is impossible to filter the solution. When the red solution is treated with an acid, as soon as the potash is saturated oxygen is disengaged, and peroxide of iron precipitated. If the acid be in excess, it dissolves the peroxide, and gives rise to the formation of a persalt of iron. It was stated by the discoverer to possess a powerful dyeing principle; but we are not aware of its having been put to that purpose.

Protoxide of iron is very difficult to be obtained in an isolated state, on account of its great affinity for oxygen, which causes it to pass into the state of peroxide very rapidly. When an alkali is added to a protosalt of iron, the protoxide is precipitated as a hydrate of a greenish-grey colour, which, by exposure to the air, soon becomes peroxide of an ochry-red colour, as is seen almost daily in the dye-house during the dyeing of nankeen or buffs by a protosalt of iron or copperas.

The goods are dipped into the sulphate of iron solution, and then passed through lime water; the lime combines with the acid, and leaves the hydrated protoxide precipitated within or upon the fibre; the shade is then greenish, but a slight exposure peroxidises the iron, and produces the nankeen or buff. This property of the protoxide of iron of passing into the peroxide, by its strong attraction for more oxygen, is beautifully applied in some of the operations in dyeing besides the one referred to; these will be more fully described when treating of the blue vat.

SULPHATE OF IRON, OR FERROUS SULPHATE (*green vitriol* or *copperas*).—This salt is very easily prepared, merely by adding metallic iron to sul-

phuric acid, which has been diluted with three or four parts of water. The iron quickly dissolves, with a copious evolution of hydrogen gas. The reaction taking place may be thus represented—



When as much iron is dissolved as the acid will take, the solution is evaporated by heat, until a pellicle or thin skin appears on the surface. It is then set aside in a cool place, and in a short time there is formed a quantity of green-coloured crystals of sulphate of iron. These crystals contain seven proportions or equivalents of water of crystallisation, or in 100 parts

Sulphate of iron, $\text{FeSO}_4$ , . . . . .	54.5
Water, . . . . .	45.5
	<u>100.0</u>

If these crystals are heated a little above the boiling point of water, say  $238^\circ$  Fah., they part with all this water, except one equivalent, or about 10 per cent., and also lose their green colour, and become white. The crystals of sulphate of iron require the following quantities of water to dissolve them:—

1 gallon water at  $50^\circ$  Fah. dissolves 6 lbs. crystals.

1	"	$59^\circ$	"	7	"
1	"	$75^\circ$	"	$11\frac{1}{2}$	"
1	"	$109^\circ$	"	15	"
1	"	$115^\circ$	"	$22\frac{3}{4}$	"
1	"	$140^\circ$	"	$26\frac{1}{4}$	"
1	"	$183^\circ$	"	27	"
1	"	$194^\circ$	"	37	"
1	"	$212^\circ$	"	$33\frac{1}{4}$	"

This table, which is of a similar character to tables of solubility of many other substances dissolving in different quantities at certain temperatures, is interesting, and accounts for many of the circumstances occasionally observed in the dye-house, and puzzles the dyer—that sometimes the same salt seems much more difficult to dissolve at one time than at other times. It also shews why crystallisation may occur much more rapidly at one time than at another. If we note the increase of heat and solubility of sulphate of iron at different temperatures, we will see how irregular it is—

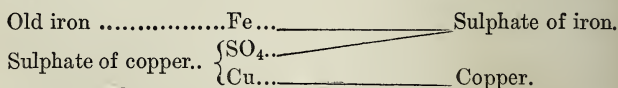
1.	An increase of $9^\circ$	dissolves 1 lb.	per gallon more than at $50^\circ$
2.	"	$16^\circ$	" $4\frac{1}{2}$ " " $59^\circ$
3.	"	$34^\circ$	" $3\frac{1}{2}$ " " $75^\circ$
4.	"	$6^\circ$	" $7\frac{3}{4}$ " " $109^\circ$
5.	"	$25^\circ$	" $3\frac{1}{2}$ " " $115^\circ$
6.	"	$43^\circ$	" $0\frac{3}{4}$ " " $140^\circ$
7.	"	$11^\circ$	" 10 " " $183^\circ$
8.	"	$18^\circ$	" $3\frac{1}{4}$ " " less than $194^\circ$

Ten gallons water, at  $194^{\circ}$ , will dissolve 100 lbs. more copperas than the same quantity of water will do at  $183^{\circ}$ , only  $11^{\circ}$  colder—a fact quite sufficient to account for many of the phenomena which exist in the practical operations of the dye-house, when saturated solutions are used without paying attention to the temperature of the solution. At  $50^{\circ}$  a gallon contains 6 lbs.; at  $194^{\circ}$ , 37 lbs.

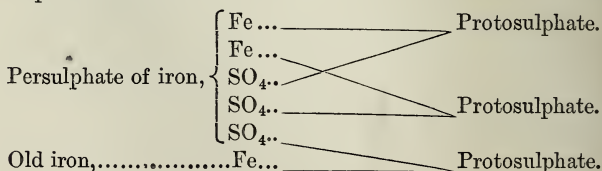
The sulphate of iron of commerce is not made by dissolving metallic iron in acid, which would be too expensive a process, but from the sulphide ores of iron (iron pyrites).

We have already, in treating of alum, given an account of how a great quantity of the copperas of commerce is obtained; but there are numerous and extensive places for manufacturing this salt alone, where no alum is made. The operations are, however, nearly the same as those described for alum.

Iron pyrites is a bisulphide of iron,  $\text{FeS}_2$ ; in 100 parts it has 52 of sulphur and 48 of iron. This compound, when obtained from the older geological formations, undergoes spontaneous decomposition by exposure to the air and moisture; the sulphur combines with the oxygen of the air, and forms sulphurous acid, which again, in the presence of water and peroxide of iron, takes more oxygen, and becomes sulphuric acid, which combines with the iron forming sulphate. Generally the pyrites is made into large heaps, and set on fire, in the same manner as the alum-shale is treated in the preparatory process of the alum manufacture. This roasting causes the rapid oxidation of the sulphur, and consequent formation of the sulphate of iron, which is afterwards dissolved out, by passing water through the heaps, and collecting it into tanks. Owing to the excess of sulphur over the iron, there is generally in the solution an excess of acid, with some persulphate of iron, and often small quantities of copper, which would be deleterious. To get rid of this, a quantity of old iron is put into the solution, which takes up the excess of acid at the same time that it precipitates the copper from the solution, and reduces the persalt to the protosalt thus—



The reduction of the persulphate of iron to the state of protosulphate may be represented thus—



The solution is then evaporated to a proper density and crystallised. This method of adding old iron to produce the changes described, not being in



all cases adopted, gives rise to some of the varieties of copperas found in the market, concerning which there is great prejudice in the minds of dyers.

M. Dumas considered the variations in this salt to arise from the formation of a double salt of the *proto* and *per* sulphate, during the decomposition of the pyrites. M. Bansdorff (*Records of General Science*) states, that there are three varieties of the protosulphate of iron: the first, greenish-blue, formed from an acid solution free from peroxide; the second, dirty-green, from a neutral solution without peroxide; and the last, emerald-green, from a solution impregnated with peroxide salt. This we know is consistent with the opinion of practical dyers—that answering the description of his second variety being considered the best for general use; but the selection of this particular quality of copperas has led dyers into a fatal prejudice. Sulphate of iron crystallised from a neutral solution, if kept any time, assumes a rusty appearance by absorbing oxygen, and forming a film of peroxide of iron. Now, good copperas having generally this appearance, especially on the surface of the cask when opened, dyers pretty generally entertain the opinion that it is to this redness it owes its superior quality. This, we need hardly say, is an erroneous opinion, concerning which, Mr. Parkes mentions in his *Chemical Essays*, that some unprincipled dealers take the advantage to sprinkle lime on the top of the cask to peroxidise the surface, and make the dyers believe that they have got a lot of excellent old copperas.

As copperas is generally judged of by the colour, a dark-green being preferred, it should be remembered that the worst coloured copperas can be doctored by a solution of common salt or of lime sprinkled upon it, to give it a dark tint; but although this may deceive the eye, it does not improve its bad qualities.

Copperas, crystallised from solutions of sulphate of alumina, will have an acid reaction, and is not good when used for some of the purposes of the dye-house, such as the blue vat, and may be the cause of the light-green watery-coloured copperas found in the market, by it having much more water of crystallisation than the other. The difference of value between the light-green watery-coloured crystal and the dark-green, is, by experience, about 14 per cent. in favour of the latter. The effects of this will be noticed more fully when treating of the blue vat. But these results, we believe, to be the reason why a practical dyer, in an excellent treatise upon his trade, states that there is a bisulphate of iron, and warns the trade against its use.\*

As this watery-looking bluish-green copperas, according to Bansdorff, crystallises from an acid solution, it is probable that the extra proportion of acid which is found in it is owing to a portion of the mother liquor being mechanically combined with the crystals, but not forming an essential ingredient in the composition of the salt. And if the salt has been crystallised from sulphate of alumina, this apparent excess of acid will be the same.

The result of our experience upon the relative value of the light-

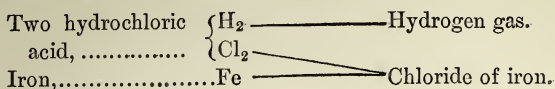
\* Cooper's *Treatise on Practical Dyeing*.

green watery-coloured copperas over the dark-green, or what are generally termed *new* and *old*, is as 21 to 24, or 100 lbs. of best old copperas is worth 114 lbs. of new light-green. In testing, there is always an excess of acid, but not in quantity anything like this difference. As the colour of the crystals of sulphate of iron depends upon the presence of water, and it being well known that copperas, being exposed to the air in a dry place, loses water, this will account for the different proportions of iron which we have often found in the same weight of the salt. It has been already noticed, that of the seven proportions of water which copperas contains, it loses six at 238°. We took 20 grains of each of the good and bad qualities of copperas, reduced them to coarse powder, and submitted them to a heat of between 305° and 400°, and taking the mean of several experiments, the bad copperas lost  $1\frac{1}{2}$  grains more than the other, or 7½ per cent.—a result which agrees with the experience of the dyer.

English copperas is considered superior to Scotch. The former is mostly made from pyrites, while the latter is made from alum shale, and is therefore very liable to contain small portions of sulphate of alumina; then being crystallised from a strong solution of the sulphate of a salt of another metal, it has every chance of being inferior.

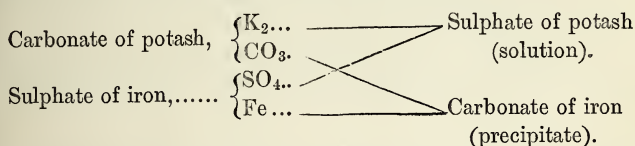
The presence of alumina may be detected by dissolving some of the copperas in water, and boiling the solution, during which a few drops of nitric acid are added to peroxide the iron, which is known by the solution becoming a clear amber colour. Caustic potash is then added in considerable excess until the solution is alkaline, and the whole is then boiled for some time, and passed through a filter, upon which the peroxide of iron is retained. The solution contains the alumina. The potash is neutralised by sulphuric acid, and on adding ammonia to this solution, if alumina be present, a flocculent white precipitate is obtained. Other tests for alumina are given under that element. If ammonia be added to the iron precipitate retained upon the filter, if copper be present, the solution passing through will become blue. It is better to test for the presence of copper separately: this is done by dissolving the copperas, as described, peroxidising with acid, adding ammonia instead of potash, and filtering: the slightest trace of copper will tinge the solution blue. Or it may be detected by dissolving a little of the crystals, and putting into the solution a piece of clean polished iron, such as the blade of a knife: when, if any copper be present, it will be precipitated upon the iron in a metallic state. The presence of zinc may be detected in copperas, by taking the ammoniacal solution which has passed through the filter in testing for copper, and, if no copper be present, pass a stream of sulphuretted hydrogen gas through the solution; the zinc, if there be any present, will give a white precipitate. Copperas obtained from galvanising works has often zinc present, which lowers the value of the salt. The effects of the presence of these salts in some of the operations where copperas is used, will be considered when treating of the blue vat. Magnesia is occasionally found in copperas, but its reactions are not deleterious, further than diluting the salt.

**CHLORIDE OF IRON.**—Iron is easily dissolved in hydrochloric acid when treated in the same way as was described for dissolving the metal in sulphuric acid, and the product is chloride of iron.



This salt crystallises in green coloured crystals with four equivalents of water, but with difficulty. The crystals are very soluble in water, and the salt passes rapidly into the *perstate*. For some purposes of dyeing this salt could be used equally with copperas; but for others, such as the blue vat, it would not do so well. Moreover, the expense of making it precludes its extensive use in the dye-house.

**CARBONATE OF IRON.**—This salt, as we have already said, exists as an ore; but it is easily prepared, by adding to a solution of copperas a solution of carbonate of potash or soda. It is a whitish-green coloured precipitate, and is obtained by double decomposition.



This precipitate cannot be dried in the air without losing its carbonic acid and passing into the state of peroxide; but it is soluble in water impregnated with carbonic acid. This is the state in which iron is generally held in solution in spring waters, and is hurtful to some dyes.

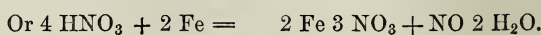
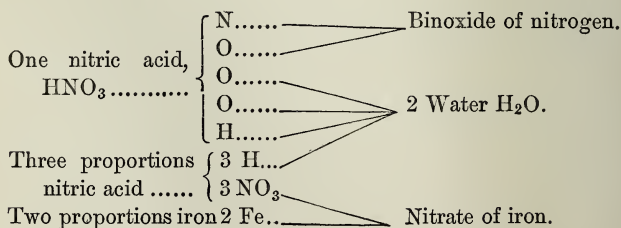
**ACETATE OF IRON.**—Acetic acid or vinegar acts readily upon iron, dissolving it, and forming the acetate, which crystallises in small green crystals, very rapidly acted upon by the air. This salt is much used in dyeing, and is obtained in solution: it is known as iron liquor, and pyrolignite of iron, from its being prepared on the large scale with crude wood vinegar. The acetate of iron may be prepared by mixing together acetate of lead and protosulphate of iron. The sulphate of lead is formed and falls to the bottom, and the acetate of iron remains in solution. The pyrolignite of iron is preferable. It is prepared by allowing iron to steep in pyroligneous acid (impure acetic acid, see page 121) for several weeks. As this acid contains a quantity of pyrogenous oils and other impurities, it preserves the iron for a longer time in a state of protoxide than almost any other solvent available in the arts; hence the decided preference given to it by practical men. We shall often have occasion to refer to this subject, as it is one which is too much neglected, and which produces many serious evils. It may, however, be observed in the meantime, that pyrolignite of iron, used instead of copperas in dyeing black, gives a preferable shade of colour.

The value of this solution may be taken by evaporating a known weight to dryness, and burning the residue until all organic matters are consumed, when there remains only the iron as a peroxide; every forty grains of the peroxide will be equal to ninety-six of the acetate of iron in the solution. The operation is very simple, and the percentage of acetate of iron in the solution easily known. The average of good iron liquor ranges about 13.5 per cent. of pure protoacetate of iron, the specific gravity being about  $1.085 = 17^\circ$  Twaddell. The state of oxidation in which a metal exists, when used as a mordant, ought to be strictly attended to.

Iron combines in the protostate with oxalic acid, tartaric acid, and indeed with all the acids; but these salts possess no peculiar advantages over those already described to warrant any extra expense in preparing them.

**PERSULPHATE OF IRON.**—Persalts of iron are also extensively used in the dye-house. The persulphate of *iron* may be easily prepared, by boiling a solution of copperas, to which a few drops of sulphuric acid have been added, and, while boiling, adding a very small portion of nitric acid, or any nitrate: red fumes are given off, and the solution becomes of a beautiful amber colour. It is then in the state of a persalt. Chlorate of potash may be used instead of nitric acid or nitrates. The persulphate of iron might be advantageously used for many operations, and be cheaper than the nitrate of iron.

**NITRATE OF IRON.**—This is the persalt of iron generally used in the dye-house. It is made by putting clean iron into nitric acid, by which it is very quickly dissolved. The iron ought to be added as long as the acid continues to dissolve it; but cautiously, otherwise the action will be so violent as to cause it to boil over. When engaged in this process, care ought to be taken not to breathe any of the fumes which come off, as they are very destructive to health. The reaction which takes place between the acid and the iron may be expressed as in the table below, which we introduce by remarking, that in dissolving iron in sulphuric or hydrochloric acid, there is merely a substitution of the iron for the hydrogen (see page 26); but with nitric acid a different range of affinities takes place—a proportion of the nitric acid is broken up, producing the following arrangement:—



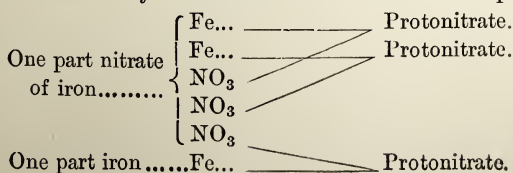


The binoxide of nitrogen, or nitric oxide, is the gas passing off; but it instantly combines with more oxygen, and forms peroxide of nitrogen.

Nitrate of iron alone dyes a buff or nankeen colour, which is probably the easiest dyed of any of the colours, and is, at the same time, very permanent. The process only requires that a little of this salt be put into water, and that the goods be immersed in the solution for a few minutes, then washed in clean water and dried. Passing them through a weak soap solution softens the goods, and gives clearness to the tint. But the particular use of this salt is for Prussian blue. The goods are first dyed buff by the salt of iron, then thoroughly washed and put into a very dilute solution of ferropussiate of potash, made acid by a few drops of sulphuric acid; they are washed from this in clean water, to which a little alum has been added. (This is only for light blues on cloth, but for dark blues and for yarn the proper methods will be given hereafter.) We have known many attempts made to substitute copperas for nitrate of iron in dyeing Prussian blue with the yellow prussiate, but need hardly say they were unsuccessful. A knowledge of the nature of these salts (see page 98) shews that protosalts of iron give only a greyish colour with yellow prussiate of potash; but page 100 shews that with red prussiate of potash copperas is a better mordant than nitrate of iron, as the red prussiate gives a dark blue with the protosalts, and only a greenish grey with the persalts of iron.

The preparation of nitrate of iron (*killing iron*) is apparently one of the most simple operations of the dye-house, as all that is required is to place metallic iron into nitric acid; but the practical dyer often experiences difficulties which he cannot account for, and which alter materially his shades and colours. Sometimes, as we have already noticed, the iron seems not to be acted upon; at another time the action is so rapid that there is a difficulty in preventing the liquid boiling over. When the acid is a little diluted, and the iron is added in small pieces, the action is violent, and there is often formed a brown turbid clay-looking solution. Colours dyed by the iron in this state are never so brilliant as when the liquor is clear. We have seen solutions of this sort diluted largely with water and allowed to settle, and the clear only used; but this is tedious, and not good after all. The best means of improving this mordant when it thickens or becomes turbid is to remove all metallic iron, add a little nitric or muriatic acid, and apply heat.

When the nitric acid is not diluted, and the iron dissolves freely, when the acid is saturated with iron, if the remaining metallic iron is not removed, it continues to dissolve by the reaction of the nitrate of iron upon it, thus—



This protonitrate rapidly imbibes oxygen, passes into the pernitrate, and in so doing liberates a portion of oxide of iron, which collects at the bottom of the vessel, and accumulates so rapidly that the iron solution is soon converted into a brown paste. This can be avoided by taking out the iron when the acid is saturated, and before this deposit begins. The addition of a little acid and heat re-dissolves this oxide; or a little sulphuric or hydrochloric acid also dissolves it, and forms an excellent mordant.

A still more remarkable circumstance often occurs: the iron being placed in the acid, and action going on favourably, after a few hours, particularly if the weather be cold, the solution is observed to have a greenish-yellow colour, and the vessel is found to be half filled with crystals of a light-yellow tint. Although these crystals, when dissolved in water, or though the solution above the crystals, may be used for dyeing, they give varieties of quality differing from the usual iron solution, which often seriously disturb the method of the dye-house. The true nature of the crystals is not well understood, and it is difficult to get at their examination, as they are very deliquescent, dissolve easily in water, and even in their own water of crystallisation, by a slight elevation of temperature. When put upon blotting paper they are decomposed, and the paper imbibes much of the iron. We long thought that they were caused by the formation of ammonia in dissolving the iron, but experiments have failed to shew the slightest trace of ammonia. The analysis of these crystals by J. M. Ordway gave by the old notation 3 nitric acid, 1 peroxide iron, and 18 water =  $3 \text{NO}_5 + \text{Fe}_2 \text{O}_3 + 18 \text{HO}$ . The same author has examined nitrates of iron of different qualities, and states that nitric acid combines definitely with various proportions of peroxide of iron and water, forming what he terms basic nitrates, varying from 3 acid and 1 peroxide iron, to 3 acid and 2, 3, 6, 8, 12, 15, 18, and 24 peroxide of iron, with various definite quantities of water, giving an interest to this salt of the highest sort, and amply accounting for the great differences experienced in its use for dyeing; and also for the ease with which peroxide of iron is fixed upon the fabric when put into this salt: the basic salt being decomposed, and a portion of the oxide of iron left upon or within the fibre. There are many other phenomena observed in working with these salts, which we will yet have occasion to notice. We have already noticed the action of light on this salt (page 13).

Any other persalt of iron may be formed by adding ammonia, carbonate of soda, or potash, to the nitrate of iron solution, so long as a precipitate is formed, washing the precipitate, by repeatedly filling the vessel which contains it with water, allowing it to settle, and decanting off the clear, then adding to the precipitate the acid of the salt which is wanted. The application of heat assists the solution of the precipitate in the acid. By these means peracetate, peroxalate, pertartrate, &c., may be obtained either for practical use or experiments.

The following is the reaction of different substances upon the *pro* and *per* salts of iron:—

PROTOSALTS.—Potash, soda, and ammonia give at first a grey-white precipitate, passing into green, then bluish, and which, by exposure, finally becomes brown.

Carbonates of these alkalies produce precipitates, which pass through the same changes as the alkalies themselves.

Yellow prussiate of potash...A grey-white precipitate, which by exposure becomes blue.

Red prussiate of potash .....An immediate dark-blue precipitate.

Solution of galls.....A blue-black, not changed by standing.

PERSALTS OF IRON.—Alkalies, and carbonates of the alkalies, all produce dark-brown precipitates.

Yellow prussiate of potash...An immediate dark-blue precipitate.

Red prussiate of potash.....No precipitate, but the solution becomes green.

Solution of galls.....Black, passing to brown, by standing.

The difference between the action of red and yellow prussiates and galls with these salts will be remarked.

### COBALT (Co 58.7).

Cobalt generally occurs in Nature in combination with arsenic and sulphur, and accompanied by other metals. The mineral in which it occurs was long known to miners, and was called by them *kobalds*, or *evil spirit of the mines*, because its appearance often deceived them by giving a favourable impression of mines which turned out erroneous, the cobalt being taken for something else. Its distinct character as a metal was discovered in 1733. Its oxide has long been extensively used for giving a blue colour to glass and porcelain. As a metal it is brittle, of a reddish-grey colour, and a little more flexible than iron. It has two oxides similar to iron—

Protoxide, . . . . . CoO.

Peroxide, . . . . . Co<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>.

But there is no persalt of cobalt known equivalent to the peroxide.

Cobalt is easily dissolved in either hydrochloric or nitric acids, and forms pink-coloured solutions which produce crystals of a beautiful red colour. Solutions of these salts form sympathetic inks. By writing upon clean paper with one of these solutions, the writing is invisible when dry; but by heating the paper before a fire, the writing becomes blue, and disappears again on cooling. If the heat applied be too strong, the writing becomes black and permanent—a significant fact to the dyer. Cobalt does not dissolve easily in sulphuric acid; but a sulphate may be prepared by adding sulphuric acid to the oxide or carbonate, which is formed by adding a car-

bonate or caustic alkali to the nitrate or hydrochlorate of cobalt. The sulphate salt has also a pink colour, but is not so generally used as the others. Salts of any of the acids may be prepared by dissolving the oxide or carbonate. They are all affected by heat in the manner described.

Some of these salts might be very usefully employed in dyeing were they obtained at a sufficiently low cost; however, they are progressively becoming cheaper, and may therefore ere long be made available in the dye-house.

A preparation of cobalt is used in bleaching, as *smalt blue*. It is a compound of oxide of cobalt and alumina, prepared by mixing a solution of a salt of cobalt and alum, and precipitating them together by an alkaline carbonate, as carbonate of soda, drying the precipitate, and subjecting it to a red heat. The process gives a beautiful blue mass, which is ground to an impalpable powder, and mixed commonly with some carbonate of lime (chalk). Salts of cobalt give the following reactions with other substances:—

Potash, soda, and ammonia...A green colour by a little exposure.  
Carbonates of the alkalies.....Reddish precipitates, which become blue by boiling.  
Phosphate of soda.....Blue precipitate.  
Yellow prussiate of potash....Green precipitate, which changes to grey.  
Red prussiate of potash.....Reddish-brown precipitate.  
Sulphides of the alkalies.....Black precipitates.

The slightest trace of cobalt may be detected by the blowpipe, by fusing a little borax, and adding a little of the substance suspected to contain cobalt: if it be really present, it communicates to the borax a blue colour, more or less intense.

---

#### NICKEL. (Ni 58·7.)

Nickel occurs in Nature combined with arsenic, iron, cobalt, and sulphur. It was discovered in 1751. Isolated, it is a silver-white metal, ductile and malleable, and requires a heat nearly equal to that of iron to melt it. It is much used in the arts for alloying with other metals. It is the principle constituent of German silver. Nickel combines with oxygen in two proportions:

Protoxide,	.	.	.	.	.	.	NiO.
Peroxide,	.	.	.	.	.	.	Ni <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> .

There are no salts of nickel equivalent to the peroxide known.

**SULPHATE OF NICKEL.**—Sulphuric acid dissolves nickel with difficulty. When the sulphate is required, the acid is applied to the carbonate or



oxide of the metal; in this state it is easily dissolved, and forms a beautiful green-coloured solution.

**CHLORIDE OF NICKEL.**—Hydrochloric acid, when dilute, dissolves nickel, and forms a chloride; the solution is emerald green.

**NITRATE OF NICKEL.**—Nitric acid dissolves nickel easily, and may be called its true solvent: the product is the nitrate, of which the solution is also emerald green. All these salts crystallise.

**CARBONATE OF NICKEL.**—This salt is prepared by precipitating the nitrate by a carbonated alkali, as carbonate of soda or potash. It is a greenish coloured precipitate. The common means of preparing the salts of nickel is by dissolving in nitric acid, then precipitating by carbonate of soda, and washing the precipitate; by adding the required acid to the precipitate it is dissolved. The acetate, or oxalate, or any of the other salts, may easily be prepared in this way. The use of any of these salts in the dye-house is very limited. Their solutions are precipitated as follows:—

Alkalies, . . . . .	An apple-green precipitate of hydrated oxide, insoluble in excess.
Ammonia, in excess, . . . .	Blue solution.
Carbonate of the alkalies, . .	Green precipitate.
Yellow prussiate of potash, .	Greenish-white precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . .	Yellow-green precipitate.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	No precipitate.
Phosphate of soda, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Sulphide of the alkalies, . .	Black precipitate.

---

### ZINC. (Zn. 65·2.)

Zinc was discovered in the sixteenth century. It is very abundant in Nature in combination with sulphur, and with carbonic acid. With the former, it is the ore called *blende*, or *black jack*; with the latter, it is *calamine*. Zinc is a white metal with a shade of blue, brittle, and of a crystalline structure. When heated from the boiling point of water to 300°, it is ductile, and admits of being rolled into sheets, in which state it has become a most useful metal in the arts. At a red heat it rises into vapour, and takes fire in air, burning with a white flame. It is much used along with copper for making the common alloy known as brass.

Zinc combines with oxygen in several proportions; but the only one of its oxides which has been studied is the protoxide =  $\text{ZnO}$ . The salts formed are the protosalts, equivalent to this oxide.

Protoxide of zinc may be obtained either by burning the metal in the

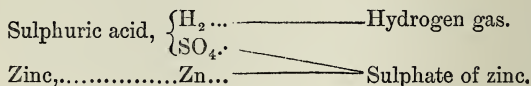
air, or by precipitating it by an alkali from its acid solutions. It forms a white powder, which is soluble in all the caustic alkalies.

**CHLORIDE OF ZINC.**—Hydrochloric acid acts rapidly upon zinc, evolving hydrogen gas—thus



It crystallises in white crystals, which are very deliquescent, and often used on account of this property for keeping substances damp. It is even said to be employed by tobacconists for keeping snuff and tobacco moist—a dangerous and most reprehensible practice, if true. It is now very extensively used for soldering instead of rosin.

**SULPHATE OF ZINC.**—This salt is easily prepared by putting zinc into sulphuric acid slightly diluted: the action is



It crystallises in white-coloured crystals, which contain seven proportions of water of crystallisation, and dissolve in two and a half times their weight of cold water. It is known in commerce as *white vitriol* and *white copperas*, and is produced as a by-product in the soldering of platinum vessels, and by plumbers in burning together lead surfaces. Operations of this kind are done by the flame of the oxyhydrogen blowpipe, for which the hydrogen required is prepared by zinc and sulphuric acid, and thus the sulphate becomes a product. It is also obtained as a by-product in Electro-Metallurgy from the galvanic batteries.

**NITRATE OF ZINC.**—This salt is easily prepared by acting upon the metal with nitric acid; it is a crystalline salt, very deliquescent, but not much used.

Acetates, oxalates, and salts of such milder acids may be prepared either by digesting the metal in the acids, or by acting upon the oxide or carbonate. The salts of zinc are not much used in the dye-house; the precipitates formed from them are nearly all white; but the sulphate is used in several operations, where its elements may act an important part without affecting the tint, as in the operations of dyeing *chrome yellows*, &c. It is also used by calico-printers in some of the operations of discharging.

The salts of zinc act towards other substances as follows :—

Potash, soda, and ammonia, . White precipitate, easily dissolved in an excess of the alkali.

Carbonates of the alkalies, . . .	White precipitate, not soluble in excess, but soluble in caustic alkalies.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . .	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . .	Yellowish-red precipitate; fades in the air.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	No precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . .	White precipitate.
Chromic acid, . . . . .	A purple-brown precipitate.

---

## CADMIUM. (Cd. 112.)

This metal was discovered in 1818; it is very rare, found only in small quantities, and sometimes combined with zinc. The metal somewhat resembles tin in colour; it is also soft and flexible, and makes a crackling noise when bent. It melts easily, and passes off as a gas at a heat of about 600°. It combines with oxygen in equal proportions, forming the protoxide (CdO), which has an orange colour, and is easily obtained by burning the metal in air, or by precipitation from acid solution as an hydrate. When prepared in this way, it is white, and has one proportion of water combined with it. This oxide is soluble in ammonia, but not in soda or potash.

Cadmium is acted upon like zinc, both by sulphuric and hydrochloric acids, and forms crystallisable salts. Nitric acid acts readily upon the metal to form the nitrate, which is crystallised with difficulty. All these salts give white-coloured crystals. The salts of the milder acids, as the acetate, the oxalate, &c., may be obtained by dissolving the precipitated oxide or carbonate in the particular acid.

Potash and soda, and their carbonates, give white precipitates, not soluble in excess.

Ammonia—white precipitate, soluble in excess. (The oxide and carbonate, precipitated by the fixed alkalies, are all soluble in ammonia.)

Yellow prussiate of potash, . . .	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . .	Yellow precipitate.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	No precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . .	Beautiful yellow precipitate.

---

## INDIUM. (113·4.)

One of the recently discovered metals, found in small quantities occasionally associated with zinc. It is a white soft metal. It is one of those metals discovered by the spectroscope. When heated in a colourless gas flame, it gives two strong lines in the indigo portion of the spectrum—hence its name. It is very rare, and not yet known in the arts.

## COPPER. (Cu 63.1.)

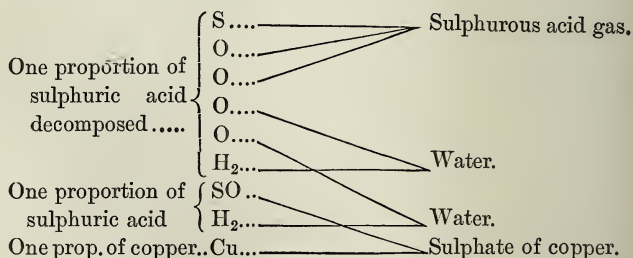
This is a very abundant and useful metal, and was known in the earliest times. It is found in Nature in great quantities in combination with sulphur, oxygen, and carbonic acid; and is separated from these combinations by various processes of roasting and fusing. Copper is of a red colour; is very malleable and ductile, and only inferior to iron in tenacity. It requires a heat of about  $1900^{\circ}$  to fuse it. It combines with oxygen in two proportions, namely—

Suboxide, or red oxide, . . . . .	$\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$ .
Protoxide, or black oxide, . . . . .	$\text{CuO}$ .

The suboxide is of a reddish-brown colour, which is not changed by the air. If acted upon by dilute acids, a protosalt is formed, and in strong hydrochloric acid there is formed a subchloride =  $\text{CuCl}$ . This is a greenish or nearly colourless solution. This chloride is precipitated by dilution with water; as a white precipitate when exposed to air it becomes green. If a portion of suboxide be put into a stoppered bottle with ammonia, it is dissolved; the solution is colourless at first, but by admitting air it is oxidised, and the solution becomes blue.

PROTOXIDE OF COPPER is black, and is formed upon the surface of metallic copper when brought to a red heat and exposed to the air; or it may be obtained by exposing the carbonate, acetate, or nitrate, to a red heat. Alkalies added to solutions of copper precipitate the oxide as a hydrate of a blue colour, which becomes black by boiling. Oxide of copper dissolves readily in ammonia, and gives a deep blue-coloured solution.

Copper combines with nearly all the acids, and the salts produced are generally blue or green. Sulphuric acid, when cold, dissolves copper slowly, but at a boiling heat it acts upon it readily, a portion of the acid suffering decomposition, as under:—

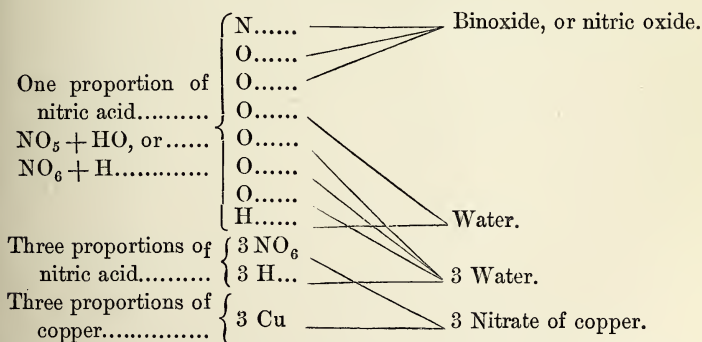


SULPHATE OF COPPER yields deep blue crystals, containing five proportions or equivalents of water, four of which are given off by heating the crystals to  $212^{\circ}$ , at which temperature they become white. They are soluble in four times their weight of cold water, and in twice their weight



of boiling water. The salt is prepared on the large scale, in the same manner as the sulphate of iron; that is, from the sulphides of the metal. Great quantities of it are produced by the metal-workers in Birmingham and elsewhere, in their cleaning and bronzing operations, which are effected by the action of acids upon copper or its alloys. As obtained in commerce, it is very impure, and is often contaminated with iron—a very injurious ingredient for most of the purposes to which this salt is applied in the dye-house. This impurity can be detected by dissolving a little of the salt in pure water, and adding ammonia in excess; on filtering through paper, and washing the filter, the iron will be obtained as a brown precipitate of peroxide. If the salt contains much iron, it ought to be rejected. Zinc is often present, but it has no deleterious effects further than in lessening the value of the salt. Sulphate of copper is known in commerce and in the dye-house as *blue vitriol*, *Roman vitriol*, and *blue-stone*.

**NITRATE OF COPPER.**—Nitric acid dissolves copper easily, forming the nitrate; the action is similar to that by which the nitrate of iron is produced; but we give here the old notation, and we suggest that the reader compare this with that given for iron, page 135.

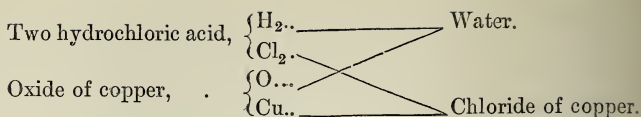


Formula by new notation,  $8 \text{HNO}_3 + 3 \text{Cu} = 2 \text{NO} + 3 (\text{Cu}_2 \text{NO}_3) + 4 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

It may be prepared in the dye-house by adding a solution of nitrate of lead to a solution of sulphate of copper, so long as a precipitate is formed.

Nitrate of copper crystallises in deep blue crystals, which deliquesce in the air, and are accordingly very soluble in water. The salt acts rapidly upon tin; if a small crystal be crushed, slightly moistened, and wrapped in tinfoil, combustion takes place by the rapid oxidation of the tin. The salts of copper are useful for oxidising vegetable matters in solution, and are sometimes used for that purpose in the dye-house.

**CHLORIDE OF COPPER** is made by digesting oxide of copper in hydrochloric acid, by which a double decomposition takes place, as follows :—



The solution of this salt is green, but it crystallises from this solution in blue-coloured crystals. It is prepared in the dye-house by mixing a hot solution of chloride of calcium with sulphate of copper; lime precipitates as sulphate, and the chloride of copper remains.

ACETATE OF COPPER (*verdigris*) is prepared by exposing sheets of copper to the action of acetic acid (*vinegar*), sometimes in solution, but more commonly in vapour. The salt is obtained in beautiful dark-green crystals; in this state it is a subacetate, having *one* acetic acid to *two* of copper. Acetic acid combines with copper in various proportions, and the verdigris of commerce is often composed of several salts, not by adulteration, but formed in the process of manufacture.

OXALATE OF COPPER is of a light-green colour, and is prepared by digesting oxide of copper in oxalic acid.

ARSENATE AND THE ARSENITE OF COPPER are salts of a light-green colour, forming the dyes called arsenic greens—*blue-stone sages* or *Scheele's green*—in dyeing which the goods are passed through strong solutions of an alkaline arseniate and copper. This process of dyeing is dangerous, and the winding of the yarns, and other operations that follow, are more so, and produce much serious mischief to the operatives. Green wall paper is often coloured with this dye, which is very hurtful to the health of the occupants of the house.

Copper salts produce the following reactions:—

Potash and soda, ..... Greenish-blue precipitates, become black with boiling.

Ammonia, ..... Deep-blue liquid.

Carbonate of alkalies, ..... Green precipitate.

Yellow prussiate of potash, ... Dark-brown precipitate, becomes green when boiled.

Red prussiate of potash, ..... Yellow-green precipitate.

Solution of galls, ..... Brown precipitate.

Sulphides of the alkalies, .... Black precipitates.

---

### LEAD (Pb 207).

This metal exists abundantly in Nature in combination with sulphur, forming galena, from which it is separated by exposing the ore to a red

heat; the sulphur becomes oxidised, some of it passes off as sulphurous acid, and part is converted into sulphate of lead; the heat is then raised, which causes a chemical reaction between the sulphate and sulphide, and the metal becomes reduced, and runs off by a channel prepared for it.

Lead has a bluish-grey colour, is soft and very malleable; it does not oxidise readily in the air, except at the water line, when it is partially immersed in that fluid, and more rapidly still when the water is soft and pure. Hence lead vessels should not be used to hold water for domestic use, as the oxides of lead are all very poisonous.

Lead combines with oxygen in various proportions.

SUBOXIDE OF LEAD is the greyish-blue crust formed upon the surface of lead exposed to the air, and consists of two equivalents of lead and one of oxygen,  $Pb_2O$ . It may be prepared artificially by burning oxalate of lead in a retort; the suboxide remains as a dark-grey powder.

PROTOXIDE OF LEAD consists of lead and oxygen in equal proportions =  $PbO$ . It may be obtained by exposing metallic lead at a red heat to a current of air; the oxygen of the air combines with the lead, and forms with it a semi-fluid mass. As it cools, it crystallises in concretions of a greenish-yellow colour. It is obtained on the large scale by cupellation—a process of fusion to which lead is subjected in the process of extracting the admixture of silver it commonly contains. The process is conducted as follows:—A quantity of lead is put upon a flat vessel made of bone ashes (*burned bones*) placed in a furnace; when the lead is melted, a strong current of air is blown upon the surface, which rapidly oxidises the metal; at the same time, the force of the current blows the oxide off, which runs over the side of the vessel like water. The silver, not being capable of oxidation, by this means is ultimately left pure upon the bottom of the vessel. Fresh silver lead is continually added, until the silver remaining nearly fills this bone-ash vessel, which is technically termed a cupel.

When the protoxide of lead is kept for some time, it falls into a brick-red scaly crystalline powder, known in commerce as litharge. This is the principal oxide from which the salts of lead are prepared; but it is generally to some extent contaminated with iron, copper, and red lead, and is also subject to much intentional adulteration. Litharge of good quality possesses a crystalline lustre, and is completely soluble by digestion in nitric acid. The amount of adulteration, if it be brick dust, may thus be ascertained, as it remains insoluble, and by adding ammonia to the solution the lead is precipitated; if iron be present, the precipitate will have a brown colour; if copper, the solution will be blue, but none of these are deleterious to the dyes for which lead salts are generally used. The protoxide of lead is also obtained by adding a caustic alkali to a solution of a salt of lead; the oxide is precipitated as a white powder, soluble in an excess of caustic alkali, and also in solutions of the alkaline earths, as lime, with which it forms compounds more or less soluble.

PEROXIDE OF LEAD consists of two equivalents of oxygen and one of lead  $=\text{PbO}_2$ . It may be obtained by digesting litharge in a boiling solution of chloride of lime (*bleaching powder*). It is a powder of a dark-brown colour, and is not used for preparing any salts of lead.

What is termed the fourth oxide of lead consists of  $\text{Pb}_3\text{O}_4$ ; but this is not generally considered to be a direct combination of oxygen and lead in these proportions, but a mixture of the second and third oxide just described, in the proportion of two of the protoxide to one of the peroxide,  $2\text{PbO} + \text{PbO}_2$ , which may be separated by digestion in dilute nitric acid, the acid combining with the protoxide, and liberating the peroxide which remains undissolved. Whether the view we have stated of its constitution be correct or not is not very important, as this oxide is not much used in the dye-house. It is known in commerce as red lead or minium.

CARBONATE OF LEAD (*White Lead*) is formed when carbonate of soda is added to a salt of lead. It is prepared on the large scale by exposing thin sheets of lead to the vapours of vinegar: the acid is decomposed and forms carbonic acid, which combines with the lead. This salt is sometimes used for preparing salts of lead, by dissolving it in the acid the salt of which is required.

NITRATE OF LEAD is prepared by dissolving litharge or metallic lead in dilute nitric acid, and then concentrating the solution by slow evaporation, when the salt is obtained in a crystalline form; it is white and generally opaque, and soluble in  $7\frac{1}{2}$  parts of cold water. The nitrate of lead, when prepared in this way, contains one proportion of oxide and one of nitric acid; but by boiling the salt for some time over litharge, the acid combines with two, three, or even six proportions of lead, forming what are termed *basic* salts. This fact has been known to practical dyers for many years, and is made available for the purpose of dyeing orange colours and dark shades of yellow.

ACETATE OF LEAD (*Sugar of Lead*) may be obtained by exposing metallic lead to the action of acetic acid, either as a liquid or as a vapour, and to the air; a portion of the acid is decomposed, and carbonate of lead is formed, which is easily decomposed by another portion of the acid; the latter combining with the lead forms acetate of lead, and the carbonic acid is evolved.

Acetate of lead is prepared extensively by a variety of modes. One is by immersing a number of sheets of lead in vinegar, so arranged that the uppermost sheets are exposed to the action of the air. When they become covered with the crust of carbonate, they are shifted to the bottom of the vat, where the acid decomposes the carbonate and forms acetate, while the succeeding sheets are being exposed to the same course of action.

Another process is to expose sheets of lead to the vapour of vinegar;



the carbonate formed is collected and immersed in strong vinegar. In both these processes, when the acid appears to be saturated, or when it ceases to decompose the carbonate, the solution is drawn into proper vessels and allowed to crystallise.

Another process is to dissolve litharge in strong vinegar to saturation. This is done by gradually sprinkling the litharge in a vessel of vinegar subjected to a boiling heat; the vinegar is constantly stirred, to prevent the adhesion of the litharge to the bottom and sides of the boiler. When a sufficient quantity is dissolved, a moderate quantity of cold water is poured into the solution, reducing it a little below the boiling point, and it is allowed to settle; the clear fluid is then drawn off into a separate vessel and allowed to crystallise. If the solution be coloured, it is whitened by filtration through bone black. Common unrectified wood vinegar, or pyroligneous acid, is much used for the preparation of acetate of lead for the dye-work. It is known in the dye-house by the appellation of *brown sugar*.

Basic salts, or subacetates, are made by boiling common acetate of lead with litharge. The tribasic acetate, a combination of three of lead to one of acid, is the best salt for dyeing orange, deep yellow, and amber. It is prepared in the dye-house by boiling a solution of sugar of lead with litharge, and adding to this a little lime. The proportions, however, vary in different dye-houses. Those which ought to be employed to produce the tribasic acetate are—six parts of crystallised acetate of lead, eight of litharge, and thirty of water, boiled till the litharge is dissolved. This solution renders red litmus blue. The addition of small quantities of lime causes a loss, as the lime combines with part of the acetic acid forming acetate of lime, which, if these proportions have been used, would prevent some of the litharge from being dissolved. If the mixture be not long enough boiled, or if the proportion of litharge be too small, the addition of lime insures the conversion of the acetate of lead into the tribasic state, though it is to be observed that this will be at the expense of a portion of the lead intended for producing the colour. We have experienced much annoyance from this source; and it is well known in the trade, that when the lead is hastily prepared for orange, it is a cause of great anxiety, and the colour obtained is frequently defective. As this is an important point in the economy of the dye-house, both in time and material, we shall explain the practical view of the matter. If the proportions recommended above be used, the following is the result:—The 6 pounds of acetate of lead are composed of 4 lbs. oxide of lead and 2 lbs. acetic acid; but when the 8 lbs. of litharge are dissolved, or, as dyers say, taken up, the tribasic salt will consist of 12 lbs. of oxide of lead and 2 lbs. of acetic acid—that is, every ounce of acid holds in combination 6 ounces of oxide of lead. Now, if a little lime, as we have often remarked, be put in along with the litharge, the result will be as follows:—Suppose that 50 lbs. of cotton are to be dyed orange, and that it consumed the 6 lbs. acetate of lead prepared as now stated, to give it a good colour. If  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ounce of lime be mixed

with this, it will combine with 3 ounces of acid: in this way 36 ounces of oxide of lead are not taken up, and are therefore ineffective in the production of the colour; while at the end of the process, the dyer is surprised to find his colour poor. We may notice that lead in the basic state is not held in combination by a very great affinity, and thus a very little counter-active influence precipitates it. The presence of sulphates or carbonates in the water, which almost all water contains, precipitates the lead; hence the reason that often, when the clear acetate solution is poured into a tub of water, the contents become milk-white by the formation of an insoluble carbonate or sulphate. The lead is all lost for the time, as it is rendered insoluble and useless as a dye. Every ounce of carbonate renders useless five ounces of lead. The softest water should be used for the lead solution, as, for example, the condensed steam from an engine. Breathing through the solution of subacetates produces a precipitate of lead carbonate. When much lime is added, it dissolves the lead, and forms a mordant quite as good, if not superior to that described, as we will have occasion more fully to indicate when we come to treat of the processes for dyeing oranges and yellows. Alkaline salts of lead, *i.e.*, oxide of lead dissolved in alkalies, are now becoming more generally used than the acid salts, and are superior for most purposes.

**SULPHATE OF LEAD.**—Sulphuric acid, when hot and concentrated, dissolves lead; the sulphate formed is precipitated by dilution. It is an insoluble white powder; it is formed by adding a solution of any sulphate to any salt of lead. It is formed in making acetate of alumina.

**CHLORIDE OF LEAD.**—Lead dissolves slowly in hydrochloric acid, forming a chloride which requires 135 times its weight of cold water to dissolve it. Several subchlorides of lead are also capable of being formed, but they are nearly all insoluble in water. Oxide of lead is soluble in caustic soda, potash, and lime, and is used as a mordant in dyeing green by chrome.

All the soluble salts of lead are poisonous, and have a sweetish taste. Their reactions with other substances are as follows:—

Soda and potash give . . . . .	White precipitates, soluble in excess.
Lime, . . . . .	White precipitate, soluble in excess.
Ammonia, . . . . .	White precipitate, insoluble in excess.
Carbonates of alkalies, . . . . .	White precipitates, insoluble in excess, but soluble in caustic alkali.
Oxalic acid, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . . .	No precipitate.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Chromates of potash, . . . . .	Yellow precipitates.
Iodide of potassium, . . . . .	Yellow precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . . . .	Black precipitates.

TESTING THE VALUE OF LEAD SALTS.—A very simple method of testing the value of salts of lead—that is, of ascertaining the quantity of lead in a solution—is to dissolve, say 10 grains of bichromate of potash (*red chrome*) in hot water, and put the solution into a tall glass jar; then take a given weight, say 100 grains of the lead salt, whether acetate or nitrate, and dissolve in one measure of the alkalimeter of water; add this gradually to the chrome solution until the liquor above the precipitate becomes colourless, or until a drop of the liquor added to a drop of the lead solution on a glass plate is not turned yellow. The number of graduations taken to effect this is noted; then, as every 148·6 of bichromate of potash is equal to 379·4 acetate of lead, or 330 nitrate of lead, the quantity required by the 10 grains chrome is easily calculated—being for acetate 25·6, and for nitrate 23 grains. All the solution required above these measures will indicate impurities. The average of many experiments gave the following as fair qualities:

Commercial nitrate required. 24 grains.

„	<i>white sugar,</i>	27	„
„	<i>brown sugar,</i>	28	„

The quantity of lead in a solution may be tested in the same way.

#### THALLIUM (204)..

This metal was discovered by Mr. W. Crookes by means of the spectroscope, in giving a single intense green line. It accompanies certain kinds of iron pyrites, particularly that imported from Spain, which has both copper and lead, which latter metal thallium resembles in appearance. It is very quickly tarnished in the air. Its oxide is soluble in water, and has an alkaline reaction on litmus. Its salts are mostly white. Mr. Crookes has given an exhaustive investigation into the salts of this metal, published from time to time in the *Chemical News*. As yet, none of its salts have been used in manufacture.

#### BISMUTH (Bi 210).

This metal occurs in Nature in the metallic state, and also in combination with other substances. When found in the metallic state, it is separated from the earths, through which it is diffused by melting: the metal sinking to the bottom of the crucible is separated from the earthy matters which float on the surface. It is a white metal, with a reddish hue, very crystalline in structure, volatilises at a red heat, and burns in the air with a pale blue flame, forming oxide of bismuth. The metal does not tarnish by exposure to the air. It combines with oxygen in several proportions. The protoxide =  $\text{Bi}_2\text{O}_3$  is formed by combustion, as stated,

and is of a straw-yellow colour. There is also a suboxide =  $\text{Bi}_4\text{O}$ , and a peroxide =  $\text{Bi}_2\text{O}_5$ , but these oxides have no corresponding salts.

Sulphate of bismuth may be prepared by dissolving the oxide in concentrated sulphuric acid; chloride of bismuth by dissolving in hydrochloric acid; these salts, added to water, are decomposed—the chloride forms with water an oxychloride, setting hydrochloric acid free.

**NITRATE OF BISMUTH.**—Nitric acid dissolves bismuth easily, forming the nitrate, which crystallises in beautiful white crystals. This salt is also decomposed by water; indeed, all the neutral salts of bismuth are decomposed by water, there being formed salts (oxysalts).

The action of re-agents upon the solutions of bismuth is as follows:—

Potash, soda, and ammonia,... White precipitates, not soluble in excess.

Carbonates of the alkalies,..... White precipitates, not soluble in excess.

Yellow prussiate of potash,.... White precipitate.

Red prussiate of potash,..... Pale yellow precipitate.

Solution of galls, ..... Orange-yellow precipitate.

Iodide of potassium, ..... Brown precipitate.

Chromates of potash, ..... Yellow precipitates.

Sulphides of the alkalies, ..... Black precipitates.

---

### TIN (Sn 118).

This metal has nearly the colour and lustre of silver; it is one of the few metals which were known to man at a very early period of his history, and was extensively used in all countries, both east and west, having any pretensions to civilisation. This was probably owing to the extensive use of bronze by all countries in ancient times, it being an alloy of copper and tin. The ores of tin are easily reduced to the metallic state, being in general oxides; so that by merely fusing them with carbonaceous matter, such as wood or charcoal, which combines with the oxygen, the metal is fused, and sinks in the melted state to the bottom of the furnace.

The principal localities for obtaining tin are Cornwall, Bohemia, Mexico, and the East Indies; in this country the metal has been wrought from the earliest ages, and may be said to be the first nucleus of civilisation in this country, as it formed the great mart where the civilised and commercial Phœnicians obtained the tin which was so abundantly used by them. The ore is found in Cornwall both in veins traversing the primary rocks, and in small rounded grains in the neighbourhood of these rocks, imbedded in what geologists term the *alluvial deposit*, signifying the deposit formed by the washing away of the fragments of the primary rocks with water. This gives the purest tin, and is distinguished by the name of *stream tin*. The ore obtained from the veins is generally contaminated with other metals, such as iron, copper, arsenic, and the like, but is partially purified by liquation—that is, by heating the mass to the melting



point of tin, which melts out and leaves the others. Several other operations of refining follow this, which need not be detailed; but there are often small portions of the impurities remaining in a portion of the tin. That portion which contains these impurities is termed *block tin*. The purer portions of the metal, termed *grained tin*, is heated till it becomes brittle, and is then let fall from a height, which splits it into small bars or prisms, and in this state it is found in commerce. These bars in bending make a peculiar crackling noise, and become heated—phenomena probably owing to the separating of their parts, and the sudden fracture caused by bending.

The salts of tin are very extensively used in dyeing and printing both cotton and woollen. Their introduction as mordants may be considered as forming an era in the art of dyeing, and like many other important improvements in this art, was the result of accident, an account of which is given by Berthollet as follows:—"A little while after the cochineal became known in Europe, the scarlet process by means of the solution of tin was discovered. It is stated that about the year 1630, Cornelius Drebbel observed, by an accidental mixture, the brilliancy which the solution of tin gave to the infusion of cochineal. He communicated his observation to his son-in-law, Kuffelar, who was a dyer at Leyden. He soon improved the process, kept it a secret in his workshop, and brought into vogue the colour which bore his name."

Soon afterwards, a German chemist found out the process of dyeing scarlet by means of the solution of tin. He brought his secret to London in 1643; it became known to others, was soon afterwards diffused over Europe, and its applications became more extended, as whenever a new dye drug was introduced into the art, the solution of tin was universally applied, by which means it became a standard mordant for the various dyewoods, such as logwood, Brazil wood, and the like. There is every probability that this was only a rediscovery, and that salts of tin were used by dyers in ancient times, but its use being kept secret, the knowledge of it died with its possessor.

Copper boilers used for dyeing woollen and silks used to have a part covered with or made of tin, to prevent the acid mordant from acting upon the copper, and this it does by a galvanic action, the tin being slowly acted upon, while the copper is protected. Now, wood vessels are used, the liquid being heated by steam.

Tin combines with oxygen in three different proportions—

Protoxide,	.	.	.	.	.	SnO.
Sesquioxide,	.	.	.	.	.	Sn <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> .
Peroxide,	.	.	.	.	.	SnO <sub>2</sub> .

There are salts of tin corresponding to these oxides, all more or less useful in dyeing.

PROTOXIDE OF TIN, OR STANNOUS OXIDE, is formed by precipitation from a solution of the protochloride of tin with carbonate of potash or soda. It is

obtained as a white powder, which is a hydrate of the oxide, and which, if heated to  $176^{\circ}$ , loses its water of combination and becomes black, and may be kept in this state; but if brought to a red heat, or into contact with a red-hot body, it takes fire, and in burning passes into the state of peroxide. The white hydrated oxide is easily dissolved in acids, and also in solutions of the alkalies, but these alkaline solutions are not permanent: for if diluted with water, a portion of the tin is precipitated, and another portion passes into the state of peroxide. Also, when brought into contact with other oxides which yield their oxygen freely, such as peroxide of iron, a reaction takes place: the iron is reduced to a lower state of oxidation, and the tin is raised to a higher. These reactions and properties are taken advantage of in some of the operations in dyeing.

The protoxide of tin and its protosalts all come under the denomination of *stannous salts*: and it may be remarked of them, as a general characteristic, that they all absorb oxygen from the air by exposure.

**PROTOCHLORIDE OF TIN** (*Salts of Tin, or Tin Salts*).—This salt is prepared by dissolving tin in strong hydrochloric acid; with the assistance of heat, the solution is rapidly evaporated, having some tin in it to prevent oxychlorides being formed, and the crystals collect at bottom. The crystals were formerly said to contain three equivalents of water, about 22 per cent.; but according to investigations by the late Dr. Penney, they contain only two equivalents. The crystals dissolve in a small portion of water; but if put into a large quantity, the whole becomes milky, and a white powder separates, which is an oxychloride of tin. A complete and clear solution of *salts of tin* in water cannot be retained for any length of time on account of the great attraction which this salt has for oxygen. A little hydrochloric acid put into the water, however, has the effect of greatly retarding, and, indeed, of almost wholly preventing this decomposition. In establishments where the dyers prepare their own *salts of tin*, they do not crystallise it, and as there is nearly always an excess of acid, some of these phenomena mentioned may not have been observed.

On adding potash to salts of protochloride of tin, a double salt is formed of chloride of tin and chloride of potassium, which may be crystallised.

Tin salts are occasionally adulterated with sulphate of zinc or magnesia. This can be detected by adding to a solution of the salt a little pure hydrochloric acid, then a few drops of a solution of chloride of barium. If any sulphates be present there is a white precipitate produced. Zinc may be present as chloride; in this case the crystals, by standing, become damp, as chloride of zinc attracts water.

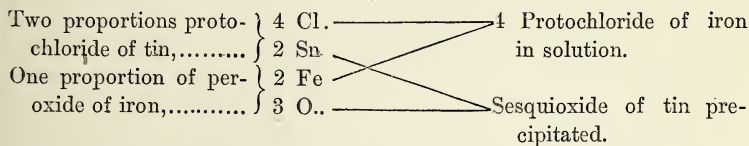
**PROTOSULPHATE OF TIN**.—Sulphuric acid dissolves tin slowly, and forms a thin pasty-looking mass, which, by evaporation, yields crystals. This salt is not used in the dye-house; it is, indeed, immediately decomposed by aqueous dilution.

PROTONITRATE OF TIN.—Protoxide of tin dissolves easily in dilute nitric acid, but it cannot be concentrated, from its liability to pass into the state of peroxide. When nitric acid of specific gravity  $1.114 = 23$  of Twaddell, is poured upon the metal, it dissolves it rapidly, and much heat is evolved, which ought to be kept down by placing the vessel containing the acid in cold water. If this be properly done, a protonitrate of tin is formed. But should the heat be allowed to rise too high, the nitric acid is also decomposed, and the tin passes into a higher state of oxidation.

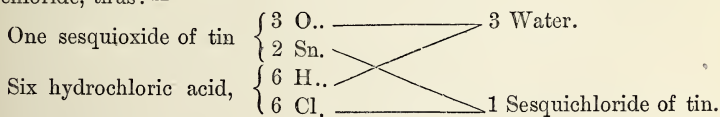
TARTRATE OF POTASH AND TIN is prepared by dissolving protoxide of tin in bitartrate of potash (*tartar* or *cream of tartar*). This forms a soluble salt, occasionally used in dyeing woollens; but the common mode of preparing this mordant is by adding *tartar* to the salts of tin.

A combination of the protoxide of tin, arsenic, and soda, and also alumina, tin, and soda, have been used in calico-printing.

DEUTOXIDE, OR SESQUIOXIDE OF TIN= $\text{Sn}_2\text{O}_3$ , can be prepared by adding to a saturated solution of protochloride of tin some newly-precipitated peroxide of iron: a double decomposition takes place as follows:—



Strong hydrochloric acid dissolves this oxide, and forms with it a sesquichloride, thus:—



The other salts corresponding to this oxide have not been examined; but the distinctive character of the oxide itself may be made evident by the two following reactions:—Ammonia dissolves this oxide, but does not dissolve the protoxide; and hydrochloric acid dissolves this oxide, but does not dissolve the peroxide. These reactions, however, may not positively prove the existence of such a salt as a sesquisalt; and, indeed, many chemists do not admit these salts. Mr. Ordway, however, in *Silliman's American Journal*, gives strong evidence in favour of such salts, which practical dyers will be inclined to homologate. When nitrate of tin is prepared by dissolving the metal in weak nitric acid, ammonia is formed in the process; but the spirit mordant made by this means is not regular in its results in dyeing, so that when such spirits are required it is customary to add 1 lb. of sal-ammonia to 9 lbs. of nitric acid at 32° Twad., and dissolving in this 1½ lb. of tin, put in in bars. These salts of tin which are supposed to be sesqui are distinguished from protochloride of tin by their colour

being dark or brownish; while both *proto* and *perchlorides* are colourless or white. Every dyer who is in the practice of preparing his own tin mordants will recognise the distinction, although he may not know the chemical difference; but he knows there are differences in the colours or tints produced. Ammonia in tin salts is generally used for dyeing wool. Different methods for preparing tin salts will be given when treating of the different dyes and their receipts. There can be little doubt but that a more full investigation into the sesquioxide and its salts would explain many of the hitherto unexplained phenomena of the process of dyeing; and that it is highly probable the formation of salts of this class play a considerable part in many dyeing operations, such as those processes in which chloride of tin is mixed with pernitrate of iron, as for royal blues, &c.

**PEROXIDE OF TIN.**—The ores of tin, termed *tinestone*, are mostly peroxide. They are black, shading to brown: in this state the oxide is not soluble in acids, but becomes so by previous ignition with an alkali.

When metallic tin is put into dilute nitric acid, and the action allowed to proceed rapidly, or when heat is applied, there is formed a hydrated peroxide, as a white mass, which contains 11 proportions of water. Dilute hydrochloric acid dissolves this oxide slightly, but it is not soluble in nitric or sulphuric acids. If acted upon by hydrochloric acid, and allowed to stand for some time, and the supernatant liquor then poured off, the remaining oxide is soluble in water. If this hydrated peroxide be dried with heat, it loses its water, and passes into the same state as the ore. Boiling water poured upon it will effect similar changes.

The peroxide of tin is obtained easily by precipitation from a solution of bichloride, on adding an alkaline carbonate. Thus prepared, and in this condition, the peroxide is easily dissolved in hydrochloric acid, either strong or dilute; but if this oxide be heated in any way, as by pouring boiling water upon it, strong hydrochloric acid will not dissolve it, and dilute acid only partially. The oxide has now indeed every property that it has when formed by the nitric acid process. It is also soluble in pure water, after being made into a paste with strong hydrochloric acid, but the addition of a little of this acid to the watery solution will precipitate it.

The changes effected upon this oxide by heat or applying boiling water are supposed to be owing to its state of hydration; but be that as it may, these peculiarities ought to attract the attention of the practical dyer, as the peculiarities of different tin salts and the annoyances to which they give rise are very considerable, and may only require the exercise of a little care to be avoided. The hydrated peroxide of tin is very soluble in caustic alkalies.

The peroxide of tin has been termed *stannic oxide* and *stannic acid*, as it has certain acid properties. It combines with alkalies, and forms salts.

**PERCHLORIDE OF TIN—STANNIC CHLORIDE** (*Permuriate of Tin*).—When



tin is dissolved in a mixture of hydrochloric and nitric acids, the salt formed is generally the perchloride =  $\text{SnCl}_4$ , and is the salt most generally used in the dye-house. But from what has been stated in reference to the separate oxides and salts, it will be evident that this subject stands in need of further investigation—the modes of preparing these mordants are so varied in the proportions of each of the acids, in the quantities of tin used, and in the manner of adding the tin; all and each of these circumstances, it will be observed, make a difference. If tin is added too rapidly, the action may be so violent and the heat so high as to precipitate some of the oxide in an insoluble state, which is termed firing; and if added too slowly and at a temperature too low, there may be protochlorides formed, or mixtures of the different salts, in very varied proportions; and hence, no doubt, the cause of the irregularity both in quality and kind of colour produced by tin mordants. Perchloride of tin is sometimes formed by dissolving crystals of the protochloride in a small portion of water, adding a little nitric acid and applying heat, or by passing a stream of chlorine gas through the solution of the salts of tin. These are termed in the dye-house oxychlorides of tin.

The late Dr. Penney communicated to the Chemical Society a simple means of testing the quantity of tin present in a solution of its salt in the proto-state, founded upon the well-known property of the reduction of chromic acid to oxide of chromium by protoxide of tin. The method recommended for *salts of tin* is the following:—100 grains of the crystals are put into a vessel with 20 oz. of water and half an ounce of hydrochloric acid;  $83\frac{1}{2}$  grains bichromate of potash are dissolved in warm water, and placed in an alkalimeter, the whole measuring 100 graduations; this solution is added by degrees to the solution of tin, which takes on a rich green colour; the solution of chrome is added, until a drop taken out and put upon a drop of acetate of lead, on a glass or paper surface, gives yellow. If the tin solution is more dilute and put into a large glass jar, the green tint, whenever the chrome is in excess, is perceptibly yellow. A little experience renders the operation simple. The quantity of bichromate ( $83\frac{1}{2}$  grains) is equal to 100 grains of pure metallic tin; hence every graduation of the chromic solution taken to effect the change described is equal to one grain of tin. As  $83\frac{1}{2}$  grains of bichromate of potash may not be soluble in one measure of the common alkalimeter, two measures may be taken; in that case two graduations will indicate one grain of tin in the salt tested.

Solutions of tin, such as are sold to calico-printers under the term *single* and *double muriates*, being simply strong and weak chloride, may be tested by taking a measured quantity of the solution and treating it in the same manner. Or by taking a weighed quantity of the solution of tin, say 500 grains, and making up with water to fill the alkalimeter, then dissolve 41.6 grains of bichromate of potash in warm water, and add the solution of tin to this very cautiously, as long as the tint remains of an olive-green colour, or a drop taken out and added to a drop of lead in solution gives a yellow colour. Whenever the yellow ceases to be obtained, the

operation is complete. Finally, by dividing 1000 by the number of graduations taken of the tin solution, the percentage of the tin is ascertained. Thus, say that 41.6 of bichromate of potash required 38 graduations of the tin solution to reduce the chromic acid, then

$$38)1000(26.3 = \text{percentage of tin in solution.}$$

This test only applies to tin in solution in the proto-state, but gives no change in the persalts of tin.

**SPIRITS.**—The solutions of tin, in the technical language of the dye-house, are termed *spirits*, with prefix to denote their special application, such as red spirits, yellow spirits, plumb spirits, &c. The preparation of these spirits is a matter of much importance and pride amongst dyers, and each has some little peculiarity which he keeps to himself, and on the virtue of which he supposes all his success depends. These peculiarities are generally in the proportion of the acids and the tin, and the manner of mixing them; hence the reason that we find one dyer best at reds, another at purples, another at blacks, and another at browns.

We will here give a few practical methods for preparing these spirits, as performed in the dye-house, reserving our remarks upon their varieties and effects for our general observations on mordants, to which we intend to devote a separate chapter, in order that we may be able to go fully into the subject.

The first process in preparing spirits is to *feather* or granulate the tin. This is done by melting it in an iron ladle, and pouring it, when in a melted state, into a vessel filled with cold water, the hand to be held as high as possible, so that it may pour more in drops. The appearance of the tin in this state is very beautiful. By this process of feathering, a very extended surface of metal is exposed to the acid, which facilitates its solution very much.

**RED SPIRITS.**—If red spirits be wanted—that is, a mordant for dyeing red upon cotton with Brazil-wood—the general method is to take three measures of muriatic acid and one of nitric acid, then add the tin by degrees to this mixture so long as the acids continue to dissolve the metal; care ought to be taken not to add it too rapidly, but bit by bit, adding one piece just as the other is dissolved. We know that this is not generally attended to, as one handful of the metal is put in after another, at certain and too often irregular intervals of time, giving very annoying results. When the metal is put in too rapidly, or too much at once, the action becomes violent, the solution gets heated, the nitric acid is decomposed, ammonia is formed in the solution, and when the solution cools a quantity of peroxidised tin falls to the bottom as a gelatinous precipitate, creating much loss. When spirits thus prepared are used for a brilliant red upon cotton by Brazil-wood, the proper hue is never obtained, the colour being always more or less brownish. The proportions of the acids for pre-

paring the red spirits are not invariably three to one, the mixture varies from half-and-half to five to one, depending upon the taste and experience of the dyer. Some dyers only dissolve a given quantity of the metal to the pound weight of the mixed acids, varying from one and a half to three ounces to the pound; but according to our experience, the acids, in whatever proportions they are mixed, ought to be saturated, at least so far as they will become saturated, observing the precautions described above. We have also found that when much nitric acid is used the reds are generally deeper in colour, and have a very great tendency to turn brown, especially if the goods be dried at a high temperature; but when the muriatic acid prevails, the colour obtained has more of the crimson or rose tint, and is not so liable to become brown or rusty in drying.

**PLUMB SPIRITS.**—This solution is prepared by dissolving tin in hydrochloric acid diluted with about a seventh of water, adding two ounces of tin to every pound weight of acid. The tin, as in other cases, ought to be added gradually. Some, however, add nitric acid, and prefer it thus mixed, and others add as much tin as the acid will dissolve cold.

**BARWOOD SPIRITS.**—The method given for the preparation of this solution is six measures muriatic and one of nitric acid, adding tin gradually until white bubbles begin to rise to the surface, allowing the solution to stand at least twelve hours before using it—a rather uncertain test of quantity of tin, and of the quality of the spirits.

**YELLOW SPIRITS.**—This solution is now seldom used; it was applied as a mordant for the dyeing of yellow by quercitron bark, and was merely the substitution of sulphuric acid for the nitric acid of the common red spirits. It was proposed by Dr. Bancroft as a question of cheapness in the preparation of scarlet spirits, and was afterwards much used, as stated, for dyeing yellows, as its name implies. By this method of preparation the tin was generally in the proto-state, which gave it a peculiarity in relation to the common red spirits, as it afforded bluer tints with red woods when used as a *raising* or *alterant*. The tin spirits, called double and single muriates, the salts of tin dissolved in water and muriatic acid, and metallic tin dissolved in hydrochloric acid (*plumb spirits*), have all the same effect. Some dyers, however, use the red spirits both as alterants and for dyeing yellows.

Instead of using hydrochloric acid for preparing spirits, some woollen dyers use sal-ammoniac or common salt, adding it to nitric acid in the proportion of 6 lbs. nitric acid to 1 of water, in which 1 lb. sal-ammoniac is dissolved, and then adding 10 oz. of tin.

**ACETATE OF TIN** is prepared by adding a solution of acetate of soda to protochloride of tin; common salt is formed and acetate of tin; the former is not hurtful to the dyer.

**OXALATE OF TIN** may be formed in the same way, by using oxalate of soda, or by dissolving precipitated protoxide of tin in oxalic acid.

In dissolving tin in hydrochloric acid, it is often observed that towards the end of the process, when a quantity of tin is in the solution, a part of the metal nearest the surface dissolves, while other parts become coated with a crystalline substance soluble only with much difficulty, and occasioning both annoyance and loss. This is caused by the bottom portion of the solution becoming denser than the upper portions, a galvanic action being induced between those parts of the tin in the weaker portion of the solution and the parts in the stronger, consequently depositing the tin upon the metal in the strongest parts of the solution. This evil can be prevented by occasionally stirring the solution.

The following is the reaction of solutions of other substances on the protosalts of tin :—

Potash and soda, . . . .	White precipitates, soluble in excess.
Ammonia, . . . .	„ insoluble in excess.
Carbonates of the alkalies, . . . .	„ soluble in caustic alkali.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . .	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . .	„
Galls in solution, . . . .	Slight yellow precipitate.
Chloride of gold, . . . .	Deep purple precipitate (purple of cassius).
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . . .	Brown precipitates.

With the persalts of tin—

Potash and soda, . . . .	White precipitates, soluble in excess.
Ammonia, . . . .	„ „
Carbonates of the alkalies, . . . .	„ soluble in caustic alkali.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . .	No precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . .	„
Solution of galls, . . . .	„
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . . .	Yellow precipitates, soluble in caustic potash.

---

#### STANNATE OF SODA.

We have already stated that peroxide of tin plays the part of an acid, and is in consequence termed stannic acid ; it combines with alkalies and forms salts termed stannates. The stannate of soda is a most important salt, and is extensively used as a mordant. In some dye-houses it is made as required by adding caustic soda to a saturated solution of perchloride of tin until the precipitate formed is redissolved, which is facilitated by heating the solution. In this way it will be observed that there is also formed a good quantity of common salt, which, however, is not deleterious to its use as a mordant. The manufacture of stannate of soda for dyers and calico-printers has been the subject of several patents. The following are the two principal, a description of which will enable the dyer to understand the principle of the formation of the salt. Messrs. Greenwood &



Mercer prepared the stannate by putting 22 lbs. of caustic soda into an iron pot or crucible placed in a furnace, and bringing to fusion, and when all vapours had ceased being given off, there were added 8 lbs. of nitrate of soda and 4 lbs. of common salt, and when the whole was again on the point of fusion, 10 lbs. of feathered tin were put into the mixture. In this operation the nitrate oxidises the tin, which, combining with the soda, forms stannate. When the mass cools it is dissolved in water and any impurities allowed to settle; the clear solution is decanted and evaporated to dryness, and sold in this state. Mr. James Young shortly after improved upon this process. Instead of using metallic tin and nitrate of soda, he took caustic soda, and bringing it to a heat of  $600^{\circ}$  Fah. in an iron vessel, he added thereto tin ore in powder, which is a peroxide, then recommended the addition of a little nitrate of soda and common salt, which aids the flow of the fused mass. After cooling, the mass was dissolved in water, and treated as the other. There have been several modifications of these processes, the result of experience, but they have not been superseded. Stannate of soda, as found in the market, often contains a considerable portion of silica and excess of alkali, and a good quantity of common salt, sometimes as much as 25 per cent. There are some dyers who content themselves with testing the value of their stannate by dissolving a weighed quantity, and taking the strength by the hydrometer. Nothing could be more fallacious and misleading, because all the soluble impurities raise the specific gravity; indeed, the required gravity can easily be obtained without the presence of tin, which is the mordant. The proper object is to ascertain the quantity of tin present in a given weight, which can be done by a very simple process. Weigh 100 grains and dissolve in water, add muriatic acid in slight excess, and put into this a piece of clean sheet zinc, which precipitates the tin in a metallic state, when it can then be collected, washed, and weighed; or this precipitated metal may be dissolved in muriatic acid, and tested as we have described, for protochloride of tin. There are several other simple methods, provided the dyer has a pair of good balances.

Under this heading we may mention a case that may prove useful as well as illustrative of the care required where tin or its oxides may be present. A large bleaching establishment was annoyed by having goods returned to them after being away for several months, because of large brown stains which shewed themselves when the goods were taken out the folds. Some blamed iron oxide, others mildew and adulterated starch, &c.; much time and expense were expended to get at the cause, but still goods were returned. We had some of the stained goods sent us, and found the stains to be caused by the presence of tin. The starching bowls or rollers were made of bronze; and during the night, and particularly from Saturday till Monday, moisture condensed upon these rollers, and collected at the lower portion, causing a partial oxidation of the tin in the bronze. When this took place, the first piece that passed through in the morning was stained with tin oxide, which being colourless, the stain was not seen; but after

exposure for months in a warehouse where gas was used, a sulphide of tin was formed from the sulphur in the gas producing a brown stain. Care was afterwards taken to clean the rollers every morning before using. Although the workmen never could see the use of doing so, as no dirt was seen, still twenty years have passed since, and no more stains of this sort have occurred.

---

### TITANIUM (Ti 50).

This metal was discovered in 1791. It is generally found in Nature in combination with iron; a great number of the iron ores of this country seem to contain traces of this metal. It regularly makes its appearance in the blast furnace; but its proportion in the ores is so minute, that no chemist has yet detected it in analysing them; and it has not been found in any great quantity. It is not dissolved in any acid except *aqua regia*, a mixture of nitric and hydrochloric acids. It combines in two proportions with oxygen, forming



The latter oxide, on account of its combining with the alkalies, and forming soluble salts with them, has been termed titanic acid.

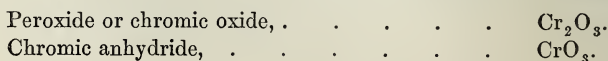
The salts formed by the action of acids upon this metal have not been much studied; those which have been investigated most carefully are the salts formed by the peroxide or titanic acid. Solutions of these salts give a brown precipitate with galls; but all the compounds of this metal are very untractable, and being besides very scarce, they are of little use in the arts.

---

### CHROMIUM (Cr 52).

This metal is found in considerable quantities in Nature, combined with lead and iron. The latter (chrome iron) is its principal ore. It is found in America and in different parts of the continent of Europe; also in Shetland, and in Fife and Perthshires, in Scotland. The composition of the ore is  $\text{FeO} + \text{Cr}_2\text{O}_3$ .

The metal was discovered in 1797 by Vauquelin. It approaches to cast iron in appearance, but has only been obtained in the state of powder. It is very difficult to fuse, and does not undergo oxidation by exposure to the air. The metal is not acted upon directly by the common acids; but may be obtained in combination with acids, by decomposing some of its salts or oxides, of which the two following are the most useful, namely,—



The latter with water forms chromic acid, the acid of the salts named chromates. The oxide of chromium exists combined with iron in the ore, as stated above; it is not, however, obtained from the ore direct, but by acting upon some of the salts of chromic acid. It is of a beautiful green colour, and may be prepared by various methods; the following is one method:—

1 part bichromate of potash.

$1\frac{1}{2}$  part sal-ammoniac.

1 part carbonate of potash.

Ignite this mixture in a crucible: the chromic acid is decomposed, and the oxide formed. By digesting what remains in water, the oxide is obtained as an insoluble powder. Another and more easily-practised method for the dye-house is that adopted on the continent. Take 9 lbs. of bichromate of potash, and dissolve in 5 gallons of boiling water; then, into a boiler containing 23 gallons of boiling water, put 10 lbs. of the white oxide of arsenic; boil for ten minutes, and allow the liquor to settle. The *clear* is then mixed with the solution of bichromate of potash, stirring all the time, when very soon the hydrated oxide of chrome is formed and precipitated. After the whole is cool, it is put upon a filter, and the oxide which remains upon the filter is washed with boiling water. If a little hydrochloric acid be added, the chrome oxide is obtained as a green solution. This oxide has long been used to give a green colour to glass and porcelain, and has lately been introduced and is now used in calico-printing. It is also partially used in the dye-house for dyeing colours of various tints, all of which have the valuable property of permanency.

CHLORIDE OF CHROMIUM.—The oxide of chromium, as just stated, dissolves readily in hydrochloric acid, and forms a chloride which has a deep green colour and a strong acid reaction. Evaporated nearly to dryness, there are produced red-coloured scales, which give a green solution with water. The following method for the preparation of the chloride has been recommended: Hydrochloric acid is diluted with water until the acid no longer gives off fumes; it is then heated, and when hot as much of the oxide of chromium, prepared by the arsenic solution, is added as the acid will dissolve; the whole is then left to settle, and the *clear* is taken off. This contains some free acid, which would act upon the cotton fibre; to remove it and obtain the salt in a neutral state, potash or soda ley is poured in gradually, until the oxide of chromium begins to be precipitated. The solution thus prepared has a dark-green colour, and is used for several operations in dyeing. Preparations of this salt, or rather mixture of salts, have been long used in calico-printing. These are made by mixing together chromate of potash, hydrochloric acid, and tartaric acid, in a great variety of proportions, giving green tints of various depths according to the mixture used.

SULPHATE OF CHROMIUM.—Sulphuric acid added to oxide of chromium

dissolves it, and forms a green-coloured solution, which does not crystallise. If evaporated to dryness, it loses its solubility in water. By adding sulphate of potash or a solution of potash to solution of chromium, taking care not to precipitate any of the oxide, there is formed a double salt, termed *chrome alum*. The solution of this double salt is a bluish purple; it crystallises easily, giving dark purple-coloured crystals; but care must be taken that the solution is not heated to the boiling point, as it is thereby turned green, and yields no crystals.

Oxalate, acetate, tartrate, &c., of chromium may be obtained by dissolving the oxide in any of these acids; they all give green-coloured solutions. If we mix together one part of bichromate of potash, two of crystallised oxalic acid, and two of binoxalate of potash, and dissolve the mixture in boiling water, a salt is formed which crystallises in nearly black-coloured crystals. It is a double oxalate of chromium and potash.

CHROMIC ACID.—Salts of this acid are prepared directly from the chrome iron ore; and the acid is obtained by decomposing these salts. Chromic acid is of a beautiful deep orange colour, approaching to scarlet, and may be obtained in a crystalline form, having the following formula,  $\text{CrO}_4\text{H}_2$ . Various methods have been proposed for preparing it; the following, by the late Mr. Robert Warrington, is probably the most simple:—"Take 100 measures of a cold saturated solution of bichromate of potash (prepared by boiling, and then allowing the solution to cool and deposit the excess of the salt), and add to this from 120 to 150 measures of concentrated sulphuric acid; the latter should be free from sulphate of lead, as otherwise it would fall as chromate and sulphate of lead with the chromic acid on dilution with the bichromate. The mixture is then allowed to cool, and the chromic acid gradually crystallises in beautiful dark crimson needles. Decant the fluid part, and place the crystals with the adhering sulphuric acid on a thick flat tile of biscuit porcelain; another tile is then to be placed upon the crystals, and the whole submitted to a pressure for a considerable time. On removing the chromic acid, it will be found in a perfectly dry state, and yielding a mere trace of sulphuric acid on examination."

Chromic acid may also be prepared from the chromate of lead, which results from the mixture of a salt of lead and bichromate of potash at the bottom of the *chrome tubs* used in dyeing yellows. Two parts of strong sulphuric acid being added to one part of dry chromate of lead slightly heated, and allowed to stand for about twelve hours; water is then added, which causes the lead to be precipitated as a sulphate, and the chromic acid, mixed with a little sulphuric acid, remains in solution. The liquid is decanted and evaporated at a boiling heat; on cooling, the greater portion of the chromic acid separates in beautiful carmine-red crystals. If the process be carefully conducted, a great portion of what is now little better than thrown away might be made useful by a trifling addition of



expense. Another method of preventing waste is to add potash to the solution, so as to form chromate and sulphate of potash, which may afterwards be separated by crystallisation.

Chromic acid combines with the different bases, and forms a series of important salts. With potash it combines in two proportions, forming what is termed the yellow and the red chromate of potash. The yellow chromate of potash may be prepared by adding to two pounds of red chromate one pound of caustic potash; it crystallises in small crystals of a rich deep lemon colour, composed of one proportion of acid and two of potassium,  $K_2CrO_4$ . This salt is not much used in the arts.

**BICHROMATE (RED CHROMATE) OF POTASH.**—This salt may be prepared from the yellow chromate by adding a little sulphuric acid, which combines with a portion of the potash, leaving two proportions of chromic acid in union with one proportion of potassium, represented as  $KHCrO_4$ ; it crystallises in large square tabular crystals of a rich orange-red colour. This is the salt used in the arts, not only for dyeing, but for the preparation of other chrome compounds; it is prepared on the large scale in the following manner:—Chrome iron ore, after being finely ground and sifted, is mixed with a quantity of dried nitrate and carbonate of potash. This mixture is thrown into a reverberating furnace, and subjected to a powerful heat, being occasionally stirred. When perfectly calcined, the mass is raked out and dissolved in water. It is then boiled for several hours, after which the insoluble portion is allowed to settle, and the solution decanted; this is evaporated, and leaves the yellow chromate of potash crystallised. The chemical changes which take place in the furnace are these: the nitre gives off oxygen, which combines with the oxide of chromium, and forms chromic acid; this unites with the potash of the nitrate and of the carbonate, and forms the yellow salt or chromate which is soluble in water, and is afterwards separated as described. It contains also soluble impurities, such as caustic potash, silicate and aluminate of potash, which are separated by the succeeding operations of boiling and crystallisation.

The bichromate, which is the salt used in dyeing, is prepared from the yellow salt obtained as above, as follows:—Into a concentrated solution is poured acetic or sulphuric acid. The latter acid, though often used, is not well adapted for the purpose, as the sulphate of potash formed is very difficult to separate from the bichromate, and constitutes a serious adulteration. Acetic acid is preferable, and is now generally employed. The quantity of the acid is so regulated, that it combines with the one-half of the potash in the yellow salt, leaving two proportions of chromic acid in union with the other half. The solution of yellow chromate being concentrated before the addition of the acetic acid, the bichromate formed has not as much water as will hold it in solution, and is therefore thrown down as an orange-coloured powder; this is carefully collected, dissolved in water, and crystallised by slow evaporation.

Another method is by heating finely-ground ore with chalk and carbonate of potash to redness in a current of air; the mixture absorbs oxygen and becomes yellow; it is treated with water, and carbonate of potash added to precipitate the lime; the yellow solution is drawn off, and nitric acid added, and on evaporating the solution crystals of bichromate of potash are formed.

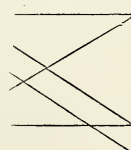
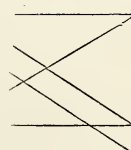
When the bichromate of potash has been prepared by sulphuric acid, as in the first process, it is very liable to contain sulphate of potash, and that often to a great extent. This salt may be detected by dissolving a small quantity of the chromate in distilled water, adding to it a little pure nitric acid, and then nitrate of barytes, which will give a white precipitate if a sulphate be present. The solution used in testing should be much diluted. If any chloride of potassium be present, it may be detected by adding a little nitrate of silver to a solution of the chromate, similarly prepared by having a little nitric acid added to it; in this case a white precipitate results.

Soda has been tried in the preparation of this salt to form a bichromate of soda, which might be equally useful to the dyer, but this base is not used for the reasons already assigned at page 109.

CHROMATE OF LEAD.—The chromates of other bases or metals are obtained by adding solutions of their salts to solutions of either the yellow or red chromate of potash. For example, when a salt of lead—*e. g.* the acetate or nitrate, is added to a solution of bichromate of potash, the chromate of lead is formed and precipitates as a yellow powder, constituting the *chrome yellow dye*. If this yellow precipitate is digested in hot caustic ley, a basic salt of lead and chromium is formed, having two proportions of lead and one of chromic acid: it is therefore a subchromate of lead. This is a deep orange precipitate, approaching to a scarlet, and constitutes the *orange dye*. If a little chromate of lead (the grounds of the chrome tub) be dried, and added to some fused nitre in a crucible as long as effervescence and red fumes are observed, and the melted mass is then poured out, there will be at the bottom some subchromate of lead, which may be washed out by water: it is of a rich vermilion red, far superior in tint to anything we have ever seen as a dye—to produce which on the fibre is worth aiming at.

CHROME YELLOW.—The chromate of lead has almost completely superseded the use of vegetable dye-stuffs in dyeing yellow, orange, and green upon cotton fabrics. To dye a yellow, the goods are immersed or wrought through a solution of either acetate or nitrate of lead, from which, after being tightly wrung or pressed, they are passed through a solution of bichromate of potash, and the chromate of lead is thus formed upon and within the fibre. The goods are put several times through this operation when deep shades are required; or, what is now more generally practised, the lead solution is added to lime water as long as the precipitate

formed is re-dissolved, and the goods are wrought through this solution, and then passed through the bichromate solution; or the lead solution may be added to potash or soda. Yellows dyed by alkaline solutions of lead are not so liable to redden. Other qualities of yellow are also obtained by adding hydrochloric acid to the solution of bichromate of potash, distinguished as *acid yellow*. When dyeing yellows with the acid salt of lead, on passing the goods into the chrome solution, there is a great quantity of chromate of lead formed which is not in the fibre: this precipitates to the bottom, and causes considerable loss. We have already shewn that this chromate of lead may be used for making chromic acid; it is very soluble in alkalis, and may be made useful in that way also in the dye-house. When this method is practised for dyeing a quantity of goods in different parcels to be dyed of the same shade of colour, there is a liability to inequality, as the chromate solution is not renewed each time, only an addition of the chrome salt is made for each parcel of goods passing through the dye; there therefore follows an accumulation of free acid in the solution which re-acts upon the colour, varying the tint of different lots. So well are these circumstances known in practice, that if yellow of a red tint is required, or what is termed *amber*, nitrate of lead is used in preference to the acetate in proportion to the depth of redness required. This gives free nitric acid in the dye, which acts more powerfully than the acetic acid upon the chromate of lead. The same effects are produced by adding a little nitric acid to the chrome solution. The action of the nitrate of lead added to bichromate of potash may be thus stated: Suppose that 100 lbs. of cotton goods are to be dyed yellow, and that the dyer use 330 ounces nitrate of lead, which, if all were taken up by the cotton, there would be required 204 ounces of bichromate of potash, thus:—

330 oz. nitrate of lead, composed of .....	{	206 lead.....		Chromate of lead.
		63 NO <sub>3</sub> .....		
		63 NO <sub>3</sub> .....		
204 oz. of bichro- mate of potash...	{	164 chromic acid		Nitric acid.
		1 hydrogen....		
		1 potassium ...		
				Nitrate of potash.

All the lead used is not imbibed by the cotton, therefore much less bichromate is required than that given here; but the action is the same in relation to the lead really fixed upon the goods. The same reaction takes place when acetate of lead is used, but the free acetic acid does not act so powerfully upon the chromate of lead forming the dye. When subsalts of lead are used no acid is liberated—hence the decided preference given to these salts in dyeing. For instance, were we dyeing 100 lbs. of cotton in different parcels—say 10 lbs. at a time—one after the other, without a new liquor for each, only adding a little lead for each, the last parcel would have the same chance as the first of being uniform in the tint. These remarks also enable us to appreciate the use of alkaline solutions of lead.

CHROME GREENS are dyed in the same manner as the yellow, the goods being previously dyed blue by means of the blue vat. In dyeing green, the acid salts of lead are not used, as the free acid tends to redden the hue; the goods are not allowed to stand for any time out of the solution of the bichromate, as that also reddens the yellow. If acid salts are used, even with the greatest amount of care, there is much difficulty in avoiding brown blotches and light parts; but there are fewer of these difficulties experienced when the lead is either in a subacetate state, or in the state of an alkaline salt.

CHROME ORANGE is obtained by fixing upon the goods the subchromate of lead, as already mentioned. This is effected by dyeing the goods a deep yellow, and passing them through a strong hot alkaline solution, which combines with a portion of the chromic acid, and leaves the subchromate of lead upon the cloth. The alkaline solution commonly used for converting the chromate of lead into the subchromate upon yarn or cloth is lime, for piece goods soda is used.

The following receipt will produce a good orange upon a hundred pounds weight of cotton:—

Thirty pounds of brown sugar of lead and 17 lbs. of litharge are put into a boiler with about 12 gallons of water, and boiled together for an hour or so, until the litharge is dissolved; then a quantity of lime, from one to two pounds, is added, any sediment formed is allowed to settle, and the clear fluid drawn off and put into a tub; 12 lbs. bichromate of potash are dissolved in another tub; these are stock tubs, from which the dyeing tubs are supplied. Two other tubs, capable of allowing ten pounds of yarn to be wrought in them with freedom, are filled, one with water, to which a little of the lead solution is added, and the other with lime water; 10 lbs. of the yarn (a bundle) is now wrought for some time through the tub containing the lead, wrung out, and put through the lime water; a little more lead is added, another bundle is passed through the same tub, renewing the lime-water each time. The whole are passed two or three times through this operation, according to the depth of orange wanted. The bundles are next wrought through a tub of water, to which is added some of the solution of the bichromate of potash, then passed through the lead solution, and again through the chrome. A saturated solution of newly slaked lime is brought to the boiling point; in this the yarn is wrought, either by drawing some off in tubs, or by the most convenient method that circumstances will allow, until the colour is changed to a deep orange or scarlet. It is then taken out, passed through another tub filled with boiling water, to which is added a small quantity of solution of soap, soda, and oil; afterwards it is wrung out and dried at a high temperature. The *raising* of the orange, as the hot liming is termed, is the most trying operation. If the lead has not been properly prepared, or if there be any mismanagement in the operation of fixing it upon the fibre, the hot lime will take all the



colour off, leaving but a red salmon shade. Or if the goods are unequally dyed, the colour will come off in parts; and, what is still more frequently the case, the chromate of lead being entirely soluble in lime-water at a temperature a little under boiling, if the lime solution is allowed to become too cold, the colour will be discharged. The lime-water ought to be at the *spring of the boil*, and as we have seen (page 116), the higher the temperature the less lime is held in solution, consequently the less risk of failure. Great care is necessary, for an orange once wrong, it is very difficult to recover.

Bichromate of potash has been very extensively used of late as a mordant for a variety of colours upon woollen, and is entirely superseding several of the old processes for dyeing many of the ordinary shades, which were very tedious in manipulation. It is also extensively used for dyeing catechu browns upon cotton, examples of which will be given in the receipt. We may mention that working much with solutions of chrome and lead is very injurious to the hands, especially if there be any part of the skin broken, producing often very severe sores; a solution of *gutta-percha* applied over the sore, forming an artificial skin, has the effect of preventing this annoyance.

TESTS FOR BICHROMATE OF POTASH.—Tests for the strength and quality of bichromate of potash may easily be formed, thus:—Take pure nitrate of lead, say 165 grains, and dissolve in 200 measures of water; this ought to precipitate 74 grains of bichromate; so that it is merely required to dissolve 74 grains of bichromate of potash, and adding the nitrate of lead solution as long as any precipitate takes place; if all the lead is requisite, the chrome is good, but every three graduations of the lead solution left, after precipitating all the chrome, will represent about one per cent. impurity of the bichromate; or the same method may be taken as described for lead (page 151). These operations are easy, and may be performed by any practical dyer, although little acquainted with chemical manipulations.

The following is the reaction of salts of oxide of chromium with other substances in solution:—

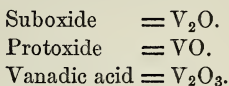
Potash and soda, .....	Greenish precipitates, soluble in excess.
Ammonia, .....	Blue precipitate.
Carbonates of the alkalis, .....	Light-green precipitates.
Yellow and red prussiates of potash, ...	No precipitates.
Solution of galls, .....	Greenish precipitate.

The reaction of bichromate upon the re-agents is as follows:—

Solutions of lead, .....	Yellow precipitates, soluble in potash
Silver salts, .....	Red brown.
Zinc, .....	Forms with these salts a double salt, which is brown, and crystallises.

## VANADIUM (V 51.3).

This metal was discovered in 1830. It is found in Nature combined with lead and iron, but is exceedingly rare. Small samples of its oxide, termed vanadic acid, are sold by the grain as a chemical curiosity. It has a strong resemblance to chromium in many of its chemical characters, and combines with oxygen in three proportions:—



There is no combination of vanadium with an acid corresponding to the suboxide, but there are salts corresponding with the protoxide; these, in solution, produce with

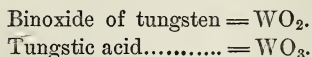
Ammonia,.....Brown precipitate.  
Yellow prussiate of potash,.....Yellow precipitate.  
Red prussiate of potash,.....Green precipitate.  
Galls,.....Blue-black precipitate.  
Sulphides of the alkalies, .....Brown-black precipitate.

Vanadic acid combines with the alkalies, and forms a variety of coloured salts, nearly all soluble in water. All the reactions of the compounds of this metal give strong hopes that, were it found plentifully, it would become a useful substance in the hand of the dyer; although in the meantime, from its price and scarcity, it is of no importance to him.

---

TUNGSTENUM OR WOLFRAM (W 184).

This metal has the appearance of iron, and exists in Nature chiefly in combination with lime. It combines with oxygen in two proportions:—



Bin oxide of tungsten is a brown-red powder, which does not dissolve in acids, and there are therefore no salts of tungstenum corresponding to this oxide. The oxide passes readily into the state of tungstic acid by combining with more oxygen; and it is in this state that it is found in Nature forming a tungstate of lime. By dissolving this mineral in hydrochloric acid, the lime is dissolved, and the tungstic acid remains as a yellowish powder, which combines with alkalies, and forms soluble salts. Acids added to these salts give yellow precipitates.

If tungstic acid is dissolved in sulphide of potassium, or of sodium, and an acid is added, the tungstenum is precipitated in the state of sulphide, of a deep-brown colour, nearly black.

## MOLYBDENUM (Mo 96).

This metal is obtained in Nature combined with sulphur. The ore has much the resemblance of plumbago; but the metal itself is white, resembling silver, and difficult to fuse. It is not soluble in dilute acids, but dissolves readily in *aqua regia*. It combines with oxygen in three proportions—

Protoxide.....= $\text{MoO}$ .

Peroxide.....= $\text{MoO}_2$ .

Molybdic acid...= $\text{MoO}_3$ .

The protoxide is of a black colour; it is difficultly soluble in acids, giving a black solution not crystallisable.

PEROXIDE OF MOLYBDENUM is obtained by digesting molybdic acid with hydrochloric acid and copper; the solution has a deep-red colour, and by adding to it an excess of ammonia, the copper is dissolved, and the peroxide of molybdenum is precipitated. This oxide dissolves in acids, forming salts which are red when crystallised, owing to the presence of water, but when rendered anhydrous, they become black.

Oxalic acid dissolves this oxide, and forms with it a salt which crystallises in bluish-black crystals. These crystals are soluble in water, and give a red coloured solution, to which, if ammonia be added, a red-brown precipitate is obtained.

MOLYBDIC ACID is obtained by roasting the native sulphide in the air until all the sulphur is evolved; the acid remains as a powder. When required pure, this powder is dissolved in ammonia, and the solution is evaporated in order to crystallise the acid. The crystals obtained are then submitted to a moderate heat to drive off the ammonia, and the acid remains pure. It is slightly soluble in water, but combines readily with the alkalies, forming salts, which are all soluble in water, and all crystallise. By adding an acid to the solution of these salts, the molybdic acid is precipitated. They act towards re-agents as follows:—

Salts of lead, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Nitrate of silver, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Persalts of iron, . . . . .	Yellow precipitates.

The salts formed by dissolving the peroxide in an acid act towards re-agents as follows:—

Solution of galls, . . . . .	Yellow precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . . .	} Brown precipitates.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . . .	
Potash and soda, . . . . .	Brownish-black precipitates.
Carbonates of the alkalies, . . . . .	Light-brown precipitates.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . . . .	Brownish-yellow precipitates.

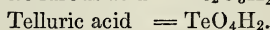
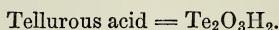
Similar precipitates may be obtained from the salts of molybdic acid, by adding, along with the re-agents, a little hydrochloric acid, to take up the alkali of the salt.

Some years ago expectations were raised by the discovery of a large quantity of native molybdate of lead, and the preparation of a compound of molybdenum with phosphoric acid and ammonia, to be used in dyeing, under the name of mineral indigo, but it failed in practice.

---

### TELLURIUM (Te 128).

This is a metal which is found in combination with silver, bismuth, and lead. Its colour is silver-white, its structure crystalline and brittle; it volatilises at a high heat, and burns in air with a blue flame; its chemical properties resemble sulphur. It combines with oxygen in two proportions, both of which have acid properties:—



TELLUROUS ACID is a light, white, earthy powder, soluble in acids, and also in the alkalies, with which it forms salts (*tellurites*), which are very soluble in water, and easily decomposed.

TELLURIC ACID may be obtained by first fusing tellurous acid with nitre, which gives tellurate of potash; then, by dissolving this salt, and adding a solution of barytes, there is formed an insoluble tellurate of barytes, which is again decomposed by digestion in sulphuric acid; the sulphuric acid takes up the barytes, and the telluric acid remains in solution, and may be afterwards crystallised. A tellurate of soda and potash may be formed by dissolving these alkalies in the acid: they are soluble in water.

The action of re-agents upon the salts of tellurium is as follows:—

Alkalies, . . . . .	White precipitates, redissolved.
Yellow and red prussiate, . . .	No precipitate.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	Yellowish precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . .	Brownish precipitates.

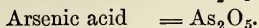
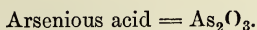
---

### ARSENIC (As 75).

This metal is very abundantly distributed in Nature, and is found in various states of combination. It is chiefly, however, associated with iron, nickel, and cobalt. Arsenic has a grey steel lustre, is brittle, crystalline, and very easily volatilised, rising in vapour at a heat of about 356°, and is thus easily separated from its ores. It combines with oxygen in three



different proportions:—First, a greyish oxide, probably suboxide, which forms upon the surface of the metal by exposure to air; and



ARSENIOUS ACID.—This is plentiful in commerce as white arsenic; it is a heavy, white, opaque mass as sublimed, although generally sold in the market as a powder or in crystals. This acid is dissolved by boiling water, in the proportion of about 1 part to 10 of water; but on cooling, the solution deposits nearly three-fourths of this quantity. It has little, if any, taste, but is notoriously a deadly poison.

The best antidote for arsenic when taken into the stomach, is newly-precipitated peroxide of iron. This can always be obtained in a very few minutes in the dye-house, by adding to the nitrate, or any other *per*-solutions of iron, a little ammonia, potash, or soda: the iron is immediately precipitated. The precipitate ought first to be washed with water, and then taken in the gelatinous state. The arsenious acid in the stomach receives oxygen from the peroxide of iron, and is converted into arsenic acid, which combines with the protoxide of iron, and is not poisonous. Should arsenic be taken into the stomach in the state of arsenic acid, protoxide of iron will serve the same purpose as the peroxide, and is obtained by precipitating some copperas by means of an alkali. At the same time medical aid ought not to be neglected.

Arsenious acid dissolves in hydrochloric acid in much greater quantity than in water, but does not combine with the acid (see Chlorine). It is rapidly dissolved in hot solutions of bitartrate of potash, and forms a crystallisable salt. It is dissolved also in great quantity by solutions of potash and soda, and also, but not so effectually, by the carbonates of these alkalies.

This acid, as before mentioned (page 146) is used in the dye-house for dyeing Scheele's green (*arsenic sages*); but not so much at the present time as some years ago; and there cannot be a doubt but that any process which would supersede its use entirely would benefit all who are engaged in the working with such goods. Common humanity, indeed, dictates its complete abandonment as a dye, either on goods or paper. Nor is the evil so much in the operations of dyeing as in those that succeed: persons who have occasion to work with the yarns after they are dyed, suffer more severely than the dyers. The colour being merely a precipitate of the arsenite of copper (a most deadly poison) upon the fibre of the yarn, to which much adheres loosely, and is readily disengaged as dust in the dry state, especially in the process of winding, much of it is unavoidably inhaled by the unfortunate operative. The result is, as might be expected, that health is seriously impaired, and not unfrequently the consequences are fatal. Warpings also are subjected to the same baneful evil, although in a less degree; and even the weaver is not exempt from it. Altogether,

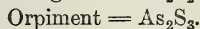
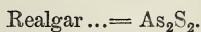
indeed, the injury to the community by the use of this dye is as great as that arising from the unrestricted sale of poisons, against which a legal enactment was shortly obtained. We are convinced, moreover, that it is an unnecessary evil, and that dyers would very soon, under the pressure of a little public opinion, find means of avoiding it, and producing a similar colour innocuously and of an innocuous character.

This dye is still continued to be extensively used upon paper for rooms. When used as flock it is very reprehensible, but even upon glazed paper it is not safe. Only two years ago, a gentleman complained to us that for several months he and his wife had got into a low state of health, and he suspected the paper in his bedroom as the cause. We had a piece of the paper to test, and found the green to be an arsenic green. The paper was taken off, and another, not green, put on. They soon regained their wonted health. This is only one case out of many that have come within our notice. At the same time, while we believe that such dyes on paper put on walls are hurtful, we must acknowledge that the amount of arsenic given off under the circumstances must be exceedingly minute, and suggests a still further inquiry into the effect of such infinitesimal quantities of deleterious substances taken into the system.

ARSENIC ACID.—This acid is made by heating arsenious acid with about its own weight of water, and when at the boiling point adding nitric acid, as long as red fumes are given off: the whole is then evaporated to dryness, to expel any excess of nitric acid that may be present. The heat of the mass, when dry, must not be high, otherwise the arsenic acid will be decomposed. Arsenic acid is milk-white, deliquesces, and is soluble in water: its solution having a sour taste, and strong acid reactions.

When an equivalent of arsenic acid is ignited with an excess of carbonate of soda or potash, a subsalt is formed, which is soluble in water, and easily crystallised. Salts of the alkalis are also formed by adding arsenic acid to hot alkaline solutions. These salts crystallise, and their solutions in water give white precipitates with the solutions of the earths and their salts. Solutions of the salts of lead also give white precipitates; nitrate of silver a precipitate of a brown colour; and salts of copper produce green precipitates. These salts can all be made available in the dye-house, although, for the reasons above stated, it would be well if substitutes were used.

SULPHIDES OF ARSENIC.—There are two compounds of sulphur and arsenic, which are, or rather were, occasionally used in the dye-house. These are—



The first of these can be prepared by fusing arsenic, or arsenious acid, with sulphur; it is transparent, and of a fine ruby colour.

The latter may be prepared by adding to a solution of arsenious acid in

hydrochloric acid a sulphide of an alkali, either potash or soda; it is precipitated of a rich yellow colour, and is much used in painting, under the name of *king's yellow*.

Both of these sulphides are found native. Their principal use in the dye-house was in the blue vat, but they are seldom used now.

We remember seeing a beautiful illustration of the formation of these two sulphides, realgar and orpiment. A large quantity of copper ore containing arsenic was laid out upon a bed of cinders from the furnace, which by some cause was set on fire, and the lower portion of the copper ore subjected to great heat. A portion of the arsenic was sublimed in passing through the mass of ore, in a crystalline state, both as realgar and orpiment. Some beautiful crystalline specimens were obtained of these sulphides.

Arsenic combines readily with hydrogen, and forms a gas, *arseniuretted hydrogen*, which is very poisonous. When arsenic is present in any solution from which hydrogen is being given off, arseniuretted hydrogen is formed, and therefore care ought to be taken not to breathe any of the gas. From this property of combining with hydrogen, the presence of arsenic in the most minute quantity can be detected by putting a piece of pure zinc and hydrochloric acid in the solution. Hydrogen is given off, which is passed through a fine jet and burned by holding over the flame a piece of white china; if arsenic is present it gives a dark metallic spot on the china. Sulphuric acid (see page 77) often contains arsenic.

---

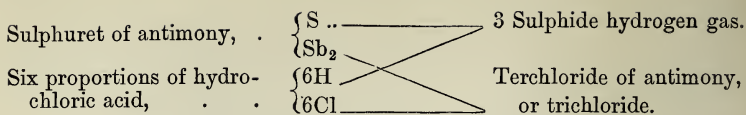
#### ANTIMONY (Sb 122·3).

This metal is found in considerable abundance associated with sulphur, which is separated from it by roasting. Antimony is a bright and white metal, of a crystalline structure, very brittle, and not oxidised by exposure to the air. It volatilises at a high heat and oxidises or burns at a red heat, when exposed to the air: it then passes off in white fumes. Antimony combines with oxygen in three proportions, forming—

Oxide of antimony, . . . .	= $\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_3$ .
Antimonious acid, . . . .	= $\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_4$ .
Antimonic acid, . . . .	= $\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_5$ .

OXIDE OF ANTIMONY may be prepared either by sublimation, as already stated, or by precipitation from a solution of any of its salts, by an alkali.

When the sulphide of antimony (the common ore) is digested in strong hydrochloric acid, the metal dissolves, and forms a chloride of antimony, or rather a terchloride, as follows:—



The clear solution being poured off, and heated to the boiling point, carbonate of potash or soda is then added, and the antimony is precipitated in the state of oxide as a white powder. Both potash and soda dissolve this oxide.

SULPHATE OF ANTIMONY may be prepared by digesting the sulphide in strong sulphuric acid with the aid of heat; or the metal may be substituted for the sulphide.

All the acid salts of antimony are decomposed by aqueous dilution; an insoluble oxychloride is thereby formed and precipitated as a white powder, except there be an excess of acid. There are, however, several double salts of antimony with other substances, which are soluble, and not precipitated by dilution. Thus, when a strong solution of binoxalate of potash is heated, and oxide of antimony added, a salt is formed, which is soluble in water, and from which the antimony is not precipitated by dilution. Again, when oxide of antimony is boiled in water, and tartrate of potash added, a double salt (tartar emetic) is formed, which crystallises, and is not precipitated by dilution.

ANTIMONIOUS ACID is obtained by oxidising or acting upon metallic antimony with nitric acid. It is also formed when sulphate of antimony is roasted. Some doubts exist as to the true nature of this compound; it is probably a mixture of oxide of antimony with antimonious acid (thus  $\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{Sb}_2\text{O}_5$ ), having the same elements as two proportions of antimonious acid =  $\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_4$ . By heating any of these two oxides in a current of air,  $\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_4$  is formed.

ANTIMONIC ACID is prepared in the same manner as described for arsenic acid—that is, by acting upon the oxide with nitric acid, and expelling any excess of the acid by heat. Antimonic acid is a pale-yellow powder, not soluble in water, but soluble in potash and soda, with which it forms antimonates, which, however, are not stable, and are decomposed by almost any other acid or salt.

The precipitates formed by re-agents with salts of antimony are nearly all white, but when a sulphide of any of the alkalies is added to a solution of antimony, a beautiful golden yellow precipitate is formed.

---

#### URANIUM (U 120).

This rare metal is a component of the mineral named pitchblende, which contains several other metals. Its metallic characteristics have not



been long known ; indeed, one of its oxides was a long time regarded as an element. It is a white coloured metal, very like silver, but is peculiar in being very inflammable, burning with great brightness at a low red heat. It combines with oxygen in several proportions, but only two of its oxides are soluble in acids, and form corresponding salts. These are the

Protoxide =  $\text{UO}$ .

Peroxide =  $\text{U}_2\text{O}$ .

PROTOXIDE OF URANIUM is obtained by acting upon the mineral above-named, by *aqua regia*, and separating it from the various other metals with which it is associated, by precipitation. When a solution of uranium in an acid is precipitated by an alkali, and the alkali is well washed out, the remainder is in the state of protoxide. This oxide dissolves with difficulty in hydrochloric acid, but more freely in dilute sulphuric acid with the aid of heat, and gives a green solution, which yields similarly coloured crystals. It is used for giving a deep black to china. It is very soluble in nitric acid, forming a nitrate. These salts give the following reactions :—

Alkalies,	. . . . .	Brownish precipitates.
Carbonates of the alkalies,	. . . . .	Greenish precipitates.
Yellow prussiate of potash,	. . . . .	Reddish-brown precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash,	. . . . .	Reddish-brown precipitate, after a time.
Sulphides of the alkalies,	. . . . .	Black precipitates.

PEROXIDE OF URANIUM, or sesquioxide, is obtained by precipitation from a solution of the mineral by means of an alkali; the precipitate is collected, but the alkali is *not* washed out, and it is exposed to a red heat. When thus treated the oxide is stable. The presence of alkali is considered necessary, so that ammonia will not serve as the precipitant in this case ; on account of its volatile nature, it would be dissipated by the heat to which the precipitate must be exposed.

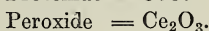
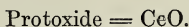
The peroxide of uranium has a beautiful yellow colour, and is soluble in all the acids, forming persalts. The solutions of these salts act towards re-agents as follows :—

Alkalies and their carbonates,	. . . . .	Yellow precipitates.
Yellow prussiate of potash,	. . . . .	Reddish-brown precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash,	. . . . .	No precipitate.
Solution of galls,	. . . . .	Dark brown precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies,	. . . . .	Brown precipitates.

It may be inferred from these reactions, that could this metal be obtained in sufficient quantity, it would form a valuable addition to the dyer's colouring matters. At present, however, it is too scarce to be regarded as of any practical importance. It is used for giving glass a peculiar yellow colour, which is fluorescent.

## CERIUM (Ce 92).

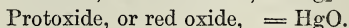
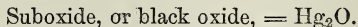
This metal is obtained in small quantities from several minerals, found chiefly in Sweden and Greenland. These are acted upon by *aqua regia*, and the metal is separated by re-agents. Hitherto it has been obtained only as a powder of a brownish-black colour, which is rapidly decomposed in water. With oxygen it forms



The oxides and salts of cerium are mostly white, but have not been subjected to any close investigation. Re-agents generally give white precipitates with solutions of the salts.

## MERCURY (Hg 200).

This metal is found abundantly both in the metallic state and in combination with sulphur, forming the mineral *cinnabar*, from which the metal is distilled, by heating it with iron and lime. Mercury at ordinary temperatures is liquid: hence its popular name of *quicksilver*; it has a high metallic lustre, becomes solid at  $40^\circ$  below zero, and gaseous at  $662^\circ$ . It combines with oxygen in two well-known proportions—



SUBOXIDE OF MERCURY is a black powder, and is obtained by precipitation from a cold solution of calomel by potash or soda. It dissolves in acids, and forms a series of salts of great use in medicine. The common calomel of the druggists is a chloride of mercury =  $\text{HgCl}$ . These salts of mercury give the following reactions:—

Alkalies, . . . . .	Black precipitates.
Carbonates of the alkalies, . . . . .	White precipitates, which become black by heating.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . . .	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . . .	Reddish-brown precipitate.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	Light yellow precipitate.
Bichromate of potash, . . . . .	Red precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . . . .	Black precipitates.

PROTOXIDE OF MERCURY, PEROXIDE OF MERCURY, OR RED OXIDE.—This oxide is obtained by heating mercury in contact with oxygen, or by exposing nitrate of mercury to heat until all the acid is expelled. Its colour is a deep red, and hence it is known in commerce as *red precipitate*.

When mercury is acted upon by an acid, *persalts* are generally formed. These salts may also be formed by dissolving the red oxide in the acids. Thus the perchloride (*corrosive sublimate*) ( $\text{HgCl}_2$ ) may be prepared by

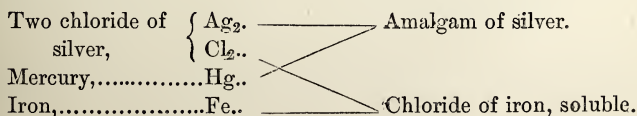
dissolving the red oxide in hydrochloric acid. There are a great variety of salts of mercury, nearly all poisonous, and all less or more used in medicine. None of them are used in dyeing, but some are useful as tests. The following are their reactions with other substances :—

Potash and soda,	. . .	Yellow precipitates.
Ammonia,	. . .	White precipitate.
Carbonates of the alkalies,	. . .	Reddish-brown precipitates.
Carbonate of ammonia,	. . .	White precipitate.
Yellow prussiate of potash,	. . .	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash,	. . .	Yellow precipitate.
Solution of galls,	. . .	No precipitate.
Iodide of potassium,	. . .	Red precipitate.
Bichromate of potash,	. . .	Red precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies,	. . .	Black precipitates.

These colours are not permanent when dyed upon cotton—they are destroyed when exposed to a moderate heat.

### SILVER (Ag 108).

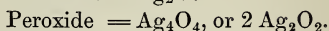
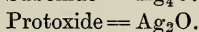
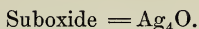
This metal is found in considerable abundance in Nature, and is very widely diffused: it is generally in combination with sulphur, along with other metals, particularly with lead. It is obtained from the lead ores of this country, and is extracted from them by cupellation, as was described under the heading Litharge (page 147). It is also extracted from its sulphides, and from some other ores which are found abroad, from which the greater quantity of the silver is obtained, by roasting the ore, after mixing with it a quantity of common salt, which converts the silver into a chloride. The ore is next put into large barrels with water and scraps of metallic iron and mercury, and the barrels are kept revolving in order thoroughly to mix their contents. The iron decomposes the chloride of silver, and becomes a chloride of iron, and the mercury takes the liberated silver, and forms with it an amalgam. The reactions may be thus represented:—



The amalgam is collected and subjected to a high heat in a retort; the mercury is thereby distilled over, and the silver remains behind.

Silver is the whitest of all the metals; it is also highly ductile and malleable, and does not combine with oxygen by exposure to the air, but is very soon tarnished by the fumes of sulphur, which always exist to some

extent in localities where coal is burned. Silver combines with oxygen in three proportions—



The first and last of these oxides are little known; the protoxide is of the most importance, and is obtained as a deep-brown powder, by adding an alkali to the solution of any soluble salt of silver. This oxide dissolves in acids, and forms protosalts.

**NITRATE OF SILVER.**—Nitric acid diluted dissolves silver by the aid of heat with great ease; and the nitrate formed is the salt commonly used in the laboratories. It is very corrosive, blackens the skin, and constitutes the permanent marking ink for linen, which, by the way, may be easily obliterated by dipping the cloth in chlorine water. The chlorine converts the silver into a chloride, which may be washed out by passing the cloth through liquid ammonia. Nitrate and chloride of silver are extensively used for photographic purposes, and the study of the action of light upon these salts is indeed well worthy the attention of dyers (page 12), as the phenomena are highly suggestive of many changes observed in dyed colours.

**SULPHATE OF SILVER.**—Silver is dissolved by hot sulphuric acid, and forms a sulphate of silver. This salt crystallises, and is very corrosive, but it is little used.

The attraction of silver for chlorine is so great that hydrochloric acid, or any chloride, added to a salt of silver, instantly decomposes it, and converts the silver into an insoluble chloride. Hence it is that chlorides are the best tests for silver, and that silver is in turn the best test for chlorine.

Oxide of silver is soluble in acetic acid and many of the milder acids.

Chloride of silver is soluble in hyposulphite of soda, and is used in photography for dissolving off the silver which has not been acted on by light.

When experimenting with salts of silver, it is of course important that none of the metal be lost; it can be all recovered by converting it into chloride, evaporating or filtering the solution, and when the chloride is dry, mixing it with three times its weight of dry carbonate of potash; putting this into a crucible, and fusing for fifteen minutes: when the crucible cools, the metallic silver will be found as a button of metal at the bottom.

The salts of silver have the following reactions with other substances:—

Potash and soda, . . . . Brown precipitates.

Ammonia, . . . . Brown precipitate, very soluble in excess.





Carbonates of the alkalies,	.	White precipitates.
Yellow prussiate of potash,	.	White precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash,	.	Red-brown precipitate.
Solution of galls,	.	No precipitate.
Bichromate of potash,	.	Crimson-red precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies,	.	Black precipitates.

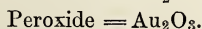
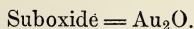
The necessary expense of this metal prevents the introduction of its salts to the dye-house; and we are afraid that the property of becoming black by exposure to light would destroy their general usefulness, even could they be had sufficiently cheap.

### GOLD (Au 197).

This metal is commonly found in the metallic state nearly pure, but sometimes it is associated with other metals; it is extensively diffused through Nature. When it is found along with silver, in what is termed *silver ore*, the ore is treated in the same way as described for ores of silver, and the two metals are obtained together in alloy; but when the metal is diffused through the rock in the metallic state, in grains or nuggets, the rock is stamped to fine powder, and then submitted to a current of water, which carries away the light earthy portion, and the gold falls to the bottom from its superior weight. This residuum is mixed with metallic mercury, to form an amalgam with the gold, which is afterwards distilled in the same manner as was described for silver.

Gold and silver are separated by subjecting the alloy to the action of nitric or strong sulphuric acid, which dissolve the silver and leave the gold—an operation which is termed parting. The silver is afterwards precipitated as a chloride, and reduced by fusion with carbonate of potash.

Gold is the only yellow metal known; it is the most ductile as well as the most malleable of the metals, and does not oxidise or tarnish by exposure to the air, which gives it an intrinsic value over most of the other metals. It does not dissolve in any single acid, but is readily acted upon by *aqua regia*, forming a perchloride. It combines with oxygen in two proportions—



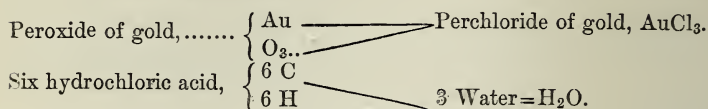
The first of these oxides is obtained by adding a solution of potash to subchloride of gold: it is a green powder.

The peroxide is obtained by precipitating the solution of gold in *aqua regia* by magnesia, and washing the precipitate with a little nitric acid. This oxide is of a brown colour.

CHLORIDE OF GOLD is prepared by evaporating a solution of gold in

*aqua regia* to dryness, and heating the residue to about  $400^{\circ}$ , until all smell of chlorine has ceased, stirring all the while. The product is the chloride, and is decomposed by water.

PERCHLORIDE OR TRICHLORIDE OF GOLD.—This is the salt obtained by dissolving the metal in *aqua regia*.



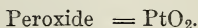
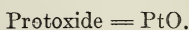
This salt is yellow, but when it touches the skin it dyes it of a deep purple. Its reactions are as follow:—

Potash and soda,	.	.	.	No precipitate.
Ammonia,	.	.	.	Yellow precipitate.
Oxalic acid,	.	.	.	Dark-green precipitate.
Yellow prussiate of potash,	.	.	.	Light-green precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash,	.	.	.	No precipitate.
Protosalts of iron,	.	.	.	Brown (metallic gold) precipitates.
Protosalts of tin,	.	.	.	Purple precipitates.
Solution of galls,	.	.	.	Black precipitate, which becomes brown (metallic gold).

Salts of this metal, on account of their expense, can only be used as re-agents in the laboratory, not in manufacturing operations.

#### PLATINUM (Pt 197).

This metal is found in a native state in the *débris* of rocks belonging to the earliest igneous formation. It was first discovered in the auriferous sands of some rivers in America, but is now found in various localities. Platinum is a white metal, very ductile, and also malleable; it is the densest metal known, and is not acted upon by exposure to the air, nor oxidised by heat. No single acid affects it, on which account it is exceedingly useful in many chemical processes. *Aqua regia* dissolves it with the aid of heat, and forms with it a perchloride. It combines with oxygen in two proportions—



The protoxide is obtained by digesting the protochloride in potash; it is a black powder, soluble in excess of potash, yielding a green solution, from which the platinum may be precipitated.

The protochloride is obtained in the same manner as the protochloride of gold; it is a greenish powder, slightly soluble in strong hydrochloric acid.

The peroxide of platinum is obtained by adding to a solution of sulphate of platinum some nitrate of barytes: the sulphuric acid is precipitated, and nitrate of platinum is formed, and remains in solution. By adding to this solution a little soda, peroxide of platinum is precipitated as a reddish-brown powder. This oxide dissolves in acids, forming salts, which are mostly of a brownish-red colour, and has a strong attraction for the earthy bases.

The sulphate is prepared by adding to a solution of platinum in *aqua regia*, drop by drop, a solution of sulphide of potassium, which forms a bisulphide of platinum; by exposure to the air the sulphur attracts oxygen, and becomes sulphuric acid, which combines with the metal.

Bichloride of platinum is the salt formed when the metal is dissolved in *aqua regia*; it has a deep-red colour. This salt combines with chloride of potassium, and forms with it a double salt, which crystallises in beautiful reddish-yellow crystals, insoluble in alcohol, and is on that account used for separating potash from other substances. The persalts of platinum are all more or less red in colour, and have the following reactions with other substances:—

Potash, soda, ammonia, and their carbonates, . . . . .	} Yellow precipitates.
Yellow prussiate of potash, . . . . .	Yellow precipitate.
Red prussiate of potash, . . . . .	Yellow precipitate.
Solution of galls, . . . . .	No precipitate.
Protochloride of tin, . . . . .	A reddish-brown coloured solution, the tin being rendered a perchloride, the platinum a protochloride, but there is no precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, .. .. .	Reddish-brown precipitates.

---

#### PALLADIUM (Pd 106.6).

This metal is found associated with platinum; its appearance is very similar, except that it has a slightly reddish tint, and only about half the density. It is nearly as infusible, but its surface slightly tarnishes by exposure to air, and it is soluble in nitric acid. Like platinum, it combines with oxygen in two proportions—

Protoxide =  $\text{PdO}$ .

Peroxide =  $\text{PdO}_2$ .

The protoxide is a dark-brown powder, and is obtained by dissolving the metal in nitric acid, evaporating to dryness, and heating the residue to drive off the acid; or it is precipitated from the acid by an alkaline solution.

The protochloride of palladium is formed by dissolving the metal in

hydrochloric acid, to which a few drops of nitric acid have been added. The former acid acts upon the metal slowly when alone, but this addition quickens the action. The solution is evaporated to dryness, to expel any excess of acid, and yields a compound of a dark-brown colour, which is protochloride. This salt combines with chloride of potassium and sodium, and forms double salts, which deposit yellow-coloured crystals from their solutions.

The peroxide of palladium is obtained by first dissolving the metal in strong *aqua regia*: this gives a solution of a dark-brown colour, which is a bichloride of the metal. To this solution is added, *gradually*, either potash or soda, which precipitates the metal as a hydrated peroxide of a reddish-brown colour. The salts corresponding to the peroxide are little known. Solutions of the protosalts of palladium act towards re-agents as under:—

Potash and soda, . . . . .	Brownish precipitates.
Ammonia, . . . . .	No precipitate.
Carbonates of potash and soda, . . . . .	Brown precipitates.
Yellow and red prussiates of potash, . . . . .	No precipitates.
Protochloride of tin, . . . . .	Black precipitate.
Phosphate of soda, . . . . .	Brown precipitate.
Sulphides of the alkalies, . . . . .	Black precipitates.

---

#### IRIDIUM (Ir 197).

This metal is found combined with platinum, and, like palladium, resembles it in appearance. It is more infusible than platinum, and, if pure, resists the action of all the acids; but when alloyed with platinum it is soluble in *aqua regia*. It is known to combine with oxygen in three proportions, to all of which there are corresponding chlorides known. The salts of this metal are mostly of a rose colour, and insoluble, or nearly so, in water. They are of no known practical value.

---

#### OSMIUM (Os 199).

This metal is always found associated with iridium in platinum, and is obtained in a pulverulent state. It is the most infusible of the metals. It dissolves when alone in strong nitric acid and *aqua regia*—in both cases forming osmic acid. It combines with oxygen in different proportions. When the metal is heated in a current of air, it forms a volatile oxide,  $\text{OsO}_4$ , soluble in water. The oxides of this metal are nearly all brown. There are also corresponding chlorides, which are generally coloured.

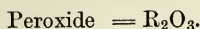
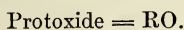
---

#### RHODIUM (R 104.2).

This is another metal found alloyed with platinum, which it resembles in appearance, but is brittle and hard. If pure, it is not acted upon by any



of the acids, but when alloyed with another metal, as with platinum, it readily dissolves in *aqua regia*. Soda precipitates both metals from this solution; but the platinum precipitate is soluble in alcohol, and is thus easily separated. The rhodium in this state is of a beautiful rose colour, and combines with oxygen in two proportions—



The protoxide has not been isolated: the peroxide is a black powder. The salts are all less or more coloured, and generally give coloured precipitates with re-agents. Rhodium has been introduced into the arts on account of its giving great hardness to metals alloyed with it. It is used for tipping metallic (gold and silver) writing pens, &c.

### LANTHANIUM (La 93).

This metal was discovered in a mineral from which cerium is obtained. Its oxide has a brick-red colour, and dissolves in acids, giving red-coloured salts.

Along with this metal another was detected by the same discoverer: it is named DIDYMIUM, and very much resembles lanthanum in its chemical properties.

There are other three rare metals—

*Erbium, Niobium, Ruthenium—*

requiring no further notice than their names, and it is probable that some of these may yet be found to be combinations of other metals; but until that is proved we must look upon them as elements as yet too rare to be of any value to the manufacturer.

In the preceding sketch of the elements we have treated very briefly all those which have not yet had any practical application to the art of dyeing, and also those that are rare and expensive. Of those elements, we have noticed merely the features and reactions which seemed to us best calculated to attract attention, or which might suggest experiments, with a view to their application in the dyeing trade. And although many of the metallic elements, which give indications of available properties, are at present too rare to be employed, yet we know not how soon the rarest of them may be discovered in abundance; and it is a law, quite as certain as gravitation itself, that if a demand be created exertion will follow to satisfy it. When chromium was first discovered it was considered a rare metal, but, as the demand grew, other ores were found to contain it in great abundance; and so it may be with some of those metals now considered the most rare and unlikely ever to become abundant.

## MORDANTS.

---

IF the various colouring matters used in dyeing had an affinity for the fibre the process would be very simple: it would only be necessary to make a solution of the dye-drug, and immerse the goods in it to ensure their being dyed. But so far from this being the case, if we except indigo and safflower, there is scarcely a dye-stuff that imparts its own colour to goods; nay, the greater part of the dye-drugs used have so weak an affinity, especially for cotton goods, that they impart no colour sufficiently permanent to deserve the name of a dye. The cause of this is obvious. If, for example, we take a decoction of logwood, the colouring matter is held in solution by the water; by putting a quantity of cotton into this solution the fibres become filled with the coloured solution, but if the cotton has no power to render that colouring matter insoluble, and retain it within its fibres, it is plain that, by taking out the cotton and putting it into water, the colouring matter within and upon it will be diffused in the water—in other words, the dye having no attraction for the fibre, is washed out. This want of affinity makes dyeing sufficiently intricate, and renders it more dependent upon science; indeed, it is only by the nicest arrangement of a few chemical laws that the dyer is enabled to turn to advantage the various colouring matters of which he is in possession. When the dyer finds that there is no affinity between the goods and any colouring substance which is put into his possession, he endeavours to find a substance which has a mutual attraction for the cloth and colouring matter, so that by combining this substance with the cloth, and then passing the cloth through the dyeing solution, the colouring matter combines with the substance which is upon the goods, and constitutes a dye. This third substance used, which acts as a mediator, combining two inimical bodies, is termed a mordant, from the French *mordre*, to bite—from an idea which the old dyers had that these substances bit or opened a passage into the fibres of the cloth, giving access to the colour. And although the theory of their action is now changed, the term is still continued, and perhaps further investigation will prove the term not altogether inapplicable.

All the mordants, with one or two exceptions, are found among the metallic oxides. It may be supposed from this that, as metals are the most numerous class of elements, mordants are also very numerous; it is not so, however. In order that the substance may act as a mordant, it must possess certain properties: it must have an attraction for the colouring matter, so as to form with it an insoluble coloured compound; and it must be held easily in solution in order to enter within the fibre. It may

also have an affinity for the fibre, a tendency to unite with it, but this property is not essentially necessary; only the two first properties are so, and they limit the mordants almost wholly to what are termed the insoluble bases—that is, substances which are not by themselves soluble in water.

The bases or oxides which are in general use as mordants, and which appear to succeed best, are alumina and the oxides of tin and iron; the two first are colourless, and the peroxide of the latter is brown, and imparts to white goods a buff or nankeen colour, which in many cases affects to a considerable extent the colour of the cloth, a circumstance which must also be attended to by the dyer. Indeed, the principal part of all dyeing operations is the proper choice and application of mordants; there being a chemical union between them and the colouring matter, a new substance is formed, not only differing in properties, but differing in colour, from any of the originals, consequently a very little alteration in the strength or quality of a mordant gives a decided alteration in the shade of colour. However, this gives the dyer a much wider field for variety of shades, and at the same time a less number of colouring substances are required; as, for example, logwood alone gives no colour to cotton worthy the name of a dye; yet by the judicious application of a few different kinds of mordants, all the shades from a French white to a violet, from a lavender to a purple, from a blue to a lilac, and from a slate to a black, are obtained from this substance.

Before any chemical union takes place between bodies, they must not only be in contact, but they must be brought into contact element with element, or particle with particle; hence, substances used as mordants that are insoluble of themselves in water must be dissolved in some appropriate menstrua before their particles can enter the fibres of the goods, or combine with the colouring matter. In doing this, the dyer has often to attend to the degree of affinity between the solvent and the mordant, to determine what force it will exert to prevent the mordant combining with the fibre; should there exist an affinity between them, an otherwise excellent mordant may be less effective by the attraction of its solvent; as an example, common alum, even though much concentrated, is but a weak mordant for cotton goods, owing to the great attraction between the sulphuric acid and the alumina. But if acetic acid, which has comparatively a weak affinity for the alumina, be substituted for the sulphuric acid, it becomes a very much more effective mordant. From these things having to be attended to, the dyer has many beautiful illustrations of the relative attraction of different substances for each other. In some cases the dyeing compound formed between the mordant and colouring matter being soluble may be kept mixed, and the goods, when immersed in this solution, having a kind of reciprocal affinity, only receive their share, they do not extract the colouring matter from the solvent, but the depth of colour upon the cloth depends upon the colour of the solution. In other cases the attraction between the mordant solution and colouring matter is so powerful, that if

the least quantity of the mordant solution be left upon the cloth when put into the dye, it seizes the colouring matter, which it instantly precipitates or renders it insoluble, and therefore unfit to combine with the goods, not only causing loss, but the colour will be uneven; in this case, the goods passing through the mordant have a part of the base fixed in the fibre, they are then washed, or the solvent of the mordant otherwise removed. From these circumstances, the close alliance of the art of dyeing to the science of chemistry is evident; but an individual from experience may know these effects, and, though ignorant of the cause, may often guard against their consequences; knowledge, however, procured only by routine practice, is purchased at a very great cost, and attended with many unpleasant circumstances. In cases where the base has no affinity for the fibre, there exists the same difficulty, the fibre being filled with the solution of the base; should the goods so filled be passed through water, the base will be washed out; and should they be put into the dyeing solution, a great quantity of the colouring matter will be precipitated upon the fibre, not within it, and will thus be left merely adhering to the surface, and, when dry, much of it will of course come off as dust, which is so much loss. For example, the simple protosalts of lead have little or no affinity for the fibre, and if cotton impregnated with nitrate or acetate of lead be washed several times, nearly the whole lead salt is dissolved out. If put through the bichromate of potash solution directly from the lead, a great quantity of chromate of lead will fall to the bottom of the tub and be lost; but by passing the goods from the lead solution through a little lime-water, the lime takes away the acid, the lead is fixed within the fibre as an oxide, and when put into the chrome solution combines with the chromic acid, and no chromate of lead is precipitated. Nevertheless there are colouring matters that require a little of the free mordant to be added to bring out the colour. Thus, a piece of cotton passed through red spirits, and then well washed in water, will retain a great part of the oxide of tin. Let the cotton be put into a solution of logwood, this will combine with the base or oxide of tin, and leave the water of the decoction nearly colourless, giving a reddish-brown colour to the goods without brilliancy, and not suitable as a dye; but by adding a small quantity of spirits to this exhausted water, and then immersing the dyed cotton again, instantly the true violet or purple colour is brought up. The substances thus added to the coloured liquor to change the colours are termed *alterants*, and the operation, in the language of the dye-house, *raising*, because it brightens the colour. Alterants and mordants are often spoken of as two distinct kinds of substances; but the only distinction is in the mode and time of applying them. In some instances different substances are used. In the process detailed above, a little alum would do as well as the salt of tin; or if a particular bluish shade were wanted, a little pyrolignite of alumina; but in almost all cases the mordant may also be used as the alterant. This shews that in some instances the dye may require some of the acid in the salt which constituted the mordant to bring it out, and



must be applied after the colour is fixed. If in the above operation the cloth had been passed through the hot logwood solution directly from the spirit tub, a great part of the logwood would have been precipitated, and unless the decoction had been very strong, the colour upon the fibre would have been weak and unequal. Other matters are often added as a sort of alterant in some colours, not to affect the required change of the colour, but to take up some substance that may have a tendency to retain the colouring matter, and prevent its uniting with the mordant. Thus it may be necessary with lead mordants, where the acid of the lead is taken away, to add some acid to the chrome solution to combine with the potash, in order to liberate the chromic acid, and allow it more freely to take the lead. This is particularly the case with Prussian blue. If the goods are washed from the nitrate of iron solution, or passed through an alkali, a little acid must be added to the prussiate of potash solution, to take the potash and liberate the prussic acid.

It is with the vegetable colouring matters, however, that the greatest attention must be paid to the many conditions and properties of mordants: some of these may be shortly noticed.

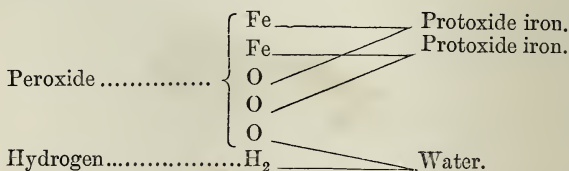
The mordant, or solvent of the base constituting the mordant, should not be capable of injuring or destroying immediately, or by prolonged action, either the colouring matter or the fabric. Thus, acids alone do not serve as mordants, as they generally either destroy the fabric or the colouring matter; and in cases where destructive acids are used for dissolving the base, care has to be taken that they are washed off or neutralised before they have had time to act upon the tissue or upon the colour. The action of bases upon colours, and the condition of those best adapted to give beauty and permanency, are most important subjects, and deserve that we should here consider them a little in detail.

1. The base being insoluble in water, has to be rendered soluble by combining it with an acid, so as to allow the base to combine with the colouring matter. What becomes of that acid which holds the base in solution when the colouring matter combines with the base? Will it act upon the colour formed? We have already discussed this point as regards lead and chrome (page 167); we will now take another colour, which, although strictly speaking it does not embrace the action      mordant, will serve very well to illustrate the point of inquiry. Indigo is insoluble in water, but is dissolved in strong sulphuric acid, forming sulphate of indigo, and is used for dyeing green upon light cotton cloths. The goods are first dyed yellow by a decoction of quercitron bark or fustic, and then dyed blue by means of sulphate of indigo, which gives green. Now, were the yellow dye passed through the sulphate of indigo as made, the acid would destroy the yellow and spoil the colour; the acid has, therefore, first to be neutralised by an alkaline substance. If soda or potash be used, we have the sulphate of the alkali held in solution with the indigo; and although the acid will not now destroy the yellow, there is another consideration—namely, the effect of this sulphate of the alkali upon the yellow colour;

and if there be an effect, it becomes a question how to avoid it. Thus, every circumstance produces a new feature, and should be fully studied. Where fine clear shades of green are required, the sulphates of the alkalies do affect the yellow dye, giving what the dyer calls a rusty tint; this is avoided by using carbonate of lime (chalk) instead of soda or potash, forming sulphate of lime, which precipitates, leaving a clear blue solution of the indigo; in any case neither acid nor alkali should prevail.

2. We must consider the nature and properties of the base constituting the mordant, and its reaction upon the colouring matter, both in combining together, and afterwards under exposure to the air. Thus we have stated, when treating of the oxides of iron and tin, that these substances, under various circumstances, are unstable, the protoxide having a strong attraction for oxygen, and the peroxide, when in contact with organic matters, readily yielding oxygen.

In one or other of these conditions, these bases combine with the colouring matter. How, then, will the above properties affect the compound? The action of the peroxide in contact with organic matters seems to supply an answer to the question, because in all cases in which peroxides give up their oxygen to the organic colouring matter and become protoxides, it would follow that the proper condition of applying the mordant would be the protoxide state. On any other supposition it would be necessary to prove that when peroxide is applied, the giving up of the oxygen produces a reaction favourable to the resulting colour; but this is seldom if ever the case. The reaction of the peroxide is generally the combination of a part of the oxygen with the hydrogen of the colouring matter, which thus becomes partially decomposed. This will be seen by attempting to dye common black with a persalt instead of a protosalt of iron, or by adding a persalt of iron to a solution of galls or sumach, and allowing them to stand, the colour will be greatly deteriorated. Supposing cloth from sumach put into a solution of persulphate of iron, there will be a decomposition: the persulphate being *three* acid and *two* iron, some of the hydrogen of the vegetable colour will produce one proportion of free acid by the reduction of the *per* to the *proto* sulphate. When peroxide of iron is fixed upon the cloth free of acid, and put into the colouring matter, water is formed by the oxygen of the peroxide and colouring matter. We then have—



So that one-third of the colouring matter will be destroyed, and a more imperfect dye will result, as will be more fully illustrated when we come to describe the composition of the vegetable dyes.

It is this principle which prevents the use of many oxides of metals that might otherwise be valuable, such as oxide of silver, mercury, &c., which are easily reduced by organic matters. When any of these bases combine with vegetable colouring matters as mordants, they are gradually reduced, and pass into the metallic state, the oxygen taking the hydrogen or the carbon of the colouring matter, and thus the colour fades away. Still this property of giving up oxygen is often of great value in other operations, as in working with substances that require oxidation to give a colour, as in the case of catechu; salts of silver, mercury, &c., would serve the purposes for which copper salts are at present applied to this dye-drug; whereas persalts of iron cannot be used with this substance for oxygenising purposes, as its protosalt blackens the tannin of the catechu, and affects the production of other shades of colour; but where modified tints are required, iron furnishes the means of obtaining them to a great extent. Thus, by a careful study of the conditions of the mordants, their relations to the colouring matter, the reactions that will take place under all the varied circumstances of application, and what kind of reaction is required to obtain the results sought, the dyer will find his trade easy, interesting, and pleasant. When the mind guides the hand, labour ceases to be felt either as a curse or degradation.

In connection with mordants, Dr. Bancroft, in his work on the *Philosophy of Permanent Colours*, arranges all colours in two classes. He says—

“To me colouring matters seem to fall naturally under two general classes. The first including those matters which, when put into a state of solution, may be fixed with all the permanency of which they are susceptible, and made fully to exhibit their colours in or upon the dyed substance, without the interposition of any earthy or metallic basis. The colours of the first class I shall call *substantive*, as denoting a thing solid, by or depending only on itself; and colours of the second class I shall call *adjective*, as implying that their lustre and permanency are acquired by their being adjected upon a suitable basis.

“Earthy and metallic substances, when thus interposed, serve not only as a bond of union between the colouring matter and the dyed substance, but they also *modify* as well as fix the colour: some of them, particularly the oxide of tin and the earth of alum, *exalting* and *giving lustre* to most of the colouring matters with which they are united; whilst others, and especially the oxide of iron, blacken some, and darken almost all such matters, if made to combine with them.”

This clear definition will remove many erroneous impressions of the meaning of these terms, *adjective* and *substantive*. We have often heard an adjective colour defined as one that required to be previously mordanted; but this definition is ambiguous, and seems to ground the distinction more upon the *mode* of dyeing than upon the nature of the colour. Thus, by passing a piece of cotton through alum, and then through a solution of logwood, we produce an adjective colour, having been *previously* mordanted; but if the solutions of the alum and logwood be mixed together, and the piece be passed through this mixture, the same colour is produced.



Yet, by the above definition, it would be a substantive colour, not being *previously* mordanted, and not because the colour produced is neither that of the logwood nor of the alum, but of the compound formed between them. Again, if we pass a piece of cotton through a solution of copperas, and then through lime-water, there is first produced a light-greenish colour, which, by exposure to the air, becomes nankeen or buff; and notwithstanding its thus taking two operations, equivalent to mordanting and dyeing, the colour produced is substantive, being the pure peroxide of iron fixed within the fibre. Another fallacy we have often heard, namely—identifying substantive and adjective with *fast* and *fugitive*. The impropriety of this application of the term is shewn by simply referring to the two colours, indigo-blue and safflower-pink; both are eminently substantive, yet the one is fast and the other fugitive.

The property which the fibre possesses of fixing portions of the dye-stuff within its pores will have to be often referred to, as it bears a very important relation to mordants. What are termed astringent substances have a strong action in this way in combining with the fibres of cotton goods. A piece of cotton put into a hot solution of sumach, and remaining in it until cool, there is a quantity of the astringent principle, probably gallic or tannic acid, fixed upon the fibre, which no washing will remove. We have seen goods thus treated passed afterwards through all the regular operations of bleaching, and still retaining so much of these substances as was sufficient to impart a black tint on passing them through protosulphate of iron. Hence the astringent matters in many vegetable dyes act a very important part in the dyeing operations. Whether such substances as galls and sumach, which are used only for their astringent principle, may be termed mordants, is a question we need not discuss; but they are essentially necessary for fixing within the fibre such quantities of the metallic base or mordant as are required to give depth and permanency to the colour; and as these astringent matters produce tints with the bases, they give a wider scope for variety of colour. Thus, if we pass a piece of cotton through a solution of protochloride of tin, and then wash it in water, we will have a great quantity of oxide of tin fixed within the fibre by the operation of washing (page 154); and by passing this cloth through a decoction of Brazil-wood, and then *raising* with a little spirits, there is a fine, though not very permanent, rose-red produced. If we pass the cotton through bichloride of tin, and then wash, there is very little of the oxide of tin fixed; for the bichloride is not decomposed, as the protochloride is, by water. If, then, it be passed through the Brazil-wood in the same manner as the other, a colour of less depth is produced; but if the cloth be previously steeped in sumach, and be then passed through the tin solution, even the bichloride, the astringent principle of the sumach combines with the tin, and forms an insoluble compound; and there is thus fixed a great quantity of the metallic base within the fibre, which gives the colour with the Brazil-wood, so that, when immersed into the wood decoction, there is obtained a colour of great depth and permanency.



But the compound formed between the tin and sumach gives a yellow, and thus peculiar tints of the colour are obtained; instead of having a rose colour, as was obtained without the sumach, a deep rich red, between rose and scarlet, is produced. Thus sumach, galls, &c., are extensively used, in connection with metallic bases, to fix, modify, and impart depth to colours for which these bases are applied. The nature of these astringent substances will be given under the distinctive names of the matters which contain them.

The strong attraction which animal fabrics, silks and woollens, have for colouring matters is well known, and the dyeing of these fabrics is more simple than that of cotton. The mordants used are often of a class that do not act the part of mordants in cotton. From this cause, means were sought to impart to cotton something of the property of animal tissues. The following are analyses of wools:—

	Raw wool.			Washed wool.	
Mineral matters, . . .	6·3	16·8	...	0·94	1·0
Suint and fatty matter,	44·3	44·7	...	21·00	27·0
Pure wool, . . .	38·0	28·5	...	72·00	64·8
Moisture, . . .	11·4	9·0	...	6·06	7·2
	<hr/>	<hr/>		<hr/>	<hr/>
	100·0	99·0	...	100·00	100·0

The substance termed *suint* is a singular compound, containing oxalate of lime, silica, chloride of potassium, salts of potash, with certain fatty acids, forming soap. In certain factories the potash from suint is obtained as a product for sale. The fibre of pure wool also contains a good deal of sulphur, not referred to in the above analyses, still sufficient at times to affect light colours where metallic oxides are used, such as lead. Some dyers steep the wool for a long time, and then wash in a weak sour of muriatic acid. Although this does not remove the sulphur from the fibre, it neutralises its action upon metallic oxides. The composition of silk is quite a different affair:—

## COMPOSITION OF NEAPOLITAN SILK.

	Yellow.		From Levant.
			White.
Fibres of silk, . . . .	53·37	...	54·04
Gelatine, . . . .	20·66	...	19·08
Albumen, . . . .	24·43	...	25·47
Cerin, . . . .	1·39	...	1·11
Fat and resin, . . . .	·10	...	0·30
Colouring matter, . . .	·05	...	...
	<hr/>		<hr/>
	100·00	...	100·00

It was considered that, in all probability, the substances giving the property to silk to imbibe and fix colours more easily than cotton, were such matters as albumen, &c., which are known to have a strong attraction for colouring matters, and which might be imparted artificially. Upon this subject we extract from the *Chemical Gazette*, vol. viii., page 384, an excellent article translated from the *Journ. de Chem. et de Pharm.*, vol. xvii., page 271 :—

“When an egg is boiled in a colour-bath, the colour immediately fixes itself to the shell. Egg-shells contain, like bones, an organic tissue and mineral salts. If it is attempted to dye these mineral salts—the phosphate or carbonate of lime—separately, it fails, and therefore neither of these salts can be regarded as the mordant. If, on the contrary, it is attempted to colour the organic tissue of egg-shells or of bones, this immediately becomes dyed; hence it follows that the organic matter of the bones and egg-shells is the mordant.

“Now, in the same manner as mineral mordants have hitherto been employed to fix colouring matters upon cotton, organic mordants may be used; and Broquette has already employed caseine for this purpose. The coating of vegetable fibres with animal substances was first carried out by M. Hausmann, as observed by M. Barreswil, in this article, but is said never to have attained to any importance. The caseine must, of course, be first dissolved, in order that the tissues may be permeated by the solution, but it must then be rendered insoluble in the tissues. Now, it has been shewn by Braconnot that caseine furnishes a soluble compound with ammonia, which is again decomposed by boiling. Broquette, therefore, impregnates the goods with a solution of caseine in ammonia, then heats them to expel the ammonia, upon which the caseine remains in an insoluble state in the tissues.

“Cotton goods, after this treatment, are saturated with animal matter, and may now be dyed in the same colour-baths as those used for woollen tissues.

“Frequently the dyes are alkaline; they then dissolve the caseine, instead of being fixed by it. But since Bachelier used as a cement a mixture of lime and caseine, it is known that this mixture hardens and becomes fixed. Broquette therefore employs the caseine sometimes with lime alone, sometimes with ammonia and lime together, and saturates the goods with this caseate of lime, which soon sets in a warm atmosphere, and then resists the alkalies and rinsing with alkaline liquids.

“By this treatment the cotton acquires a peculiar stiffness; so that, although its capacity for dyes has become nearly equal to that of wool, it is far behind the latter, owing to want of lustre. But this evil can also be remedied by mixing the mordant with oil. Oil, caseine, and lime form a mordant which fixes the colours with a perfectly remarkable lustre.

“When the goods to be dyed consist of wool and cotton, a different plan has to be followed; the mordant in this case is not adapted for the two materials; the wool is deprived of its natural lustre, and the cotton

tissues are not sufficiently penetrated. For such goods Broquette employs the mordant before the weaving; it is applied to the cotton in the spinning, when it can afterwards be woven and bleached like wool, without the mordant experiencing any injury. When threads thus prepared are woven, the tissues can be dyed just like woollen stuffs, without further treatment.

“By means of the solution of caseate of lime, mineral colours which are insoluble in water can be adapted to the dyeing of stuffs; they are mixed in a state of very fine powder with the solution. These liquid colours, which can be prepared, for instance, with ultramarine, ochre, &c., can again be removed with water, unless they have been dried; but as soon as they coagulate, they adhere firmly to the tissues enclosing the colouring principle.

“A further application of the mordant of caseine, oil, and lime, is in the printing of stuffs; in this case we are not limited merely to mineral colours, which by its aid may be fixed upon the goods, but the numerous vegetable colours may be likewise very well applied, by first converting them into lakes by means of alumina or protoxide of tin, and then using these lakes in the same manner as powdered mineral colours. After being printed, the goods are wrapped in moist linen, and left for about half an hour in the moist vapour in a warm atmosphere. During this time the impressed colour does not dry superficially, but it is absorbed into the interior of the fibres, and is then completely fixed in the subsequent drying.

“This new method of mordanting has already had considerable influence upon several pigments—for instance, upon archil, which has only been used for dyeing exceptionally; according to Broquette’s process, some very beautiful colours are obtained from it, modifications of the peculiar colour of the archil by lime.

“It will be evident, from what has been above stated, that in this process of dyeing it is requisite to pass the goods through a lime-bath, which will not do for many dyes, as the colours have their tints altered by such treatment. In such cases magnesia is to be substituted for the lime.

“When goods are printed with the mineral colours or lakes, according to the above process, very full colours are obtained, which, in the case of many patterns, is not desirable. To bring out the shades and half-colours in the full-coloured impressions, the printed goods are placed with their coloured surface upon an absorbing ground, cotton stuff, and the forms pressed on the back. The printed portion pressed upon the absorbing surface is deprived of some of its colour, and numerous patterns can be produced in this manner.”

The curd of milk, which contains different substances—having properties allied to albumen; they are insoluble in water, but are rendered soluble by alkaline substances, such as ammonia—has been used in a similar way to the albumen of eggs or blood, and is known in the trade as lactarine. The

use, however, of these substances is more for calico-printing than dyeing. In using lactarine for preparing cloth to combine with dyes that have no affinity for the fibre, there is a great tendency to unevenness in the colour; as, for example, if the lactarine is dissolved in ammonia, and goods passed through it, and dried hot, the ammonia is volatilised and the lactarine left. Any portion of the piece being a little wetter, as it may be termed, will have more of the lactarine left behind, and form a darker tint on that part. In calico-printing this is different—the soluble lactarine is mixed with the colouring matter and printed on the cloth, and when the ammonia is volatilised the insoluble lactarine and colouring matter remain.

The preparation of the salts which constitute mordants has been given under the particular element constituting the base of the salt; but we mentioned that different methods of preparing such salts are practised by different dyers, every one preferring his own method, from some real or supposed peculiarity or advantage it possessed; although in some cases this difference is difficult to appreciate, both because the acids used are not regularly tested, and also because it is a common custom to take the acids by measure; so that when a dyer says he prefers 4 to 1, he as often means 4 jugs as 4 lbs. Now, nitric acid having a greater specific gravity than hydrochloric acid, 4 measures of this acid to 1 of nitric acid will be quite different to 4 lbs. muriatic acid to 1 lb. nitric acid. The following are a few of the principal mordants used in the dyeing of cotton. The proportions given are by weight:—

RED SPIRITS.—These are named from being used in dyeing red by means of Brazil and other red woods. They are sometimes termed *nitro-muriate of tin*, from being prepared by dissolving tin in a mixture of these acids. Mix together—

1 lb. Nitric acid,  
3 lbs. Hydrochloric acid.

Add feathered tin, in small quantities at a time, until the acid ceases to dissolve more; keep the solution cool, pour off the clear, and preserve in a dark cool place. This is a spirit for a deep heavy red.

If a red of a bluer or crimson hue be required, then—

•1 lb. Nitric acid,  
5 lbs. Hydrochloric acid,

dissolving the tin as above, will give a better quality of mordant. The greater proportion of nitric acid gives brown or depth to the red; but some sorts of woods contain more of the yellow or *browning* principle than others. Attention ought to be paid to this, so as to prepare the spirits suitable to the character of the wood which is to be used as the dye. This difference of tint is occasionally regulated by the quantity of tin dissolved; hence some dyers give a definite quantity of tin, generally from 2 ounces to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ounces to the pound of mixed acids: this is, indeed, not far from what is generally dissolved when tin is added to saturate the



acid. Whichever method is adopted, it is necessary that there should always be a knowledge of the quantity of tin which the spirit contains; and, moreover, as this is commonly prepared in the open air, the quantity of tin dissolved will depend somewhat on the season of the year, on account of the influence which temperature has on the action of the acid. When red spirits are used with logwood, the influence of large proportions of nitric acid is very apparent, causing the purples, or such colours dyed, to dry brownish—a result, however, which the dyer is often called upon to obtain. The spirit solution in the tub, or beck, in which the yarn is wrought should stand from  $2^{\circ}$  to  $2\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  Twaddell.

BARWOOD SPIRITS.—These are named from being used as the mordant for dyeing with that wood. They are prepared by taking—

1 lb. Nitric acid,  
6 lbs. Hydrochloric acid,

adding gradually, as dissolved,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ounce of tin to the pound of the mixture; or—

1 Nitric acid,  
4 Hydrochloric acid,  
2 oz. of tin per pound.

This spirit should not be used within at least twelve hours after its preparation. There are other variations in its preparation; they vary generally from 4 to 7 hydrochloric acid to 1 nitric acid. Excess of tin in this mordant is avoided. The same rule as referred to above in respect to the proportion of acids is applicable here,—they regulate the tint more or less. The working solution is  $2\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  Twaddell; but the barwood dye requires some experience and attention to manage it well.

PLUMB SPIRITS, so called from being used with a decoction of logwood to prepare a dye solution of a deep wine or plumb colour, it is sometimes termed a *French tub* (see page 187, at bottom)—

Take 7 lbs. Hydrochloric acid,  
1 lb. Nitric acid,

adding by degrees, as dissolved,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ounces tin to the pound of mixture; or,

1 Nitric acid,  
5 Hydrochloric,  
 $1\frac{1}{4}$  ounce tin to the pound of acid.

Some prepare this spirit by dissolving the tin in hydrochloric acid alone. In that case the vessel containing the acid should be placed in a hot situation; it is generally, indeed, placed in another vessel containing boiling water. Plumb spirits are also prepared by dissolving some of the salts of tin in dilute hydrochloric acid. For  $1\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 lbs. of logwood used, 1 lb. of the spirits is added.

YELLOW SPIRITS, as before mentioned (page 159), are prepared with sulphuric instead of nitric acid, but they are seldom now used.

The above embraces, with very little modification, almost all the qualities of spirits used for cotton. That termed oxymuriate of tin, when used for woollens and silks, is prepared by adding to a solution of the salts of tin in hydrochloric acid, some nitric acid, which causes effervescence, and an escape of red fumes of nitrous oxide, caused by the peroxidising of the tin. The same result is often observed in the preparation of the spirits given above, when the tin is added too rapidly, and heat is developed; there is then a rapid solution, and fumes of nitrous oxide are given off, producing what the dyers call *firing*. Fired spirits, or spirits thus peroxidised, give brownish, dull, and unsatisfactory colours on cotton.

Several qualities of spirits are used for woollen and also for silk, by adding sal-ammoniac, or common salt, to nitric acid, along with the tin—the former most commonly; by this method a double salt of chloride of tin and ammonia is produced. The proportions of the acid and the sal-ammoniac and tin are varied for different objects; but spirits prepared in this way are seldom if ever used for cotton. The strength of the acids used is the ordinary commercial aquafortis and muriatic acid.

NITRATE OF IRON is prepared by taking a quantity of common nitric acid (aquafortis), and adding clean iron (generally old hoops with the rust beaten off) as long as the metal will dissolve. The acid acts best when diluted in the proportion of about one part to six of water; and after it has ceased to act upon the iron, all the metal not dissolved ought to be removed, otherwise the nitrate will continue to dissolve more of it, and precipitate oxide of iron, and thereby produce a thick insoluble mass at the bottom (see page 136): the solution should be clear. Some prefer to add only a small quantity of iron for light shades, but we have never seen any advantage in such a mode of proceeding. The iron and nitric acid ought, however, to be weighed, and have a fixed relation to each other. This solution of iron should be kept in the dark.

This salt or mordant is manufactured on a large scale and sold in solution in carboys. We have generally found it to be a mixture of nitrate and persulphate of iron. A sample recently tested, bought from a very respectable maker, had a specific gravity of 90° Twad.; it contained per gallon 36 ounces by weight of sulphuric acid ( $\text{SO}_3$ ) and 2 ounces of muriatic acid, so that either the nitric acid had been very impure or sulphuric acid had been added, either in the form of acid or as sulphate of iron. The impurities in common aquafortis is more commonly muriatic acid, generally about 2 ounces to the gallon of aquafortis. A curious circumstance in using persalts of iron may be noticed: if a piece of cloth of a mixed fabric of cotton and woollen be put into nitrate of iron, the cotton will be dyed a deep buff colour, while the woollen remains little affected; but if the same kind of cloth be put into perchloride of iron the reverse takes place, the woollen is dyed while the cotton is but little affected. In this way the presence of cotton may be detected in woollen fabrics.

ACETATE OF IRON AND ALUMINA.—This mordant is now seldom used; but it is useful for dyeing a wine colour, &c., with logwood. It is prepared by dissolving equal parts of copperas and alum in boiling water, then adding a solution of acetate of lead as long as a precipitate is formed. Allowing this to settle, the clear solution is the double acetate. But a better and cheaper mode of preparing it is to mix *black iron liquor* and *red liquor* together, which form the mordant in question.

ACETATE OF ALUMINA, or *Pyrolignite of Alumina* (see page 121 for an account of its preparation, and the mode of testing it). It is not, however, prepared by the dyer. We may mention, as this mordant is often dried upon the cloth in stoves at a high heat, that care should be taken not to allow two pieces of the cloth to hang too closely together, this prevents a free circulation of air; the stove ought also to be well ventilated, otherwise the warm vapour of the acetic acid will react upon the mordant in the cloth, and give an unequal dye, and full of dark parts, thus rendering the colour cloudy.

BLACK IRON LIQUOR.—This is pyrolignite of iron, prepared by allowing iron to steep in pyroligneous acid. It is not prepared by the dyer. We have given a method of testing it (page 135).

IRON AND TIN FOR ROYAL BLUE.—This is not prepared to stand in reserve, but only when about to be used. The iron solution used for this colour should be well *killed*, that is, the acid should be well saturated with iron, and produce a solution of a deep dark red. Some dyers add a little muriatic acid to the iron when it is to be used along with the tin. The crystals of tin should be added to the iron liquor immediately before entering the goods, and the liquor should be well stirred to prevent inequality.

ACETATE OF COPPER.—This is sometimes prepared in the dye-house in a similar manner to acetate of alumina, viz., by adding a hot solution of sulphate of copper (*blue-stone*) to a solution of acetate of lead: the clear liquor is acetate of copper. It is better, however, to purchase it in the crystallised state; this forms a good alterant for logwood blues. It is not much used in cotton dyeing, but useful for woollen.

Bichromate of potash is used as a mordant for cotton with great success, especially in mixed fabrics of cotton and wool.

There are a variety of other mordants used in woollen and silk dyeing, but these we do not particularise here, as they will be treated of under recipes; but we proceed to enumerate a few theoretical considerations concerning the action of mordants generally upon silk, cotton, and wool.

Cream of tartar—bitartrate of potash—is a very feeble mordant alone; still it is universally employed in dyeing woollen fabrics. When used along with alum, sulphate of iron, or chloride of tin, it is a strong

mordant, probably owing to decomposition: the sulphuric acid of the alum and iron, and the chlorine of the tin, may take the potash from the tartar, and the alumina, iron, or tin be converted into a tartrate, and in that state combine more readily with the wool, and be much less destructive to the fabric. Woollen goods seem to require certain thermal and acid conditions of the mordant; and it is known that a portion of the wool dissolves, and an equivalent of the mordant takes its place: this has been especially demonstrated of alum mordants.

For silk, the alum mordant is always used cold, otherwise the lustre of the silk is destroyed; and alum, having the least quantity of acid, is the best and most effective mordant. This explains why the Roman alum is always preferred. It may also be remarked that silk, in relation to alum, comes closest to cotton.

We copy the following theory of the action of mordants by M. Dumas:—

“ Cream of tartar, or bitartrate of potash, constitutes by itself a feeble mordant, but which is very often used in dyeing light woollen stuffs, to which we may wish to give a delicate but brilliant shade. It is also employed in the dyeing of ordinary woollen goods, but here it is associated with alum, sulphate of iron, chloride of tin, &c. Its influence, under these circumstances, consists evidently in determining a double decomposition, from which we have produced a sulphate of potash or chloride of potassium, whilst the tartaric acid combines with the alumina, the peroxide of iron, or the oxide of tin. Now, it is very probable that the colouring matters remove the alumina, the peroxide of iron, or the oxide of tin, more readily from tartaric than from sulphuric acid. Moreover, the presence of free sulphuric acid would certainly prove injurious, as well to the stuff as to the colouring matter, whilst free tartaric acid can exercise no unfavourable action over them.

“ The operation of subjecting wool to the alum mordant is always effected at the boiling point; the mixture used in this process is a compound of alum and of cream of tartar. One of the objects of this addition is to free the bath of the carbonate of lime which the water generally retains in solution, and which, acting on the alum, would determine its partial decomposition by producing an insoluble subsulphate of alumina and potash, and this accumulating on the stuff, and becoming unequally fixed upon its surface, would lead to stains or blotches on passing the material through the dye-bath. But, independently of the above effect, which might be produced by any acid, cream of tartar appears to be capable of effecting a further object, by inducing a double decomposition, which transforms the alum into a tartrate of alumina. However this may be, after one or two hours' boiling in the alum-bath, the cloth, which should be constantly agitated so as to cause a more equal application of the mordant, is withdrawn from the copper, and, after thoroughly draining, it should be put aside for two or three days, when we wish to dye it with any full-bodied colour. Experience has proved that this repose after



the use of the mordant greatly favours the union of the latter with the stuff. In applying the tin mordants we also make use of cream of tartar. It is, moreover, an indispensable addition where we desire to fix the salts of iron previously to dyeing in black.

“Woollen cloth, on being dipped into a cold aqueous solution of alum, appropriates to itself a part of this salt, but without undergoing any very sensible alteration. MM. Thenard and Roard have, indeed, proved that cloth, when thus treated by a cold solution of alum, gives up this salt to boiling water, and that, after a few washings performed at the boiling point, it will have parted with the whole of the alum which it had received in the cold bath. When, however, cloth is boiled in a solution of alum, it yields to this liquid a portion of its organic matter, which becomes dissolved; but at the same time it absorbs an equal amount of the alum.

“We have now merely to shew the action which wool undergoes when brought into contact with alum and cream of tartar at one and the same time. It is very possible that there may be in this case a simultaneous fixation of alum, as well as of the double tartrate of alumina and potash, and of tartaric acid. The presence of alum in the cloth when taken from the boiling solution is very evident; that of the tartrate of alumina and potash and of free tartaric acid is only presumable.

“Silk, in like manner, unites itself with alum when placed in a cold solution of this salt, and afterwards parts with it to boiling water; it may be reproduced from this liquor by evaporation. The action of silk on acetate of alumina is identical with that of wool. It at first absorbs this salt in its pure form; then, by desiccation it loses some acetic acid, and retains a mixture of the acetate together with alumina in its free state; it gives up a further portion of this acetate to boiling water.

“The alum mordant is always used cold with silk: if employed hot, it would destroy its lustre. The bath should not contain cream of tartar when it is intended for this material; on the contrary, we here have recourse to a variety of alum of as neutral a character as possible.

“The theory of the action of mordants is connected in the closest manner with that of dyeing. It may, in fact, be viewed under two very different aspects. Sometimes we admit that there exists a true combination between the stuff and the colouring matter—a combination which can only be determined by a veritable affinity between these two bodies, and which will present a condition analogous to that which occurs in all chemical combinations—that is to say, a state of saturation, beyond which the union of these bodies becomes of a very unstable character; at other times, on the contrary, we regard the dyeing of stuffs as produced by a nearly mechanical phenomenon, by virtue of which the colouring matters become imprisoned in the meshes of the organic filaments contained in the material to be dyed. This latter opinion is evidently the better founded. It approximates the theory of dyeing to some analogous phenomena which we find manifested by animal charcoal on coloured

solutions; for, as the animal charcoal seizes upon the colouring matters contained in an aqueous solution, and renders them insoluble by fixing them in a purely mechanical manner within its own pores: so may the wool, the silk, and the cotton, appropriate the colouring matters held in solution, and, by fixing them in their pores, render them more or less insoluble to water. Experience, however, shews that dyeing thus produced is wanting both in intensity and in fixity—two qualities which it derives by the previous application of a mordant. Now, we can readily see that the mordants themselves may become fixed in the tissues by similar causes to those which determine the fixation of the colouring matters by animal charcoal. We know, in fact, that this latter body possesses the property of removing from water not only the colouring matters, but also certain salts. There will, therefore, be no difficulty in imagining that silk, wool, and cotton may, in their character of porous bodies, purely and simply seize upon the alum, and that this salt, when once imprisoned in the meshes of the tissue, may subsequently react upon the colouring matter according as this latter, in its turn, penetrates the interior of these materials.

“We may then refer the phenomena of absorption, which characterise the fixation of the mordants and the penetration of the colouring principles into the tissues, to the same cause as that which determines the action of animal charcoal on certain soluble salts and colouring matters. But if one of these stuffs be impregnated with alum and then dipped in a bath of soluble colouring matter, it acquires a very deep tint, which appears to be essentially produced by a kind of lac, formed by means of the colouring matter and the base of the mordant. On the other hand, in a great number of cases, the mixture of the above mordant with the dye-bath fails in producing an insoluble precipitate. Thus, when we mix together alum and a decoction of Brazil-wood, no precipitate is formed, and, to obtain a lac from this liquor, we are obliged to add some alkali or alkaline carbonate, such as ammonia; in a word, we must render the alumina free. While admitting, then, in accordance with the experiments of MM. Thenard and Roard, that the stuffs fix the alum in its natural state, we must acknowledge, at the same time, that, by some special action, the tissue subsequently determines the union of the base of the mordant with the colouring matter. This special action is equivalent to that of the alkali.

“Now, it is certain that the above-mentioned stuffs possess in a high degree the faculty of seizing upon the insoluble colouring matters when these are presented to them in their nascent state. It is thus that cotton becomes dyed of a rose colour in a liquor which contains carthamic acid in suspension, arising from the decomposition of carthamate of soda by an acid. In like manner we find wool acquire a black colour, when placed in a boiling solution of a salt of iron and tannin, by attracting to itself the black precipitate resulting from their admixture. Consequently, although the dyer generally endeavours to produce the insoluble compound, on

which the colouring stuff depends, within the very pores of the tissue, still we may affirm that, in many cases, the cloth or other material, when placed in presence of the nascent precipitate, has the property of seizing upon it, and thus acquiring a shade of greater or less intensity.

“It is to this property (which is due to some hitherto undetermined cause) that we must undoubtedly refer the reaction which takes place between the alum and the soluble colouring matters, as well as some of those more mysterious phenomena which are manifested in dyeing. How else, indeed, are we to account for the fact that wool so readily takes a scarlet colour, while cotton and silk are unable to fix it? How explain the cause of wool so easily appropriating the black precipitate formed by tannin and the salts of iron, while silk, under the same circumstances, acquires a black colour only by great trouble and expense? How, in one word, can we understand why certain colours should fix themselves better on certain materials than on others, unless it be by virtue of some special action, wrongly designated by the name of affinity, but which does not the less constitute a force, or rather a consequence of diverse forces of which we must take full account during the operations of dyeing? To confound, in fact, a chemical affinity properly so called, such as is evidenced in ordinary chemical combinations when produced in definite proportions, with the phenomena of dyeing, is certainly to mix together two very distinct ideas. The union of silk with Prussian blue, or of wool with indigo, is quite a different thing to the combination of sulphur with lead. But to consider the tissue as a simple filter, capable of retaining in its pores certain precipitates, and of receiving from them peculiar colours, is to go equally far in an opposite direction; nor would this supposition at all explain the mode in which the coloured lac is formed in most of the operations of dyeing, operations which are effected by an aluminous salt and a colouring bath, altogether incapable of producing any lac, except by the addition of an alkali for the purpose of setting the alumina at liberty, or of a stuff which has the power of taking up the lac, as quickly as it is formed.

“Among the reasons which induce us to regard the insoluble colouring matters and the stuffs as capable of uniting together by virtue of some special force, we must mention the facts elicited by the recent experiments of M. Chevreul, who has found that the stuffs and colours, when once united, form products which are endowed with properties differing, according to the nature of the stuff, in the same given colour. The properties of the dyeing matter are, then, greatly modified by the peculiar action of the tissue on the dye. Numerous examples place the truth of this assertion beyond all question. It becomes, therefore, perfectly clear that it is only by an attentive and systematic study of the specific properties of the stuffs, in their relation to the various dyeing matters which we may desire to fix upon them, that we can hope to direct the future progress of the art of dyeing.”

The late Walter Crum of Thornliebank made the fixing of colours

upon fibre a special study for several years, and gave as the result of this inquiry, that there was no real chemical union between the fibre and colour; and on this matter we will convey his ideas better by a few extracts from his papers.

"Cotton in the bleached state may be considered as pure woody fibre or cellulose  $C_{12}H_{10}O_{10}$ . It is one of the most inert of the vegetable bodies. In the textile fabric it is capable of having incorporated with it, in all proportions, a multitude of different substances, without changing its own or their physical or chemical characters, except by holding them against mechanical effort to wash away or otherwise to separate them, but yielding them up to their proper solvents as readily as they could be taken from a surface of glass.

"The attraction which is attributed to porosity or capillary we know to be an attraction of surface; but it is one in which, in consequence of its structure, the absorbing body has its power of attraction for that which it imbibes immensely increased. The term capillary gives but a faint idea of the disproportion between the extent of surface of the cell which constitutes a pore in the woody fibre and the almost mathematical line or point of matter which the cell is capable of containing.

"The power which charcoal possesses of attracting to its surfaces certain solid bodies which are dissolved in water is equally well known. Bone charcoal removes the colouring matter from the brown solution of tartaric acid, and from syrup in the refining of sugar. It precipitates lime from lime-water, and metallic oxides from their solution in ammonia or caustic potash; but no chemical union has ever been supposed to exist between the charcoal and these matters. It is well known to be chemically indifferent to all bodies."

Substances applied to cotton as dyes, or for the purpose of attracting dyes, become fixed in the cotton fibre in two different ways.

1. They are attracted and precipitated from their solutions by the pores of the cotton; or,

2. They enter these pores in combination with an acid or other solvent, and in a state of solution, and are there fixed, not by an effort of porosity, but by the subsequent removal of their solvent, or by other means which render them insoluble in water.

As an example of the first or attraction of porosity, Mr. Crum instances the blue dyed by the ordinary blue vat, which will be described in its place. Of the second class, where the mordant or dye has entered and become fixed within the fibre independently of attraction, he gives as examples madder colours with mordants of iron or alumina, and remarks as follows:—

"1. That the pores, whether larger or smaller, receive the solution of iron by ordinary hydrostatic capillary attraction.

"2. That while within these cavities or vessels, whatever be their form, the salt is peroxidised and decomposed; and,

"3. That the result of the decomposition—an insoluble oxide is left



there by the volatile acid, which by the solvent power had placed it in that position.

“Having formed the idea that no portion of the dye but that which is held most firmly within the cotton-fibre could bear the severe soaping operations to which this class of prints is subjected, I formerly described a piece of dyed cotton, as consisting of a set of colourless bags, containing coloured substances, and in so far resembling the cells of natural flowers; but the statement was incomplete, and the proof rested to some extent upon theoretical considerations, until the opportunity occurred of observing the effects of the same process upon *dead cotton*.”

What was technically known as *dead cotton* was a kind of cotton that would not take the dye, and what it did take it could not retain, or withstand the after-operations it was subjected to. By careful microscopic examination, this cotton was found to be unripe cotton; and Mr. Crum says of them:—

“These fibres are readily distinguished from those of ordinary cotton, by their perfect flatness, not having the vestige of a cavity even at the sides, and by their uniform as well as great transparency. They are broader than the usual fibre, and they shew numerous folds both longitudinal and transverse.”

Referring to the ripe and unripe fibre of cotton, after careful investigation, Mr. Crum adds—

“Here, then, are two specimens of cellulose, having the same chemical composition, and subjected to the same process of dyeing—one of them which is formed by deposition in a manner to expose the greatest amount of surface, and enclose the greatest number of minute cavities, having the power of decomposing certain solutions and entrapping mordants, while the other, a hard compact polished membrane, is without appreciable action upon mordants or dyes.”

And thus Mr. Crum, by a most exhaustive series of microscopic observations on all the varieties of cotton fibre—half-ripe, unripe, and full-grown, dyed and undyed—has, we think, fully proven that dyes, whether substantive or adjective, do not combine chemically with the fibre, but are imbibed into the cavities and pores by what is termed capillary attraction, which has a power of decomposing certain substances and retaining them within these cells or cavities. A conclusion to which, from a practical point of view, we unhesitatingly subscribe; at the same time, we observe that the substantive colours—those colours that are imbibed into the cavities in a solid form without mordants, such as indigo blue and safflower reds—can be washed out by repeated washings in clean water, more readily than most of the adjective colours, especially those fixed by astringent substances. We have washed a deep indigo blue dyed in the blue vat and rose-pink dyed by safflower to nearly whiteness, while the same amount of washing had no effect upon Turkey-red.

## VEGETABLE MATTERS USED IN DYEING.

---

### INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

IN entering upon this division of our subject, we may mention that it is not our intention to go through anything like a systematic course of vegetable chemistry, but to confine ourselves to those vegetable substances which are used in dyeing, giving their composition and reactions with bases and other matters used in the dye-house. We may, however, give a general outline of the nature of vegetable bodies, beginning with the consideration of the chemical changes which are supposed to take place in Nature, under the influence of light, giving rise to the various colours presented to us in the vegetable kingdom, which will probably aid us in describing the artificial means of imitating Nature in these colours, although as yet there is comparatively little known concerning the nature of these changes. For a long time chemists considered iron to be the colouring principle of all animals and vegetables, being almost universally diffused, and capable of assuming a variety of colours when in combination with other substances; but it was afterwards demonstrated that the iron present in any vegetable, even in those where it existed most abundantly, was altogether inadequate to produce the splendid colours which vegetable substances assumed. Several other hypotheses were proposed to account for the colours of vegetables; but these hypotheses, not being founded upon inquiry and proof, died at their birth. Within these thirty years a truer method of ascertaining the nature and cause of vegetable colours has been adopted—that is, by the ultimate analysis of vegetable substances in all their stages of existence; and since then, a number of important facts have been made known respecting this interesting subject, and new ones are daily being added; and many of these discoveries have been made available to the practical man.

The principal elements of vegetable substances are oxygen, hydrogen, carbon, and nitrogen: the last exists in such a minute quantity, that in many cases it is scarcely appreciable; but according to the opinion of the late Professor Liebig, who stood at the head of this department of chemistry, it is never absent. It is to be remarked, however, that none of the colouring matters of the dye-woods contain nitrogen. There is also a variety of earthy substances in vegetables, such as lime, iron, magnesia, soda, potash, &c., which seem indispensable to the existence of plants; but they differ in proportion according to the nature of the plant and the soil on which it grows. The three elements, oxygen, hydrogen, and carbon enter very abundantly into the composition of vegetables, form-

ing from 95 to 99 per cent.; but it must not be supposed from this that all vegetables are alike in their chemical properties; they may be, and are more varied than the mineral kingdom, considering the few elements which compose them, and are beautifully illustrative of the law of definite compounds (page 18). The following table, shewing the composition of a few substances which constitute the great mass of all vegetables, will serve to illustrate this point:—

	Carbon.	Oxygen.	Hydrogen.
Gum, . . . . .	12	11	22
Starch, . . . . .	12	10	20
Sugar, . . . . .	12	11	22

It will be observed from the table how little change is necessary to produce an entirely different compound. It will also be observed, that gum and sugar are the same in composition, which at first sight appears to contradict the law of definite compounds; but in analysing substances such as are named in the table, they are reduced to their elements, and although we obtain the same weight of elements, we have no positive information how these elements may have been united together in the plant. All those bodies which differ in properties, and at the same time give the same number and weight of elements, are termed *isomeric*, signifying *equal parts*. The discovery of bodies having the same number of elements, and differing in their chemical properties, has excited much interest among chemists, and has led to much careful study and investigation, and most important results—the difference is now believed to be in the numerical arrangement of the elements. As, for example, hydrogen and carbon will combine in the proportion of two and two, four and four, and eight and eight, forming three substances, differing considerably in chemical properties, although the elements are combined in the same relation; but interesting as this subject is, we cannot in the meantime enter into any lengthened details—it shews us, however, the extensive means employed by Nature for giving us a variety of substances from a few elements. Another point to be observed from the above table is, that the oxygen and hydrogen in each of these compounds are in the same proportion, or in that relative proportion in which they unite to form water. Now, it may be stated as a general rule, that when oxygen and hydrogen are united to carbon in the proportion in which they form water, the resulting compounds are of a saccharine or mucilaginous character; and when vegetable compounds have hydrogen united to carbon without oxygen, or when there is less of that element than would be required to convert the hydrogen present into water, the resulting compounds are generally oily, resinous, or alcoholic. A table of the composition of a few of these substances will illustrate this:—

	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen.
Oil of turpentine, . . . .	10	16	0
Oil of potatoes, . . . .	5	12	1
Oil of cloves, . . . .	23	28	5
Resin of gamboge, . . . .	20	28	5
Caoutchouc, . . . .	4	8	0
Beeswax, . . . .	37	78	2
Pyroxilic spirit, . . . .	2	8	2
Alcohol, . . . .	2	6	1

When the proportion of oxygen united to carbon is in greater quantity than the hydrogen, or when no hydrogen is present, the resulting compounds have generally an acid character: green fruits are in this state, which gives them their sour taste, and makes them deleterious to health, either by giving too much acid to the stomach, or the acid being of a directly poisonous nature; but as the fruit ripens, it takes in or assimilates more hydrogen, and the acid, or at least part of the acid, is converted into a saccharine compound. The following table will shew the composition of a few of the most common acids found in vegetables, as given in Dr. Thomson's *Vegetable Chemistry*, doubling the hydrogen:—

	Carbon.	Oxygen.	Hydrogen.
Acetic acid (vinegar), . . . .	4	3	6
Tartaric acid, . . . .	4	5	4
Citric acid (lemon juice), . . . .	4	4	4
Gallic acid, . . . .	7	5	6
Tannic acid, . . . .	18	12	16

There are also a number of alkalies, alkaloids or bases, formed in plants, which unite with the acids, constituting a very important feature in the study of vegetable chemistry, but which we will not in the meantime enter upon further than to state that they almost all contain nitrogen as an ingredient.

Besides analyses giving the quantities and proportions of each element, as shewn in the above tables, chemists have been led into the necessity of classifying them into groups, having certain properties and compositions. Thus in what is termed the polybasic or many basic acids, which are diffused through the vegetable kingdom, such as some of those already named, they are laid down as follows, according to new formulæ:—

Malic acid, . . . .	$\text{H}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_5$ .
Tartaric acid, . . . .	$\text{H}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6$ .
Citric acid, . . . .	$\text{HC}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
Meconic acid, . . . .	$\text{H}_3\text{C}_7\text{HO}_7 \cdot 3 \text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
Gallo-tannic acid, . . . .	$\text{H}_2\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{20}\text{O}_{17}$ .
Gallic acid, . . . .	$\text{H}_3\text{C}_7\text{H}_3\text{O}_5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

There are ample reasons for adopting such formulæ by which the



relations of one compound to another are more easily defined. The reader is referred to systematic works on organic chemistry for the full details and reasons for this grouping.

In our remarks upon light (page 9), we mentioned that colours depend wholly upon the reflection and absorption of light, by the apparently coloured substance; but it was also mentioned, that this result depends upon the chemical constitution of the particular substance; hence the inquiry into the cause of vegetable colours becomes a chemical one; and from the chemical laws above described, these coloured substances must have a definite constitution; and when any change of colour takes place, there must also be a change of constitution or re-arrangement of its elements. In prosecuting this inquiry, or rather, in collecting the inquiries of the most eminent chemists upon this subject, we shall begin with the paramount colour of the vegetable kingdom, namely, green.

Green is well known to be a compound colour, produced by yellow and blue, and is always produced upon cloth by dyeing it first the one colour, and then the other. It is not always the yellow that is dyed first, according to the description in chemical books; but sometimes the blue, according to the nature of the dyeing agent. This will be explained in its proper place. Speaking of vegetable green, Berthollet says, "The green of plants is undoubtedly produced by a homogeneous substance, in the same way as the greater number of hues which exist in Nature. This colour owes, then, its origin sometimes to simple rays, and sometimes to a union of different rays; and some other colours are in the same predicament. Were the green of plants due to two substances, one of which is yellow and the other blue, it would be extraordinary if we could not separate them, or at least change their proportions by some solvent." This idea of Berthollet, that the green of plants is a distinct substance existing in the plant, has since been verified. It is obtained by bruising green leaves into a pulp with water, pressing out all the liquid, and boiling the dry pulp in alcohol: when the alcohol is evaporated, there remains a deep green matter, which, by digesting in water, is dissolved, and freed from a little brown colouring matter with which it is mixed. This substance has been named *chlorophyl*. Later, however, Fremy has ascertained that chlorophyl is composed of a yellow and blue substance, which can be detected; and the fading of leaves is the destruction of the blue. The formation of chlorophyl seems to depend entirely upon the action of the solar rays. "It is known that the function of the leaves, and other green parts of plants, is to absorb carbonic acid, and with the aid of light and moisture, to appropriate its carbon. These processes are continually in operation: they commence with the formation of the leaves, and do not cease with their perfect development." But when light is absent, or during the night, the decomposition of carbonic acid does not proceed: it is evident then that a plant kept always excluded from the light must have a difference in its composition. "No one can have failed to observe the difference between vegetables thriving in the full enjoyment

of light and those which grow in obscure situations, or which are entirely deprived of its agency: the former are of brilliant tints, the latter dingy and white. Numerous familiar instances might be cited, especially among our esculent vegetables: the shoots of a potato produced in a dark cellar are white, straggling, and differently formed from those which the plant exhibits under its usual circumstances of growth. Celery is cultivated for the table by carefully excluding the influence of light upon its stem: this is effected by heaping the soil upon it, so as entirely to screen it from the solar rays; but if suffered to grow in the ordinary way, it soon alters its aspect, throws out abundant shoots and leaves, and, instead of remaining white and of little taste, acquires a deep-green colour and a peculiarly bitter and nauseous flavour. The heart of the common cabbage is another illustration, and the rosy-coloured aspect of the sides of fruit is referable to the same cause. Changes yet more remarkable have been discovered in plants vegetating entirely without exposure to light. In visiting a coal-pit, Professor Robinson found a plant with a large white foliage, the form and appearance of which were quite new to him: it was left at the mouth of the pit, when the subterranean leaves died away, and common tansy sprung from the roots."

Some very curious and interesting results have been obtained by Mr. Hunt and others, respecting the effects of the different rays of light upon vegetable substances, all going to prove the great influence exerted by that agent over the vegetable kingdom, and that to it we are indebted for the beauty of our fields and gardens.

The green colour of vegetables, as stated, is owing to a peculiar approximate element existing in the vegetable, not invariably nor altogether essential to the plant, but depending upon circumstances—these circumstances being at the same time the best for the health and existence of the plant. This colour differs from the other colours of vegetables in the time of its appearing. Flowers of plants do not appear till the plant has reached a certain state of maturity; but whenever a plant rises above the soil, it immediately begins to assume the green hue, and this hue is continued till the object of the leaves is completed. When a *chemical change takes place*, the green passes away, and another colour, reddish-yellow, takes its place. These changes are effected in different degrees, and in different lengths of time, just according as the leaves have the property of *absorbing oxygen gas*. Those leaves which continue longest green absorb oxygen slowest. The leaves of the holly will only absorb a small fraction of oxygen, in the same time that the leaves of the poplar and beech will absorb eight or nine times their bulk. These last are remarkable for the rapidity and ease with which the colour of their leaves change. That leaves do absorb oxygen gas when they change colour in autumn, and that it is owing to the absorption of this gas, may be verified by placing some green leaves of the poplar, the beech, and the holly under the receiver of an air-pump, and drying them thoroughly, keeping them excluded from light; when taken out, wet them with water, and place

them immediately under a glass globe full of oxygen gas, when they will change colour; and it will be found that the change of colour is just in proportion to the quantity of oxygen each absorbs. The consequence of this absorption is the formation of an acid, in accordance with the law mentioned before. This acid changes the chlorophyl, or green principle, from green to yellow, and then to a reddish hue. If we treat green leaves with an acid, the same changes of colour take place, and if we macerate a red leaf in potash it becomes green.

The green of leaves and the colours of flowers are common to all vegetable substances under the influence of light; but there are a number of colouring substances in vegetables which are peculiar to certain orders, and which exist as proximate elements sometimes in the leaves, in the woody part, in the juice, in the bark, in the flower, in the seeds, and in the roots. Several of these have been made subservient to our use in the art of dyeing, and will be noticed separately.

The various and beautiful colours of flowers are produced by a somewhat different process from that of the green of the leaves, in so far as they do not appear until the plant has attained a certain state of maturity. "The leaves of the plant being fully developed, they take in more nourishment from the atmosphere than what is necessary for the existence of the plant. This extra nourishment takes a new direction, a peculiar transformation takes place, new compounds are formed, which furnish constituents of the blossoms, fruit, and seed."

Some of these reactions upon vegetables caused by sunlight, such as the gradual change of leaves from green to yellow seen in the autumn, by the decomposition of the chlorophyl, we look on with little surprise, and so do we also in the case of some flowers, such as the rose, where the calyx opens up and allows the light to fall upon the flower, producing the colour white—the calyx remains unchanged; but when we look at such flowers as the tulip, the calyx is also green, but by sunlight it becomes the flower. The green gradually changes into every variety of hue. If the green petal or calyx of the tulip be chlorophyl, it is decomposed in a different way from what it is in leaves, being converted into a great many compounds, in some cases one colour gradually passes into another, and in others they have marked lines of distinction. If each colour has a different composition, it widens our view respecting the wonderful variety of bodies that may be formed out of a very few elements, and gives hope to the photographer of yet fixing the colours upon his picture.

Many attempts have been made to transfer the colouring matters of flowers to cloth, but without success. In general they are so fugitive as to change the moment they are brought into contact with the atmosphere, and such of them as can be extracted have no affinity for the cloth. If a third substance be used to give this affinity, it destroys the original colour of the vegetable.

It is very probable that all the colours of flowers depend upon only a few proximate elements formed in the vegetable, in the manner already



described, and that their various hues are the consequence of the presence of acids affecting more or less this colouring substance. This is the most probable hypothesis that has been framed, and with which we must rest satisfied till more accurate experiments verify its truth, or give us a better. The following summary of experiments will give some idea of the views held upon this subject:—"The expressed juice of most red flowers is blue; hence it is probable that the colouring matter in the flower is reddened by an acid, which makes its escape when the juice is exposed to the air. The violet is well known to be coloured by a blue matter, which acids change to red; and alkalis and their carbonates first to green and then to yellow. The colouring matter of the violet exists in the petals of red clover, the red tips of the common daisy of the field, of the blue hyacinth, the hollyhock, lavender, in the inner leaves of the artichoke and numerous other flowers. The same substance made red by an acid colours the skin of several plums; probably, also, gives the red colour to the petals of the scarlet geranium, and of the pomegranate tree. The leaves of the red cabbage, and the rind of the long radish, are also coloured by this principle. It is remarkable that these, on being merely bruised, become blue, and give a blue infusion with water. It is probable that the reddening acid in these cases is the carbonic, which, on the rupture of the vessel which encloses it (being a gas), escapes into the atmosphere. If the petals of the red rose be triturated with a little water and chalk, a blue liquid is obtained. Alkalis render this blue liquid green, and acids restore its red colour."

We need hardly mention that the influence of light in producing colours, and changing them when produced, is regulated to a great extent by the vitality of the plant; so that the effects vary in intensity according to the season of the year. When leaves or flowers are taken from a plant, they are both very soon affected by light; but it has been observed by Sir John Herschel, that flowers plucked at an early period, as when newly formed, are much more sensitive to light than at a later period of flowering, shewing that flowers have a period of maturity; and if pulled at that time, the colouring compound is much more stable, and resists the action of light much more powerfully than when pulled before they are matured. This law of development and maturity is universal, and may be the cause of many of the varieties—the superiority or inferiority of many vegetable dyes even of the same kind.

The vegetable substances used in dyeing may be divided into two classes: first, those which are used not on account of their possessing colouring properties, but because they possess matters that have a strong attraction for the fibre, which they fill, and also form insoluble compounds with the bases, and so enabling them to act the part of mordants to the substances which are afterwards to be applied; and second, those substances that are applied or used for the colouring matter they contain.

The substances comprised in the first class of these are termed astringents, from their producing a roughening or corrugating effect upon



the mouth when tasted. All the vegetables that produce these effects are found to contain certain acids, to which this property of astringency is referable; and the presence of these acids gives them their value in the dye-house. These acids, as we have already stated, are gallic acid and tannic acid or tannin.

It has been found, from the extensive researches of Dr. Stenhouse on the vegetables containing these substances, that the tannin exists in them in a great variety of modified forms, or rather that they give certain modified reactions with chemical agents, the cause of which, from several analyses, has been defined to be compounds of different proportions of elements which have been formulated, thus—

Moritanic acid,	. . . . .	$C_{18}H_{16}O_{10}$ .
Quinotannic acid,	. . . . .	$C_{28}H_{38}O_{17}$ .

For our purposes we will divide these substances thus acted upon into two—

1. Those which give a black precipitate with the salts of iron—for a proper type of which may be cited galls and sumach; and,
2. Those which give a dark-olive precipitate with iron—the type of which is catechu. The latter is much more stable in its composition, and less liable to change by standing.

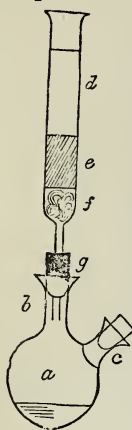
---

#### GALLS.

Upon certain species of oak there grow excrescences which originate in punctures, made by a peculiar insect, for the purpose of depositing her eggs. A kind of juice exudes from this puncture, and gradually forms round these ova hard round bodies, varying in size from one-fourth of an inch to an inch in diameter. These substances, from their resemblance to nuts, and from their bitter taste, are called gall-nuts. The excrescences are produced by the *cynips* (gall-wasp), upon the tender shoots of the *Quercus infectoria*, a species of oak which is common in Asia Minor. When the maggot is hatched, it eats its way out of the nidus. The best galls are those brought from Aleppo and Smyrna. From repeated experiments of many excellent chemists upon this substance, it is considered to contain two peculiar principles. One of these, a crystallisable matter, is obtained from a macerated solution of galls, after standing in the air for a long time. This, from its possessing many acid properties, is termed gallic acid. The other is that substance which combines with skins during the process of tanning, changing them into leather, and is termed tannin, or, from its having some acid properties, tannic acid.

The best galls, according to Sir H. Davy, contain 26 per cent. tannin and 6.2 of gallic acid, but from the circumstance of these two compounds being generally found together in the same vegetable, and in variable pro-

portions, it was thought probable that the one produced the other. This supposition was verified to a great extent by M. Pelouze, particularly as respects the tannin of galls.



A method of extracting tannin from galls is as follows:—To a vessel such as that represented in the annexed figure is fitted, by means of a cork *g*, a funnel-shaped tube, and the neck *c* is kept corked air-tight during the process. At the bottom of the tube is placed a little clean cotton, as shewn at *f*. Above the cotton is placed a quantity of nut-galls in fine powder, as shewn at *e*. Over this is poured a quantity of common sulphuric ether, sufficient to fill the rest of the tube, as seen at *d*. A cork is then fitted tightly to the opening at the top of the tube, and the whole set aside. Next day, two layers of liquor are found in the vessel *a*, one very light and limpid, occupying the upper part, the other having a light-amber colour, and the consistence of a syrup, occupying the lower part. These liquids are put into a pipette, upon which the finger is kept, and after remaining at rest for a few minutes till they separate, the heavy

liquid is allowed to fall out into a capsule, and the light liquid retained, so that it may be distilled for the sake of recovering the ether. The dense liquid which is in the capsule is next to be washed two or three times with sulphuric ether, and afterwards dried by a very gentle heat: the matter left has a spongy appearance, is very brilliant, and generally of a yellow tint. This is tannin in a state of purity. By this process, from 35 to 40 per cent. can be extracted from nutgalls.

M. Pelouze found that if a solution of tannin be kept closely corked from the atmosphere no change takes place; but if left in contact with oxygen, the tannin undergoes a change, and gallic acid is formed. Hence he concludes that gallic acid does not exist except in very minute quantity in vegetables, and that the error of supposing that these two acids existed together in galls, arose from the common method adopted to procure gallic acid, which was by allowing the macerated vegetable matter in water to stand in contact with the air till the gallic acid crystallised from the solution, this being nothing more than a process for converting tannin into gallic acid by the absorption of oxygen.

This discovery is of great importance to the dyer, as it points out the evil of allowing liquids which contain tannin to stand exposed to the air for any length of time; for although gallic acid and tannin act in a somewhat similar manner with metallic oxides, yet the gallates are much more fugitive than the tannates. For example, if we precipitate tannic acid and gallic acid by a persulphate of iron, they are both dark blue, bordering on black; excepting a slight change of shade, the tannate remains permanent; but if the gallate be allowed to stand a few hours, it is dissolved in the supernatant liquid, and becomes almost colourless; the sulphuric acid resumes its attraction for the iron, and crystallises as a protosulphate (copperas), and

the gallic acid is partly decomposed and partly crystallised. These changes take place in a few minutes, if the liquor containing the precipitate be boiled. Now, if galls, or what is now more commonly used instead, sumach, be allowed to stand till fermentation takes place, which does very soon, a great portion of the tannin is converted into gallic acid; and although the cloth dyed in sumach that is thus altered should be, as some dyers affirm, equally dark, the colour will not be equally fast; but from personal experience, we can say that it is neither equally dark nor equally beautiful. It cannot be so dark, for gallic acid being much more insoluble than tannin falls to the bottom whenever it is formed, and consequently leaves the supernatant liquid much weaker in its dyeing properties.

More recent discoveries have shewn that tannin is convertible into gallic acid by other and much more rapid means than being left to absorb oxygen: these are by the common processes of inducing fermentation. It is well known that fermentation is simply a derangement of the elements of certain complex compounds, and the re-arrangement of these elements in different positions and proportions, giving rise to new and altogether different compounds of a more simple nature. The primary compounds have been formed under the influence of the vital principle; but whenever this is withdrawn, the attraction of their elements seems too weak to enable them to resist any marked change of circumstances. Even a slight elevation of temperature is sufficient to overpower their affinities and induce change. Or if they are brought into contact with a body which is in the act of derangement, such as yeast, that body excites the same derangement in them, and the equilibrium being disturbed, the elements are left to arrange themselves according to their different attractions. If, for example, we dissolve a little sugar of grapes, which is composed of 12 carbon, 24 hydrogen, and 12 oxygen, in a little water, and raise the solution to a temperature of about 80° Fah.; and if to this we add a little yeast, which is a substance whose atoms are in the act of transposition, the yeast does not combine chemically with the sugar, but it communicates to it by contact the action of transposition, and thereby deranges the arrangement which the atoms had assumed to form sugar; and the atomic elements, being thus set at liberty, begin to arrange themselves differently: every six equivalents of the hydrogen combine with two of the carbon and one of the oxygen, forming four atoms of alcohol. The remaining eight atoms of oxygen unite with the remaining four of carbon in the relation of one to two, forming four atoms of carbonic acid gas. Thus the whole sugar is converted into two different substances, of which the yeast forms no part. It only acts the part of a bold revolutioniser, breaking up existing combinations, that new ones may be formed from their elements. Now tannin is found to undergo a similar sort of change as the sugar, when brought into contact with certain substances; and one of the new compounds formed from this transposition is gallic acid. M. Antoine has indeed directly shewn, that a very small quantity of nut-galls is capable of converting a large quantity of tannin into gallic acid, and that galls contain a substance capable of producing





It was found by M. Antoine that a little sulphuric, hydrochloric, or nitric acid, added to a solution of galls, makes it less liable to ferment by exposure. We have often seen a little sulphuric acid put into sumach to cause it to keep, as dyers say; but this weakens its dyeing powers, and unfits it as a good mordant for very deep shades of colour.

The following table, abridged from Brande's *Manual of Chemistry*, will give some idea of the action of some metallic salts upon a solution of galls or sumach :—

Names of Salts used.	Colour of Precipitates.
Protochloride of manganese, . . .	Dirty yellow.
Protosulphate of iron (copperas), . . .	Purple tint.
Persulphate of iron, . . . . .	Black.
Chloride of zinc (muriate of zinc), . . .	Dirty yellow.
Protochloride of tin, . . . . .	Straw colour.
Perchloride of tin, . . . . .	Fawn colour.
Sulphate of copper (blue-stone), . . .	Yellow brown.
Nitrate of copper, . . . . .	Grass green.
Nitrate of lead, . . . . .	Dingy yellow.
Tartrate of antimony and potash, . . .	Straw colour.
Tartrate of bismuth and potash, . . .	Copious yellow or orange.
Sulphate of uranium, . . . . .	Blue black.
Sulphate of nickel, . . . . .	Green.
Protonitrate of mercury, . . . . .	Yellow.

In attempting to draw a practical inference from some of these results, we would, for example, conclude that persulphate of iron is much better adapted for dyeing blacks than protosulphate, as the former is mentioned as producing a deep black, while the latter gives only a purple tint. It is much to be regretted that in making out these tables, care has not been taken to give the results in all their bearings. What is mentioned of these two salts is correct at the instant the mixtures are made; but in the course of twenty minutes the black from the persulphate becomes a brownish slate, whereas the purple tint of the protosulphate changes during the same time to a deep black; and these changes continue till the former has become a light yellowish slate, and the latter a perfect ink black.

When trying the difference of effect produced by the persulphate and protosulphate of iron upon pure tannin and gallic acid, it may further be observed, that the changes produced with tannin are somewhat similar to those which occur in a solution of galls. With gallic acid the persulphate gives at first a black precipitate, not so dark as the tannate, but in a few minutes it changes to an olive, and continues changing till it becomes almost colourless. With the protosulphate at first the colour is scarcely visible, but after an hour's exposure it assumes a rich violet. From these facts it may be concluded that tannin is superior to gallic acid as a dyeing agent for black; moreover, the compound formed is more insoluble.

Another circumstance which modifies the results of these experiments

in their application to dyeing, is the quality of the water used. If the experiments be performed with distilled water, it will be found on repeating them with common spring water, that one-half of the quantity of stuffs will give the same depth of colour; and that the colours, in this instance, have more of a purple hue, and are much more permanent. This may be illustrated by a very simple experiment. Take two glass jars of equal size, fill them half full with distilled water, and add an equal quantity of a solution of galls or sumach; put into each an equal number of drops of a solution of protosulphate of iron (copperas); the change of colour is scarcely perceptible. But fill up one to the brim with spring water, and it almost instantly becomes a dark reddish black. Allow both jars to stand for an hour, the solution with the distilled water will have become a deep violet, while the other, notwithstanding the double quantity of water, is so dark that no light is transmitted; and it will require one-half more water to reduce it to the same shade as the other, but still retaining more of the reddish hue—which, by the way, makes it superior for black. It will also be found to be much more insoluble, and to require a greater proportion of acid to decompose it. If soft or filtered river water be used instead of distilled water, the distinction is not so great, but still the difference is equal to one-half. The best water in our experience for dyeing black, and other *saddened colours*, gave by analysis sulphuric, muriatic, and carbonic acids, lime, a trace of silica, and iron. The whole solid contents did not exceed one grain in a fluid ounce, or 160 grains per gallon, which, we may remark, is a large quantity (see page 33). These ingredients probably existed in the water as sulphate, carbonate, and muriate of lime, and carbonate of iron. The iron was in very small proportion; the carbonic acid and lime greatest.

Now a dyer learning his trade in a work where such water is used, could not fail to become a successful and economical dyer of all saddened colours; but were he taken from this work to another where soft filtered water was used, what would be the result? When he attempted to dye a black with the same quantity of dye-stuff he formerly used, he would only produce a dark-slate colour; and if he wished to obtain a slate colour, he would produce a grey. In this dilemma the dyer adds stuff till he comes to the desired shade; but fancy dyes, bolstered up with stuffs, are not so pretty; besides, the employer, in consequence of this extra stuff, must either submit to a loss or discharge the dyer—who, no doubt, considering himself ill-used, talks loudly of his ability in dyeing such colours, and offers to prove that the fault is not with him but in the water. Were this wholly a supposed case, we would pause here, and make an apology to our brethren for these remarks; but not being so, we will rather endeavour to shew that the fault is the dyer's. Dyeing being an art wholly dependent upon chemistry for its development and successful practice, he who practises it without studying chemistry is like a boy learning to repeat a number of choice sentences from an author without knowing his letters. Had the dyer alluded to known the principles of chemistry, so far as they are applicable to his trade, he would, on finding that the same quantity of stuffs did

not yield the same results, have examined the water to discover where lay the difference, and in this particular case he would find, that instead of adding an extra quantity of sumach, copperas, and logwood, to get a good black, a little chalk and hydrous gypsum (sulphate of lime) added to the water, would so qualify it as to render it equally effective with that to which he had been accustomed.

There are several kinds of galls, but the following three kinds occur in commerce—Aleppo galls, Smyrna galls, and East Indian galls. These three kinds consist, according to the ripeness of the gall-nuts, of black, green, and white galls. When the galls occur in commerce mixed, they are termed “natural,” and are sorted into the following kinds:—Picked black, natural black (consisting of black and dark-green galls), dark green, light green, natural white (light green and white galls), and picked white. Aleppo galls are the best; but under this name must be reckoned not only such as come from Aleppo, but also those derived from Mosul in Natalia, and which are therefore called in Constantinople and Smyrna lists not Aleppo, but Mosul galls. This gall recommends itself by its heaviness, and the lighter-coloured kinds (white and light-green galls) are frequently remarkable from their large size; but the best distinguishing character between the Mosul and Smyrna galls is the darker kind of the Mosul galls having as it were a bluish bloom, while the Smyrna are of a greyish colour. The Mosul gall, moreover, has not so many tubercules as the Smyrna kind. The first is exported from Constantinople and Smyrna, the latter principally from Smyrna. The chief markets are Trieste, Leghorn, Marseilles, and London. The fourth kind of nut-gall is the marmorated one, which is brought from Puglia; the chief staple places are Naples and Trieste. It consists generally of large nuts, which have fewer tubercules, and these not acute. They are generally of a whitish-red and greenish colour, sometimes also darker. Istria produces a very inferior kind of galls; they are small, commonly of a reddish colour, and are much tuberculated. Place of export, Trieste. These are the principal kinds, not to mention others of rare occurrence; for instance, a kind of gall is brought from Asia Minor and Dalmatia which is hollow, not heavy, and of a reddish colour.

Analysis of galls by M. Guibourt:—

Woody fibre, . . . . .	10·5	} The <i>luteo-gallic</i> acid is applied to the yellow colouring matter of the galls.
Water, . . . . .	11·5	
Tannin, . . . . .	65·0	
Gallic acid, . . . . .	2·0	
Ellagin acid and luteo-gallic acid, 2·0		} Sometimes white galls are dyed by a little iron-water being put upon them, which darkens them, and makes them appear of a better quality.
Extractive matter, . . . . .	2·5	
Gum, . . . . .	2·5	
Starch, . . . . .	2·	
Chlorophyl, . . . . .	0·7	
Sugar, . . . . .	1·3	
	100·0	

## • SUMACH.

Called by botanists *Rhus coriaria*, is a native of Syria. It is diligently cultivated in Spain, Portugal, and in some parts of Italy and Sicily, and known in the market as Sicily, Malaga, Trieste, and Verona sumach: the first is the best quality. Upwards of 60,000 tons of this dye are used annually in this country. The sumach tree, or rather shrub, grows to a height of about eight or ten feet; the stems are ligneous, and divide at the bottom into many irregular branches; the bark is hairy and of a brown colour. The leaves are winged, have seven or eight pair of jagged lobes, and terminate in an odd one. The leaves are placed alternately upon the branches, which are surmounted by flowers of a greenish-white colour. The shoots of the shrub are cut down every year close to the roots, and after being dried are reduced to powder by means of a mill; the very fine stems are often cut into small pieces, and put amongst the powder.

We have already referred to the use of sumach in the dye-house; we speak of it simply as a fit substitute for galls, possessing similar properties, and seemingly passing through similar decompositions by exposure. Indeed, galls are very seldom used now in the ordinary dye-house, only sumach. A little sulphuric acid added to sumach retards fermentation; but, as already stated, it is not good to add it when dark shades are required, and should only be used for sumach which is to stand for some time, or is to be used for very light drabs. In this case the colour obtained is more pleasant—technically, more *sweet*; but either the addition of acid, or by standing exposed to the air, very soon destroys the colouring matter which sumach contains, and also affects the depth of shade of dye obtained from it. It is, therefore, always advisable to use the sumach newly boiled. The comparative advantages of using it newly boiled, and after it has been kept for some time, can easily be ascertained by taking a given quantity, boiling it, and allowing it to stand over a few days; then taking the same quantity, boiling it the same length of time, heating the old solution to the same temperature as the new, and adding to each the same weight of cotton; the effects produced will be very different, and will, more than any written description, shew the importance of attending to this circumstance.

Sumach is generally used as a bottoming when the metallic base or mordant is iron or tin, and for dyeing deep colours, such as blacks, reds, &c. Sicilian sumach has a greenish-yellow colour, and is the best when bright colours of red are to be dyed; also for barwood, and all colours that require clearness. Verona sumach when compared with Sicilian has a fawn tint; it is best for deep reds, browns, and blacks. When used for barwood reds the colour is heavy, and to use Sicilian sumach for the purposes that Veronian is most suitable, would require about one-half more in quantity for the same weight of cloth.

The following process for dyeing black will enable us to illustrate



some of the reactions of this substance in connection with the metallic bases:—

The goods are put into a hot decoction of sumach, and allowed to steep for twelve hours; they are then wrought through lime-water, which gives them a beautiful bluish-green colour, becoming very dark with a short exposure to the air. If allowed to stand for half an hour, the green colour passes off, and the goods assume a greenish-dun shade. When they are at the darkest shade of green, they are put through a solution of copperas; after working some time in this, and allowing them to stand exposed to the air, they become black. But if dried from this, the colour is only a slate or dark grey. They are again put through lime-water, which renders them brown; they are then wrought through a decoction of logwood till the colour of the wood has nearly disappeared from the solution. A little copperas is added, which throws off the reddish hue of the wood, giving them a blue shade. This is termed *raising* the colour. The goods are washed from this in cold water, and dried in the shade. When a deep blue-black is wanted, the goods are dyed blue previous to steeping in the sumach.

The passing of the goods from the sumach through lime, before introducing them into the iron solution, is not essentially necessary for producing the colour, but is very useful in facilitating the operation, and in giving depth of hue by the iron. This metal is held by the strong affinity of the acid, but the goods impregnated with lime, being put into the copperas, the lime takes the acid, and the iron takes to the tannin of the sumach. The passing through lime-water from the copperas solution is for the purpose, also, of neutralising the acid of the iron upon the goods, which, as a salt, would act upon the logwood, and precipitate it and injure the operation. Washing in water from the copperas answers equally well, and for fine goods, where a soft tint of black is necessary, is even preferable. When the goods are passed through the lime, and put into the logwood, the presence of the alkali is hurtful to the logwood; therefore it is best to pass the goods through water before putting them into the logwood. The action of the iron upon this substance is the same as we have described for galls; a persalt of iron added or used gives an immediate black, but not permanent, the oxygen seeming to affect the decomposition of the colour in some way. When a protosalt of iron, as copperas, is used, the blackening is slower, but more permanent, shewing that it is the most suitable salt to use. It is, however, to be remarked, that the combination of iron and tannin, forming the black colour, seems to depend on a state of oxidation of the iron a little higher than the protoxide, and much lower than the peroxide; that the peroxide, when used, is reduced in oxidation, and causes change and loss in reduction, and that the protoxide imbibes oxygen as required; an opinion urged by the author in the *Practical Mechanics' and Engineers' Magazine*, in 1843, and which was advocated afterwards in the *Comptes Rendus*, the translation of which we take from the *Chemical Gazette*.

“When a solution of gallic or of tannic acid, which are colourless, and generally form colourless salts or of the colour of the basis, is poured into a solution of the persulphate of iron, an intense blue precipitate is formed, which remains suspended in the liquid. This anomalous fact has frequently excited the attention of chemists, MM. Berzelius and Chevreul have even expressed some doubts respecting the simplicity of the reaction.

“It has long been known that tannin and gallic acid do not precipitate the protosalts of iron when protected from contact with the atmosphere. Berzelius, Chevreul, and Persoz, have, moreover, observed that when gallic acid or tannin is conveyed into a salt of the peroxide of iron, it is always reduced to the state of a protosalt. This fact is easily proved by adding to the blue solution produced by the persulphate of iron in a solution of gallic acid an excess of acetate of lead or of carbonate of lime, which precipitates the blue combination, and at the same time the sulphuric acid. A colourless liquid is separated by filtration, in which the presence of iron may be demonstrated in the state of protoxide.

“These experiments are insufficient to explain this curious reaction. It is not improbable to admit, as MM. Berzelius and Chevreul have done *à priori*, that the oxygen combining with the gallic acid or the tannin converts them into a new acid of a blue colour; but positive experiments were wanting to decide the point.

“When a solution of tannin or of gallic acid is poured by drops into a solution of persulphate of iron in excess, no blue colouring is obtained; if there is one produced it is only momentary. Nor is there one formed with the same salt in minimum in presence of chlorine, nor with a protosalt of iron and gallic acid oxidised in various degrees by chlorine, by a salt of silver, or lastly, by the atmosphere in an alkaline solution.

“When a solution of gallic acid in excess is conveyed into persulphate of iron, and the liquid thrown down by acetate of lead, a blue paste is obtained, which treated with oxalic acid forms soluble oxalate of iron; the blue colour disappears entirely, and is restored by acetate of soda. The solution of the oxalate, diluted very much with water, treated cautiously with the two prussiates and sulphuretted hydrogen, presents all the characters of the salts of iron in the state of peroxide and protoxide.

“It appears to me that we may conclude from the above facts, that if we start with a protosalt of iron, it is requisite to add oxygen, and if we set out with a persalt, some oxygen must be removed, in order to produce the blue compound, and that this compound contains the two oxides. In the first case the protoxide of iron combines with the oxygen of the atmosphere; in the second, a portion of the oxygen of the peroxide destroys a corresponding portion of the gallic acid or of the tannin, converting it into a brown substance. This substance does not enter into the constitution of the new compound, which must be considered as a salt formed of tannin or gallic acid and of an intermediate oxide of iron, probably of a blue colour, the tint of which is slightly altered by this brown substance.

“To prove in the most evident manner that the blue colouring is not to be ascribed to a blue acid, but to a particular oxide, I endeavoured to obtain other blue salts with mineral acids—for instance, with sulphuric acid. For this purpose I prepared some mixtures in variable proportions of the protosulphate of iron and of the persulphate, and to avoid an inevitable separation of the two salts from their different degrees of solubility, I removed *immediately* the water by adding to the solution concentrated sulphuric acid in large excess, taking care to produce as little heat as possible. In this manner I obtained a thick paste of a *deep blue*, the tint of which was more or less pure according to the proportions of the two salts of iron; I likewise produced a blue sulphate, but of very ephemorous existence, by evaporating rapidly a mixture of the two salts of iron; the blue tint appeared at the moment when the mass was nearly dry. On substituting phosphate of soda for the sulphuric acid, I obtained a deep-blue phosphate of iron and some sulphate of soda, which removed the water immediately. I endeavoured, but without success, to prepare combinations with other salts; the hyposulphite of soda alone afforded an intense blue colouring, but of remarkable instability. This is not surprising: there are many instances in chemistry of bases which prefer combining with certain acids and refuse to unite with others—such, for instance, among others, is the protoxide of copper.

“I made numerous experiments to obtain the blue oxide in a free state; I succeeded several times, but under circumstances which I was not able to produce at will. It is, however, a well-known fact, that when a protosalt of iron is precipitated with ammonia in contact with the atmosphere, the white precipitate of the protoxide soon becomes green, passing first, however, through blue.

“The impossibility of obtaining the blue sulphate of iron in a crystalline state, and of isolating the acid of the blue gallate compound, prevented me from having recourse to analysis in order to arrive at the formula for these intermediate salts: I was forced to proceed by synthesis, which I confess is far from being accurate, and it is with some doubts that I publish the results.

“Of all the mixtures of protosulphate and persulphate which I experimented on, that which afforded the most pure blue with sulphuric and gallic acids and with the phosphate of soda, contained precisely three equivalents of protosalt to two of the persalt—proportions which correspond to the cyanide  $\text{Fe}_7\text{O}_9$ , Prussian blue.

“If, as I hope, I have rendered probable the existence of two intermediate oxides of iron, capable of forming salts and of entering into the salts with their peculiar colour, I shall have thrown some light on the various tints produced by the different kinds of astringent substances, morphine, salicylic acid, and some other organic principles; and likewise on the production of violet, black, brown, and green tints, with red and yellow colouring principles, in presence of salts of peroxide of iron. I have convinced myself that all the yellow-colouring substances (for

instance, curcuma) do not produce green; that the red colouring principles (among others aloetic acid) do not give a violet; and that when there is a production of green (as with the Persian berries and the quercitron), or of violet (as with madder, logwood, &c.), the phenomena are identical with those which occur with tannin and gallic acid. These observations agree, moreover, perfectly with the suppositions of M. Thenard, with the facts published by M. Köchlin-Schouch, and by M. Schlumberger, and which M. Stackler informs me he has found confirmed in his establishment, that the iron mordants should be at a fixed degree of oxidation to produce beautiful dyes."

---

#### CATECHU.

This is another substance containing much tannin. We have already noticed some of its peculiarities, but may state further that it is a dry extract prepared from the wood of a species of sensitive plant, named *Acacia catechu*. It was long considered an earthy substance, and termed *terra Japonica*. The plant is indigenous to Hindostan, and flourishes abundantly in mountainous districts. It grows to about twelve feet in height; the trunk is about a foot in diameter, and covered with a thick dark-brown bark. The extract which is obtained from the tree is made from a decoction of the wood. As soon as the trees are felled, all the exterior white wood is carefully cut away, the interior, or coloured wood, is then cut into chips; narrow-mouthed unglazed pots are nearly filled with these, and water is added to cover them. Heat is applied, and when half the water is evaporated, the decoction, without straining, is poured into a shallow earthen vessel, and further reduced two-thirds by boiling. It is then set in a cool place for a day, and is afterwards evaporated by the heat of the sun, care being taken to stir it occasionally during that process. When it is reduced to considerable thickness it is spread upon a mat or cloth, which has been previously covered with the ashes of cow dung, and this mass, divided by a string into quadrangular pieces, is completely dried in the sun, and is then fit for sale.

It is a brittle, compact substance, of a dark-brown or chocolate colour; has no smell, but a very stringent taste; is soluble in water; contains a great amount of tannin, and a peculiar acid, which has been named catechuic acid, or catechin, with a formula  $C_{20}H_{18}O_8H_2O$ , which passes into other compounds by oxidation, &c. It is the reactions of these ingredients with oxygen and other chemical agents, that constitute its dyeing properties. A solution of catechu in water is of a beautiful reddish-brown colour, which ought to be kept in mind in perusing the following summary of the reactions of other substances upon it:—

Acids brighten the colour of the solution; alkalies darken it, and the shade deepens by standing; protosalts of iron give olive-brown precipitates persalts of iron also give olive-brown precipitates, but with more green



than those of the protosalts; salts of tin give yellow-brownish precipitates; nitrate and sulphate of copper, yellowish-brown; acetate of copper, a brown precipitate; salts of lead, brick-coloured precipitates; bichromate of potash, a deep red-brown. These reactions alone indicate how very important an agent catechu is in the hands of the dyer, and how very extensive its applications in the processes of his art.

There are various qualities of catechu in the market, differing considerably in their value as dyes. The Bombay catechu is met with in square masses, of a reddish-brown colour, which, when broke, exhibit a uniform texture. Its composition is as follows:—

Tannin, . . . . .	52
Gum, . . . . .	7
Extractive matter, . . . . .	34
Impurities, . . . . .	7
	<hr/>
	100

“Extractive matter” is a sort of indefinite term, applied to designate a brown matter extracted from vegetables when boiled; its true nature is not known, but the part it may play in the reactions of catechu is probably important, and is at least not to be overlooked.

Bengal catechu is met with in flattish round lumps, of a light-brown colour outside, but dark internally. It gives—

Tannin, . . . . .	49.5
Gum, . . . . .	7.0
Extractive matter, . . . . .	36.5
Impurities, . . . . .	7.0
	<hr/>
	100.0

Malabar catechu is imported in large masses, of a light-brown colour outside, dark within, and covered with leaves. It gives—

Tannin, . . . . .	45.8
Gum, . . . . .	8.0
Extractive matter, . . . . .	39.9
Impurities, . . . . .	6.3
	<hr/>
	100.0

There is a sort of catechu brought to this country from India in small cubical masses, about an inch in size. This is a very inferior quality, and, as imported, is easily known from genuine catechu. Sometimes, however, means are resorted to, to alter the colour of this spurious article, and make it more difficult to be detected. It is said often to contain a great quantity of roasted starch, or British gum, termed dextrine.

Catechu is often adulterated by other vegetable extracts, and also by sand, clay, and ochre. These last impurities may be readily detected by dissolving a portion of the catechu in water, when any of them contained

in it will be precipitated; or by burning a little of it in a crucible until all organic matter is consumed, the latter adulterants will remain. We have examined samples of catechu of good colour, having  $8\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of clay and sand mixed with them. Good catechu is all soluble in cold water, and gives a clear solution.

The tannin which is in catechu is not converted into gallic acid by exposure so easily as that in galls; but it is subject to oxidation. When a portion is dissolved in water, the solution has a gummy character, and goods put into it would be affected as by a weak solution of gum; the threads of yarn, for example, adhere when dried out of it. The addition of a metallic salt destroys this viscous quality, and those salts answer best, or are most effectual for that purpose, which yield their oxygen most easily. Accordingly, the salts of copper are most commonly used, and they are added to the dissolved catechu before putting in the cotton. The chemical changes which catechu undergoes in the operations of dyeing are not yet well understood. The result, however, depends upon oxidation—hence substances that give oxygen are used with it. The action has been explained in this way:—The copper salt oxidises a portion of, or a certain compound in, the catechu, which, although insoluble in water, is soluble in deoxidised catechu; therefore, the whole is held in solution in the bath; the goods become impregnated with this solution, and as the whole of the catechu upon the cloth becomes oxidised, it becomes also insoluble. This explanation does not account for all the phenomena occurring during the dyeing of browns, &c., with this substance; for if we take two portions of a solution of catechu, and to the one add a salt of copper, to the other a salt of zinc, pass the cloth from these through a solution of lime, and expose to the air, the piece treated with the zinc will become dark brown, but not that treated with the copper. The above explanation would lead us to expect the opposite, as copper yields its oxygen more easily than zinc. When catechu is oxidised, there is formed an acid nearly of the composition of gallic acid, which has a deep-brown colour. This is formed when catechu in solution is treated with alkaline matters. The lime, therefore, in the above experiment, may have acted the principal part; but cotton from catechu solution, put through acetate of lead, also gives a deep-brown colour without alkali. When goods impregnated with catechu are passed through bichromate of potash, there is obtained a deep brown: an oxidation of the catechu takes place at the expense of the chromic acid. Whether the oxide of chromium may act as a base on any part of the dye, we cannot positively affirm, but we think so; for on burning cotton dyed brown by this means, there is obtained in the ash the oxides both of chrome and of copper, shewing that both the copper and chrome used play a part in forming the dye, and that the dye by this method is something more than mere oxidation of the catechu, as in passing the cloth from the catechu through bleaching liquor, it also gives an immediate brown, but wanting the richness of that by chrome.

The reactions of catechu are so varied, that it is now used for almost

all compound colours—blacks, browns, greens, drabs, and fawns—both in cotton and wool; and its permanency renders these colours of high estimation in the market.

The following is the analysis of a sample of catechu by Mr. Cooper, giving a wider range to the matters contained in it, and which will serve to give some better idea of the varieties of this substance; for, from its mode of preparation, probably no two samples will give the same proportions:—

Tannin, . . . . .	62·8
Extractive, or colouring matter, . .	8·2
Resinous matter, . . . . .	2·0
Gummy matter, . . . . .	8·5
Insoluble matter, . . . . .	4·4
Water, . . . . .	12·3
	<hr/>
	98·2

VALONIA NUTS.—These are the cups of the acorn from the valonia oak, which grows in the Dardanelles and the islands of the Archipelago, and throughout all the maritime ports of Asia Minor. They are imported in great quantities from Smyrna and its neighbourhood. These contain a great quantity of tannin, and also gallic acid; but they are inferior to sumach or galls for dyeing cotton, and for giving depth of colour with the salts of iron. For silk, however, they possess some peculiarities exceedingly valuable for deep blacks, giving a permanency not obtained with ordinary galls; and, moreover, the production of the proper black with valonia nuts upon silk requires a certain treatment which it is not every dyer has yet attained, particularly in Scotland, as Scotch dyers are yet behind in silk dyeing. We cannot, for instance, furnish a black upon silk which will withstand unchanged all the operations which a hat undergoes in the process of manufacture—for which purpose we understand the valonia black is applied.

DIVI DIVI, or *Libi Davi*, is the pod of a leguminous shrub, a native of South America; it has been tried as a dye instead of galls or sumach, but is not much used.

MYROBALANS.—This is the fruit of a tree which grows in India; it is imported into this country in various forms, has a pale-yellow colour when new, but becomes darker by age, and then resembles dried plums. It contains tannin, and is sometimes used on that account for the operations of dyeing. Its reactions with iron, tin, and alum, are similar to those of sumach, but of less value.

Oak bark contains a great quantity of tannin, and is used on that account for tanning skins; but it is not much employed in the dye-house, although it may be used for similar purposes to sumach. The chestnut, both nut and tree, is ground to powder and sold to the dyers for its tannin, under the name of “Damajavag.” The bark of the mangrove tree also contains tannin in considerable quantity; there are, indeed, very

few vegetable substances which have not in their composition more or less of tannin, and which may be used in virtue of this property instead of galls or sumach; but the quantity of tannin in them being much less than in sumach, they are not cultivated for that purpose. The bark of the ash, willow, hazel, birch, broom, &c., are often used for dyeing woollens by country people; and some of these substances possess peculiar dyeing properties. The husks of several nuts also contain much tannin. The walnut, for instance, has been long used and much esteemed by the French dyers for woollen stuffs; it gives very fast shades, without previous mordanting, although alum is sometimes used to give variety. The outer peel of this nut is collected for the dyers; they are put into large casks, with water poured over them, and kept for a year or more, as they improve when this process of maceration is prolonged. The roots of the walnut tree are also used for dyeing browns. The husks of the horse-chestnut likewise possess dyeing qualities, and might be applied advantageously for some purposes. Mahogany sawdust, although not affected much by mordants, possesses dyeing properties of considerable value, yielding with iron a variety of shades of great permanence and beauty.

Many of the dye-woods which are used for their colouring matter contain tannin, the action of which upon the mordants is often very injurious to the tint. Many varieties of the different woods, giving the same colour, depend much upon the presence of tannin. The whole woody matter being boiled to extract the colouring matter, the tannin is also dissolved, and it is sure to act upon the mordant in the process of dyeing, producing an effect very similar to that of adding a little sumach to the colouring matter. In many cases this is done beneficially, but in other cases it would deteriorate the tint required. In such cases the presence of tannin in the colouring matter obtained from the wood does not suit. The late Mr. Warrington proposed, as a practical means of ascertaining the quantity of tannin in any matter, the following test:—Premising that a solution of gelatine, isinglass, or glue precipitates tannin: by making a given quantity of this solution and adding drop by drop to a given quantity of the substance to be tested for tannin, also in solution, as long as a precipitate is formed, and marking on the alkalimeter the quantity of gelatine used; every three grains of pure gelatine are equal to two grains tannin, and accordingly it is easy to arrive at a near approximation of the quality of these dye-stuffs. This operation will, no doubt, require a little experience, but it is easily performed, and well deserves attention.

Several operatives who have practised this method have found it very useful in comparing different sumachs and other dyes containing tannin.

The following is the range of tannin in the different substances:—

Oak bark, from . . . 11 to 16	Nut-gall, from . . . 58 to 66
Sumach, „ . . . 12 „ 18	Valonia, „ . . . 40 „ 45
Divi divi, „ . . . 18 „ 25	Catechu, „ . . . 40 „ 52

See also under Receipts.



## INDIGO.

---

In the few introductory remarks we made upon vegetable colours we mentioned that, besides the green of leaves and the colours of flowers, which we considered common to all vegetables, there were other colouring matters, which existed only in certain kinds of vegetables, and in particular parts of the vegetable. Indigo is one of these: it belongs to a genus of leguminous plants found in India, Africa, and America, named *Indigofera*. Botanists have described about sixty species of this genus. These all yield indigo; but the species from which it is usually extracted are the *I. anil*, the *I. argentea*, and the *I. tinctoria*. It is also extracted from a tree very common in Hindostan (the *Nerium tinctorium* of botanists), and from the woad plant (*Isatis tinctoria*), which is a native of Great Britain, and of other parts of Europe. The colouring matter of these plants is wholly in the cellular tissue of the leaves, as a secretion or juice—not, however, in the blue state in which we are accustomed to see indigo, but as a white substance, which, as we shall presently see, remains white so long as the tissue of the leaf remains perfect. When this tissue is by any means destroyed, the indigo absorbs oxygen from the atmosphere and becomes blue.

The use of indigo as a dyeing agent dates back to the remotest antiquity, and so also does the knowledge of the drug as we possess it, which is evidenced by its name *nil*, which, according to Sir William Jones, is the Hindoo word for blue. It was known by the same name to the Arabs, Egyptians, and other nations of the East, from which circumstance it is supposed that it originally was imported from India. The Greeks and Romans used it as a paint, and Pliny conceived it to be a slime collected in the scum of the sea. The indigo dye was known, however, to nations who had no intercourse with India, and also by people who did not know indigo as a separate drug from the plant. Cæsar states that the ancient Britons made their blue dye from the woad plant, and that their wives and daughters, when they appeared naked at the sacred festivals, had their bodies dyed with it, so that they resembled the Ethiopians. That indigo was used as a dye by the ancient Egyptians is proved by the analyses of the blue upon mummy cloths; and as indigo-producing plants are said to grow wild in certain parts of Palestine and Egypt, and the blue colour was in high esteem and symbolical of heaven, there is strong evidence that the dyeing of blue with indigo or indigo plant goes back to the earliest ages in man's history. At the same time there may have been, and really were, nations that dyed blue with the plant, yet did not know indigo in the sense that we now know it. Its value as a dye-stuff was not known

in Europe till nearly the close of the sixteenth century, when it was imported from India by the Dutch; and our legislators for a long time prohibited its use in England under severe penalties. These prohibitions continued in force till the reign of Charles II., and the reason assigned was, that it was a corrosive substance, destructive to the fibres of the cloth, and therefore calculated to injure the character of the dyers of this country. This opinion, no doubt, sprung from the strong and interested opposition to its use by the cultivators of the woad, which was then regarded as an important branch of national industry.

“When indigo was first introduced, only a small quantity was added to the woad, by which the latter was much improved; more was afterwards gradually used, and at last the quantity became so large that the small admixture of woad served only to revive the fermentation of the indigo. Germany thus lost a production by which farmers, merchants, carriers, and others acquired great riches. In consequence of the sales of woad being so much injured, a prohibition was issued against the use of indigo in Saxony in the year 1650; and in the year 1652 Duke Ernest the Pious caused a proposal to be made to the diet by his envoy, that indigo should be entirely banished from the empire, and that an exclusive privilege should be granted to those who dyed with woad. This was followed by an imperial prohibition of indigo on the 21st of April, 1654, which was enforced with the greatest severity in his dominions. The same was done in France; but in the well-known edict of 1669, in which Colbert separated the fine from the common dyers, it was stated that indigo should be used without woad, and in 1737 dyers were left at liberty to use indigo alone, or to employ a mixture of indigo and woad.”—Barlow’s *Manufactures and Machinery of Great Britain*.

The plant which yields the indigo in Bengal is a small straight plant, with thin branches, which spread out and form a sort of tuft; the average height is 4 feet, but on good ground it sometimes attains a height of even 7 feet. The leaves are soft, and somewhat like those of the common clover, and the blossoms are of a light-reddish colour. The plant is at its greatest perfection, and yields the greatest quantity of indigo, when in full blossom.

There are two methods of extracting the colouring matter from the leaves: the first is by fermentation and beating. This process is conducted in two large brick cisterns or vats, built in relation to one another like two steps of a stair. The upper one is termed the steeper, because in it the fermentation is conducted. At the bottom of this cistern there is a plug-hole through which, when the process of fermentation is finished, the fluid is run off into the lower cistern, denominated the beater, because in it the process of beating the fluid with paddles, to separate the feculæ from the water, is performed. The plant, when cut, is tied up in bundles about 5 feet in circumference, and conveyed as quickly as possible to the vat; for, were it kept but a short time in heaps, the indigo in the plant would be destroyed. The upper vat is filled to about 5 or 6 inches from the top

with these bundles, laid in regular tiers. To prevent the throwing up of the herb by the swelling and agitation caused by the fermentation, there are irons built in the two side walls, opposite to one another, to which are fastened beams of wood, which traverse the whole length and breadth of the vats. When the vat is sufficiently filled with the vegetable, a strong grating of bamboo, large enough to cover the whole surface, is laid over the plant, and fastened down by the cross beams. These operations being completed, cold water is poured as quickly as possible into the vat, till it is within 3 or 4 inches of the upper edge. In a short time fermentation commences, and is completed in from nine to twelve hours. Towards the end the action is very brisk, swelling and throwing up frothy bubbles, which sometimes rise like pyramids. These bubbles are white at first, but after a little exposure to the air they become blue, and then purple. This part of the operation requires great skill. If the fermentation be continued too long, the indigo will be much damaged; and if too short, the quantity is much diminished. When the liquor ceases to swell, it is let out into the second or beating vat, and is then of a light-green colour.

The liquor being now in the lower or beating vat, a number of men enter it, furnished with oar-shaped paddles about 4 feet in length; they continue to walk backwards and forwards, agitating or beating the liquor with these paddles. At the commencement of this agitation the liquor begins to froth; but this is prevented, provided the fermentation has not gone on too long, by adding a little oil. In the course of an hour and a half the liquor begins to granulate and assume the appearance of agitated water, full of wood grounds or sawdust. This part of the process also requires considerable care and management; for, if the beating be stopped too soon, the indigo will not be all separated from the liquor, occasioning a proportionate loss; if continued too long, the granulated particles are broken, and disposed through the liquor, and do not readily fall to the bottom. When the beating is completed, the grounds are allowed to settle; the grains which constitute the indigo fall to the bottom, and the supernatant liquor is let off by plug-holes in the side of the vat. The precipitate is then removed to a copper boiler, which is kept heated till the liquor becomes as thick as oil. Some manufacturers bring it to this state by causing the liquor to boil; others by keeping it at a moderate temperature. The former process produces lighter coloured indigo than the latter. In this state it is put into a large flat vessel, furnished at the one end with a close filter. After most of the liquor has filtered through, the indigo remains in the vessel about the consistence of butter. It is then put on proper frames, and subjected to considerable pressure by a sort of screw-press, and afterwards cut into small cakes, which are placed upon boards in a drying stove; when dry, these cakes are packed up, and in this state form the indigo of commerce.

The other method of extracting the indigo from the plant differs from that described only in the first operations. Instead of putting the plant into the vat when newly cut, it is spread out to dry in the sun for two days,

and then thrashed to separate the leaves from the stems. The leaves are then kept until they have changed from a green to a bluish-grey, or lavender colour; they are then put into the first vat with warm water, and kept stirred till the leaves are so completely wetted as to sink. The liquor is then instantly let off into the beating vat, where it is treated as already described.

The chemical changes which take place during these operations are not well understood, and the various opinions expressed by chemists concerning them are not very easily reconciled. Berthollet, in his *Elements of Dyeing*, while describing the process of the first or fermenting vat, says—"In the first a fermentation is excited, in which the action of the atmospheric air does not intervene, since an inflammable gas is evolved. There probably results from it some change in the composition of the colouring particles themselves, but especially the separation or destruction of a yellowish substance, which gave to the indigo a greenish tint, and rendered it susceptible of suffering the chemical action of other substances. This species of fermentation passes into a destructive putrefaction, because the indigo, as we shall see, has a composition analogous to that of animal substances."

Dr. Ure, in his *Dictionary of the Arts and Manufactures*, says that from some experiments made upon the gases given off during fermentation, they were found to be composed, when taken about the middle of the operation, of 27.5 of carbonic acid gas, 5.8 of oxygen, and 66.7 of nitrogen, in the 100 parts; and towards the end of the operation they consisted of 40.5 of carbonic acid gas, 4.5 of oxygen, and 55 of nitrogen. No carburetted hydrogen is disengaged. "The fermenting leaves," using the Doctor's words, "apparently convert the oxygen of the air into carbonic acid, and leave its nitrogen free." They also evolve a quantity of carbonic acid spontaneously. It will be observed that these two opinions are decidedly contradictory: the one says that the action of the atmosphere does not intervene, and that an inflammable gas is evolved; the other, that there is no inflammable gas evolved, and that the air is apparently the principal agent in effecting the various changes. But when we recollect that the leaves are all under the liquor, and kept so by the fixed position of the beams, there can be little contact between the fermenting leaves and the air, except that held by the water and among the leaves, and in the plants themselves—hence the conversion of its oxygen into carbonic acid gas must be very limited.

Sir Robert Kane says of this process—"After some time a kind of mucous fermentation sets in; carbonic acid, ammonia, and hydrogen gases are evolved, and a yellow liquor is obtained, which holds the indigo dissolved. The theory of this action is, that by the putrefaction of the vegetable matter of the leaves, the indigo is kept in the same white soluble condition in which it exists in the plant."

Dr. Thomson, in his *Vegetable Chemistry*, supposes that the indigo exists in the plant in union with another substance, and during fermentation that substance is decomposed, and carbonic acid gas consequently evolved. But we will give his own words:—"The leaves of the *indigofera* yield a



green infusion to hot water, and a green powder may be precipitated from it; but unless a fermentation has taken place, neither the colour nor the properties have any resemblance to those of indigo. There is little doubt that in the leaves it exists in the state of *white* or *deoxygenated indigo*, and that during the fermentation it combines with the requisite quantity of oxygen to convert it into *blue indigo*. The evolution of carbonic acid gas renders it not unlikely that the *white indigo* was in combination with some principle (probably of an alkaline nature) which was decomposed during the fermentation."

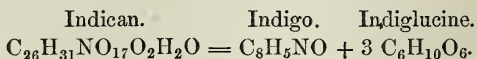
These discrepancies of opinion relative to the nature of the changes which take place during fermentation, shew that proper investigations have not yet been made into this part of the process: and it is obvious that until this is done, any hypothesis founded upon statements concerning the gases evolved must be unsatisfactory. The supposition hazarded by Dr. Thomson certainly appears to us the most consistent; for as deoxidised indigo combines readily with alkaline substances, and as the vegetable alkalies almost always contain nitrogen, we can easily conceive of that gas being evolved either free or in combination with hydrogen, forming ammonia. It may yet be found that indigo, like gallic acid, does not exist in the living vegetable, but is the result of a decomposition of some more complicated compound.

The chemical action which takes place in the second vat in which the beating process is conducted is apparently much more easily explained, and therefore the discrepancies among writers on the subject are not so great. We shall give only two quotations. Berthollet says—"Hitherto the colouring particles have preserved their liquidity. In the second operation the action of the air is brought into play, which, by combining with the colouring particles, deprives them of their solubility, and gives them the blue colour. The beating serves at the same time to dissipate the carbonic acid formed in the first operation, which action is an obstacle to the combination of the oxygen." Dr. Ure's opinion is thus expressed:—"The object of the beating is threefold: first, it tends to disengage a great quantity of carbonic acid present in the fermented liquor; secondly, to give the newly-developed indigo its requisite dose of oxygen by the most extensive exposure of its particles to the atmosphere; and, thirdly, to agglomerate the indigo in distinct flocks or granulations. In order to hasten the precipitation, lime-water is occasionally added to the fermented liquor in the progress of beating; but it is not indispensable, and has been supposed to be capable of deteriorating the indigo."

That the liquor in the beating vat absorbs oxygen from the air as the indigo separates from it, has, we believe, been ascertained by direct experiment; and it is also known to manufacturers that the sunshine assists in the separation of the indigo from the liquor. But though these facts may have been ascertained, it does not give us any positive information respecting the nature of the change which takes place in the vat; neither can we expect such information till it be ascertained what keeps the indigo in

solution previous to the operation of beating. Both oxygenised and deoxygenised indigo are insoluble in water; there must therefore be some substance in the liquor capable of holding the indigo in solution previous to being beat. According to our present knowledge of the nature of white or deoxidised indigo, there is no other substance can hold it in solution except the alkalies and alkaline earths. But during such generation and emission of carbonic acid gas, the existence of any known alkali capable of holding the indigo in solution in those vats is next to impossible, and the results prove this; for while the acid is liberated the indigo becomes more insoluble—a result which is just the opposite of what we conceive would take place were an alkali present—unless we suppose that the carbonic acid is the result of the decomposition of the alkali or alkaloid, or is evolved, as already hinted, from the decomposition of a substance which is resolving itself into indigo.

Dr. Schunck may be said to have discovered that it is a fact that the indigo results from the decomposition of a more complicated compound, by researches upon the *Isatis tinctoria*, or woad. He found in this a substance very soluble in water, which he called indican, composed of  $C_{26}H_{31}NO_{17}$ . This substance, with two proportions of water, forms into two other compounds, thus—



The indican forms a light-brown, syrupy, bitter mass, which has an acid reaction with test paper. It yields, under the influence of ferment or acids, indigo blue sugar. Dr. Schunck considers in every case indican is the parent substance of indigo, which under the influence of a ferment produces white indigo and sugar. The Doctor also shews that if care is not taken the indican is liable to undergo rapid modifications, and may yield other substances than indigo blue; hence the great care required in the manufacture of indigo; that the fermentation may be conducted to a proper point.

Having given the opinions of several chemists upon the chemical nature of the manufacture of indigo, and hinted at the difficulties which some of these theories involve, we shall now consider the nature of indigo; and whatever be the chemical changes which take place in the beating operation, we are certain that the indigo is precipitated in union with various other substances, rendering it very impure. The best indigo of commerce, according to several analyses, contains only 75 per cent. of pure indigo, while some of the inferior kinds do not contain above 29 or 30 per cent. Part of these impurities may be dissolved out with water, alcohol, dilute acids, or alkaline leys. Berzelius found these impurities to consist, besides a little iron, of clay, lime, magnesia, silica, and a substance resembling vegetable gluten, which may be obtained by digesting indigo in dilute sulphuric acid (vitriol); also a *brown matter*, which he termed indigo brown, and which he obtained by digesting the indigo in strong potash ley

after the gluten had been extracted. He found likewise a red resinous substance, which he termed indigo red; it was obtained by boiling the indigo in alcohol, after digestion in the acid and alkali. Several experiments have been made upon the colouring properties of these substances, but the results have shewn that they are incapable of being used as dyes. On the contrary, as we shall afterwards have occasion to remark, some of them being more soluble than the pure indigo, and much more easily decomposed, their presence is very hurtful, especially when the indigo is to be used as sulphate of indigo.

From the great differences in the quality of indigo, it would be of the utmost importance to the dyer to have an easy method of ascertaining its true value. This, so far as we are aware, has not yet been obtained; the various methods proposed generally imply formal analyses, which, however important they may be to the dyer, are too delicate and tedious to be generally adopted. The method practised by the dyer is that of comparison—putting several samples together, and breaking and comparing their clean surfaces. The best indigo generally is of the deepest violet blue, and the finest grain, and if scratched with the nail it presents a copper hue; but notwithstanding great care and long practice in judging of the value of indigo in this way, it often happens that the lot chosen turns out to be of inferior quality—a fact which is not discovered until it is in the vats.

The process of Berzelius is to take a weighed quantity of the indigo of commerce in very fine powder, and after digesting it in dilute sulphuric acid, to filter and wash it; then digest what remains on the filter in strong potash or ammonia; filter and wash again, then boil the remainder in strong alcohol; what remains is pure indigo, and, by weighing it, we find the percentage of real indigo in the sample.

Another process, somewhat similar, was recommended by Chevreul. He treated the powdered indigo first with water, then with alcohol, and afterwards with muriatic acid. The following is the result of his experiment, taking 100 parts:—

100 parts :—				
Treated with water.	{	Green matter united to ammonia,	}	12 parts.
		A little deoxidised indigo,.....		
		Extractive,.....		
Treated with alcohol.	{	Gum, .....	}	30 „
		Green matter, .....		
		Red resin,.....		
Treated with muriatic acid.	{	A little indigo,.....	}	6 „
		Red resin,.....		
		Carbonate of lime, .....		
There remained,	{	Red oxide of iron, .....	}	2 „
		Alumina,.....		
		Silica,.....		
		Pure indigo, .....		3 „
				42 „
				100 „

Although these processes give a much nearer and more certain approximation to the true value of indigo than the mere comparison of samples by the eye, still they are not direct enough, and require too much nice management to be resorted to generally in the dye-house. Many indeed, who are most affected by a bad bargain, and ought to be most interested in any process that would enable them to avoid loss, and who have the requisite time and means to try such experiments, do not seem impressed with the importance of such inquiries.

Another method was proposed by Dr. Dana of Lowell, United States, for ascertaining the real value of commercial indigo. He directs that 10 grains of indigo, reduced to a very fine powder, be put into a small glass flask, with two and a half ounces, by measure, of a solution of carbonate of soda, of from 30° to 35° of strength by Twaddell's hydrometer; after boiling for a few minutes, 8 grains of crystals of chloride of tin are to be added, and the whole boiled for half an hour. By this means the indigo is dissolved, and the liquor appears of a yellow colour. Six grains of bichromate of potash (red chrome) are dissolved in 6 ounces of water; and this solution of chrome is added, which precipitates the indigo blue, along with a trace of the indigo red, leaving the other ingredients in solution. The whole is next to be poured upon a weighed filter (keeping in reserve another filter of the same weight), and the precipitate washed with 1 ounce of muriatic acid diluted with 3 ounces of boiling water, and afterwards with hot water, till nothing but water passes through. Then dry, and weigh the filter, and make a note of the weight of the precipitate; burn one filter paper against the other, and their difference in weight is the quantity of silica contained in the indigo. This, deducted from the weight of the precipitate, gives the quantity of pure indigo. The late Mr. Walter Crum, who communicated the above to the British Association in 1841, added that carbonate of soda with protoxide of tin dissolves indigo, and forms a yellow solution, but so slowly, that he doubts if all the 10 grains are acted upon. He thinks Dr. Dana must mean soda-ash, which contains a notable quantity of caustic soda, but a much weaker solution of caustic soda would answer the purpose.

Pure indigo, besides its great importance as a dye-drug, possesses some most important and interesting chemical properties, but which are as yet not very well understood. Some of these we shall notice before entering upon its practical value. If pure indigo be heated to about 550° Fah. it sublimes, producing a beautiful transparent vapour of a reddish-violet colour, which adheres to the sides of the vessel in which it is sublimed, or on the top of the cinder left, in long needle-shaped crystals. Mr. Crum, whose investigations have thrown great light upon the chemical nature and properties of indigo, employed for its sublimation the covers of two platinum crucibles, about three inches diameter, and of such a form that, when placed with their concave sides inwards, they were about three-eighths of an inch distant in the middle. About the centre of the lower lid were placed spread thinly about 10 grains of indigo, precipitated from the



dye's vat, in small lumps, about a grain each; then, having put on the cover, the flame of a spirit lamp was applied beneath the cover containing the indigo. The indigo immediately began to melt with a hissing noise, which, when it had nearly ceased, the lamp was withdrawn, and the whole allowed to cool. On removing the cover, the sublimed indigo was found planted on its inner surface, and a little remained upon the charred matter, and was easily removed. In this way he obtained from 18 to 20 per cent. of the indigo employed.

As few working men have access to platinum crucible covers to repeat this experiment, we may state, that it may be successfully repeated by taking a thin porcelain plate, or a sheet of iron or copper, with the indigo placed upon it, and covering it with a pretty large watch-glass; when that part of the plate under the indigo is heated by a lamp, the vapours very soon make their appearance; and towards the close the glass appears black, owing to the coating of indigo which adheres to its inner surface. To obtain pure indigo for experiment, the easiest method is to take a little of the yellow solution of the indigo vat. On adding to this a few drops of muriatic acid, to combine with the lime, the blue indigo falls to the bottom, and can be readily collected upon a filter, then washed and dried.

Another method has been described by T. Taylor, Esq., which is as follows:—"Any quantity of indigo is to be reduced to powder, and mixed with about half its weight of plaster of Paris. To these materials so much water is to be added as will bring the whole to a thin paste. This is to be spread evenly upon an iron plate to the depth of the eighth of an inch, and allowed to remain exposed to the air, or to a gentle heat, until it is tolerably dry. If the heat of a large spirit-lamp be now applied to the under surface of the plate, the indigo begins to smoke, emits a disgusting odour, and in a few minutes is covered over with a dense purple-red vapour, which condenses into brilliant flattened prisms, or plates of an intense copper colour, forming a thick velvety coating over the surface immediately exposed to heat. When this ceases to appear, the heat is of course to be withdrawn; and when cold, the sublimed crystals may be readily lifted or swept off, without in the slightest disturbing the subjacent mass. The operation is exceedingly beautiful to look at, is effected in a few minutes, and any quantity of materials might be acted upon. For ultimate analysis, the sublimed indigo must be previously washed with alcohol or ether."

We have tried this and most of the other experiments repeatedly, but the results were not favourable for such processes being of practical value in the dye-house as a test for the value of indigo.

A method of much easier practice in the dye-house than any of those given, was proposed by Henry Schlumberger:—

"This test consists in dissolving the indigo in fuming sulphuric acid, and decolourising the solution, which has been diluted with much water, by means of chloride of lime. As this acts only on the blue-colouring substance, and not at the same time on the various other bodies which

indigo contains, the quantity of chloride of lime requisite to produce decolourisation agrees with the amount of colouring matter.

“The operations in this experiment are as follows:—I prepare, in the first place, a portion of pure indigo or indigo blue by removing the scum which is continually formed on the blue vat, treating it with an excess of dilute hydrochloric acid, washing the deposit until all soluble parts have been removed, then drying it and preserving the indigo in well-closed bottles, in order to protect it from all changes in the moist state. In all my experiments this pure indigo serves as a standard, and for comparison with the results which the various kinds of indigo submitted to the test afford. Suppose the quantity of colouring matter in the pure indigo to be 100°, I express the value of the tested indigo by numbers which indicate the percentage of pure colouring matter. In each experiment I employ the standard indigo for comparison with that of commerce, as it is then not requisite to determine previously the amount of chloride of lime in solution; besides which, the experiment is more accurate. In this case the causes of the differences in the results depend on circumstances, which always remain the same whether the standard indigo is employed, or the indigo the degree of purity of which is to be ascertained. Twenty grains of each kind of indigo is weighed off, which must be pulverised and finely ground; half an ounce of fuming sulphuric acid is added, and the mixture is now rubbed together, the dish containing it being placed for four hours at a temperature of from 122° to 140°.

Meantime as many glasses, containing about a quart, are filled with distilled water as there are sulphate solutions, and to each solution of indigo is added its equal volume of water from the glass. The liquid becomes warm, upon which they are rubbed again; water is then gradually added until the dish is full, when the whole is poured into the glass, and the dish washed with a portion of the water. Hereupon a solution of chloride of lime is prepared of 2° Twad. in strength, and a given quantity taken, say ten graduations of an alkalimeter.

“The well-stirred blue solution of the sulphate of indigo is now measured in an alkalimeter, a tube divided into 100°, and a portion poured into a dish, well stirred, and the entire quantity of the chloride of lime contained in the measure added at once. If the liquid immediately assumes a yellow colour, it is a sign of an excess of chloride of lime, and now sulphate of indigo is added by degrees until a faint olive-green colouring has been obtained. The experiment is now repeated, and the quantity of chloride of lime which had been found necessary in the first case, added to the quantity of sulphate of indigo; so that with one single mixing, there being neither an excess of chloride of lime nor of sulphate of indigo, the liquid acquires that tint at once. But when after the first mixture the liquid has retained a blue colour, which is a sign of an excess of the sulphate of indigo, fewer degrees of it are taken, until the requisite tint has likewise been attained with a single mixing.

“When the several indigos have been treated in this manner, the following calculation is made to obtain the true value of the indigo which has been examined; the goodness of the indigo is in inverse ratio to the quantity of sulphate of indigo employed in decolourising.

“Suppose, for instance, it were found that pure indigo required 54 parts of its sulphate solution to be decolourised by the fixed quantity of chloride of lime, and that, on the other hand, the indigo under examination required 64 parts of its sulphate solution, then according to the proportion—

$$64 : 54 = 100 : x, \frac{100 \times 64}{54} = x, \text{ or equal to } 84.5,$$

which indicates the quantity of indigo blue contained in 100 parts of the indigo examined.

“It is important for the accuracy of the experiment that the pure indigo, and the kinds of indigo submitted to the test, should be equally moist, and it is therefore requisite to enclose all the samples as soon as they are taken out of the chests in glass phials, to prevent any attraction of moisture or desiccation previous to weighing. When a chest contains several kinds of indigo which exhibit slight differences in their tints, some pieces are selected which are separated into several lots, these are then powdered together, and the mean result taken as the correct one. But when, as often happens, a chest contains pieces of indigo of entirely different tints, it is best to examine the mixed sorts separately.

“I also dilute the solution both of the sulphate of indigo and of that of the chloride of lime, since the experiment in this manner is less exposed to error than with concentrated solutions. Besides, it is easier when the liquid is only faint blue to distinguish the degree of decolourisation, when it must be discontinued.

“Impure water, or such as contain salts of lime, produces a more or less considerable precipitate of the blue-colouring substance mixed with sulphate of indigo; it is therefore necessary to employ rain or distilled water.

“The last stage of decolourisation, or the point at which it is best to discontinue it, is the more easily ascertained the purer the indigo, and the more complete its solution; and in this case it is evident how sensitive the reaction of the chloride of lime is on the indigo; for a yellow solution of indigo, to which chloride of lime has been added, in which, therefore, there is an excess of chloride of lime, is rendered blue by a single degree of the indigo solution, a proof that this method will indicate a half per cent. In the commercial kinds of indigo it is less easy to fix the point at which decolourisation must be discontinued, for in this case the decolourised liquid assumes an olive colour, and from 2° to 3° of the indigo solution must be added to change the yellow colour into the blue.

“I have preferred the method of taking a fixed quantity of the chloride of lime and varying that of the sulphate of indigo, to that of making the

sulphate of indigo a fixed quantity, and allowing the decolourising agent to be diminished or increased, from its being possible to dilute the indigo solution with much water, which has the advantage of rendering the degrees greater."

Another method, and of much easier practice in the dye-house, is thus given by M. Reinsch:—

Reinsch tried various modes of determining the quality of indigo—such as the external appearance, the intensity of colour imparted to yarn by the cold vat, the quantity of indigo blue obtained by sublimation, the quantity of indigo blue deposited from the cold vat, and the specific weight. Not one of these methods, however, gave results to be relied on.

"At last," he says, "I resorted to fuming sulphuric acid, and obtained the most satisfactory results. It is necessary, however, that the indigo should be pounded very fine, and the acid should be as concentrated as possible. I must also observe, that the solution of the Java indigo, and of that indigo which I prepared in a chemical way, by treating it with acid, caustic potash, spirit of wine and water, did not possess that pure blue colour like that of the Bengal sort, although I repeated the experiments several times, and could not, therefore, determine anything with regard to the purified indigo. A dyer of great experience informed me, that for solution in sulphuric acid he prefers Bengal to the Java sort, as the latter is burnt by the acid, which is always the case when the indigo does not dissolve with a pure blue colour, but assumes a crimson hue on the sulphuric solution being poured in water.

"The mode in which I proceed is as follows:—2 grains of each sample of indigo are well pounded, mixed with four or five drops of fuming sulphuric acid, and rubbed with it until the whole forms a brown uniform mass. To this 15 grains of sulphuric acid are added, and triturated till it produces a clear green solution, whereupon other 15 grains of fuming sulphuric acid are added; lastly, this solution is gradually mixed with 150 grains of water. Two glass cylinders of equal length and width are now divided each into twenty equal parts, and 15 grains of the sulphuric solution (which is best measured by a glass tube closed at one end) poured into one and mixed with water, till the solution is of a light-blue colour and transparent; if 15 grains of the solution do not produce sufficient colouration, a small quantity more of it is added till the cylinder is filled with the light-blue solution. I generally commence with the apparently best indigo. After this the second cylinder is filled in the same way with an equal quantity of sulphuric solution of the same indigo sample and water, in order to see whether the two solutions are equal in colour. If this be the case, one of the cylinders is emptied, and an equal quantity of sulphuric solution of an inferior sample poured into it and gradually diluted with water, till the solutions in both cylinders are perfectly alike in colour. Care is to be taken that the colouration be not too intense nor too light, it being in either case difficult to obtain both solutions of the same hue. For discovering this equality the eye will also



be much assisted if the relative position of the cylinders is changed from the right to the left, or by placing them alternately before or behind one another. As soon as the colour of both is thus found to be equal, the quantity of water is examined which has been poured into the second cylinder. Supposing now that 15 grains of sulphuric solution have been employed in either of the cylinders, but the quantity of water which produced the equal colour was in the first or standard cylinder 20 parts, and in the second only 15 parts, then the sample of which the latter solution was made will contain five-twentieths or one quarter less of colouring matter.

"This method is so easy and convenient, that everybody can avail himself of it. All that is required is to keep ready a certain quantity of indigo solution of a known quality as standard solution, and then to prepare a sulphuric solution of the indigo to be tested.

"The above described method may even be made more accurate if longer glass cylinders are used, so that the percentage quantities may be indicated. The glasses must then be divided in 100 parts. The larger the degrees are, the more accurate will the results be.

"I have yet to add some observations with regard to an adulteration practised on the indigo, and which is of importance to the druggist. Each large indigo-chest contains a quantity of dust, which is said to amount sometimes to 8 or 10 pounds. This dust is an artificial product, composed of starch or white lead and powdered indigo, and is put in the chest in order to increase its weight."

In testing by this method we think it better, instead of putting the indigo into a dish with vitriol and rubbing it, to take 2 grains of each sample well ground, put them into small bottles well stoppered with  $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce vitriol at 169° Twad., free from nitric acid, in each, and allow them to stand for twelve hours, shaking them occasionally, then proceed as stated by Reinsch. Bad and adulterated indigo sometimes gives a greenish blue, and interferes with this comparison, and should be rejected or valued accordingly.

Another process of testing the value of indigo has been recommended by Dr. Bolley, depending upon the decolourising by chlorine, and by a method which ensures the constancy of the chlorine; this is done by using hydrochloric acid and chlorate of potash. A given quantity of pure indigo, say 100 grains, is converted into sulphate of indigo by adding to the 100 grains about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ounces of the strongest sulphuric acid, and allowing it to stand for six or eight hours. The whole is now put into an evaporating basin or flask, with about one pint of water, and one quarter of an ounce, by measure, of hydrochloric acid, and brought to boil. A solution of chlorate of potash is now made in 100 measures of water by alkalimeter, which is added to the indigo solution by degrees until the blue liquor passes into green, brownish-green, and lastly into red, when the operation is finished. A little experience will shew the exact time to stop. The amount of chlorate solution taken to effect this is

noted, say it took 50 graduations, then each graduation taken is equal to 2 grains of indigo, or by doubling the water of the chlorate then one graduation of the chlorate will be equal to 1 grain of pure indigo; such a standard solution being made, the relative value of indigoes will be easily ascertained.

Still another method of testing the value of indigo was recommended by the late Dr. Penney of the Andersonian University, Glasgow, based upon the circumstance that indigo blue, in presence of hydrochloric acid, is decolourised by bichromate of potash. Ten grains of the sample, in very fine powder, are dissolved in 2 drachms, by measure, of fuming sulphuric acid. After standing several hours, to ensure complete solution, it is diluted with a pint of water, and the whole well stirred, after which there is added  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an ounce, by measure, of hydrochloric acid. Seven and a half grains of dry and pure bichromate of potash are now dissolved in water, and the solution made up to 100 measures of an alkalimeter; this is added drop by drop to the sulphate of indigo, until the blue colour disappears, and the colour of a drop of the solution put on a white plate or paper is found to be orange-brown, having no green or blue tint. The number of graduations required to effect this is noted. Dr. Penney found that  $7\frac{1}{2}$  grains bichromate of potash were equal to 10 grains pure indigo, so that every ten graduations of the solution taken to decolour the sulphate are equal to 1 grain of pure indigo, or one graduation to a per cent. of indigo.

*Indigoes of Commerce.*—The indigoes of commerce have been described in a very able manner by M. Chevreul. The following details are extracted from his work:—"They are sometimes in small, light pieces, of a violet-brown colour, and sometimes in cubical loaves. These loaves may be considered good when they assume a copper-coloured aspect on friction with any hard and smooth body; when there are no cavities found in their interior presenting a series of brown or whitish-coloured streaks; and lastly, when they are free from fissures externally. If they are of a blue instead of a violet colour, it is a proof that they contain more or less of the yellow matter. The presence of this matter in large proportions tends, by its admixture, to convert the blue into a green, and also neutralises the colour of the red matter of indigo. An obscure dark brown or dirty-green colour indicates, in general, that the indigoes have undergone some deterioration in their preparation or during their transport. Indigo is destitute of odour, provided it has undergone no alteration by heat and moisture. Indigoes are classified into different kinds, according to the country in which they are prepared, or according to their colour.

"First. Indigoes prepared in Asia: they are from Bengal, Coromandel, Madras, Manilla, and Java:—

"*Bengal Indigoes.*—The trade in this indigo is chiefly carried on in Calcutta, and through the medium of the East India Company; its varieties are very numerous. The principal, commencing with those of the best quality, are—1. The superfine or light blue. This is in a cubical

form, light and friable, soft to the touch, of a clean fracture, and giving a beautiful copper colour on being rubbed with the nail. 2. Superfine violet. 3. Superfine purple. 4. Fine violet, in colour a little less brilliant than the superfine, and rather heavier. 5. Fine purple violet. 6. Good violet, somewhat heavier than the fine violet. 7. Violet red. 8. Common violet. 9. Fine and good red, heavier than the preceding, colour bordering decidedly on red. 10. Good red, of a firmer and more compact structure. 11. Fine copper-coloured, redder and more compact still. 12. Middling copper-coloured. 13. Ordinary and low copper-coloured: this is of a copper-coloured blue or red, somewhat difficult to break.

“*Coromandel*.—Those of the best quality correspond to the middling Bengal indigoes, and are met with in square masses, having an even fracture, but are more difficult to break. The inferior indigoes are heavy, of a sandy feel, having a blue colour bordering on green or grey, or even black—often in very large squares, and covered with a slight crust or rind of a greenish-grey colour. These are the most difficult to break of all the indigoes of commerce.

“*Madras*.—They have a grained rough fracture, and are of a cubical figure. The superior qualities have no *rind*; in figure they somewhat resemble a *hat*, and are more light and friable than those of Coromandel. These indigoes, when of the best quality, have great lightness, but are not equal to the superfine blue of Bengal. The middling qualities have a very slight copper colour. The colour of the inferior qualities is a dark or muddy blue, black, or even grey, and greenish.

“*Manilla*.—These present the mark of the rushes upon which they have been dried. They are of a finer consistence and lighter colour than are the indigoes of Madras, but not so fine as the indigoes of Bengal. The better qualities are often in flat and elongated masses, somewhat porous, and consequently light. The middling qualities are of a violet colour, but they are inferior to the violet of Bengal.

“*Java*.—In flat, square masses, sometimes of a lozenge shape. The superior qualities appear to the sight as fine as the blue, violet, or red indigoes of Bengal; but they are not so in reality.

“Second. Indigoes prepared in Africa. They are from Egypt and Senegal:—

“*Egypt*.—The superior qualities of Egyptian indigo are superfine and fine violet blues. They are light, but their structure is not very fine, and they often contain sand. The squares are rather flatter than those of Bengal.

“*Senegal*.—They are of good quality, but they contain more earthy matter than any other indigoes in the trade.

“Third. Indigoes from America; those of Guatemala, Caraccas, Mexico, Brazil, Carolina, and the Antilles:—

“The indigoes of *Guatemala*, of the *Caraccas*, and of *Mexico*, are of various kinds. The best are of a bright blue colour, remarkably light and fine. These indigoes are esteemed equal to the best Bengal. The inferior

qualities are of a violet colour, but in general are more mixed than the Bengal kinds.

“*Brazil*.—These indigoes are in small rectangular parallelopiped masses, or in irregular lumps, of a greenish-grey colour externally, and having a smooth fracture, a firm consistence, and a copper-coloured tint of greater or less brilliancy.

“*Carolina*.—In small square masses, having a grey exterior. The best qualities have a dull copper colour, bordering on violet or blue. The common qualities are almost always of a greenish-blue; they are rarely found of a copper colour.

“The principal varieties of indigo in commerce are the Bengal, the Caraccas, the Guatemala, the Madras, and the Manilla.

“Besides the numerous shades already described, we should also be on our guard against certain defects, of greater or less consequence, and which depend on causes acting either on the indigo when already prepared, or else occurring during its preparation. The following are some of the characters to be borne in mind:—The large or small fracture: squares of indigo reduced, by accident, into lumps of variable size. Fragment: squares reduced into irregular pieces, and fine enough to be passed through a sieve. Sometimes, also, we meet with squares which are readily broken, and which present a whitish kind of mouldiness in their interior; gritty lumps, throughout which are points presenting the appearance of granite; streaky masses, in which are layers of various shades of blue, placed one above the other, in the same square; pieces of a scorched appearance, which, on being sharply rubbed between the hands, are ground into small fragments, nearly black in colour; sandy lumps, in the interior of which the eye can detect shining specks, which are nothing more than sand.”

Pure indigo, whether obtained by sublimation, or other chemical means, is of a deep blue, approaching to violet. If scratched or rubbed, it has a strong copper hue, and a metallic lustre. It has neither taste nor smell, and is remarkable for its neutral properties. It is insoluble in water, alcohol, ether, alkalies, and dilute acids. Strong sulphuric acid dissolves indigo readily, and forms with it a purple-blue solution. Its chemical composition is, according to the late Mr. Crum and M. Dumas,—

Crum.	Dumas, who doubled the atoms.
8 Carbon.	16 Carbon.
5 Hydrogen.	10 Hydrogen.
1 Oxygen.	2 Oxygen.
1 Nitrogen.	2 Nitrogen.

The chemical qualities, and some reactions of indigo, have been extensively studied. If blue indigo be brought into contact with substances having a strong attraction for oxygen and in the presence of an alkali, the indigo is said to be reduced to the white state, and becomes soluble in the alkali; this, as is well known, is the principle of the blue vat. The following matters all reduce blue indigo to white:—



Protoxide of tin,	Sulphide of potassium,
Protoxide of iron,	Sulphide of sodium,
Sulphide of arsenic,	Sulphide of calcium,
Phosphorus,	Sugar,
The phosphites,	Starch,
Sulphites,	Tannin.

Substances which yield oxygen, such as oxide of copper, turn white indigo to blue, and the copper is reduced to the suboxide. Water containing carbonic acid also oxidises white indigo. Indigo white is a crystalline solid, having a fibrous silky lustre, tasteless, without smell, and heavier than water; it is insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol and ether.

When well dried it may be kept in the air for several days without change, but if moist it soon becomes blue; when heated it becomes purplish-blue. White indigo was long thought to be blue indigo with less oxygen, and was sometimes called deoxidised indigo; but chemists now consider it as blue indigo, with an equivalent more of hydrogen: Thus we have—

Blue.					White.				
Carbon,	.	.	.	8	Carbon,	.	.	.	8
Nitrogen,	.	.	.	1	Nitrogen,	.	.	.	1
Hydrogen,	.	.	.	5	Hydrogen,	.	.	.	6
Oxygen,	.	.	.	1	Oxygen,	.	.	.	1

Dumas supports his view by reference to many vegetable organic substances which comport themselves in a similar manner, and gives the formulæ of a few compounds, which by analogy he connects with indigo, and shews that there may be not only a relation, but that by the mere addition or subtraction of one equivalent of an element, such as hydrogen, two bodies may differ as much in their properties as does blue indigo from white.

The late Baron Liebig's view of the reactions of indigo and its relations to other bodies differs from that of Dumas. He considers, from the result of careful and extensive investigation, that indigo contains a salt radical (page 27) which he termed *anyle*, and which is composed of  $C_8H_5N$ . This, in a sense, is indigo without any oxygen. He then considered that white indigo is the *hydrated* protoxide of this base or radical, and that blue indigo is the peroxide. Thus—

	C.	H.	N.	O.	Water.
Anyle,	8	5	1	0	0
White indigo,	8	5	1	1	1
Blue indigo,	8	5	1	2	0

This view of the matter was not inconsistent with facts and practical observations in the dye-house, and can be supported by analogies in the same manner as the other view. Indeed, most of the colouring principles of vegetables exist in the plants as colourless bases, and become coloured by the absorption of oxygen.

M. Pressier, who has been very fortunate in his researches into vegetable colouring matters and bases, favours Liebig's view, from the fact that

blue indigo, sugar, and potash react together, and form white indigo. He therefore considers it very improbable that indigo should extract hydrogen from water, at the same time that the oxygen of the water would combine with the hydrogen of the sugar to reproduce water. Dumas, however, observes upon this, that there is no necessity for supposing water to be decomposed, as the hydrogen of the sugar may combine directly with the indigo blue and form indigo white. These views of the question shew that the subject is full of interest, and ought to stimulate the dyer to study his trade as a science, which might lead him to the solution of some of those vexed questions of chemical science. The present prevailing idea of the constitution of indigo and its relations to other bodies is, that indigo contains a definite colouring material termed *indigotin*, from which numerous derivatives belonging to the indigo series have been prepared. The following are the most important of the immediate compounds derived from or related to indigo, premising that *indigo blue* or *indigotin* is termed in the series *indyl* :—

		Symbol.
Indigo blue,	$C_8H_5NO$ = Indyl symol,	In
White indigo,	$C_8H_6NO$ = Indyl hydride,	InH
Isatin,	$C_8H_5NO_2$ = Indyl oxide,	InO
Isatic acid,	$HC_8H_6NO_3$ =	$HInHO_2$
Isathyd,	$C_8H_6NO_2$ = Indyl hydrate,	InHO
Indin,	$C_{16}H_{10}N_2O_2$ = Polymeride of indyl,	$In_2$
Hydrindin,	$C_{16}H_{11}N_2O_2$ = Indin hydride,	$2InH$

It will be observed here that the compound indin is exactly that given by Dumas as the composition of indigo blue. It is simply doubling the equivalents given by Crum; but hydrindin contains an equivalent of hydrogen less than a double equivalent of white indigo.

If indigo be thrown into fused hydrate of potash, its blue colour disappears; it dissolves, and is partly decomposed along with the water of the alkaline hydrate; hydrogen and ammoniacal gases are evolved, while carbonic acid and another acid, having properties similar to acetic acid, are formed, and combine with the potash. By digesting this mixture with a little sulphuric acid, the alkali combines with it, and the acids may be obtained.

If indigo, in fine powder, be added to nitric acid, diluted with seven or eight times its weight of water, and a gentle heat be applied, it dissolves with effervescence, forming a yellow liquid. After standing a little, this liquid may be decanted from any resinous matter formed during the process, and concentrated by evaporation, and speedily there will be found deposited a quantity of yellowish-white crystals, having a sourish-bitter taste, and requiring about 100 parts of cold water for their solution. This was formerly termed indigotic acid, but is now called anilic acid, from the species and name of one of the plants which yields indigo. It combines with all known bases, forming salts, which have generally a yellow colour. It gives a blood-red colour to solutions of the persalts of iron.

If indigo be added to strong nitric acid, and heat be applied, it quickly

dissolves, evolving a great quantity of nitrous gas. On allowing the liquid to cool, a large quantity of semi-transparent yellow crystals are formed, having a very bitter taste. This is called carbazotic or picric acid.

To procure it in a purer state, the crystals obtained by the above operation are to be washed in cold water, and then boiled in water sufficient to dissolve them. On filtering the liquid and allowing it to cool, the acid again crystallises in brilliant yellow prisms. The acid may also be obtained by the action of nitric acid upon anilic acid.

Picric acid is very permanent in its constitution. When fused in chlorine or with iodine, it is not decomposed, nor does a solution of chlorine affect it. Cold sulphuric acid has no action upon it, but dissolves it when hot. Boiling hydrochloric acid does not act upon it, and nitromuriatic acid (*aqua regia*) dissolves it with difficulty. It acts like a strong acid upon metallic oxides, dissolving them, and forming peculiar crystallisable salts. These are yellow; they detonate strongly when sharply heated, and also by percussion, particularly the salt formed with potash. When a little of it is gradually heated in a glass tube, it first fuses, and then suddenly explodes, breaking the tube to pieces. Care is necessary in making this experiment, as the fragments of glass may injure the face.

This acid is an excellent test for the presence of potash in any fluid. A solution of it in alcohol produces a bright yellow crystalline precipitate, even in a diluted solution of the alkali. It is thus more sensible than the chloride of platinum, commonly employed for the detection of potash, for that re-agent does not produce a precipitate in dilute solutions. Picric acid has strong tinctorial properties, and has been long used as a dye for silk and woollen, to which it imparts a beautiful rich yellow when mordanted with alum or tartar.

When indigo is acted upon by very dilute fuming nitric acid, it unites with two atoms more of oxygen, and is consequently converted into *isatine*. This substance, under the influence of alkalies, absorbs one equivalent more of water, and assumes an acid character, and is termed *isatinic acid*. This acid combines with other substances, forming a series of interesting compounds.

Chromic acid has a similar action upon indigo as nitric acid.

When indigo in the dry state is brought into contact with dry chlorine, no chemical action is observed; but when indigo, suspended in water, is subjected to the action of chlorine, it becomes brown, and several new products are formed. In addition to muriate of ammonia and formic acid, there are several distinct chlorinated compounds formed, termed *chlorisatin*, *dischlorisatin*, *trichloraniline*, *trichlorophenic acid*, and *chloranil*. Chlorisatin forms in red crystals of a bitter taste; when dissolved in a solution of caustic potash they produce a red colour. The salts of lead give with this solution a yellow precipitate, which becomes a fine scarlet on standing. The salts of copper (blue-stone), &c., give a brown, which becomes blood-red by exposure to the air. *Bichlorisatin* has properties analogous to those of chlorisatin; its solution in potash gives a yellow precipitate with the salts

of lead, but does not alter by exposure to the air; and with the copper salts it gives a yellowish-brown, which passes to blood red. *Chloranile* crystallises in scales of a brass-yellow colour, and when dissolved in potash gives a beautiful purple colour.

If indigo in powder be added to a solution of caustic potash of specific gravity 1.35 (70 Twaddell) and boiled, an orange-yellow salt is formed. The solution of the boiled mass becomes blue in the air from absorption of oxygen (like a solution of white indigo), and blue indigo precipitates.

Besides the compounds resulting from the action of nitric acid and chlorine upon indigo, there are several others which, from their true characters being still doubtful, we have not thought it necessary to enumerate. Some practical dyer may indeed be inclined to ask, what those already noticed have to do with dyeing? We are sorry that, with respect to some of them, we cannot give any satisfactory answer to the question; but the same question was asked when chemists first intimated that chromic acid produced yellow salts when combined with lead, yet this simple hint has completely revolutionised various departments of dyeing; and the action of chromic acid upon indigo, as already observed, has been both a source of annoyance and advantage to the dyer. Previous to the use of alkaline solutions of lead, dyers seldom could get an evenly dyed *chrome* green upon indigo blue; the chromic acid being set at liberty acted upon the indigo which was upon the goods, destroying in part the blue colour, after which the green was all light-yellow *blains*. But now this same action of chromic acid upon indigo has been taken advantage of by calico-printers when they want a white pattern on a blue ground.

Previous to the introduction of bichromate of potash for this purpose, the calico-printers were, to a certain extent, limited in their operations. Thus—

The pattern was printed upon the cloth with the oxide of a metal, such as copper and zinc, which yield their oxygen easily to other substances; the goods were afterwards dyed blue by passing them through the vat; but the parts upon which these metallic salts were printed resisted the dye, by yielding their oxygen to the indigo—a process which will afterwards be described, so that the piece when finished had a blue ground with a white pattern. But after the blue vats had been wrought for some time, they could not be used for this purpose, owing to the weakness of the dye, and the consequent length of time necessary to produce the required shade. So that these *resist pastes* were in a manner washed off, and the pattern spoiled. Now, in place of throwing out as useless vats not exhausted of their indigo, as was formerly done, the cloth is dyed blue without resists, and after being slightly scoured and washed, it is passed through a strong solution of chromate of potash, and dried in the shade; the required pattern is then printed on the cloth with a mixture of oxalic and tartaric acids made into a paste with gum or clay. The potash in union with the chromic acid is taken up by these acids, and the chromic acid being set at liberty acts on the indigo, and a white pattern is produced.



The following table exhibits the composition of those substances which we have briefly described as resulting from the action of nitric acid and chlorine upon indigo. It may be required for reference:—

Name.	C.	H.	O.	N.	Cl.
Indigo, . . . . .	8	5	1	1	0
Isatin, . . . . .	8	5	2	1	0
Anilic, or indigotic acid, . . . . .	7	5	5	1	0
Picric, or carbazotic acid, . . . . .	6	3	5	1	0
Chlorisatin, . . . . .	8	4	2	1	1
Bichlorisatin, . . . . .	8	3	2	1	2
Trichloranil, . . . . .	6	4	0	1	3
Chloranil, . . . . .	6	0	2	0	4

The only substance which dissolves indigo, without destroying its colour and composition, is highly concentrated sulphuric acid. For this purpose the fuming acid of Nordhausen is preferable (page 77); acid made from brimstone, concentrated to 169° Twaddell, is what is universally used in this country. The substance formed is popularly known by the names of sulphate of indigo, Saxon blue, China blue, and extract of indigo. The action of sulphuric acid upon indigo is found to be something more than a mere solution: a chemical combination, in definite proportions, results, forming two distinct substances, differing considerably from each other in their properties. These two compounds were discovered and described by the late Mr. Crum, and called by him *cerulin* and *phinacin* from their colours—the former blue and the latter purple. They have been since named sulph-indylic acid and sulpho-purpuric acid. The former, which constitutes the blue principle of Saxon blue, is formed most abundantly when the sulphuric acid is sufficiently strong and abundant, and other proper means attended to. Its composition is found to be one atom of indigo combined with two of sulphuric acid. The other is the principal product when the indigo preponderates. It is of a purple colour, and when the solution is diluted with water it precipitates. Its composition is found to be equal to one atom indigo to one of sulphuric acid.

From the nature and properties of these two substances, it is evident that every care should be taken to convert the indigo into sulph-indylic acid, and to avoid the formation of sulpho-purpuric acid. The circumstances under which this latter acid is formed are—first, too little acid in proportion to the indigo, and, secondly, too little time allowed for digestion. The general proportions used by dyers vary from three to five pounds of acid to the pound of indigo. This is by far too little, and occasions a considerable loss of indigo by the precipitation of the sulpho-purpuric acid when the solution is diluted with water. Close observation shews that it requires from six to eight pounds of concentrated sulphuric acid to convert a pound of indigo into blue sulph-indylic acid. From some investigations made by M. Dumas, indigo requires even a larger proportion of acid to convert it into sulph-indylic acid.

He recommends no less than fifteen parts of acid to one of indigo. This quantity, however, we have found to be of no advantage in practice, but rather the opposite, particularly when the acid is to be neutralised before the indigo solution is used, which is the general custom in dyeing cotton.

We have said that the second circumstance under which sulpho-purpuric acid is formed is that of too short time being given for the indigo and acid to digest. When indigo is first put into the sulphuric acid, there seems to be an immediate solution; but if a drop be spread upon a window pane it appears of a dirty-green colour; and if allowed to stand for a little upon the glass, a yellowish-coloured liquid begins to run from the blue mass, occasioned, no doubt, by the acid absorbing moisture and separating itself from the indigo, and clearly shewing that the change upon the indigo by the acid is not an immediate one. The more impure the indigo, the darker and greener appears the substance when put upon the glass. After the mixture has stood two or three hours, if tried in the same manner, it appears of a reddish-purple colour. As the liquid stands it begins to assume a violet shade, and finally passes to a deep rich blue. But dyers seldom obtain it in this state: in their hands it generally has a reddish tinge. Mr. Crum found that when the solution is diluted with water, after the colour has become of a bottle-green, the action of the acid is stopped, and sulpho-purpuric acid only is formed. But there are other means by which the action of sulphuric acid upon indigo may be stopped, than by directly diluting the solution with water. As already intimated, it is only the highly concentrated sulphuric acid which converts indigo into sulph-indylic acid. Now, dyers not unfrequently alter the strength of their acid by the process of mixing and preparing their *chemic* (the technical name for sulphate of indigo). This is very generally done in an open wide-mouthed vessel, which is allowed to stand uncovered, probably in the midst of the steam and vapours of the dye-house; or, in some cases, the vessel is put into a boiler or tub with boiling water. By these injudicious means the sulphuric acid, which absorbs water very rapidly, is diluted below the necessary strength for the making of sulph-indylic acid, and the result is the formation of sulpho-purpuric acid instead.

Another cause of the stopping of the action of the acid by dilution is from the indigo. Ground indigo absorbs a quantity of moisture; and if it be not thoroughly dried previous to putting it in the acid, the acid is too much weakened to effect the formation of the substance required.

There are other causes by which the preparation of *chemic* is injured. Sometimes the acid and indigo are mixed together at once, and by this means the heat evolved is sufficient to decompose the impurities of the indigo. Part of the acid also suffers decomposition, and a great quantity of sulphurous acid gas is given off; so much, indeed, that the head cannot be held above the vessel for any length of time without injurious effects. Another practice, for the sake of quickening the operation, is to place the vessel upon the flue in the stove, and keep the solution for hours at a heat

upwards of 300° Fah. The gas given off in these cases is sometimes so great as to destroy the colours of goods hanging in the stove. Indigo submitted to such treatment is seldom found good; often its appearance on white paper or glass (which is a general method of testing the quality of sulphate of indigo) is a blackish-green—sometimes a dirty purple—seldom the fine blue violet—scarcely ever the beautiful blue.

Although the sulpho-purpuric acid is precipitated when water is mixed with the solution of sulphate of indigo, and is insoluble in dilute acids, it is, when freed from the sulphuric acid, soluble in distilled water; but if any substance be in the water—and common spring water is never pure—it is less soluble. It dissolves in alkalies, and in solutions of the alkaline earths, giving a blue colour of greater or less purity according to the nature of the solvent.

We have found the following method of preparing sulphate of indigo in quantities for use very satisfactory:—The indigo is reduced to an impalpable powder, either by grinding in a mortar or a mill, and completely dried, by placing it upon a sandbath or flue for some hours, at a temperature of about 140° or 150° Fah. For each pound of indigo to be used six pounds of highly concentrated sulphuric acid are put into a large jar, or earthen pot, furnished with a cover. This is kept in as dry a place as possible, and the indigo is added gradually in small quantities. The vessel is kept closely covered, and care taken that the heat of the solution does not exceed 212° Fah. When the indigo is all added, the vessel is placed in such a situation that the heat may be kept at about 150° Fah., and allowed to stand, stirring occasionally, for forty-eight hours. These precautions being attended to, we have uniformly found that any failure occurring was clearly traceable to impurity of the indigo or weakness of the acid used.

The dyer now very seldom prepares his own sulphate of indigo; it is manufactured for him, and sold in the market as *indigo extract*, which, when properly prepared, is a superior article to that generally prepared by himself. The following is the process of its manufacture:—The indigo is dissolved in the sulphuric acid as described; it is then diluted with hot water—distilled water is best; the whole is put upon a filter of woollen cloth, by which means the insoluble impurities of the indigo are separated. The blue solution which has passed through the filter is transferred to a leaden vessel, and evaporated till reduced to about three gallons for every pound of indigo used. There is then added about 4 lbs. of common salt to the pound of indigo, and the whole is well stirred. The sulph-indylic acid is thus precipitated, and the whole is again thrown upon a similar filter of woollen cloth; the extract remains upon the filter, and when sufficiently drained, is ready for the market. Some makers add a little potash or soda, which may be advantageous, and a little ammonia gives the extract a beautiful bloom. A pound weight of good indigo should yield 14 lbs. of extract. The adulterations in this substance are various. Some of the insoluble matter is occasionally added, or rather not removed, but

this deteriorates the appearance of the *extract*. The addition of a little lime or barytes gives an insoluble precipitate, which adds weight to the extract; but all practices of that kind react upon the maker; for although the dyer may not have methods of testing his stuff, he very soon ascertains its working value by experience, and avoids the bad.

The extract of indigo is used in the dye-house in the same way as the sulphate was used before this method of preparation was adopted. The general term *chemic* is applied to both, and chemic blue is used in various operations. For dyeing silks and woollens blue, the extract is simply diluted, and the goods merely passed through it; but this method cannot be adopted with cotton, as its fibres have no affinity for sulphate of indigo. But although not used for dyeing blue upon cotton, it is extensively used for dyeing green upon light goods of that material—for this purpose the chemic is carefully prepared. The extract is put into a cask nearly filled with hot water—the exact quantity is not material, and well stirred; to this solution a quantity of pounded chalk or whiting is added gradually, until the acid is exactly neutralised; this is a nice operation, and requires great care on the part of the operator; for, were the acid property to prevail in the least, it would destroy the yellow previously dyed upon the cloth, and a dirty blue would be produced; and were the alkaline matter predominant, it would brown the yellow, and the green would assume a blackish-olive shade. Thus the beauty of the colours depends upon the dyer being careful to stop just at the turning point. The only method employed by dyers for determining the point of neutrality is the taste, and this, from many circumstances which we need not enumerate, is liable to error; and when the dyer is deceived, the results are very annoying and also expensive. However, the reader may be astonished when we inform him that failures from this source are very few. Were very delicately prepared blue and red litmus-papers used, the results would be much more certain. Some dyers use carbonated alkalies, such as soda and potash, to neutralise their acid; and no doubt when any of these are used, the sediment at the bottom is much less; but we have always thought that owing to the salts formed by these alkalies being soluble in the blue solution, the green colour is not so good, especially when *quercitron bark* is the yellowing substance.

The process of dyeing greens by this sort of prepared chemic is as follows:—The goods, after being well boiled and washed, are put through a dilute solution of pyrolignite of alumina of specific gravity 1.035—that is, 7 of Twaddell—and washed from this through hot water; they are then wrought through a decoction of *quercitron bark* or *fustic*. When sufficiently yellow for the shade of green required, they are then wrought through a quantity of chemic mixed with cold water, wrung from this and dried. If fustic is the yellowing substance used, alum is a better mordant.

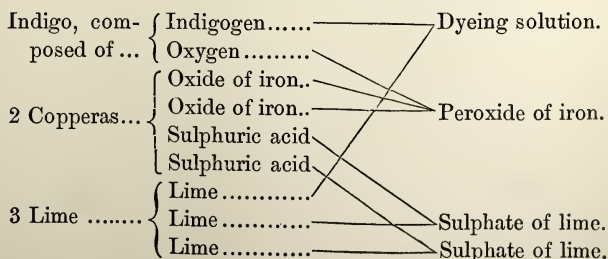
The greatest consumpt of indigo is for dyeing blue by means of the blue vat. We have already mentioned that indigo is insoluble in water; but if it be by any means deprived of an equivalent of oxygen (or according to



the generally received theory, gets an equivalent of hydrogen), it is soluble in alkalies. It may be said, that according to the law of definite proportions described in our first article, it cannot be indigo with an atom less of oxygen. Neither is it; and we see that it has different properties from common indigo, for it is soluble even in weak alkalies, has a powerful attraction for oxygen, and is a of a white colour. This substance has been termed *indigogen*, and it may be observed, that the nature of the blue vat depends upon the introduction of substances capable of converting indigo into *indigogen*. The substances generally used for this conversion are the protoxides of iron and tin, orpiment (sulphide of arsenic), and some organic substances, such as sugar. These last produce the desired effect by their decomposition, such as in the woad vat, where, by the fermentation of the woad and madder, the indigo is converted into indigogen. The indigogen is dissolved by the potash or other alkali put into the vat.

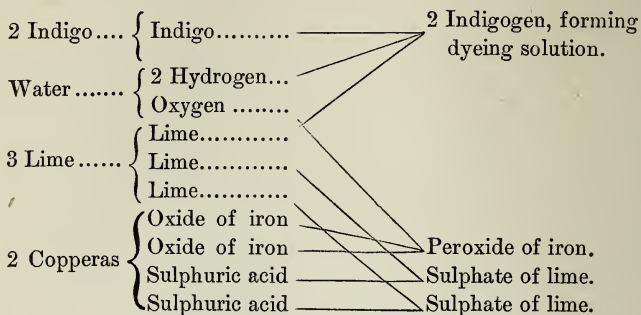
What is termed the common blue vat, or lime vat, is made up with indigo, lime, and sulphate of iron (copperas). But before describing the nature of this vat, it will be necessary, at the risk of a little repetition, to refer to the properties of oxide of iron (page 129).

The protoxide of iron, especially when in contact with moisture, has a strong attraction for more oxygen, so as to pass into the peroxide. When the sulphuric acid of copperas is neutralised by an alkali, the iron is left in the state of a protoxide. The blue vat is made up by putting three parts slaked lime, two parts copperas, and one part finely ground indigo into a vessel filled with water, and stirring occasionally for a day or two, when the indigo is dissolved. Thus, the first action which takes place is the decomposition of the metallic salt by the acid, which is in union with the iron, combining with a portion of the lime, forming sulphate of lime and pro-oxide of iron. The oxide of iron, according to old theory, takes oxygen from the indigo, converting it into indigogen (white indigo), and the peroxide of iron and the sulphate of lime thus formed are precipitated, forming what is technically termed *sludge*. The remaining portion of lime in solution dissolves the indigogen, and forms with it the solution required. The following diagram represents this action and the results more clearly, and gives the old view of the theory of the blue vat:—



According to the view which is now taken of the constitution of indigo, the action which takes place in the vat will be somewhat different from that

given above. When the lime combines with the acid of the copperas, the iron decomposes a portion of water combining with its oxygen, and the hydrogen combines with the indigo, forming indigogen, which may be represented as follows:—



This theory is equally, if not more beautiful than the former, and is now all but generally accepted by chemists. When the goods are put into the vat, the dissolved indigogen combines with them, and when brought into contact with the air, according to the former theory, the indigogen combines with oxygen, for which it has a strong disposition, and insoluble blue indigo is formed, and remains combined with the cloth; according to the latter theory, the blue indigo is left in combination with the cloth by the extra hydrogen in the indigogen combining with the oxygen of the atmosphere, and forming water. The supposition that hydrogen should combine with the free oxygen of the air, and form water so rapidly under such circumstances, is somewhat anomalous, but this is no reason for rejecting it. If a mixture of copperas and lime be put into a bottle with distilled water, the water is not decomposed; the lime combines with the acid, which, along with the iron, is precipitated, and if the air be completely excluded, the iron remains as a protoxide for days; indeed, the change from a protoxide to a peroxide is so slow that a long time elapses before it is appreciable; but if indigo be added, even after the mixture has stood for some time, the action of the common vat proceeds. This gives a beautiful illustration of relative affinities. Before the indigo is introduced, the attraction of the iron for oxygen is about equal to that of the hydrogen, which holds it in combination as water; but when the indigo is introduced, although its attraction for hydrogen must be very weak, as it requires the nicest management to get that compound isolated, still it is sufficient to disturb the equilibrium with which the oxygen was held by the iron and hydrogen, giving the former the mastery. The presence of an alkaline substance has no doubt an effect of inducing, if we may be allowed the term, the formation of indigogen; it is never formed in the vat without the presence of some free alkaline substance to dissolve it the moment it is formed. This circumstance indicates that the alkali has also an affinity for indigogen, and may assist the reaction in the vat.

We would recommend the reader to re-peruse the remarks upon the salts of iron, in connection with these on the blue vat, in order that he may be better able to appreciate them, and especially to understand what ought to be the properties of good copperas from the part it is required to play in the vat; also why it is that the quality of the copperas makes so great a difference in the working of a blue vat.

There is one serious annoyance often experienced in working the vat, technically called *swimming*—that is, the precipitate not properly settling down, so that the goods come in contact with it, to the serious injury of the colour. This may be occasioned by several circumstances. Should the copperas have an excess of acid, either from its being crystallised out of an acid solution, or from its having sulphate of alumina in it (as described at page 132), it will form a sulphate of lime, which will not precipitate so quickly as that formed by the decomposition of good copperas; but the prevailing cause of a floating vat is excess of copperas and lime. Let the dyer take a solution of copperas or protosulphate of iron, and one of persulphate, and add to each a sufficient quantity of lime to precipitate the iron, he will find that the peroxide of iron will precipitate rapidly and completely, and that the protoxide will precipitate slowly and incompletely. The same phenomenon takes place in the vat when lime and copperas are added; sulphate of lime and protoxide of iron are formed, and if there be not enough of indigo to convert the protoxide of iron to the state of peroxide—in which state it precipitates easily—the protoxide will remain floating for a long time, the only cure for which is the addition of a little indigo, or of a substance that will peroxidise the iron. When vats become weak, great care should be taken not to add an excess of copperas. We have seen a little soda added to a floating vat as a cure; and if the evil consisted in the over quantity of copperas, this mode of cure might be successful, but not otherwise. A floating vat is sometimes caused by using improper lime. When slaked lime lies exposed for a short time to the air, and more especially in such as is in a dye-work, it absorbs carbonic acid, and becomes converted into chalk, and this put into the vat is very deleterious in other respects, besides causing *swimming*. The lime used for the vat should *always be newly slaked*. This is a necessary precaution, as the practice is too often otherwise than is here recommended.

When the paucity of indigo in the last stages of a vat causes swimming, a small portion of a copper salt may be of service, as this oxide will give up a part of its oxygen to the iron, becoming a suboxide; or it will oxidise a portion of the indigo in solution, and this would react in turn upon the iron. The property of this and some other metals for neutralising the effects of iron in the vat has already been noticed; but it may be more apparent by thus referring to it here, and it may be still further enforced in connection with that branch of calico-printing called *resist-work*, indicated at page 248, and which may be thus further described:—A certain preparation—the best we believe is the sulphate of copper or zinc—mixed either with flour paste, with gum, or with pipe-clay and gum, and printed

on the calico, of any pattern that may be desired; when this is sufficiently dry, the goods are dyed in the blue vat; those parts of the piece which are printed with the copper or zinc will not be dyed blue, because the deoxidised indigo becomes oxygenated the moment it touches the copper, which yields its oxygen to the indigo, and occasions it to become insoluble, and consequently incapable of forming a dye; or the hydrogen, in combination with the indigo, unites with the oxygen of the copper, and forms water—the results are alike in both.

Before concluding this article, we may inform the general reader that in print-works and dye-houses where piece-goods are dyed blue, the vats are necessarily large, being generally about 3 feet wide by 5 feet long and 8 feet deep, made of iron, but sometimes of stone, and are sunk into the ground about half their depth. The goods to be dyed are stretched upon a frame, and the whole is lowered into the vat. Sometimes these frames are furnished with rollers, when, instead of fixing the piece on hooks, it is passed over these rollers while in the vat, by which means long pieces are dyed perfectly regular in colour.

The vats for yarn or skein used to be small, being generally old wine or oil pipes; these were sunk about half their depth into the ground. These kind of vats are now going out of use, and large iron vats, as described above, are taking their place. Wooden pins about 3 feet long are put through the skein, and rest upon the edge of the vat; the skein is then turned over, the one-half dipping in the liquor, the other half over the pins. The time of this operation varies according to the strength of the vat and depth of blue required; when the skein is taken out, wrung, and exposed to the air, if the colour is not deep enough it is dipped again, and so on, alternately dipping and exposing, till the requisite shade is obtained.

To prepare the vat, it is filled to within a few inches of the mouth with cold water, the dyeing ingredients are then added; the proportions given in most chemical books are, 1 part (by weight) indigo, 2 parts sulphate of iron, and 3 parts lime; but the practical dyer does not consider his vats in good condition when these proportions are used at the first setting. The following are good proportions for preparing one of these small vats—assuming all the ingredients good:—8 pounds of indigo, 14 pounds of copperas, and from 18 to 20 (not above 20) of slaked lime. If the copperas be bad, a pound or even 2 pounds more of it may be required, along with 2 or 3 additional pounds of lime, to obtain the same results. These ingredients being put in, the whole is well stirred every two or three hours during the day, and after settling for twelve hours, the vat is ready for use.

The chemical equivalents of lime may be calculated from the table of elements, and also the rate of combination. Thus, slaked lime is the hydrated oxide of calcium—

Lime,	.	.	.	.	.	CaO = 56
Water,	.	.	.	.	.	H <sub>2</sub> O = 18
						—
						74



And again we have—

Copperas, . . . . .	FeSO <sub>4</sub> = 152
Water of crystallisation, . . . .	7 H <sub>2</sub> O = 126
	<hr/> 278

Thus, by equivalents, 74 lbs. of slaked lime should neutralise 278 lbs. of crystals of copperas; but as 77 gallons of water, at 60°, can dissolve only 1 pound of lime, it is easy to see how a few pounds are required above the equivalent for copperas to form the lime solution of the vat to dissolve the indigogen. How it is that practice dictates such a quantity of lime to be used is deserving of inquiry; we merely hint that it may be that the compound of indigogen and lime is more soluble than lime alone.

The indigo used for making up a vat is ground in water by means of machinery, in proportion of about 3½ lbs. of indigo to the gallon of water; it is ground until the whole forms a fine paste, and not the slightest grittiness is felt when rubbed between the fingers.

WOAD AND PASTEL.—We have already alluded to these vegetables as yielding a variety of indigo which has been long used for dyeing woollen goods. It is still extensively used for that purpose, especially on the Continent; and as a description of the process, as it is there followed out, may be interesting to many of our readers, we extract the following from Dumas's *Lectures on Dyeing* :—

“INDIGO BLUE.—We give a solid dye of indigo blue to wool by plunging it into an alkaline solution of indigo white, and then exposing it to contact with the air. The solution of indigo white is prepared in a vessel usually from 8 to 9 feet in depth, and 6 to 7 feet in diameter. This size is very convenient for the requisite manipulations, and presents a large volume of water, which, when once heated, is capable of preserving a high temperature for a long time. This vessel should be made of wood or copper. It always bears the name of *vat*. These vats are covered with a wooden lid, divided into two or three equal segments. Over this lid are spread some thick blankets. Without this precaution the bath would come in contact with the atmospheric air; a portion of the indigo would absorb oxygen, and become precipitated. There would also be a great waste of heat.

“A most necessary operation, and one which has to be frequently repeated, consists in stirring up the deposit of vegetable and colouring matter which is formed in the vat, and intimately mixing it in the bath. For this purpose we employ a utensil called a *rake*, which is formed of a strong square piece of wood set on a long handle. The workman takes hold of this with both hands, and, dipping the flat surface into the deposit at the bottom of the vessel, he quickly draws it up until it nearly reaches the surface, when, giving it a gentle shake, he discharges the matter again

through the liquor of the bath. This manœuvre is repeated until the whole of the deposit seems to be removed from the bottom of the vessel. Before the tissue is dipped into the dye-bath it should be soaked in a copper full of tepid water; it is then to be hung up and beaten with sticks. In this state it is plunged into the vat; it thus introduces less air into the bath, while it is more uniformly penetrated by the indigo solution. The cloth is now kept at a depth of from two to three feet below the surface of the liquid, by means of an open bag or piece of network fixed in the interior of an iron ring, which is suspended by cords, and fixed to the outside of the vat by means of two small iron hooks; the bag is thus drawn backwards and forwards without permitting it to come in contact with the air. When this operation has been continued for a sufficient length of time, the cloth is wrung and hung up to dry.

“Flock wool is also, for the purpose of dyeing, enclosed in a fine net, which prevents the least particle from escaping, and which is fixed in the bath in the same way as in the foregoing case.

“The many inconveniences attending the use of wooden baths, which necessitate the pouring of the liquor into a copper for the purpose of giving it the necessary degree of heat, have led to the general employment of copper vessels. These are fixed in brickwork, which extends half way up their surface, whilst a stove is so constructed at this elevation that the flame shall play around their upper part. By this means the bath is heated and kept at a favourable temperature, without the liquor being obliged to be removed.

“The potash vats are usually formed of conical-shaped coppers, surrounded by a suitable furnace. These may be constructed with less depth, inasmuch as there is less precipitation induced in the liquor. By using steam for heating the vats, we might dispense with the employment of copper vessels, and so return to those of wood.

“The vats employed for dyeing wool are known under the names of the pastel vat, the woad vat, the potash vat, the tartar lee vat, and the German vat.

“The pastel is cultivated in France, Piedmont, England, and Saxony. It is distinguished into several varieties, according to the localities in which it is grown. We have already stated that the pastel contains a blue-colouring matter, identical with indigo, and a fawn-coloured yellow matter, which may easily be separated by treating the pastel-balls by hot water, before the fermentative process is established. The woad is cultivated in Normandy; it contains less colouring matter, whether blue or yellow, than the pastel; its durability is also inferior to that of the last-named substance. M. Chevreul has given an analysis of the pastel, which will tend to throw some light upon its use.

“When the leaves are subjected to the action of the press, we obtain, on the one hand, a residue of a ligneous nature, and, on the other, a juice which holds in suspension sundry matters which give it a cloudy appearance. Thrown on a filter, it leaves a greenish matter or fecula, which is

formed of chlorophyl, wax, indigo blue, and an azotised substance. The clear liquid, after passing through the filter, contains an azotised substance, coagulable by heat; an azotised substance, non-coagulable by heat; a red matter, resulting from the union of the blue-colouring principle with an acid; a yellow principle; gummy matter; some liquid sugar; a fixed organic acid; free acetic acid and acetate of ammonia; the odorous principle of the Cruciferae; a volatile principle, having the odour of osmazome; citrate of lime; sulphates of lime and potash; phosphates of lime; magnesia, iron, and manganese; nitre and chloride of potassium.

"M. Chevreul has not discovered in these products any body possessed of the power of seizing upon oxygen in an energetic manner, and which would explain the action of the pastel in the indigo vat. Still we cannot doubt that the principles furnished by this matter intervene, to a certain extent, as combustibles, and that we must refer at least a part of their effect to this mode of action. The indigo should itself be selected with care. The Guatemala variety is preferred for the urinary or Indian vat, and the Bengal indigo for the pastel vat.

"PASTEL VAT.—The first care of the dyer in preparing the vat should be to furnish the bath with matters capable of combining with the oxygen, whether directly or indirectly, and of giving hydrogen to the indigo. We must, however, be careful to employ those substances only which are incapable of imparting to the bath a colour which might prove injurious to the indigo. These advantages are found in the pastel, the woad, and madder. This latter substance furnishes a violet tint when brought into contact with an alkali, and by the addition of indigo it yields a still deeper shade.

"In preparing the Indian vat we ordinarily employ 1 lb. of fine madder to 2 lbs. of indigo. The madder is here especially useful, by reason of the avidity of some of its principles for oxygen.

"The pastel vat, when prepared on a large scale, ordinarily contains from 18 to 22 lbs. of indigo; 11 lbs. of madder would suffice for this proportion, but we must also bear in mind the large quantity of water which we have to charge with oxidisable matters. I have invariably seen the best results from employing 22 lbs. to a vat of this size. Bran is apt to excite the lactic fermentation in the bath, and should, therefore, not be employed in too large a quantity: 7 to 9 lbs. will be found amply sufficient.

"The weld is rich in oxidisable principles: it turns sour, and passes into the putrid fermentation with facility. Some dyers use it very freely; but ordinarily we employ in this bath an equal quantity of it to that of the bran. Sometimes weld is not added at all.

"In most dye-houses the pastel is pounded before introducing it into the vat. Some practical men, however, maintain that this operation is injurious, and that it interferes with its durability. This is an opinion which deserves attention. The effect of the pastel, when reduced to a coarse powder, is more uniform; but this state of division must render its

alterations more rapid. When the bath has undergone the necessary ebullition, the pastel should be introduced into the vat, the liquor decanted, and, at the same time, 7 or 8 lbs. of lime added, so as to form an alkaline ley which shall hold the indigo in solution. Having well stirred the vat, it should be set aside for four hours, so that the little pellets shall have time to become thoroughly soaked, both inside and out, and thus be prepared for fermentation. Some thick coverings are to be spread over the vat, so as to preserve it from contact with the atmosphere. After this lapse of time, it is to be again stirred. The bath at this moment presents no decided character; it has the peculiar odour of the vegetables which it holds in digestion; its colour is of a yellowish-brown.

“Ordinarily, at the end of twenty-four hours, sometimes even after fifteen or sixteen, the fermentive process is well marked. The odour becomes ammoniacal, at the same time that it retains the peculiar smell of the pastel. The bath, hitherto of a brown colour, now assumes a decided yellowish-red tint. A blue froth, which results from the newly-liberated indigo of the pastel, floats on the liquor as a thick scum, being composed of small blue bubbles, which are closely agglomerated together. A brilliant pellicle covers the bath, and beneath we may perceive some blue or almost black veins, owing to the indigo of the pastel which rises towards the surface. If the liquor be now agitated with a switch, the small quantity of indigo which is evolved floats to the top of the bath. On exposing a few drops of this mixture to the air, the golden yellow colour quickly disappears, and is replaced by the blue tint of the indigo. This phenomenon is due to the absorption of the oxygen of the air by the indigogen from the pastel: in this state we might even dye wool with it without any further addition of indigo; but the colours which it furnishes are devoid of brilliancy and vivacity of tone, at the same time that the bath becomes quickly exhausted.

“The signs above described announce, in a most indubitable manner, that fermentation is established, and that the vat has now the power of furnishing to the indigo the hydrogen which is required to render it soluble, that contained in the pastel having been already taken up. This, then, is the proper moment for adding the indigo, which should be previously ground in a mill.

“We stated above that the liquor of the vat should be previously charged with a certain quantity of lime: we also find in it ammonia generated by the pastel; but a part of these alkalies becomes saturated by the carbonic acid gas along with the proper acids of the madder and of the weld, as well as by the lactic acid produced by the bran during fermentation. The ordinary guide of the dyer is the odour which, according to circumstances, becomes more or less ammoniacal. The vat is said to be either soft or harsh; if soft, a little more lime should be added to it. The fresh vat is always soft: it exhales a feeble ammoniacal odour, accompanied with the peculiar smell of the pastel; we must therefore add lime to it along with the indigo. We usually employ from 5 to 6 lbs., and,



after having stirred the vat, it is to be covered over. The indigo, being incapable of solution except by its combination with hydrogen, gives no sign of being dissolved until it has remained a certain time in the bath. We may remark that the hard indigoes, as those of Java, require at least eight or nine hours, whilst those of Bengal do not need more than six hours, for their solution. We should examine the vat again three hours after adding the indigo. We ordinarily remark that the odour is by this time weakened: we must now add a further quantity of lime, sometimes less, but generally about equal in amount to the first portion; it is then to be covered over again, and set aside for three hours.

“After this lapse of time the bath will be found covered with an abundant froth, and a very marked copper-coloured pellicle; the veins which float upon its surface are larger and more marked than they were previously; the liquor becomes of a deep yellowish-red colour. On dipping the rake into the bath, and allowing the liquid to run off at the edge, its colour, if viewed against the light, is of a strongly-marked emerald-green, which gradually disappears in proportion as the indigo absorbs oxygen, and leaves in its place a mere drop, rendered opaque by the blue colour of the indigo. The odour of the vat at this instant is strongly ammoniacal; we also find in it the peculiar scent of the pastel. When we discover a marked character of this kind in the newly-formed vat, we may without fear plunge in the stuff intended to be dyed; but the tints given during the first working of the vat are never so brilliant as those subsequently formed: this is owing to the yellow-colouring matters of the pastel, which, aided by the heat, become fixed on the wool at the same time as the indigo, and thus give to it a greenish tint. This accident is common both with the pastel and the woad vats; it is, however, less marked in the latter.

“When the stuff or cloth has been immersed for an hour in the vat it should be withdrawn; it would, in fact, be useless to leave it there for a longer time, inasmuch as it could absorb no more of the colouring principle. It is therefore to be taken from the bath and hung up to dry, when the indigo, by attracting oxygen, will become insoluble and acquire a blue colour. Then we may replunge the stuff in the vat, and the shade will immediately assume a deeper tint, owing to renewed absorption of indigo by the wool. By repeating these operations we succeed in giving very deep shades. We must not, however, imagine that the cloth seizes only on that portion of indigo contained in the liquor required to soak it. Far from such being the case, experience shews that, during its stay in the bath, it appropriates to itself, within certain limits, a gradually increasing quantity of indigo. We have here, then, an action of affinity, or perhaps a consequence of porosity on the part of the wool itself.

“WOAD VAT.—These vats are extensively employed at Louviers, and in the manufactories of the north of France. The bath is prepared in the same manner as in the foregoing case: the finely-cut root is introduced

into the copper along with 2 lbs. of pounded indigo, 9 lbs. of madder, and  $15\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of slaked lime. The liquor is, after the necessary ebullition, poured upon the woad. This substance contains but a very small quantity of colouring principle; we must, therefore, add some indigo when preparing the vat, so as to indicate the precise instant when the mixture arrives at the point of fermentation so necessary for imparting hydrogen to the colouring principle, and for rendering it soluble. We must also use a larger quantity of lime, since the woad contains no ammonia resulting from previous decomposition, such as we find to be the case with the pastel of the south. When the vat is in a suitable state of fermentation, a rusty colour becomes manifest, in addition to the signs already described in speaking of the pastel vat; besides the ammoniacal odour, the bath always retains the peculiar smell of the woad. The pounded indigo is now added, and we proceed, in the manner already detailed, to reduce it to a state of solution fit for dyeing.

“The vats prepared by means of pastel have greater durability than those made with the woad; but it is thought that the colours given by the latter are more brilliant than those obtained from the former dye.

“MODIFIED PASTEL VAT.—This vat is about 7 feet in depth, and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  feet in diameter. It is made of copper, and heated by steam. The lid is composed of three segments, each of which is formed of two planks, about an inch thick, and strongly secured together by bolts.

“The beating is performed in the usual way, with sticks, before the first dipping, after having moistened the cloth in tepid water. This operation is not subsequently repeated.

“This vat is prepared with 13 lbs. of indigo,  $17\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of madder,  $4\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of bran, 9 lbs. of lime, and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of potash. Having filled the vat, we heat it to about  $200^{\circ}$  Fah., and as soon as the water is tepid introduce 441 lbs. of pastel. The liquor becomes of a yellowish-brown colour; small bubbles appear upon its surface, ordinarily at the end of four hours if the vat be heated by steam, but not until after eight or twelve hours where heat is applied by the common fire: in the latter case the mixture should be stirred every three hours. When the liquor displays the signs of fermentation, we add the above-mentioned ingredients, and cover the vat over; it is then to be set aside, stirring it every three hours, or oftener if the fermentative action be very rapid. Each time that it is stirred we are to add from 2 to 4 lbs. of lime; if fermentation proceed quickly we even use more, but in the contrary case less. After about eighteen hours we plunge into the vat three pieces of common cloth, measuring 20 to 25 ells in length each; when they have received six or seven turns they are to be taken out again. The object of this is to remove the excess of lime from the bath. The vat is then set aside for three hours, when it is to be stirred, and 13 lbs. of indigo, with 2 lbs. of madder, added to it. We now again apply heat to the mixture.

“If the vat contain a superabundance of lime, it will be unnecessary

to add more; otherwise we throw in a further quantity. During the night it should be covered with a cloth, and a workman left to watch it. It is usually stirred once before the morning; but if it be deficient in lime, it will require this manipulation to be more frequently repeated, and also fresh lime added to it. On the following day the stirring should be continued every three hours, and so on for the next thirty hours, taking care to heat the vat from time to time. On the morning of the fourth day the dyeing may be commenced.

“The temperature should be maintained at a pretty uniform point; if it be too hot the blue takes a red reflection, by reason of the madder contained in the liquid. A vat thus prepared will last three months; we may even work it for double that period, but after the third month it appears to lose some of its indigo.

“We maintain the power of the vat by introducing every night  $2\frac{1}{4}$  lbs. of madder. Some indigo is also added twice or three times a week. These additions are made in the evening. After the former, the vat is left at rest for forty-two hours; with the latter, only for twenty-four, at the same time observing the precautions already indicated. At the end of three months, or sooner, when we wish to stop the working of the vat, we exhaust the indigo; for this purpose we continue to charge it every night, for the space of a month, with madder, and dip into it white cloths, or more particularly woollen tissues, which become more or less loaded with the indigo. We must continue this plan until these matters take up no further colour. The dippings are to be performed twice a day at first, but once only towards the termination. Many dyers make use of this bath for preparing a new vat; but it is better to throw this away and make it up afresh with common water.

“INDIAN VAT.—These vats are of more simple and of more ready construction than the pastel or woad vats. We are to boil in water a quantity of madder and of bran, proportioned to the weight of indigo which we wish to employ. After two hours' ebullition, we turn into this bath some tartar-lees, which are also to be boiled for an hour and a half or two hours, so as to charge the bath with whatever soluble matter they may contain; after this ebullition, the bath should be allowed to cool, and the indigo, which has been previously ground, is then to be introduced. Supposing that we wish to employ 21 lbs. of indigo, the following would be the proportions used in preparing this vat:—41 lbs. of tartar-lees, 13 lbs. of madder, and 5 lbs. of bran. These vats are usually mounted in coppers of a conical shape; a small fire should be kept up around them, so as to maintain a moderate and uniform heat. The indigo will usually be found dissolved at the end of twenty-four hours, often even after twelve or fifteen hours. The liquor has a reddish colour in the new vats, and a green tint in those which are in a working state. The frothy surface, as well as the brilliant-coloured pellicle, become manifested in this as in all other preparations of a like kind.

"This species of vat has to be renewed much more frequently than the woad and pastel vats, from the indigo being more difficult to dissolve after a certain lapse of time. A moderate heat should be maintained in these vats.

"**POTASH VAT.**—This species of vat is extensively employed at Elbeuf for the dyeing of wool in the flock. It presents in all respects a perfect analogy with the Indian vat; in fact, the action of the tartar-lee in the latter preparation depends entirely on the carbonate of potash which it contains. The ingredients used in the preparation of the potash vat are—bran, madder, and the subcarbonate of potash of commerce.

"We obtain the deep shades in this species of vat with greater celerity than in all others—a fact which undoubtedly depends on the greater power which potash has of dissolving indigo than is possessed by lime. Experience proves that the potash vat has the advantage in point of celerity of nearly a third; but this is balanced by the inconvenience resulting from the darker shade, which we must attribute to the large quantity of colouring matter of the madder dissolved by the alkaline lee, and which becomes fixed on the stuff with the indigo.

"To render this vat in its most favourable state, the indigo should be made to undergo a commencement of hydrogenation before turning it into the mixture; for this purpose we prepare, in a small copper, a bath analogous to that in the vat, to which the pounded indigo is added. This bath is maintained, for twenty-four hours, at a moderate heat, taking care to stir it from time to time. The indigo assumes a yellowish colour, becomes dissolved, and in this state is turned into the vat; we thus avoid many delays and losses in its preparation, and, indeed, it would be desirable if a similar plan were adopted with all these compounds.

"**GERMAN VAT.**—This vat is of nearly similar dimensions to that used for the woad, being three times the size of the potash vat. Its diameter is about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  feet, and its depth  $8\frac{1}{2}$  feet. Having filled the copper with water, we are to heat it to  $200^{\circ}$  Fah.; we then add 20 pailsful bran, 22 lbs. of carbonate of soda, 11 lbs. of indigo, and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of lime, thoroughly slaked in powder. The mixture is to be well stirred, and then set aside for two hours; the workman should continually watch the progress of the fermentation, moderating it more or less by means of lime or carbonate of soda, so as to render the vat in a working state at the end of twelve, fifteen, or at the most eighteen hours. The odour is the only criterion by which the workman is enabled to judge of the good state of the vat; he must, therefore, possess considerable tact and experience.

"In the process of dipping we introduce 84 lbs., 106 lbs., or even 130 lbs. of wool, in a net bag, similar to that used in the woad vat, taking care that the bag is not allowed to rest against the sides of the copper. When the wool has sufficiently imbibed the colour, we remove the bag containing it, and allow it to drain for a short time over the vessel. We



operate in this way on two or three quantities in succession; we then remove the vat, and set it aside for two hours; we must be careful, from time to time, to replace the indigo absorbed by the wool, as also to add fresh quantities of bran, lime, and crystallised carbonate of soda, so as constantly to maintain the fermentation at a suitable point.

“The German vat differs, then, from the potash vat by the fact that the potash is replaced by crystallised carbonate of soda and caustic lime, which latter substance also gives to the carbonate of soda a caustic character. It presents a remarkable saving as compared to the potash vat; hence the frequency of its employment; but it requires great care, and is more difficult to manage. It also offers considerable economy of labour; one man is amply sufficient for each vat.

“The army cloth is usually dyed by means of the pastel vat, which gives the most advantageous results. We here make use of vats about  $8\frac{1}{2}$  feet in depth and 5 feet in diameter, into which we introduce from 361 lbs. to 405 lbs. of pastel or of woad, after previous maceration. The vat is to be filled with boiling water, and we then add to the bath 22 lbs. of madder,  $17\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of weld, and 13 lbs. of bran. The mixture is to be maintained in a state of ebullition for about half an hour; we next add a few pailsful of cold water, taking care, however, not to lower the temperature beyond  $130^{\circ}$  Fah.; during the whole of this time a workman, provided with a rake, keeps incessantly stirring the materials of the bath. The vat is then accurately closed by means of a wooden lid, and surrounded by blankets, so as to keep up the heat. It is now put aside for six hours; after this time it is again stirred, by means of a rake, for the space of half an hour; and this operation should be repeated every three hours until the surface of the bath becomes marked with blue veins; we then add from six to eight pounds of slaked lime.

“The colour of the vat now borders on a blackish-blue. We immediately add the indigo in a quantity proportioned to the shade which we wish to obtain. The pastel in the foregoing mixture may last for several months; but we must renew the indigo in proportion as it becomes exhausted, at the same time adding both bran and madder. In general we employ—

“11 to 13 lbs. of good indigo for 100 lbs. of fine wool.

“9 to 11 lbs. of good indigo for 100 lbs. of common wool.

“9 to 11 lbs. of good indigo for 131 yards of cloth dyed in the piece.

“MANAGEMENT OF THE VATS.—A good condition of the vat is recognised by the following characters:—The tint of the bath is of a fine golden-yellow, and its surface is covered with a bluish froth and a copper-coloured pellicle. On dipping the rake into the bath, there escape bubbles of air, which should burst very slowly; when they vanish quickly, it becomes an indication that we must add more lime. The paste which is found at the bottom of the vat green at the moment of its being drawn up, should become brown in the air; if, however, it remain green, this is a further

sign that more lime is required. Lastly, the vat should exhale the odour of indigo. We usually complete the assurance of the vat being in a good state by plunging into it, after two hours' respite, a skein of wool, which, on being withdrawn after the lapse of half an hour, should present a green colour, but change directly to blue. We then once more mix the materials of the vat, and, two hours after, it may be considered ready for dyeing.

"These vats, like those already described, are provided with a large wooden ring, the interior of which is armed with a kind of network, for the purpose of preventing the objects which are intended to be dyed coming in contact with the materials at the bottom of the vat; we, moreover, take the precaution of enclosing the wool or cloth in bags. These tissues, when plunged into the bath, should remain there for a longer or shorter time, according to the shade which we wish to obtain; one dipping, however, will never suffice for this object; usually we leave in the stuff for half an hour only; it is then to be taken from the bath, wrung, and exposed to the air. This operation is repeated until we have succeeded in procuring the desired shade; we ordinarily suffer three hours to elapse between each dipping. The heat of the vat should never be allowed to fall below 130° Fah. After each operation the bath must be well stirred, and fresh lime added; generally speaking, a pound a-day will suffice; we re-establish the indigo about every second day. When once this vat is well mounted, and we are careful to examine its working, we may dye from two to four batches a-day with it.

"When the stuffs have acquired the desired shade, they are first to be washed in common water, and then in a very weak solution of hydrochloric acid (about one part in a thousand); after this they are again rinsed in pure water.

"The Indian vat is much more easily managed than the foregoing; it presents less danger of failure, from the fact that it is quickly exhausted, and also from the fermentative process, which is so difficult to govern in the pastel vat, here not having time to change in character. It is prepared by first introducing an equal quantity of madder and of bran, and a triple quantity of potash; this is to be gradually heated until it reaches a temperature of 167° Fah., and we then add to it the indigo, thoroughly agitating the matters for half an hour. The vat is maintained at a temperature of 86° to 100° Fah., by keeping it closely covered, and at the same time the mixture is to be stirred occasionally at intervals of twelve hours. It should by this time present a beautiful green shade, the liquor being surmounted by a copper-coloured pellicle and a purplish froth. We may now commence the dyeing, following the same course as with the pastel vat; but the stirrings being here repeated much more frequently than with the other mixture, we can dye a larger quantity of wool within a given time. When the vat ceases to give a brilliant blue, we must altogether renew it; if it be merely weakened, we add to it a small quantity of freshly-prepared liquor containing a few pounds of potash, and a little less bran and madder. In giving the dark and the

clear sky-blues, we must be careful to employ a quantity of indigo proportioned to the colour which we wish to obtain, or, better still, we may use the previously exhausted vat for the dark blue.

“When exposed to the influence of the putrid fermentation, indigo is decomposed and loses its colour. If rendered soluble, it obeys the impulse communicated to the azotised matters with which it is brought into contact, although, if macerated in pure water at the ordinary temperature, it is itself decomposed with great difficulty.

“The pastel and the woad are very prone to the putrid fermentation, by reason of the large quantity of azotised matters which they contain, as do all the Cruciferae; they require, therefore, considerable care in their employment.

“When a vat is mounted, if the fermentation be allowed to continue unchecked, after the appearance of the blue froth and the other signs already indicated, the liquor will acquire a yellow colour similar to that of beer; the froth will become white; it will give out a stale smell and lose its ammoniacal odour; after a few days it will turn whitish, and exhale a smell at first similar to that of putrefied animal substances; then it will acquire the odour of rotten eggs, and set free sulphuretted hydrogen. The lime in the pastel and the woad vats, and the tartar-lee and potash in the other mixtures, are used for the purpose of preventing these accidents.

“Besides the oxygenated compound, which is formed by the combination of oxygen with the extractive matters of the plants held in digestion, there is a production of carbonic acid which saturates the alkaline lee, and forms a carbonate of lime in the pastel vat. We find this attached to the sides of the vat in such quantity, that the inside of these vessels becomes encrusted with it to a considerable depth. It is this product which dyers call the tartar of the vat; it effervesces with acids, and gives on analyses carbonic acid, lime, and a few particles of indigo. In the potash vat the solubility of the carbonate of potash prevents its deposition; but it is very probable that we have even here a formation of some carbonated products, perhaps in part formed at the expense of the carbonic acid of the air.

“The soluble extractive principle being the only matter which remains in solution in the bath with the indigo, the lime, &c., we have formed deposits which, varying both in their volume, and in the greater or less facility with which they are precipitated during the various periods of fermentation, lead to a more or less considerable waste of time. If we plunge a piece of woollen tissue into a vat which has been recently stirred, it will acquire a dark colour, and will be found covered with brown stains which are with difficulty removed. When the woad or pastel vat has been stirred, it need be left two or three hours only before plunging in the stuff, at least during the early months of its working, inasmuch as the pastel, being but slightly divided and attenuated, is readily precipitated; but when by reason of its extreme division, in consequence of repeated oper-

ations, it is thrown down with less facility, the dipping should not be performed oftener than three times in the day.

“The Indian vat requires less time than the others; we may even dye with it an hour after stirring the mixture. The potash, being soluble, forms no precipitate; while the ligneous fibre of the madder and the pellicles of the bran become deposited with great facility. We can also dip with these vats much oftener than with those made by pastel or woad.”

Most of the French and German dyeing establishments are under the direction of experienced chemists, and their methods of dyeing are systematised, and are therefore easily described in detail. In this country the practical manager may know nothing of chemistry, but follows his experience, which is often a true guide; but as each manager's experience, from several causes, may lead to slightly different views on certain points, there will be considerable modifications in many of the operations in managing a vat or series of vats for different purposes, although the principles may be the same. The details now given, although they may differ in some points from what is practised in this country, embrace all that is required in the management of the several vats; experience and observation will guide to modifications where required. It is when anything goes wrong with the woad vat that often the dyer is put to his wits' end, if he does not understand the chemical principles of the action. We have seen several weeks spent over a woad vat, and every conceivable filth added to produce fermentation.

A very ingenious method for setting a vat for dyeing cotton was introduced on the Continent a few years ago by using metallic zinc, ground to an impalpable powder, instead of copperas. The zinc decomposes the water, the hydrogen combining with the indigo forms indigogen, which is dissolved by the lime; by this method there is no sludge formed. The copperas and lime vat when stirred requires several hours, generally a day to settle, and consequently can only be used once a day; but by the zinc process the vat may be used several times a day, as after stirring the vat settles in a short time. Notwithstanding these advantages, this method has not met with general acceptance in this country. There being several apparently small matters to be attended to making it troublesome in practice, and when compared with the old and usual method there is less value got out of the indigo, in some cases to an extent of ten per cent. Were the vats taxed, as we understand they are in Germany, it would be an object to be able to use the same vat several times over during one day. The following materials and proportions will be enough to set a vat of ordinary size by this method:—

- 30 lbs. iron filings.
- 75 lbs. zinc preparation.
- 56 lbs. slaked lime.
- 100 lbs. indigo, finely ground.

Stir occasionally, and in six hours the vat may be worked.



## LOGWOOD.

Logwood is the *Bois de Campeche* and *Bois bleu* of the French, and the *Blauholz* of the German dyers. This wood is brought to us from Jamaica and from the eastern shores of the Bay of Campeachy, and on this account is distinguished in commerce by the names of *Campeachy* and *Jamaica* logwood. The former is considered much superior to the latter, and brings always a higher price in the market. Among botanists the logwood tree is known by the name of *Hæmatoxylon Campechiacum*. In a favourable soil it grows to a very great size; its bark is thin and smooth, but furnished with thorns; its leaves resemble the laurel; the wood is hard, compact, and capable of taking a fine polish; its specific gravity is much higher than water, in which it consequently sinks.

We are not aware who first introduced logwood as a dyeing agent; but its nature, and the art of using it as such, seem to have been but little understood in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, for we find her government issuing an enactment entirely forbidding its use. The document is curious, and affords a good proof of the absurdity of a government interfering with the industry of its subjects. The act is entitled, "An Act for the abolishing of certeine deceitful stuffe used in the dyeing of clothes;" and it goes on to state that, "Whereas there hath been brought from beyond the seas a certeine kind of stuffe called logwood, alias blockwood, wherewith divers dyers," &c., and "Whereas the clothes therewith dyed are not only solde and uttered to the great deceyte of the Queene's loving subjects, but beyond the seas, to the great discredit and sclander of the dyers of this realme. For reformation whereof, be it enacted by the Queene our Soveraygne Ladie, that all such logwood, in whoes handes soever founde, shall be openly burned by authoritie of the maior."\* This act was put forth in the 23rd year of the queen's reign, and was renewed again in the 39th, with the addition that the person so offending was liable to imprisonment and the pillory. Upwards of eighty years elapsed before the real virtues of this dyeing agent were acknowledged; and there is no dyewood we know now so universally used, and so universally useful.

Like many other valuable substances, logwood was long used before anything was known of the real nature of the colouring principle. Chevreul made a chemical examination of the wood, and found it to contain a distinct colouring substance, which he called hæmatine, a name which was afterwards changed to hæmatoxylin, to avoid any confusion with a substance having a similar name to the former contained in blood. Logwood contains, besides this coloring matter, resin and oil, acetic acid, and a double salt of potash and lime, with a vegetable acid. It sometimes contains also sulphate of lime, a little alumina, peroxide of iron, and oxide of manganese. These ingredients, however, vary; some woods having more than others, and others wanting some altogether. These varieties of constitution probably arise from the varying qualities of the soil on which the wood is grown.

\* Parke's *Chemical Essays*, 8vo, vol. 1., page 632.

We have frequently tried pieces of logwood as imported, and the average ash left after burning was 1·5 per cent., half of which was lime with a trace of iron, and the remainder consisted of magnesia, alumina, and silica.

Chevreul's process for procuring the colouring matter is by subjecting logwood, after grinding, to digestion for a few hours in water at 120° or 130° Fah., afterwards filtering the liquor and evaporating to dryness; what remains is put into strong alcohol for a day; this is again filtered, and the clear liquor evaporated till it becomes thick; to this is added a little water and evaporated anew; it is then left to itself, and the colouring matter crystallises.

An improvement on this method has been recommended by Erdmann. The extract of logwood being evaporated to dryness is pulverised, and mixed with a considerable quantity of pure silicious sand, to prevent the agglutination of the extract, and the whole allowed to stand several days mixed with five or six times its volume of ether; the mixture being often shaken, the clear solution is poured off and distilled, until there is only a small syrupy residue. By this means most of the ether is saved; and this residue being mixed with a certain quantity of water, is allowed to stand for some days, when the hæmatoxylin crystallises out, and may be dried between folds of blotting paper.

We are afraid both of these processes will be too tedious for adoption in a dye-house. We have seen some very good specimens of the hæmatoxylin obtained by evaporating a strong decoction of logwood nearly to dryness, and allowing it to stand for several days; a solid matter settles to the bottom, having a syrupy fluid above it; large crystals of hæmatoxylin appear to grow from the crust, giving it, when removed, a most beautiful velvety appearance. The crystals vary in length from one-fourth to five-eighths of an inch. They dissolve readily in hot water, but very slowly in cold; they are soluble in alcohol. When dissolved in distilled water, the solution has a beautiful rich wine colour; but when the least trace of lime or iron is present in the water (and very few waters are free of these), its colour is materially altered. The action of re-agents upon the solution is very powerful. Potash when first put in colours the solution violet; but this speedily passes into a purple, becoming brownish-yellow, and in a little time the mixture becomes almost colourless. The reason of this final change is, that a quantity of oxygen is absorbed; the hæmatoxylin is thereby destroyed, and the caustic alkali converted into a carbonate from the decomposition of the colouring matter. Caustic soda has a similar effect; carbonate of soda is much more mild in its action than carbonate of potash.

An extract of logwood is sold in France in a crystalline form, and is obtained from a decoction of the wood. The crystals are dark red, nearly black; they are hæmatoxylin with several impurities, but yield a very considerable quantity of colour.

The action of ammonia on hæmatoxylin is similar to that of potash and

soda, but much more powerful in regard to the changing colour, and less destructive upon the substance. Some beautiful and also amusing experiments may be performed with ammonia and the colouring matter of logwood. If a jar full of distilled water be taken, and a few drops of a solution of hæmatoxylin be added, not so much as to give a perceptible colouring to the water; on adding a few drops of ammonia, the water instantly takes a reddish tint, and changes so rapidly that in two minutes the colour is so dark a violet shade that the light is hardly transmitted; in a little it becomes redder and gradually the colour passes away. This experiment may be repeated by placing the jar simply in the fumes of ammonia; the water begins to colour at the top, and as the absorption goes on the colour passes gradually down, so that when it is dark at the top it is slightly tinged at the bottom, and so on till the whole is converted into a dark violet, seemingly by magic.

Erdmann has been able to collect this compound of hæmatoxylin and ammonia, and finds that the colouring matter absorbs three equivalents of oxygen under the influence of the ammonia, and is converted into a substance which he names *hæmatein*. This hæmatein combines with ammonia, and forms a violet-black powder, which is soluble in water, giving it an intense purple colour, which spontaneously fades and passes away by keeping.

The action of the alkalis upon logwood is similar to those described upon its colouring matter, and suggests the reason why those who add a little alkali to their logwood liquor while dyeing black, on purpose to give the colour of the logwood a richness and prevent the action of the iron upon it, invariably have a bad greyish-black. Stale urine, indeed, which is most generally used for this purpose, if not used cautiously, produces the same bad colour from the ammonia which it contains. For this reason, also, we advise washing from the lime, when it is used to pass the cloth through after being impregnated with iron, otherwise the lime on the cloth will cause the colouring matter to undergo similar changes, and give the blacks thus dyed a greyish appearance. Indeed, so delicate is the action of all earthy and alkaline salts upon logwood, that it has been proposed as a test for the presence of lime in water.

In the chemical investigation of logwood, the colouring matter has been obtained in two conditions, differing in chemical composition only in one having more water than the other; but these researches have led to some curious and interesting speculations upon the relation which different colouring matters of vegetables have to each other. They have not yet been sufficiently investigated. The following is the composition of—

	C.	H.	O.	N.	Water.
Protohydrate hæmatoxylin, . . . .	16	14	6	0	1
Perhydrate hæmatoxylin, . . . .	16	14	6	0	3

When hæmatoxylin oxidises in presence of an alkali, as when a saturated solution in ammonia is agitated in contact with air, the liquid becomes cherry-red, and deposits granular crystals of hæmateate of

ammonia; if the ammonia be neutralised with acetic acid, there precipitates a brown-red substance like peroxide of iron, which is termed *hæmatein*; its composition is expressed by  $C_{16}H_{12}O_6$ , differing from hæmatoxylin by having two equivalents less hydrogen. Potash dissolves this, giving a blue colour, becoming brown by exposure to the air. The use of caustic alkalies with logwood colours is always followed by a destructive result.

The action of metallic salts upon the colouring matter of logwood is somewhat similar to the action of these salts on logwood itself, varying considerably with the kind of acid, with the metal, and the particular state of oxidation.

Protosalts of iron give...Blue-black precipitates, permanent.

Persalts of iron.....Jet-black precipitates, which become brown.

Protosalts of tin.....Rich wine-colour precipitates, permanent.

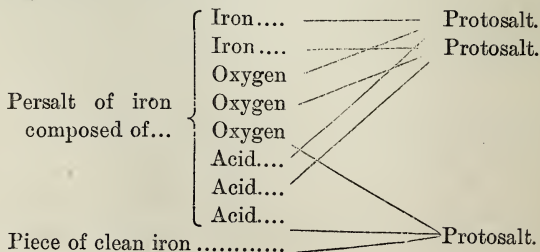
Persalts of tin.....Deep wine-colour precipitates, which become brown.

Acetate of lead .....Brownish-black precipitate, which passes to grey.

Acetate of copper.....Greenish-black, passing to brown.

Salts of alumina.....Wine-colour precipitates, permanent.

These are the principal metallic salts used with logwood, and their effects. The acid in which the oxides are dissolved affects materially the results obtained; the iron should be used in the state of sulphate or acetate, the tin as chloride, lead and copper as acetates. The protosalts give with logwood the most brilliant and also the most permanent colours: this should be constantly attended to. The iron protosalts, if exposed to the air, pass very readily into the state of persalts, especially if the salts be neutral—that is, have no more acid than is combined with the metal. A little free acid prevents this change, but generally produces bad effects upon logwood. However, where the use of a protosalt of iron is necessary, any persalt in the mordant may be reduced to the proto-state by the immersion of a piece of clean iron a few hours previous to using the solution. When an iron salt becomes peroxidised by exposure to the air, every third atom is precipitated as an insoluble oxide—the acid leaving this atom, and combining with two atoms iron and three oxygen to form a persalt (page 131). When a piece of iron is put into a persalt solution the following reaction takes place:—





This operation ought to be performed just previous to using the solution, which should be as little exposed as possible ; for when the salt is all converted into the proto-state, the atmosphere again speedily destroys it.

Decoctions of logwood are prepared in the dye-house either by boiling or by *scalding*; if the logwood is chipped or cut it requires to be boiled for two or three hours. This generally gives the purest and finest colours. When the wood is ground, the decoctions are generally made by pouring boiling water upon it. Some dyers put the quantity of wood required into a tub ; fill this with boiling water, stir, and allow the grounds to settle, and decant the solution ; but the best method is to use a basket lined with cloth—the logwood is put into the basket, and boiling water is poured upon it ; the clean decoction filters through. No more logwood should be taken than what is to be used at the time, as it loses its dyeing properties by standing ; the colour passes from a rich wine hue to a yellow-brown, and assumes a syrupy appearance ; and colours dyed by it after this change takes place are always wanting in brilliancy : besides, it takes a greater quantity of stuff to produce the same depth of shade. This may be caused by a partial decomposition of the colouring matter, or by the other ingredients of the wood reacting upon the colouring matter.

Parkes, in his *Chemical Essays*, has the following observations bearing upon this subject :—“ Considerable advantage is derived by the woollen dyers from the use of water in the preparation of rasped logwood. As the wood is cut into chips, they sprinkle it abundantly with water, and in that moistened state it is thrown into large heaps, and sometimes into bins of great size, where it is suffered to lie as long as is convenient. By this treatment the chips become heated, or they ferment, as the dyers call it, and thus undergo a very remarkable change ; for, after having lain a few months in this state, they give out the colouring matter in the dyeing copper much more easily ; and any given quantity of such chips will produce a more intense dye than could have been obtained from an equal quantity of chips which had not been thus heated. It is difficult to account for this, unless we suppose that the water becomes in part decomposed, and that its oxygen, uniting with the vegetable colouring matter, renders it more intense.” We have found that, by damping the wood with boiling water a little before pouring the necessary quantity of boiling water upon it, the wood, in the language of the dyer, is much better *bled* ; but we considered this to result from softening the particles of wood, and so making the colouring matter more easily dissolved by the water afterwards applied. Whether anything more is effected by the practice noticed by Mr. Parkes, or if any decomposition takes place, we cannot say. If by fermentation is meant the formation of acids, we know that acids do not produce the effects stated ; but if it is a fermentation caused by the decomposition of any substance having nitrogen as a constituent, the result would be the formation of ammonia, a substance, as we have already noticed, which has a powerful influence upon the colouring matter

of logwood, and extracts it very rapidly—a property possessed, indeed, by all alkalies and alkaline earths. This is well known to dealers in logwood, who occasionally sprinkle it with water containing a little lime, which gives the wood a richness in colour, thereby making the poorest woods, thus *doctored*, appear equal to those of the finest quality. Such wood, however, never produces good light shades. The presence of an alkali may be detected in logwood by taking a little in a tumbler, and allowing it to steep for a few hours in distilled water, and then trying the solution with delicate test-papers.

This practice of putting lime-water upon the ground logwood may be one reason why decoctions of ground logwood lose their colouring power so rapidly on standing; as all alkaline matters in connection with logwood, although they give to it, in the first place, a richness of colour, it soon passes into a brown, and the colour decays.

There is yet no simple and accurate process for testing logwood which could be introduced to the dye-house, although there are few substances of apparently greater variety. The differences, however, often consist only in the moisture and in the *doctoring*.

The method generally adopted for judging the value of logwood consists in comparing the colour of samples of yarn dyed by different specimens of it. A given weight of each of the logwood samples is macerated in boiling water, and then an equal quantity of mordanted cotton is dyed by each of the several decoctions: the depth and kind of colour produced is the test of the quality. With care this method is very satisfactory for practical purposes; but an oversight is often made in these trials in not taking into account the quantity of water which is in the sample. It is necessary that ground logwood should be a little damp, to prevent part of it flying away as dust, but it is also requisite to avoid paying for the water put into it at the same rate as for logwood; care ought therefore to be taken not only to dry the samples, but also to ascertain the water contained in them. This will be rendered more apparent by stating the results of some experiments directed to this point. Samples of wood, as imported, before being ground or chipped, kept at a temperature of  $212^{\circ}$ , as long as they decreased in weight, gave a loss ranging from 9 to 16 per cent.—average 12 per cent. The moisture in ground logwood, as supplied to the dyer, ranges from 38 to 46 per cent.—average 42 per cent.; so that the amount of water added or absorbed averages 30 per cent.

The amount of moisture may be tried by putting a weighed sample of the ground wood upon a piece of paper, or on a plate for some hours in the drying-stove, when no wet goods are in it. In the experiments, of which the results are given above, we used a water-bath, which is preferable. Samples to be tried ought all to be previously submitted to the drying process.

Water is not the only thing added to logwood: a little lime is occasionally added to the water, which gives the logwood a bloom, and makes it appear better than it really is. In burning samples of ground logwood,

and deducting the water that had been added, we have found the ash to vary from 2 to 2·3 per cent.

When the usual mode of testing is followed, by trying the depth of colour with a doctored sample and one not doctored, say half an ounce of each, the ground wood in each case put into a small basin, and filled with boiling water, and the decoction used to dye a skein of cotton, the doctored sample will be found to yield its colour immediately to boiling water, and the other slower—in which case, the former having yielded all its colour at once, may give a deeper dye than the other, and yet actually contain less colouring matter. The proper way of proceeding is to take 100 grains of each sample, put each quantity upon a filter, and pour boiling water upon them as long as the water passing through is coloured, then use each liquor with cotton so mordanted as to take up all the colour. The remaining logwood thus exhausted should be nearly colourless; and by drying and weighing them, an approximation to the quantity of colour may be obtained. Good logwood loses about 12·5 per cent after deducting all water.

The following will illustrate our remarks, and the rules followed by the dealer:—

A sample of Campeachy, Honduras, and Jamaica logwoods, ground and raised, as supplied to the dyer, put into the water bath lost in drying—

Honduras,	.	.	.	.	36 per cent.
Campeachy,	.	.	.	.	22 „
Jamaica,	.	.	.	.	33 „

Taking the samples as received, including the water, and extracting soluble by boiling water, they gave—

Honduras,	.	.	.	.	13·5 per cent.
Campeachy,	.	.	.	.	15·5 „
Jamaica,	.	.	.	.	13·0 „

But giving each wood the same quantity of added water and comparing the results, they stand thus:—

Honduras,	.	.	.	.	15·7 per cent.
Campeachy,	.	.	.	.	15·5 „
Jamaica,	.	.	.	.	14·6 „

Mordanted samples of cloth dyed by the wood as received shewed Campeachy the best, Honduras next, and Jamaica worst; but when dyed with the same weight of the dried samples Honduras was best, Campeachy next.

These remarks and experiments apply less or more to all the ground dye-woods.

We have already referred to the plumb tub and plumb spirits, and stated that if a salt of tin be put into a hot solution of logwood, there is a

precipitate formed. If the neutral salt of tin be added to logwood cold, there is a precipitate formed of a beautiful wine colour; but this precipitate is soluble in dilute muriatic acid—hence the reason why so much acid is used for the tin in the preparation of the plumb spirits. (See Spirits.)

The plumb tub is prepared as follows:—A decoction of logwood is made by boiling, continuing the ebullition until the specific gravity is 8° of Twad. This decoction is allowed to stand till it is perfectly cold; a quantity of tarry matter precipitates in the cooling, so that the clear liquor requires to be decanted. There is then added to it a quantity of *plumb spirits*, sufficient to raise the specific gravity to about 14° of Twad. After standing twenty-four hours, it is fit for use—which consists simply in immersing the goods for a short time, then taking them out and washing them. As this compound of tin and logwood is held in solution by the free acid of the spirits, whenever the cotton impregnated with it is put into water the dye is rendered insoluble; repeated washing is necessary to carry off all free acid. Occasionally, in preparing the *plumb tub*, it happens from some cause, as want of care in making the spirits or decoction, that the logwood gets all precipitated. This precipitate may all, or the greater part of it, be dissolved by adding hydrochloric acid; but in this case the tint of colour produced upon the goods will not be so blue: it will be more red, with a tendency to brown. Hydrochloric or nitric acid added to a cold solution of logwood will make a plumb tub without tin; but there being no base, and the solution being soluble in water, it does not form a good dye, being nearly all removed by washing. But if the goods be previously mordanted with a base, colours of various tints may be obtained; this may be resorted to when a *plumb tub* is not at hand.

---

#### BRAZIL-WOODS.

*Bois de Pernambouc* of the French, and the *Brazilienholz* of the German dyers. There are several varieties of this wood, which are distinguished from each other by the name of the locality where they are obtained, such as Pernambuco, Japan, &c. In the dye-house they are often all named *peach-wood*, from an inferior sort often used and obtained from Campeachy.

The Brazil-wood tree, called by botanists *Cæsalpinia crista*, is an American production, and, according to some authorities, gave the name to the country in which it grows, *Brazil*. The Portuguese government discovered the value of the wood, and made it an object of royal monopoly; hence it came by the now forgotten name of *Queen-wood*. It grows mostly in dry places, and amongst rocks; its trunk is large, crooked, and full of knots.

The following paragraph upon these woods is taken from Bell's *Geography*:—"The *ibiripitanga*, or Brazil-wood, called in Pernambuco the *pao da rainha* (Queen's-wood), on account of its being a government monopoly, is now rarely to be seen within many leagues of the coast,



owing to the improvident manner in which it has been cut down by the government agents, without any regard being paid to the size of the tree or its cultivation. It is not a lofty tree. At a short distance from the ground innumerable branches spring forth, and extend in every direction in a straggling, irregular, and unpleasing manner. The leaves are small and not luxuriant; the wood is very hard and heavy, takes a high polish, and sinks in water; the only valuable portion of it is the heart, as the outward coat of wood has not any peculiarity. The name of this wood is derived from *brasas*, a glowing fire or coal; its botanical name is *Cæsalpinia brasileto*. The leaves are pinnated; the flowers white and papilionaceous, growing in a pyramidal spike; one species has flowers variegated with red. The branches are slender and full of small prickles. There are nine species."

The species *brasileto* is inferior to the *crista*; it grows in great abundance in the West Indies. The demand for this wood a few years ago was so great, owing to its being a little cheaper than the other, that nearly the whole of the trees in the British possessions were cut down, and sent home, which Mr. Bell very justly terms improvidence. New colouring matters have taken the place of Brazil-wood, so that it is not now so much used, and is consequently scarcer in the market.

The wood known in commerce as *Pernambuco* is most esteemed, and has the greatest quantity of colouring matter. It is hard, has a yellow colour when newly cut, but turns red by exposure to the air. That kind termed *Lima-wood* is the same in quality. *Sapan-wood* grows in Japan, and in quality is next to the two named above. It is not plentiful, but is much valued in the dye-house for reds of a certain tint: it gives a very clear and superior colour. The quantity of ash that these two qualities of wood contain is worthy of remark. Lima-wood as imported gives the average of 2·7 per cent., while Sapan-wood gives only 1·5 per cent.: in both the prevailing earth is lime. The quantity of moisture in the wood averages about 10 per cent. That in the ground wood in the market about 20 per cent.

*Peach-wood*, or Nicaragua, and sometimes termed *Santa Martha-wood*, is inferior to the other two named, but is much used in the dye-house, and for many shades of red is preferred, although the colouring matter is not so great. It gives a bright dye. The means of testing the quality of these woods by the dyer is similar to that described for logwood, with the same recommendations and precautions.

The world is much indebted to the French chemists for their valuable researches into the colouring matters of the dye-woods. M. Chevreul long since obtained the colouring matter from Brazil-wood by the following process:—"Digest the raspings of the wood in water till all the colouring matter is dissolved, and evaporate the infusion to dryness, to get rid of a little acetic acid which it contains. Dissolve the residue in water, and agitate the solution with litharge, to get rid of a little fixed acid which it contains. Evaporate again to dryness, digest the residue in

alcohol, filter and evaporate to drive off the alcohol. Dilute the residual matter with water, and add to the liquid a solution of glue, till all the tannin which it contains is thrown down; filter again and evaporate to dryness, and digest the residue in alcohol, which will leave undissolved any excess of glue which may have been added. This last alcoholic solution being evaporated to dryness, leaves *brezilin*, the colouring matter of the wood, in a state of considerable purity."

Brezilin is very soluble both in water and alcohol, but from the hardness of the wood the colouring matter is not completely extracted except by boiling; even the method recommended for logwood does not dissolve all the brezilin. The decoction, when boiled, has a deep-red colour, but passes into a rich yellow-red on standing. Acids give this solution a yellowish colour, but render it unfit for dyeing operations. Alkalies communicate a violet colour, which is very fugitive:—

- Protosulphate of iron, Dark purple, not changed by standing.
- Persulphate of iron, . Blackish-brown, permanent.
- Chloride of tin, . . Changes to a deep crimson.
- Chloride of tin, . . With warmed liquor, a deep-red precipitate.
- Acetate of copper, . Dark purple.

Since these researches by Chevreul, M. Preisser has investigated these substances with great minuteness, and gives it as his opinion that the colouring matter of these, as well as of the other woods, are oxides of a colourless base. Thus brezilin is the oxide of a base which is without colour, and which he terms *brezilein*. Their compositions are—

	C.	H.	O.
<i>Brezilein</i> —Colourless base, . . .	= 18	14	12
<i>Brezilin</i> —Coloured substance, . . .	= 18	14	14

It will thus appear that the one is converted into the other by absorbing two proportions of oxygen, and that the reactions are allied to those of indigo and logwood, already described.

When a strong decoction of the colouring matter is allowed to stand for some time, there is found a quantity of crystals of *brezilein*. These have been carefully tested, and a formula somewhat different from the above has been proposed—namely,  $C_{22}H_{20}O_7$ . In the crystalline state it contains two equivalents of water; like the colouring matter of logwood, it combines with oxygen under the influence of ammonia, and gives definite compounds. Some of these reactions may be made available in calico-printing.

The action of chromic acid and of the chromates upon *brezilin* is remarkable: they decompose each other, and produce a beautiful reddish-brown. The action of bichromate of potash with the decoction of Brazil-wood has been long taken advantage of in calico-printing, and by proper modifications may also be applied in the dye-house. The remarks upon the pure colouring matter are applicable to the decoction of the wood; but

the wood contains other matters (small portions of astringent substance), which are also soluble in the water, and which accordingly modify to a great extent the results produced by the combined action of the decoction and the pure colouring principle—a circumstance which should be constantly borne in mind by the dyer. It is known that decoctions of Brazil-wood improve by standing, often to the extent of giving a half more effect as a dye, which is supposed to be owing to the oxidation and deposition of the tannin and other foreign matters injurious to the colour.

The nitrates of the metals almost all destroy the red colour of Brazil-wood, turning it into a dirty yellow. The salts of potash, soda, and ammonia change the decoction into a rose colour, which soon passes away on standing. Alum throws down a bulky red precipitate. This substance and the chloride of tin are considered the proper mordants for Brazil-wood; but all the colours obtained by this wood are exceedingly fugitive, losing their brilliancy on a short exposure to air. The sun has a very powerful influence upon colours dyed by this wood. By a short exposure the red colour assumes a blackish tint, passes into a brown, and fades away into a light-dun colour. These changes are supposed to arise from the colouring matter being decomposed into water and some other volatile substance, leaving a part of the carbon free, which produces the black; heat is also very destructive to this colour; nevertheless, the consumption of this species of wood is very great, especially for dyeing what are termed fancy reds upon cotton.

---

#### SANTAL OR SANDAL-WOOD,

Commonly called *saunders-wood*, is a native of the East Indies. It differs from Brazil-wood in many of its properties; it is very hard, and gives but a weak decoction in water. The colouring matter of this wood is different from that of Brazil-wood.

The opinion of chemists who have studied the colouring matter of this wood is that it contains two colouring substances—one in the younger and paler-coloured wood, the other in the old dark-coloured wood, which contains more oxygen. The colouring matter is termed santaline; its composition is given as  $C_{15}H_{14}O_5$ , or  $C_{30}H_{26}O_{10}$ . The young wood, by standing, becomes darker from absorbing oxygen. The wood seems to have several other colouring matters in it not yet investigated.

Alumina gives red precipitates with santaline, which have more of a violet tint than those of brezilín; but it does not react in the same manner with the chromates. Santaline is much more soluble in solutions of the astringent substances than in water, and is therefore boiled along with sumach, and is frequently used for woollens in dyeing browns and other mixed colours containing red. According to the investigations of the French chemists, this wood is a variety of barwood, at least the colouring matter is of the same composition.

## BARWOOD.

This wood is brought principally from Sierra Leone. Its colouring matter has been examined by MM. Girardin and Preisser, who considered it the same as *santaline*. MacCulloch, in his *Commercial Dictionary*, makes a distinction between barwood and camwood; but they are found to be the same in chemical composition, only coming from two different places.

The following is MM. Girardin and Preisser's description of this wood:—

“This wood, in the state of a coarse powder, is of a bright-red colour, without any odour or smell. It imparts scarcely any colour to the saliva.

“Cold water, in contact with this powder, only acquires a fawn tint after five days' maceration; 100 parts of water only dissolve 2.21 of substances consisting of 0.85 colouring matter and of 1.36 saline compounds. Boiling water becomes more strongly coloured, of a reddish-yellow, but on cooling it deposits a part of the colouring principle in the form of a red powder. 100 parts of water at 212° dissolve 8.86 of substances, consisting of 7.24 colouring principle and 1.62 salts, especially sulphates and chlorides. On macerating the powder in strong alcohol, the liquid almost immediately acquires a very dark vinous-red colour. To remove the whole of the colour from 15 grains of this powder, it was necessary to treat it several times with boiling alcohol. The alcoholic liquid contained 0.23 of colouring principle and 0.004 salt; barwood contains, therefore, 23 per cent. of red colouring matter, whilst saunders-wood, according to Pelletier, only contains 16.75.

“The alcoholic solution behaves in the following manner towards re-agents:—

Distilled water, added in great quantity, Produces a considerable yellow opalescence.

The precipitate is redissolved by the fixed alkalies, and the liquor acquires a dark vinous colour.

Fixed alkalies . . . . . Turn it dark crimson or dark violet.

Lime-water . . . . . Ditto.

Sulphuric acid . . . . . Darkens the colour to a cochineal red.

Sulphide of hydrogen . . . . . Acts like water.

Salt of tin . . . . . Blood-red precipitate.

Chloride of tin . . . . . Brick-red precipitate.

Acetate of lead . . . . . Dark violet gelatinous precipitate.



Salts of the protoxide of iron . . .	Very abundant violet precipitates.
Copper salts, . . . . .	Violet-brown gelatinous precipitates.
Chloride of mercury, . . . . .	An abundant precipitate of a brick-red colour.
Nitrate of bismuth . . . . .	Gives a light and brilliant crimson-red.
Sulphate of zinc, . . . . .	Bright-red flocculent precipitate.
Tartar-emetic, . . . . .	Abundant precipitate of a dark cherry colour.
Neutral salts of potash . . . . .	Act like pure water.
Water of barytes, . . . . .	Dark violet-brown precipitate.
Gelatine, . . . . .	Brownish-yellow ochreous precipitate.
Chlorine . . . . .	Brings back the liquor to a light yellow, with a slight yellowish-brown precipitate, resembling hydrated peroxide of iron.

"Pyroxylic spirit acts on barwood like alcohol, and the strongly-coloured solution behaves similarly towards re-agents. Hydrated ether almost immediately acquires an orange-red tint, rather paler than that with alcohol. It dissolves 19·47 per cent. colouring principle. Ammonia, potash, and soda, in contact with powdered barwood, assume an extremely dark violet-red colour. These solutions, neutralised with hydrochloric acid, deposit the colouring matter in the form of a dark reddish-brown powder. Acetic acid becomes of a dark-red colour, as with saunders-wood."

The difficulty of its slight solubility in water is overcome by a very ingenious arrangement. The colouring matter while hot combines easily with the proto-compounds of tin, forming an insoluble rich red colour; the goods to be dyed are impregnated with protochloride of tin combined with sumach; the proper proportion of barwood for the colour wanted is put into a boiler with water and brought to boil; the goods thus impregnated are put into this boiling water containing the rasped wood, and the small portion of colouring matter dissolved in the water is immediately taken up by the goods. The water thus exhausted dissolves a new portion of colouring matter, which is again taken up by the goods, and so on, till the tin upon the cloth has become, if we may so term it, saturated; the colour is then at its brightest and richest phase.

A good deal of attention and skill is necessary to know the exact point to take the goods out of the bath, otherwise the dyer may either have the

colour poor, or, by being in too long, give it a brown colour. It is not therefore every dyer who can dye good barwood red.

In dyeing with this wood it must be in contact with the goods: the particles of the wood must mix with the fibre. To have the wood in a bag even does not answer; and therefore great care is necessary in putting the mordanted goods into the dyeing bath, that there be no loose mordant upon them; for if there is, the wood (being in the bath) will take up this mordant and become dyed, and so retain a corresponding portion of the colouring matter, and to that extent cause loss. Inattention to this precaution is, moreover, frequently the cause of great irregularity in the shades; and even with the greatest care the *wood-grounds* come out of the bath richly dyed. Barwood is not used along with other matters for compound colours in the same way as the other red woods are for dyeing cotton; but it is occasionally so used in dyeing woollens. The dyer has no means of testing the value of this dyewood, owing to its insolubility in water. In a piece of wood, as imported, we found moisture 11 per cent., and only 0.5 per cent. of ash. In ground samples the moisture averages about 20 per cent., and the ash 1.2. The colouring matter is very soluble in dilute ammonia. By passing ammonia water through a weighed quantity upon a filter, until all soluble matters are dissolved out, then drying the residue, the average of good barwoods gives—

Lost, water at 212°, . . . . .	18.2
Colouring matter, .. . . .	8.4
Wood remaining, . . . . .	73.4
	<hr/>
	100.0

By neutralising the ammonia, the colour is precipitated as a lake.

It is recommended in some works upon dyeing, as a general rule, that as all colours that are dyed in boilers by having the wood and fibre together, the fibre begins to take on the dye when the solution is lukewarm; therefore the goods should be put in at that heat, and kept in till the proper depth of colour is got. This may be best in the case of woollen, and is necessary with some colours, such as barwood and madder, upon cotton; but it is not good as a rule for cotton. Generally, indeed, the quicker cotton is dyed the better; and especially when there is a mixture of colouring matters used, long working causes that colour which has the greatest attraction for the mordant to prevail at the expense of the others, even although the attraction when the goods were newly put into the mixture may have been simultaneously equal and mutual.

---

#### CAMWOOD

Is another species of red wood imported from Sierra Leone, and sometimes used in the dye-house. Its colouring matter is more soluble than that of barwood or saunders-wood, and is more allied to brazilin, and the colour obtained from it is more permanent, and in many instances much

more beautiful than those termed Brazil-woods. The precipitates from a decoction of this wood are more yellow than those afforded by the Brazil-woods, which explains why the colours dyed by it have a certain degree of richness not obtained with the other woods. It is not so easily affected by alkaline substances, and appears to contain more tannin than the Brazil-woods. With it—

Protosulphate of iron	Gives a brownish-black precipitate.
Persulphate, . . .	A reddish-brown.
Protosalts of tin . .	Give the solution a very bright carmine-red colour, but little precipitate.
Lead salts, . . . .	A rich orange precipitate, after standing some time.
Acetate of copper, . .	A light reddish-brown.
Nitrate of silver, . .	A reddish-yellow precipitate.
Perchloride of mercury,	Light orange by standing.
Alum . . . . .	Gives the solution a beautiful red colour.

It is used for wool more than for cotton, and may be used for browns and other composition colours where Brazil-wood is used; or as a substitute for many other purposes in which the best Brazil-woods are employed.

#### FUSTIC OR YELLOW-WOOD.

This dye-stuff has been long known. It is uncertain when it was introduced as a dye-drug, but mention is made of it in a book published in 1692. The botanical name of the tree which produces this drug is *Morus tinctoria*. It grows spontaneously in Brazil, and in several of the West Indian islands, where it attains to a great height. The wood is of a sulphur colour, with orange veins, and contains two colouring matters—the one resinous, and not soluble in water; the other very soluble in this menstruum, producing a deep yellow colour, having a light orange cast. This substance has been long used for dyeing yellow, is still extensively employed for producing that colour upon woollen and silk, and is the principal ingredient in dyeing greens upon these substances; but it is now seldom used for these colours on cotton.

The colouring matter of this wood has been studied by M. Chevreul, who has given it the name of *morin*. If we take 1 lb. of ground fustic and boil it for a short time in a gallon of distilled water, and then pass the solution rapidly through a filter to separate the woody particles, as the solution cools it becomes turbid, and a quantity of the colouring matter is precipitated. If allowed to stand for several days, a goodly quantity of morin may be obtained in a crystalline form. Every practical dyer who has used fustic knows that if his decoction of this wood stands over it loses its colouring properties, and that therefore it should be used immediately

after boiling. The yellow decoction of this wood gives, with the following re-agents,—

Alkalies, . . . .	An orange colour with a green tint.
Protochloride of tin, .	A reddish-yellow.
Perchloride of tin, .	A rich yellow.
Alum, . . . .	A canary yellow.
Acetate of lead, .	An orange-yellow, but dirty.
Acetate of copper, .	A brown tint.
Protosalts of iron, .	A greenish-olive tint, which darkens by standing.
Persalts of iron, .	The same.
Sulphuric acid, . .	A red precipitate by standing.
Nitric acid, . . .	A red precipitate.

The morin precipitated from the solution is soluble in water with difficulty, but dissolves freely in a weak alkali, from which it may be precipitated. The colouring matter is often found crystallised in veins of the wood. The base of this colouring substance is also considered to exist in the white state, but it passes into yellow by absorbing oxygen. Its composition is  $C_{12}H_8O_5$ ; the wood also contains a tannic acid,  $C_{18}H_{16}O_{10}$ , or  $C_{13}H_{10}O_6H_2O$ , which gives green precipitates with salts of iron, and gives it a value in the dye-house for olives and green tints.

This dyewood was partially superseded for the dyeing of yellows upon cotton by quercitron bark, and both are now almost totally displaced by bichromate of potash and lead in the dyeing of cotton. There are still, however, some greens dyed by fustic upon cotton yarn. The yarn is first dyed blue by the blue vat, and then passed through a little pyrolignite of alumina; it is next wrought in a hot decoction of fustic, which communicates a beautiful rich shade of green.

Light cotton fabrics, such as gauzes and muslins, are also occasionally dyed green by fustic. For this purpose the wood is used in the same manner as the quercitron bark. Fustic is also used with other woods for compound shades, as drabs, fawns, olives, &c., and is much used with logwood in dyeing black, both on cotton and upon silks and woollens.

---

#### YOUNG FUSTIC,

Called also *Venetian sumach*, was long used in France under the name of *fustet*, for giving a yellow dye. These names caused a good deal of confusion, which is to some extent obviated by the prefix *young* to this wood, the yellow-wood being *old* fustic. Young fustic is a shrub (*Rhus cotinus*) which grows principally in Italy and the south of France, where it is cultivated for the purposes of dyeing. When cut down it is stripped of its bark and broken into small pieces, in which state it is met with in commerce. This wood contains a large quantity of yellow colouring matter,



named *fusteric*. It is soluble in water, and in that state gives the following reactions with other substances: namely, with—

Tin salts, . . . . .	An orange-yellow precipitate.
Iron salts, . . . . .	An olive-green colour.
Acetate of lead, . . . . .	A yellowish-white.
Alkalies in solution . . . . .	Change the colour to red.

This colouring matter has a strong attraction for oxygen, a property which affects its use as a dye. The colours being fugitive, it is seldom used alone, but as an assistant to enable the dyer to obtain some particular tint. It is not used in cotton dyeing.

## BARK OR QUERCITRON

Is the inner bark of a tree (the *Quercus nigra* of botanists) which grows native in North America. Its dyeing properties were first made known to the public by Dr. Bancroft in 1784, and were very soon appreciated. Two years after he obtained an Act of Parliament vesting in him the exclusive use and application of it for a certain term of years.

A decoction of quercitron bark has a yellow-orange colour. If the decoction be made very strong, it deposits a portion of the colouring matter in cooling. It contains a great quantity of tannin, which is always dissolved in the decoction, and which gives the solution of bark a greater variety of uses. A decoction of the bark gives the following reactions with other matters:—

Alkalies . . . . .	Deepen the colour of the solution.
Lime, . . . . .	A precipitate of a yellowish-red colour.
Protochloride of tin, . . . . .	A yellowish-red precipitate.
Alum, . . . . .	A slight precipitate cold, but more when hot.
Acetate of alumina, . . . . .	A bulky reddish-yellow precipitate.
Acetate of lead, . . . . .	A reddish-yellow precipitate.
Acetate of copper, . . . . .	A greenish-yellow precipitate.
Salts of iron, . . . . .	Dark olive-green precipitates, passing into brown.
Hydrochloric acid and nitric acid, . . . . .	Reddish-yellow precipitates.

The pure colouring matter of bark has been extracted and investigated by Chevreul and Bolley. It is termed *quercitrine*, is a crystalline substance of a sulphur-yellow colour, and, like the other extractive colouring matters, is considered to be the oxide of a colourless base. The composition of quercitrine was given as follows:—

Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen.	Water.
8	8	9	1

But this substance having been further studied, these elements are arranged by the chemists in a different way, the yellow colouring matter (quercitrine) is now considered  $C_{27}H_{18}O_{12}$ .

A decoction of bark standing until it becomes stale loses much of its dyeing properties. The yellow matter is deposited, and what remains in solution is of a darker hue, and gives a dull colour when used for dyeing.

This was extensively used in the dye-house for many years for the purpose of dyeing yellow, and almost completely superseded the use of fustic, both from its beauty and also its cheapness; but its use for that purpose on cotton has been superseded by the bichromate of potash. Its principal use in the cotton dye-house is to form the ground for certain browns, and for dyeing green upon light muslin cloth; but catechu has nearly superseded it for browns. The quantity of tannin combined with it makes it very useful for olives; goods impregnated with iron, and passed through a decoction of bark, take a beautiful olive. When used for dyeing green, the mordant employed is acetate of alumina; but for yellow, which is only dyed upon yarn for particular purposes, the mordant used is chloride of tin (spirits).

When bark is used for brown upon yarns, the goods are dyed a deep yellow by being steeped in sumach, and then passed through the spirits, out of which they are wrought in a boiling decoction of bark, *raised* with spirits—that is, having a quantity of spirits put into the bark solution. The goods are washed from this, and afterwards passed through a mixture of logwood and Brazil-wood, according to the shade of brown required. And we would here draw attention to a very interesting fact, observed first by Mr. Thom of Manchester—namely, that amongst the colouring matters and bases there is an elective affinity, which, if not studied, will lead to several errors. We quote on this subject from Parnell's *Applied Chemistry*:—

“But the combinations of alumina, &c., with soluble colouring matters, seem to be cases of true chemical combination, taking place in definite proportions, and under the influence of different degrees of attractive force for different colouring principles. Thus, alumina has a stronger attraction for the colouring principle of madder than for that of logwood, and a stronger attraction for that of logwood than for that of quercitron. When a piece of cloth impregnated with alumina is immersed in a decoction of quercitron bark, it acquires a fast yellow colour; if the same cloth is washed for some time and kept in a hot decoction of logwood, the alumina parts with the colouring principle of quercitron to combine with that of logwood, and the colour of the cloth becomes changed from yellow to purple. If the same cloth is next immersed for a few hours in a hot infusion of madder, the alumina parts with the colouring principle of logwood to unite with that of madder, the colour of the cloth changing from purple to red. The quantity of alumina on the cloth does not appear to diminish while these substitutions are taking place. These interesting

facts were communicated to me by Mr. John Thom of the Mayfield print-works."

Now the same law is applicable when the mordant is tin; so that a quantity of goods having been dyed yellow, as described, and then put into a hot solution of logwood, a portion of the yellow is displaced by the colouring matters of the logwood and Brazil-wood. Every dyer knows, when he wants browns of a deep shade, how difficult it is to bring them up should he fail to strike the proper tint at the first dip; if he is necessitated to continue working in the logwood and Brazil-wood, he is very apt to run his colour poor in yellow by dissolving it off; and to remedy this evil he next adds fustic or bark, with very questionable success. We have often experienced these difficulties when dyeing browns upon cloth by the process described above, with an aluminous mordant instead of tin.

---

#### FLAVINE.

Several years ago a vegetable extract bearing this name was introduced into the arts, and is still in use; it is brought from America in the state of an impalpably fine powder, very light, and of a dun colour. It is used in the dye-house as a substitute for quercitron bark, and for some purposes is superior to it, giving a brighter colour. The mode of preparing it for dyeing is by dissolving it in hot water, which gives a sort of turbid solution. It should be used when newly dissolved; for, if allowed to stand, it deposits a brownish-yellow mass, in consequence of its not being all completely soluble in water. If boiled in distilled water until all the soluble matter is taken up, and the clear solution decanted, it soon yields a deposit. The colour produced by flavine is never good until raised. A colour dyed by it weakens gradually when a little sulphuric acid has been added, or when put through a weak sour; but what colour remains retains its brilliancy by raising, and in respect of this property it differs from bark.

The quantity of colouring matter in flavine is very great: its value as compared with bark is as 16 to 1, or 1 oz. flavine is equal to 1 lb. of bark. A sample burned left 4.4 per cent. of ash; it is occasionally adulterated with common salt. A solution of it gives the following reactions with salts:—

Persalts of iron, . . .	Olive-black precipitates.
Protosalts of iron, . . .	Deep greenish-black precipitates.
Protosalts of tin, . . .	Lemon-yellow precipitates.
Persalts of tin, . . .	Orange-yellow precipitates.
Alumina, . . . . .	A rich yellow precipitate.

Acids lighten the colour of the solution, and alkalies deepen it, rendering it redder.

A sort of English flavine has been patented in this country and in Germany. It is prepared by boiling a strong decoction of bark with dilute sulphuric acid, which seems to remove the tannin without affecting the colouring matter of the bark, by which means a brighter yellow is obtained. The colouring matter is deposited, well washed and dried, and sold to the dyer in a powdered state. It requires a boiling heat to dye with this substance.

---

### WELD OR WOLD.

This vegetable is extensively cultivated in France and many other parts of Europe for the purposes of dyeing yellow. It is found in commerce in small dried bundles. The more slender the stem is, the better is it considered for dyeing. Both the seeds and the stems are used, as they both contain the colouring matter; but the seeds are considered to contain it in greatest quantity. The colouring matter approaches very nearly to that of quercitron in chemical properties; and of all the vegetable dyes, it is least acted upon by acids and alkalies—which gives to the dye, so far as these substances are concerned, great permanence. But it has this counteracting disadvantage, that the colour rapidly fades or passes away when exposed to the action of air and light; it then becomes oxidised, and in consequence has been abandoned for almost all purposes where bark can be used. It is still, however, occasionally used as a yellow dye for silks and woollens, and also for some mixed colours. A decoction from weld is made in the same way as that of most other vegetable dyes; the wood, whether in bunches or chipped, is merely put into a boiler with water and boiled. Sometimes the bunches are put into a bag of coarse cloth and thus boiled. This decoction is of a yellow colour, with a reddish tint, has a bitter taste and a peculiar odour.

Alkalies . . . . .	Change it to a brighter yellow.
Acids . . . . .	Darken the yellow.
Alum, . . . . .	A yellow precipitate.
Protochloride of tin, . . . . .	A yellow precipitate.
Acetate of lead, . . . . .	A yellow precipitate.
Sulphate of iron, . . . . .	A yellowish-olive precipitate.

The colouring matter of this dye has been obtained in needle-shaped crystals by sublimation, and is termed *lutéoleine*. Its composition is given as  $C_{20}H_{14}O_8$ . We have referred to a use to which weld is applied in the making up of pastel and woad vats (page 259). The weld was long used as a dye for woollen and silk before it was used for cotton; its introduction as a dye for this substance is connected with a clever fraud. "In the year 1773, the sum of £2,000 was granted by Act of Parliament to a Dr. Williams, as a reward for his discovery of a fast green and yellow



dye upon cotton yarn and thread. This supposed fast dye was given by the combination of weld with a certain mordant, the composition of which the patentee was permitted to conceal, that foreigners might not enjoy the benefit of his discovery, while he on his part engaged to supply the cotton and thread dyers with his dye at a certain fixed price. The mordant used was supposed by chemists to be a solution of tin alone, or of tin and bismuth, which gives to weld yellow the power of resisting the action of acids and of boiling soap-suds, although it is not proof against the continued action of the sun and air. This defect, however, was not easily discernible, in consequence of the ingenious method which, according to Dr. Bancroft, the inventor employed to obtain a favourable testimony of the dyers upon the subject. He caused his specimens of dyed yarn to be woven into pocket-handkerchiefs, and gave them to be worn in the pockets of those who were afterwards to attest to the goodness of his dye; and as handkerchiefs worn in pockets were not exposed to the action of the sun and air, this want of permanence was not discovered until some time after the reward had been paid for an invention which proved of little or no value."

---

#### TURMERIC.

This is another substance formerly used in dyeing. It is principally brought from the East Indies and from China. It is the roots of a plant named *Curcuma langa*, resembling ginger; it is reduced to powder, and in this state is met with in the market. The colouring matter is extracted by boiling in water; and decoctions of it have a peculiar smell and bitter taste. The colour is very fugitive, fading rapidly in the air; and there is no proper mordant for it. We have occasionally seen it used for giving a peculiar tint to greens and light browns; but this only lasted for a short time. The colouring principle of this vegetable has also been extracted, and is known chemically under the name of *curcumine*. A decoction of turmeric, or paper dyed with it and kept from exposure, is much used in testing for the presence of alkalies, which give to the dye a red-brown colour.

---

#### PERSIAN BERRIES.

These berries form the root of the *Rhamnus tinctoria*, a plant growing in the Levant and south of France. They yield a bright-yellow colour, used by artists and occasionally by dyers; but the dye is very fugitive. There are two kinds of Persian berries; one large, plump, and clear in colour, the other small, wrinkled, and brown. The colouring matter of each kind has also certain distinctive properties, caused, it is believed, by the one being in full maturity, the other unripe. The large and mature berries are

the best, giving a greater quantity of dye, and of superior quality of colour. The colouring matters extracted from the two varieties are named *hyrso-rhamnine* and *xantho-rhamnine*. These have some interesting reactions with bichromate of potash, and other oxidising agents. This dye is still used in certain operations in the print-works, but not in the ordinary dye-house.

---

#### SAFFLOWER OR CARTHAMUS.

This is an annual plant cultivated in Spain, Egypt, India, and the Levant. There are two varieties of it, one having large leaves, and the other smaller ones; the latter is the better. It is only the flower of this plant that is used for dyeing. When the flowers are gathered, they are squeezed between two stones to express their juice; they are afterwards washed with spring water, next taken in small quantities and pressed between the hands and laid out upon mats to dry. The cakes thus formed are covered up during the day to prevent the sun from shining upon them, which would not only destroy the colour, but dry the cakes too much, and thereby cause further deterioration. They are kept exposed to the dews of night, and turned over occasionally, till dried to the proper point, when they are packed up for the market. It is in this state they are procured by the dyer. This dye has been known from the earliest ages.

Safflower is found to contain three colouring substances. Two are yellow, one of which is very soluble in water, the other in alkalies; neither is of use to the dyer. To free the safflower from these yellow-colouring substances is an essential part in the manipulation of this dye-stuff. The other colouring substance is red, and is extracted from the vegetable by means of alkaline carbonates, after the first yellow substance has been washed away. This red substance is used very extensively for dyeing the various shades of pinks, crimsons, roses, &c., upon silk, and also for the same colours upon cotton, and for lavender, lilac, pearl-white, &c. The mode of preparing safflower for the purpose of extracting the red matter from it was for a long time that recommended by Berthollet, and followed by all other writers upon the subject—namely, putting a quantity into a fine bag, “tramping” it with the feet in water until the yellow colour was dissolved and washed away; the mass left was then treated with an alkali to extract the red matter. But although this red colouring matter is insoluble in water, it was found that the bag in which it was tramped became a deep crimson-red, which could only be produced by its imbibing this red matter. It proceeds, we think, from a very fine powder, probably *carthamine*, adhering to the stuff like the pollen of the flower, and which floats away in the water. It is much heavier than the ordinary *carthamine*, and collects as a sediment

at the bottom of the vessels used to hold the safflower; but when tramped in bags, this powder is expressed and imbibed by the bag, which becomes strongly dyed, thereby causing a loss of the dye. To avoid this, the safflower is now put into a tub without any bag, with as much water as will cause the whole to float freely. A very little pressure or agitation is sufficient to reduce the cakes to a soft flocculent mass, which was the sole use of tramping. It is next removed to a cask or tub, provided with a false bottom, covered with fine haircloth. In the lower or true bottom is a plug-tap. This vessel is filled with clean water, which is let out by the plug at the bottom; it is filled again, and so on, until the water passing through is not coloured yellow. After this, there is put into it a measured quantity of pure water—about three gallons to the pound of safflower—in which is dissolved a little carbonate of soda, or carbonate of potash (pearlash does well), about an ounce to the pound of safflower. Some kinds require less than others; but care ought to be taken that too much is not used, as it destroys the brightness of the colour. It is well stirred, and allowed to stand for about seven hours; the plug is then taken out, and the clear liquor drawn into a proper vessel. This liquor contains the yellow and red dye which has been extracted by the alkali. The remaining safflower is afterwards washed by pouring upon it a little more water made slightly alkaline, and allowing it to steep a short time; but if fine light colours are to be dyed directly from the solution, this second extract does not answer so well, as the shade is not so pure. This second extract is commonly kept and used instead of clear water for the next parcel of safflower; and if it is wanted for this purpose, a little acid is added to the liquor, and a piece of old cotton is allowed to steep in it until it has extracted all colouring matter,—this is afterwards recovered for use, as will presently be described.

The liquor extracted from the safflower contains both red and yellow colouring matter. For this reason silk goods are not dyed directly by this extract, as the silk takes up a portion of the yellow, which renders the colour more of a brick hue than is wanted in the rose and pink. To dye silks, any old cotton yarn is dyed first by the safflower extract; the cotton takes up nothing except the red. This cotton is then thoroughly washed in cold water till the water coming from it is perfectly clear; it is then steeped for a little in water made slightly alkaline by carbonate of soda or potash, which extracts the red from the cotton, and forms the dyeing solution for silk. The silk to be dyed pink generally receives a *bottom* or *ground* by passing it through a weak solution of cudbear or archil, so as to form a flesh or light lavender colour, the depth being regulated according to the shade of pink wanted. It is then put through the safflower solution, which must previously be rendered acid by a little lemon-juice, vinegar, or sulphuric acid. When the safflower liquor is exhausted, the silk is washed in cold water, and finished by passing through a little water made acid by lemon-juice or tartar; neither vinegar nor sulphuric acid should be used in the finishing process.

To dye cotton pink the liquor is used as extracted from the vegetable; the goods require no previous preparation, except to be well bleached. The quantity of liquor used varies according to the shade required; one pound of safflower to the pound of cotton gives a dark rose, and the other shades in proportion, according to the tint required.

The goods are first wrought in the alkaline solution for five or six minutes and then taken out, and vitriol added to the solution until it tastes decidedly sour; the goods are again immersed and kept working in this till the solution is perfectly exhausted. The ascertaining of this point requires a little experience, as exhaustion is known by the operator holding a little of the liquor between him and the light, when, if there is no tinge of red, the solution is spent. The goods are now to be well washed in cold water; they are then finished by passing them through a little water, with just sufficient tartar to make the liquid taste sour.

It must be borne in mind that in dyeing cotton with safflower, the water ought to be pure, and always cold: a very little heat destroys the beauty of the colour; the goods ought also to be dried cold, and preserved carefully from sunshine. The colours obtained by safflower are the prettiest and clearest that can be had upon cotton, but they are fugitive.

The most beautiful lilacs, puces, and lavenders are obtained by safflower and Prussian blue; but it is one of the most difficult colours to produce of equal shade. The goods are generally first dyed a blue by nitrate of iron and prussiate of potash (see page 99), and then put through the safflower solution, previously made acid; but the rapidity with which the cloth takes up the red renders it almost impossible to get a perfectly even dye. Another method is to dye the cloth in the first instance pink, and then to dye it blue. This method gives a more equal dye, but it is liable to serious objections. The nitrate of iron used acts upon the colouring matter, oxidising and destroying its beauty and depth, thus causing loss, and making this colour exceedingly expensive. Persulphate of iron may be used instead of the nitrate, as it is not so corrosive, and will preserve the tint of the safflower much better. Copperas and red prussiate are preferable to either.

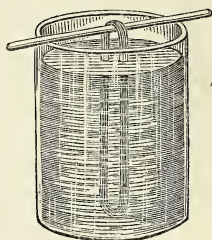
We mentioned in our introductory remarks that one essential condition in all dye-drugs, before they could be used as such, was that they should be in solution; but carthamus is an exception to this rule: when it is in a soluble state it is not a dye, and must be rendered insoluble before it will act as such. Although the cotton is generally passed through the alkaline solution before acid is added, still this will not produce the dye, but merely secures an equalised colour under the rapid action with which the fibres imbibe the solid colouring matter after acid is applied.

This fact favours the opinion that the cotton imbibes the colouring matters in the same way as they are imbibed by charcoal, the fibres of the cotton, like those of silk and wool, being hollow. (See page 87.) \*

This action is not merely a capillary attraction, such as shewn with glass tubes. When very small glass tubes are placed with their ends dipping



into a solution, the fluid is observed to rise in them to a considerable height inversely as the hollow diameters of the tubes, and then remain stationary; if such tubes are placed in a vessel filled with water containing the carthamus in suspension, although they become filled with the liquor, they do not exhaust it of the suspended colouring matter; whereas the fibres of the cotton, placed into this fluid, extract all the colouring matter from the water, and become literally filled with it. Thus, if we take a vessel filled with water, having in it carthamus rendered insoluble by an acid, and suspend a skein of cotton in it for a few hours, the cotton will absorb the whole colouring matter, and leave the solution clear, indicating thereby a distinct power of attraction exercised between the fibre and colouring particles, and also a circulation of the fluid through the fibre or tubes of the cotton, which, indeed, is true, more or less, of any solid substance so finely divided as the carthamus, and diffused in water along with fibres of cotton. In the case of precipitates, the more dense they are the smaller is the quantity of solid matter imbibed by the fibre.



When a little safflower solution has an acid put into it, and is allowed to stand for a time, the red carthamine precipitates as a fine red lake, and is sold as such, adhering to saucers, for dyeing ribbons, &c.

Although safflower colours may be the most simply and easily dyed of all others, still, from their delicate reactions with other matters, there are few substances subject to so much risk of being destroyed. If the water is not pure, they will dry brown. A little acetic acid, cream of tartar, or tartaric acid, is generally added to the last water from which they are finished to preserve the tint; but too much or too little of these will produce perceptible effects upon the shades. Great care has to be taken in drying: it should be done in a perfectly dry stove, not hot, and having ample space between each parcel, as a very little steam produces a yellow surface. The goods are generally dried in the cold; but care is necessary that no sun-rays touch them, also that they are not injured by steam or smoke entering the sheds where they are drying. If all necessary precautions are not taken, the dyer has the mortification, as well as expense, of putting the goods through at least the last acid solution again, and if they are much touched, he is obliged to re-dye them.

The view that carthamine, or the red colouring matter of safflower, is the oxide of a colourless base, as in the case of the woods we have referred to, has been objected to by many investigators, whose experiments and reasoning bear evidence of care and judgment; thus adding an interest to the subject of vegetable colouring matters, and shewing the practical man that there is yet before him much to be discovered, and that a careful observation of all the reactions and circumstances connected with his operations will stand a fair chance of being rewarded with discovery.

The composition of carthamine is given as  $C_{14}H_{16}O_7$ .

## MADDER.

Madder has been known as a dye-drug from the earliest times. The red upon the cloth wrapping Egyptian mummies is found to have been dyed with madder. This vegetable rivals indigo or any other vegetable substance as a dye-drug, both from the beauty and permanence of the colours it produces, and also from the variety of shades which it is capable of furnishing by the combinations of its colouring matters. It is the root of a plant or shrub called *Rubia tinctorum*, cultivated in the Levant and in several western countries of Europe, especially in France and Holland. The East Indies also furnish a quantity of it; there is a large importation from there of a species termed *Rubia munjista*, which contains more colouring matter than the best madders of Europe. Its culture has been often attempted in England, but without success. In the Levant the madder is collected only once in five years, but in France it is gathered every three years. It is only the root of the plant that is used for dyeing. In removing the root from the ground it is carefully cleaned, and, when the season is favourable, it is spread out in the air to dry. French madder is generally more imperfectly dried than that from the Levant, and consequently contains more water of vegetation, and to that extent it is comparatively less valuable. It is sometimes dried in stoves to allow it to pulverise. The dryness of the article is judged of by the fracture when a piece of the root is broken transversely by bending it.

When the roots are perfectly dry, if they are broken or cut with a knife, they present to the eye a reddish-yellow colour, which passes to a dense brownish-red when the piece is moistened; but the more yellow the root appears when dry the more colouring matter does it yield. Madder, when fresh, and after being cut or ground to powder (in which state it is generally used by the dyer), has a heavy sweet smell, with a somewhat earthy flavour. The products of grinding are generally of three kinds. The first is formed of the epidermis, or skin of the roots, and comes off in fine filaments by slight pressure. This is collected separately, and forms what is termed the *mull*, which is of very inferior quality. The second consists of the annular portion of the root, and the third of the ligneous or centre portion, generally these two qualities are mixed.

The varieties of madder in commerce are distinguished by the name of the country from whence they are brought, and by the appearance they possess in the preparatory process through which they pass previous to their reception at the dye-house.

LEVANT MADDER is in the form of shoots or fibres, of greater or less length, and very slender; brown externally, and pale orange-red internally. It is merely cleaned of earth and dried, and is imported from Smyrna, Cyprus, &c.

DUTCH MADDER is ground, but so very coarsely as to enable the buyer to judge of the nature of the root from which it is prepared. It has a greasy feel, and a strong nauseous odour. Its colour varies from a brown to an orange-red; the brown is inferior. It becomes damp when exposed to the air—a property which can be taken advantage of to judge of its quality: “if a little of it is exposed in a damp place when good, its colour passes from the brownish-orange tint to a deep red.”

The madder of Holland is said to be *cropped* or *uncropped*, according as the barky matter of the root is separated or not from the ligneous part in the process of pounding through which it passes. This madder is never employed fresh, but is kept at least a year, and it is better to be kept three years before it is used. It may be kept several years longer without being impaired. During the first years it is kept it undergoes some internal change, and becomes much brighter in colour; the powder adheres together, forming a mass very difficult to remove from the cask, and swells so that the bottom of the cask often assumes a convex form. If kept for too long a time it becomes deteriorated: the portion in contact with the cask loses its brilliancy, and becomes brown, and this change gradually extends through the whole mass. After this change has taken place it is unfit for dyeing fine reds or light tints, and can be used only for dark colours.

The marks of Dutch madder are—

Mull O, . . . .	} or {	Mull.
Superfine, . . . .		Fine pulverised.
Cropped or uncropped, . . . .		Superfine pulverised.

ALCASE MADDER.—This madder is met with in commerce in a state very similar to that of Dutch madder; but although the operation of cropping is generally performed upon it, that term is not used in designating it. It readily absorbs moisture from the air, and also acquires a deep-red tint when exposed in a damp atmosphere, such as that of a cellar. Like Dutch madder, it is not employed fresh: it is in its best condition when kept about two years, but it deteriorates much sooner than the Dutch by keeping, and also agglomerates into a mass and swells. It is inferior to the madder of Holland; its odour is more penetrating, and its taste less *sweet*, but with an equal degree of *bitter*; its colour is more yellow, passing into brown, with much less of the orange tint. A little experience in comparing the two sorts soon enables the dyer to distinguish the one from the other.

MADDER OF AVIGNON.—This madder is deservedly much esteemed. There are several varieties of it, some due merely to the modes of preparation, and others to the soil on which the plant grows. It is ground into a fine powder, which feels dry to the touch, and does not absorb moisture so readily as the other kinds of madder; but when exposed to a humid atmosphere, it also undergoes a change. Its odour is very agree-

able; the taste a mixed sweet and bitter, the last predominating; and its colour varies from a pink or rose hue to a deep red or reddish-brown. The best qualities are obtained from those roots which grow in marshy or swampy ground, and places enriched by admixture of animal or vegetable matters. The roots from such a soil are generally of a deep-red colour, while those from less favourable grounds are of a rose or pink tint. It is by mixing these kinds in different proportions that the variety of madders from this locality are obtained. The several qualities have various marks, besides the ordinary marks, as—

P. to signify	.	.	.	<i>Palus</i> (marshy).
R.	„	.	.	Roseate.
P. P.	„	.	.	Pure <i>palus</i> (marshy).
R. P. P.	„	.	.	Purest red <i>palus</i> (marshy).

The actual commercial marks, according to the order of their quality, are—

- S. F. for *superfine*—containing all the matter of the root.
- S. F. F. for *fine superfine*—containing all the ligneous matter of the root, the mull or bark or outside portion being separated.
- E. S. F. F. for *extra fine fine*—containing the heart or centre of the root, and the internal part of the oily ring which surrounds it; being also twice sifted so as to separate completely from the mull, &c.

These three varieties may themselves vary according to the nature of the roots and the manner in which they have been dried and otherwise prepared; but it is from these that all the various mixtures are made, and the tact of the manufacturers consists in mixing them so as to produce the qualities required by the consumer.

Avignon madder can be used fresh, although it is better to be kept for twelve months. It does not cake or agglomerate in the cask, but when kept too long it becomes deteriorated in quality, undergoing the same kind of decomposition as the other madders.

Madder is often adulterated by mixing with it brick-dust, red or yellow ochres, sand, and clay, or by adding sawdust of certain woods, as mahogany, logwood, sandal-wood, &c. The mineral adulterations may be detected by putting some of the suspected madder in a large glass vessel, and adding to it a quantity of pure water—the madder floats, and the mineral adulterations sink to the bottom. We thus readily obtain an approximate idea of the quantity of adulterating matters present, and by carefully removing the floating madder, and then filtering the liquor, the mineral substances may be separated and weighed. We may also proceed by burning a small portion of the madder, and seeing the ash that remains: we have in this way tried various samples, having  $8\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of ash.

When the adulterants consist of sawdust or other ground vegetable matters, their detection is much more difficult; indeed, the only means



likely to be at all successful is to weigh a portion of the suspected madder, and to try its colouring powers with a piece of prepared cotton: except where chemical skill can be applied, the colouring matter of the madder can be extracted and compared with other known qualities.

Some of the French dyers use a *colorimeter* for judging of the quality of their madder. It depends upon a principle similar to that of Mr. Crum's chlorimeter for testing the strength of bleaching powder (see page 67). A weighed quantity of madder of known quality is boiled, and the decoction is put into a glass vessel; similar quantities of the madders to be tried are treated in the same manner, and placed in glass vessels of similar size and form, and the tint of colour is judged by comparison. Of course the test solution may be diluted by a measured quantity of water, and by using a graduated glass their comparative values, estimated by the rate of dilution, &c., may be easily ascertained. But this method is subject to many errors, as when any adulteration has been practised on the madder, by addition of other vegetable colouring matters, such as sapan-wood, &c.

Madder has been the subject of more extensive chemical investigations than any other dye-drug, extending over a period of fifty years, and they are still incomplete. The first investigation into the chemical properties of madder led to the discovery of two distinct colouring matters—one yellow, which is very soluble in cold water, and named *xanthin*; the other red, moderately soluble in hot water, and called *alizarin*. The most simple method proposed for extracting alizarin was—"One pound weight of madder is mixed up with an equal weight of concentrated sulphuric acid, and the vessel closed up and allowed to stand in a cool place for three or four days: by this process all the constituents of the madder are converted into charcoal, except the alizarin. When this charring process is completed, the mixture is carefully washed and dried, and then digested in alcohol, which dissolves the alizarin and leaves the charcoal. The solution may now be diluted with water, and put into a retort, and kept at a heat of 170° Fah.: the beak of the retort being connected to a receiver, the alcohol distils over, and is recovered. Water and alizarin remain in the retort, which being poured out and filtered, the alizarin remains upon the filter in a state of great purity. It is of a beautiful red colour, and gives the same colour to boiling water."

Alizarin is soluble in alcohol, turpentine, naphtha, and fat oils; chlorine turns it into a yellow-brown; sulphuric acid dissolves it, and, at the same time, enlivens the colour; muriatic and nitric acids both dissolve it, changing the colour from red to yellow.

Alkalies, . . . .	A violet colour.
Alumina, . . . .	A deep red-brown precipitate.
Oxides of tin, . . . .	Precipitates of the same appearance.

Phosphates have a very powerful attraction for alizarin; so much so, that when animals take any madder into their system, the bones, which

contain a large quantity of phosphates, become coloured red. This fact is well known to dyers who are in the habit of using madder in their operations, and necessarily often tasting it. When taken in quantity, the urine is coloured by it.

From the above reactions of alizarin with other substances, it was supposed that it constituted the true colouring of madder; and means were soon adopted to separate this colouring matter from the vegetable, and use it pure; but it was afterwards found that a fixed dye could not be obtained by pure alizarin, and therefore it did not constitute all that was required in giving the dye. This led to further investigations, productive of further discoveries respecting these colouring matters, which led to the conclusion that madder has five different colouring matters, which have been named—

Madder purple,		Madder orange,
Madder red,		Madder yellow,
Madder brown,		

each of which may be obtained by the following operations:—

**MADDER PURPLE.**—The madder is washed in water at about summer heat, then boiled in a strong solution of alum for an hour; the clear liquor is afterwards decanted, and sulphuric acid added, which precipitates the madder purple along with a number of impurities. These are removed by washing with boiling water, then with pure muriatic acid, and afterwards dissolving in alcohol. Madder purple is soluble in hot water; and if pure it gives the water a dark-pink colour. If the water contains lime, a great part of the colouring matter is precipitated as a reddish-brown substance. Cotton saturated with the acetate of alumina is dyed a bright red, provided the quantity of madder purple be not too great for the aluminous base; if so, the colour will have more of a purple tint. A boiling solution of alum forms with the madder purple a cherry-red solution; caustic potash forms with it a fine yellowish-red colour; the carbonate of potash and soda have a similar effect; and sulphuric acid produces a bright red or rose colour.

**MADDER RED** is separated from madder purple in consequence of its not being soluble in a strong solution of alum. It is obtained by boiling madder in a weak solution of alum, by which a reddish-brown precipitate is obtained. This precipitate is separated, and boiled in pure muriatic acid, then washed carefully with water, and boiled in alcohol. This dissolves both madder red and madder purple; but by gently evaporating the alcoholic solution until it is very much concentrated, and then allowing it to cool, an orange-coloured precipitate is formed, which is collected and repeatedly boiled in a *strong* solution of alum, as long as the alum solution comes off coloured: the insoluble portion is madder red. It is a yellowish-brown powder, and imparts to cotton, impregnated with acetate of alumina,

a dark-red colour when the colour is in excess ; but if the mordanted cotton be in excess, a brick-red colour is produced. Caustic potash gives a violet, carbonate of soda a red, and sulphuric acid a brick-red solution.

MADDER ORANGE is distinguished from the two former colours by its slight solubility in alcohol. It is prepared by macerating madder for twenty-four hours in distilled water, the infusion being strained off and allowed to repose a few hours. The liquor is carefully decanted and filtered through a paper filter, upon which the madder orange remains. It may be washed with cold water, and afterwards purified by spirits of wine, in which it is not soluble. It is a yellow powder, soluble in boiling water, and imparts to cotton impregnated with an aluminous mordant a bright-orange colour when in excess. A boiling solution of alum forms with madder orange a yellow solution ; caustic potash gives a dark rose, carbonate of soda an orange, and sulphuric acid an orange-yellow colour.

MADDER YELLOW is characterised by its great solubility in water. It is a yellow gummy mass, communicates to mordanted cotton a pale nankeen colour, but does not of itself form a true dye. Madder which contains much of this ingredient is of inferior quality, as the yellow becomes so incorporated with the other colours, as materially to deteriorate them, and to require several operations to free the goods from it afterwards.

MADDER BROWN is a brownish-black dry mass, obtained in the preparation of the other colouring matters. It is neither soluble in water nor alcohol, is of no importance as a dye-drug, and does not enter into any of the colours dyed by madder.

MADDER ACIDS.—Besides these five colouring matters, there were obtained two acid substances, named *madderic* and *rubiatic* acids. They have no known dyeing properties, and are only mentioned here to shew the development which chemical research produced ; indeed, so important were any investigations in madder considered, that the *Société Industrielle de Mulhouse* for several years offered 2,000 francs as a premium for the best analytical investigation of this substance.

More recently, extensive investigations have been made upon the constitution of the different colouring and other substances found in madder, by Mr. Higgins and Dr. Schunck and others. According to the last named chemist, the madder root contains several distinct substances—viz., a bitter principle, which he called *rubian*, which by decomposition yields two colouring matters, *alizarin* and *rubiacin*, besides several other products not colours. Alizarin he considers the only true dyeing principle of madder root ; and it is considered that alizarin does not exist ready-formed in the growing root, but is the result of the decomposition of the rubian ; hence, perhaps, the reason why the full colouring power of the

root is not developed until after the madder has undergone a partial fermentation. Schunck dissolves out the soluble matter from the root with water, and decomposes the solution by boiling it with dilute acid, when the whole of the colouring portion is precipitated, including the alizarin. If this precipitate be boiled with water, the alizarin is dissolved, and the rubiacin and some resinous matters are left. The composition of alizarin is given by Dr. Schunck as  $C_{14}H_{10}O_4$ , by some others it is given as  $C_{10}H_6O_3 \cdot 2H_2O$ . Artificial alizarin is given as  $C_{14}H_8O_4$ . We refer the reader for details of their elaborate researches into the composition of madder to the *Phil. Trans.*, 1851, 1853, 1855. Notwithstanding these researches, which have been productive of great good, practically it is only necessary to consider madder as containing no more than two colouring matters, as was formerly supposed, and as not contradicted by recent research—viz., the dun or yellow, which constitutes the impurity of the madder, and which the dyer endeavours to get rid of, and the red colouring matter. The former, or yellow, does not combine with the cloth alone, and probably not at all, but it has a strong affinity for the other colouring matters, and combines with them when they are upon the cloth, and has to be separated from them by after processes. The red, which is a combination of the red and the purple, unites with the cotton, and is known to the dyer only in the aggregate state. This colouring matter is difficultly soluble in water, and therefore no strong decoction of it can be obtained by boiling, so that it is not very applicable for compound colours, and therefore of little avail in the *fancy* dye-house. Many extensive fancy dyers, indeed, do not consider madder as even belonging to their province. They use it very seldom, except to give a peculiar tint to some light compound colours, and for fast salmon colours, pinks, &c. When deep colours are to be dyed by madder, the goods must be put into the dye-bath or boiler along with the madder, in a way nearly similar to that described for barwood.

Madder in the hands of the skilful operator can be made to produce a vast variety of colours and tints, by corresponding changes of mordants, and the colours are all characterised by a degree of permanency which no other vegetable dye-wood produces. The operations, however, are generally much more tedious than those for ordinary fancy colours; and much skill is also required in preparing and applying the proper mordants for madder colours, and also in the preparation of the cloths for the different mordants.

MADDER PREPARATIONS.—It has been already stated that madder roots contain a variety of compounds besides the colouring matters, such as glucose, or certain varieties of sugar, which is extracted by means of steeping. The madder is ground and mixed with water, about a gallon to the pound of madder, and allowed to steep in this for a day. Sometimes a little sulphuric acid is added to make the water sour and so dissolve out any lime. This water is let off, and caught, and allowed to ferment, and



there is obtained by this means a large quantity of alcohol. The madder thus freed from all soluble matter is dried and ground fine, sent into the market, and sold under the name of madder bloom, or flower of madder, &c.

Another preparation which has now come into general use is garancine. A variety of methods have been proposed for this preparation, founded upon the fact that alizarin, or the principal colouring matter of madder, is neither destroyed nor soluble in strong sulphuric acid. The madder roots are ground or reduced to a coarse powder, and treated with hot sulphuric acid for eight or ten hours; the whole is then put into a large tank, having a false bottom covered with flannel, the liquor is let off and retained for making alcohol, &c., the solid is washed with water until all acid is removed, when it is pressed and dried, and then ground fine and sent to market. In these operations care should be taken that the sulphuric acid is free from nitric acid, and that the water used is pure. Hydrochloric acid is sometimes used instead of sulphuric, the process otherwise being the same.

Madders after being used by dyers have also been treated in the same way for garancine, in order to concentrate any remaining colouring matter in the roots. Different patents have been taken out in this country for this purpose. When the dyer has finished the dyeing of the goods, the contents of the boiler are let into a tank having a filter at bottom, the liquid being previously acidulated with vitriol to precipitate any soluble colouring matter; the contents of the filter are subjected to pressure, and afterwards treated with vitriol or muriatic acid, as described above, and sent to market. Garancine made from this waste madder is much inferior to that made from pure roots; still there is a considerable portion of colouring matter recovered which may be used along with good garancine. The spent madder, after dyeing Turkey reds, treated as described, yields little or no garancine, probably owing to the use of blood in this dye, for albumen, as already stated, has a strong attraction for the colouring matter of madder, and may thus exhaust the roots of colour. Whether this be the cause or not, from a number of experiments we have tried with spent madder from Turkey red, we have failed in obtaining any available quantity of colour from it.

One hundred pounds weight of good madder roots should yield about 40 lbs. of garancine. Garancine is subject to several adulterations, and varies considerably in quality. The best method of testing it, and one which should be made before purchasing, is to take, say 10 grains of each sample to be tried, and take an exact weight of cloth mordanted in stripes for red, purple, black, &c., and dye these, and compare the results both before and after clearing. A simple apparatus for this purpose is a copper pan filled with water, into which is put the vessels containing the dyes and samples, and heated by gas: bring the water in the copper vessel to the boiling-point, and continue until the dyeing liquors in the different vessels are exhausted.

The following is the action of garancine when put into different qualities of water and with re-agents:—

Distilled water, <i>cold</i> , . . . .	A pale yellow in about 24 hours.
Distilled water, <i>boiling</i> , . . . .	A pale reddish-yellow tint.
Spring water, <i>cold</i> , . . . .	Less coloured than with cold distilled water.
Boiling spring water, . . . .	Less coloured than with boiling distilled water.
Cold lime water, . . . .	Paler than with either cold distilled or spring water.
Water with a little sulphuric acid,	Greenish-yellow tint after some hours.
Water with HCl, . . . .	The same, but darker in tint.
Water with HNO <sub>3</sub> , . . . .	Still darker tint, passing into a brownish-blue.
Water with acetic acid, . . . .	Faintly yellow.
Strong acetic acid . . . .	Acquires a beautiful reddish-yellow colour.
Ammonia . . . . .	{ Becomes red immediately and after a few hours so deep as not to be transparent.
Water with ammonia, . . . .	
A solution of caustic soda, . . . .	Dark red-brown.
Water with carbonate of soda, . . . .	Bright reddish colour.
Cold alum water, . . . .	Chrome-red colour.
Boiling alum water, . . . .	A dark-red colour.

The mordants used for dyeing with garancine are the same as for dyeing with madder. It only yields its colour to the mordanted cloth, at a boiling temperature, and the water of the bath or boiler does not become coloured. A little sumach is often used along with the garancine for reds.

If the water used in dyeing be from a calcareous spring, a little sulphuric acid, just enough to give the water a sour taste, should be added; but when sumach is used, the acid is not required. The dye obtained by garancine is generally more brilliant and lively than from madder. In printing the colour is not so liable to run upon the white, and the goods are consequently more easily cleared than when madder is used.

The mordants used for madder are the acetate of alumina, acetate of iron, and mixtures of these; the chlorides of tin, acetate of lead, and acetate of copper, and sometimes ammoniuret of copper. The last two are often used as alterants. In using iron mordants it is of the utmost consequence that they be the protosalts; hence iron liquor is more frequently used than sulphate of iron, which salt is more apt to become peroxidised.

## MUNJEET, OR MUNGEET.

Munjeet or *Rubia munjista* has been tried as a substitute for madder. It contains more colouring matter, and is found in commerce in bundles, consisting generally of thick and thin stalks; the thin stalked variety contains less colouring matter than the thick, and has the bark on, whereas the thick stalks are *barked*. The stalks of the munjeet are very dry, light, and porous; the fracture exhibits a congeries of empty tubes. The powdered munjeet is composed of the thin and thick stalks mixed. Dr. Stenhouse has made researches into the colouring matter of this vegetable, and finds it differing from alizarin or purpurin, and has given it the name of munjistin, and its composition is given as  $C_8H_6O_3$ .

Reds dyed with munjeet are very brilliant, but fugitive, being destroyed by a short exposure to light and air. This vegetable cannot, therefore, be a proper substitute for madder.

---

ANNOTTA, OR ARNOTTO.

This substance, the *Roucou* of the French dyers, is obtained from a shrub originally a native of South America, and now cultivated in Guiana, St. Domingo, and the East Indies. It is termed the annotta tree, or *Bixa orellana*, and seldom exceeds twelve feet in height. The leaves are divided by fibres of a reddish-brown colour, and are four inches long, broad at the base, and tending to a sharp point. The stem has likewise fibres, which in Jamaica are converted into serviceable ropes.

"The tree produces oblong bristled pods, somewhat resembling those of a chesnut. These are at first of a beautiful rose colour, but as they ripen, change to a dark-brown, and bursting open, display a splendid crimson farina or pulp, in which are contained from thirty to forty seeds, somewhat resembling raisin stones. As soon as they arrive at maturity these pods are gathered, divested of their husks, and bruised. Their pulpy substance, which seems to be the only part which constitutes the dye, is then put into a cistern, with just enough water to cover it, and in this situation it remains for seven or eight days, or until the liquor begins to ferment, which, however, may require as many weeks, according to circumstances. It is then strongly agitated with wooden paddles or beaters to promote the separation of the pulp from the seeds. This operation is continued until these have no longer any of the colouring matter adhering to them; it is then passed through a sieve, and afterwards boiled, the colouring matter being thrown to the surface in the form of scum, or otherwise allowed to subside: in either case it is boiled in coppers till reduced to a paste, when it is made up into cakes and dried."\*

Another and preferable mode of extracting the colouring matter from these seeds, is by rubbing them one against another under water, so

\* *Annales de Chimie*, tome 47.

that the mucilaginous and other impure matters contained in the interior of the seed are not mixed. The colouring matter is allowed to settle, the water drawn off, and the annotta left to dry. When prepared in this manner, it has a fatty feel, is very homogeneous, and of a deep-red colour, which changes to dark-brown on drying. It has no taste, but generally a disagreeable smell, as brought into commerce. This smell, however, is not natural, but is owing to stale urine having been added to it, in order to improve its colour, and keep it moist.

The Caribbee Indians prepare the annotta, which they employ for painting their bodies, by smearing their hands with oil, and then rubbing the seeds until the pulp is separated in the form of a paste, which adheres to their fingers, and which they remove with a knife and dry in the sun.

Annotta of good quality is of a lively red colour when just taken from the seeds, and before it has undergone any change. It was found by Mr. John to contain the following ingredients :—

Colouring and resinous matters, . . . . .	28.0
Vegetable gluten, . . . . .	26.5
Lignine, . . . . .	20.0
Extractive colouring matter, . . . . .	20.0
Matter resembling gluten and extractive, . . . . .	4.0
Aromatic and acidulous matters, . . . . .	1.5
	<hr/>
	100.0

Boiling water dissolves annotta, giving a thick decoction of a yellow colour. Alkalies form with it a white precipitate, giving the liquor a clear orange colour, which acids make redder.

Muriatic acid has no action upon annotta; chlorine destroys its colour. Nitric acid completely decomposes it, forming several compounds which have not yet been sufficiently examined. Sulphuric acid poured upon solid annotta gives it a deep-blue colour, not unlike indigo, but it soon changes to a dark dirty-green, and then to a blackish-purple.

The colouring matters of annotta are easily soluble in alkalies, and in this condition they are generally used in the dye-house. The alkali used is either carbonate of soda or potash; and when light shades upon silk and fine cottons are wanted, soft soap is used. Sometimes a quantity of annotta is prepared and kept as a stock liquor; but this practice is bad, as the liquor soon becomes stale, and loses a great portion of its dyeing properties. It is best when newly prepared. A good method of preparation is the following :—Into a boiler, capable of containing 10 to 12 gallons of water, are put 10 pounds weight of annotta, 2 lbs. of carbonate of soda, and 2 lbs. of soft soap, and the mixture is boiled until the annotta is all dissolved.

Cloth put into this solution is dyed a dark orange, but every shade from an orange to a cream colour, can be dyed with it by merely using it in a proper state of dilution with water. The cloth requires no previous



preparation; but for fine light shades the colour is improved by dissolving a little white soap in the water used for diluting it. The goods are merely passed through the solution, and dried from it; but where the colour is strong, the cloth must be washed in water containing a little soap, to free it from the strong alkali in the colouring solution. The addition of acids turns the colours of cloths dyed by annotta to a yellowish-red, so that by passing a piece of cloth dyed orange through water slightly acidulated it assumes a scarlet or salmon colour, according to the quantity of colouring matter used. But all the colours dyed by annotta are exceedingly fugitive, and although neither acids nor alkalies can completely remove the colours dyed by it, still they constantly change and fade by exposure to the air and light. On this account annotta is now very seldom used in the cotton dye-house, and when it is used it is only as an auxiliary. It is, however, still used for silks and woollens, as the objections to its use for cotton do not apply so strongly in relation to those substances. It may also be used with propriety for mixed fabrics, such as silk and cotton, silk and woollen, &c.

Annotta was considered to contain two distinct colouring matters—a yellow and red—till it was shewn by M. Preisser that the one was the oxide of the other, and that they may be obtained by adding a salt of lead to a solution of annotta, which precipitates the whole colouring matter. The lead is afterwards separated by sulphide of hydrogen; and the solution being filtered and evaporated, the colouring matter is deposited in small crystals of a yellow-white colour. These crystals consist of *bixin*: they become yellow by exposure to the air, but by dissolving them in water this change is prevented. This colouring matter has been formulated variously, as  $C_5H_6O_2$ , and also as  $C_{12}H_{22}O$ , so that it is probable there are more colouring bases than one. The following are the reactions of *bixin*:—

Sulphuric acid gives	.	A yellow, which does not turn blue, as it does with annotta.
Nitric acid,	. . .	A yellow shade.
Chromic acid,	. . .	A deep-orange tint.

When ammonia is added to *bixin* with free contact of air, there is formed a fine deep-red colour, like annotta, and a new substance is produced, termed *bixein*, which does not crystallise, but may be obtained as red powder; this is coloured blue by sulphuric acid, and combines with alkalies; it is *bixin* with addition of oxygen. When annotta, in the form of paste, is mixed from time to time with stale urine for its improvement, it is more than probable that this improvement consists in the formation of *bixein* from the *bixin*, by the ammonia of the urine. This is rendered the more probable by finding the interior of the annotta yellow, while the red colour is much more developed upon the surface where the air has free access to it. This naturally suggests the mixing of annotta with a little ammonia, and exposing it to the air as much as possible previous to its being prepared for dyeing, as a much richer colour is thereby obtained.

The adulterations of annotta are oxide of lead and ochre. These may be detected by burning a small quantity of it in a china crucible: if pure, no residue will be left; but if oxide of lead be the adulterant, by keeping the crucible at a red heat, a small button of lead will be obtained; and if ochre be present, a red powder will be left.

The liquid sold in shops under the name of Scott's Nankeen Dye is a solution of annotta and potash in water.

Annotta is often used for colouring butter and cheese.

#### ALKANET ROOT.

This is the root of a plant (*Lithos permum tinctorium*) which grows in the Levant and several other warm countries. It was introduced as a dye some years ago, but with little success. The colouring matter is slightly soluble in water, but is rendered soluble by alkalies, to which it gives a blue colour, also by oils and fatty substances, which it colours red. It has the following reactions:—

Salts of lead,	.	.	.	.	.	Blue precipitates.
Salts of tin,	..	.	..	.	..	Crimson precipitates.
Salts of iron,	.	.	.	.	.	Violet-colour precipitates.
Salts of alumina,	.	.	.	.	.	Violet precipitates.

A variety of shades of lavender, lilac, violet, &c., are dyed by this colouring matter, but caution and experience are necessary to ensure success, and the colours obtained are easily affected by light—which, in our opinion, is the greatest barrier to its use. Colours formerly were generally dyed with it by giving the cloth an oil or soap preparation, the soap being combined with alumina to serve as the base. Its use is now all but obsolete.

#### ARCHIL, OR ORCHIL.

This colouring matter is prepared from lichens, a species of sea-weed. The most esteemed is that denominated *Lichen rocella*. The best sort comes from the Canary and Cape de Verde islands; but it is also found abundantly on the coast of Sweden, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales, and the people have from time immemorial used it for dyeing cloths. The colouring matters prepared from these lichens have been long known in commerce in the following forms:—

1. As a pasty matter, called archil.
2. As a red powder, called cudbear.

The details of the mode of preparing archil was long kept a secret, and are but imperfectly known even yet. The lichens are first ground between two stones to a pulp, with the addition of water, and afterwards put into a

wooden trough, having a tightly-fitted cover; upon the moist pulp is sprinkled a mixture of urine and ammonia, and the vessel being then covered, fermentation soon begins. The whole is occasionally stirred, and more ammonia and urine are added from time to time. After a few days, the colour begins to develop itself, but about six weeks are required to complete the operation. The whole is then removed from the trough and placed in casks, and may be kept for years. The keeping is considered to improve the intensity of the colour, which should be of a deep reddish-violet.

Within these few years, the colouring matters obtained from lichens have been the subject of investigation by Dr. Stenhouse, Dr. Schunck, and others, who have obtained a variety of interesting chemical products, some of which give colours of various tints. In no case do the lichens contain colours ready made, but they contain several colourless acids, which, under the influence of alkalis and oxygen, produce new acid compounds and a colourless neutral substance termed orcin,  $C_7H_8O_2$ , which is the true colour-producing body; under the influence of ammonia it absorbs oxygen, and is converted into a substance termed orcein,  $C_7H_7NO_3$ , which is the colouring matter. Archil liquor is now prepared by digesting the lichens in a hot solution of ammonia, allowing it to stand for a few hours, and exposing the liquor drawn off in jars to the air for several weeks, and then concentrating by evaporation. Cudbear is prepared by first freeing the lichen as much as possible from earthy impurity, and then adding ammonia and allowing the mixture to stand for several weeks exposed to the air, keeping it moist with ammonia; the whole is then converted into a paste, which is afterwards dried and reduced to powder, and constitutes cudbear. To give the dyer some idea of what has been already done, and the various substances obtained from these lichens, we append a list, shewing the formulæ of composition, which will illustrate how small a change is required to produce a distinct substance:—

	C.	H.	O.
Usnic acid, . . . . .	19	16	7
Erythric, . . . . .	20	22	10
Picro-erythric, . . . . .	12	16	7
Erythrite, . . . . .	4	10	4
Roccellinin, . . . . .	18	16	7
Evernic acid, . . . . .	17	16	7
Evernesic acid, . . . . .	9	10	4
Lacanoric or orcellic acid, . . . . .	8	8	4
Orcellic or (lacanoric) ether, . . . . .	10	12	4
Parellic acid, . . . . .	9	6	4
Gyrophoric acid, . . . . .	36	36	15
Orcin, . . . . .	7	8	2 H <sub>2</sub> O.
Beta-orcin, . . . . .	8	10	2
Orcein, . . . . .	7	7	3 N.

The following is the action of various substances upon a solution of archil or cudbear:—

Acids change the colour to	.	Bright red.
Alkalies „ „	.	A blue.
Sea-salt gives it	.	A crimson tint.
Sal-ammoniac „	.	A ruby-red tint.
Alum throws down	.	A brownish-red precipitate.
Salts of tin „	.	Red precipitates.
Salts of iron „	.	Red-brown precipitates.
Salts of copper „	.	Cherry-brown precipitates.

There are no mordants required for dyeing with archil. It is not used for cotton dyeing, but extensively for silk and woollen, imparting very beautiful tints, which, however, are not permanent. It is often used as a bottom colour for reds which are to be dyed by safflower, cochineal, &c., and gives depth and a beautiful rich crimson tint to the colours so dyed.

Litmus is made from the archil liquor as a sort of pigment, made up with chalk or plaster of Paris into small square cakes. It is not much used in the dye-house, but is used as a delicate test for the presence of free acids or alkalies, giving a blue with the latter and a red with the former.

---

#### SOORANJEE.

This substance was investigated lately by the late Professor Anderson, from whose paper we give the following account, and we give it entire as being interesting from the views given by a chemist not a dyer on certain principles of dyeing:—

“The subject of these experiments was imported into Glasgow some time since, under the name of Sooranjee, with the intention of introducing it as a substitute for madder in the art of dyeing. For this purpose it was, on its arrival, submitted for trial to some of the most experienced and skilful calico-printers in Glasgow, all of whom concurred in declaring it not to be a dye at all, and to be totally destitute of useful applications. My friend, Professor Balfour, happening to hear of this circumstance, was so good as to obtain for me a quantity of the root, which has enabled me to submit it to a chemical investigation.

“Sooranjee is the root of the plant, and is imported cut up into pieces from one to four inches in length, and varying in diameter from half down to nearly an eighth of an inch. On the small pieces the bark is thick, and forms a large proportion of the whole root, but on the larger fragments it is much thinner. Its external colour is pale greyish-brown; but when broken across, it presents colours varying from fine yellow to brownish-red, and confined principally to the bark. The wood itself has only a slight



yellowish shade, deepest in the centre, and scarcely apparent close to the bark; but it is coloured dark red by alkalies, indicating the presence of a certain quantity of colouring matter in it. The bark is readily detached, and its inner surface, as well as that of the wood, has a peculiar silvery appearance, most apparent on the large pieces, and almost entirely absent on the smaller. Boiled with water, it gives a wine-yellow decoction, and with alcohol a deep-red tincture.

"Solution of morindine gives with subacetate of lead a precipitate depositing itself in crimson flocks, which is extremely unstable, and cannot be washed without losing colouring matter. With solutions of baryta, strontia, and lime, it gives bulky-red precipitates, sparingly soluble in water. Perchloride of iron produces a dark-brown colour, but no precipitate. When its ammoniacal solution is added to that of alum, the alumina precipitated carries down with it the morindine as a reddish-lake; and when added to perchloride of iron, a brown precipitate is thrown down which cannot be distinguished from pure peroxide of iron, but which contains morindine, as the supernatant fluid is colourless.

"The formula thus ascertained brings out an interesting relation between morindine and the colouring matters of madder, and more especially that one which is obtained by the sublimation of madder purple. From his analysis of this substance, Schiel deduces the formula  $C_7H_4O_4$ . As this, however, is no more than the simplest expression of the analytical results, and as all the other madder-colouring matters examined contained twenty-eight equivalents of carbon, we are justified in supposing its real constitution to be represented by quadruple of that formula, or  $C_{28}H_{16}O_{16}$ , which differs from that of morindine by a single equivalent of water only. The unsublimed madder purple is also connected, though more remotely, with morindine, and differs only by containing five equivalents of hydrogen less, its formula according to Schiel being  $C_{28}H_{10}O_{15}$ .

"This similarity, however, does not extend itself to their properties as dyes, in which respect they differ in a very remarkable manner. I have already mentioned that the calico-printers had entirely failed in producing a colour by means of sooranjee: and this I have fully confirmed as regards the common mordants. I digested morindine for a long time, in a gradually increasing heat, with small pieces of cloth mordanted with alumina and iron; but nothing attached itself, and the mordants, after boiling for a minute or two with soap, were found to be unchanged. Even with the root itself alum mordant only acquired a slight reddish-grey shade, and iron became scarcely appreciably darker in colour. The case was different, however, when cloth mordanted for Turkey red was employed. I obtained from Glasgow pieces of calico prepared for Turkey red both by the old and new processes; and I found that both acquired with morindine, in the course of a couple of hours, or even less, a dark brownish-red colour, devoid of beauty, but perfectly fixed. These observations agree with the account given by Mr. Hunter of the method of dyeing with the *M. citrifolia* employed by the Hindoos. The cloth is first soaked in an imperfect

soap, made by mixing the oil of the *Sesamum Orientale* with soda-ley. After rinsing and drying, it is treated with an infusion of myrobalans (the astringent fruit of the *Terminalia chebula*), and exposed for four or five days in the sun. It is then steeped in solution of alum, squeezed, and again exposed for four or five days. On the other hand, the powdered roots of the *Morinda* are well rubbed with oil of sesamum, and mixed with flowers of the *Lythrum fruticosum* (Roxburgh), or a corresponding quantity of *purwas* (the nut-gall of a species of *Mimosa*). The whole is introduced along with the cotton into a large quantity of water, and kept over a gentle fire for three hours, when the temperature is brought to the boiling point. The red colour so obtained is, according to Mr. Hunter, more prized for its durability than its beauty. This is simply a rude process of Turkey red dyeing. He also mentions that, by means of iron mordant, a lasting purple or chocolate is obtained; but in this case the colour is probably affected by the tannin of the astringent matters employed in the process.

“Morindine is a true colouring matter, and is capable of attaching itself to common mordants. It gives with alumina a deep rose-red, and with iron violet and black; but the colours are not very stable, and it has a strong tendency to attach itself to the unmordanted parts of the cloth and to degrade the white. Morindine after treatment with sulphuric acid is capable of attaching itself to ordinary mordants.

“The discovery of a peculiar colouring matter capable of fixing itself exclusively on Turkey red mordant, is of interest as establishing the existence of a peculiar class of dyes hitherto totally unsuspected, a class which may be extensive, and may yield important substances. It may serve also in some respects to clear up the *rationale* of the process of Turkey red dyeing, which has long been a sort of opprobrium of chemistry. Although that process has been practised for a century in Europe, and has undergone a variety of improvements, no clear explanation of it was for a long time given; but it was supposed that, by the action of the dung, of which large quantities are employed, the cloth underwent a species of *animalisation*, as it was called, by which it acquired the property of receiving a finer and more brilliant colour than could be attached to it by purely mineral mordants. Recent experiments have, however, shewn that the oil, which is largely employed in the process, undergoes decomposition by long exposure to the air in contact with decomposing animal matter, and is converted into a sort of resinous matter, which constitutes the real mordant for Turkey red. This has been pretty clearly made out by the experiments of Weissgerber. He found that when cloth had been treated with oil, so as to give when dyed a fine rose-red colour, he could, by digestion with acetone, extract from it the altered oil; and as it was removed, the cloth gradually lost the power of attracting the colouring matter of madder, until, when it was entirely separated, the cloth passed through the dye without acquiring any colour. On the other hand, he found that by applying the substance extracted by acetone in sufficient quantity to cloth, he could obtain the richest and deepest colours with

madder, without the addition of any other substance whatsoever. These observations receive additional confirmation from the experiments detailed in the present paper, as it must be sufficiently obvious that the dark-red colour obtained on Turkey red mordant with morindine must be entirely irrespective of the alumina, on which that substance is incapable of fixing.

“I fully agree with the opinion expressed by Persoz, that the use of alum mordant, which is at present always employed in Turkey red dyeing, will be entirely abandoned as soon as calico-printers have learned the method of modifying at will the oil which they employ, so as to bring it at once into the state in which it acts as a mordant. Some steps have been made in this direction by making use of some chemical agents, as nitric acid and chloride of lime, for the purpose of acting on the oil; but the improvements which have been effected stop far short of what I believe will eventually be effected when the system of pure empiricism, which has been all along employed in this particular process of dyeing, is abandoned, and the subject submitted to really scientific investigation. It is understood that M. Chevreul has entered upon the inquiry, and in his hands there is little doubt but that it will meet with a satisfactory solution.”—From the *Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh*.

These hopes of the professor have not been yet realised; but so far as this colouring matter is concerned, there is a field of inquiry yet open to the practical dyer. Many years ago Bancroft and others dyed with this vegetable; and it is known that the Hindoos have used sooranjee for centuries for dyeing reds; it is also used by the Javanese for the same purpose.

---

#### CARAJURU, OR CHICA,

Is a vegetable substance known by these names, and is obtained from America, where it is used by the natives as a dye. The following short extracts from a paper by J. J. Virey, will shew its character and properties:—

“M. de Humboldt has described in the *Annales de Chimie et Physique* (vol. xxvii. p. 315), under the name of *Chica*, a vegetable product of a brick-red colour, obtained by macerating in water the leaves of *Bignoniù chica*, a shrub of the family of the *Bignoniaceæ*, from equinoctial America.

“As we have obtained from Para in Brazil, under the denomination *Crajuru* or *Carajuru*, a substance not only analogous in its physical and chemical characters to the *Chica*, but of a red-brown violet tint much more beautiful and rich, and like vermilion, whilst the other appeared duller and much inferior, it may be useful to give fresh details about this product, which has been imported to be tried in dyeing.

“The *Crajuru* or *Carajuru* (*Carucuru* according to others) is a kind of powder or fecula, in pieces somewhat light, inodorous, insipid or slightly bitter, not soluble in water, but soluble in alcohol, ether, and the oils and

fats, without being completely resinous, burning with a flame, but leaving a quantity of grey cinders. It is wholly dissolved by alkalies, and acids precipitate it without greatly altering its colour, if they are not concentrated.

"The *Crajurú* now brought into Europe must furnish a rather strong and beautiful dye, the brilliancy of which appears quite superior to that of orleans."

According to Boussingault, chica contains a yellowish-orange colour, which has been investigated by Dr. Erdmann, who gives the formula  $C_8H_8O_3$  as its composition. It is found to dye deep shades upon wool with muriate of tin, and after treating the colouring matter with an acid and washing, it gives a deep-red colour, similar to lac-dye upon cotton mordanted either with tin or alumina.

---

#### WONGSHY

Is another vegetable substance. An investigation of its properties was made by W. Stein, from whose paper we extract the following account:—

"A few years ago a new material for dyeing yellow, called *wongshy*, was exported on experiment from Batavia to Hamburg, for a sample of which I am indebted to the kindness of M. Vollsack, merchant. Whether it has hitherto been applied as a dyeing material, and with what results, could not be ascertained. The following notice, therefore, will probably not be without interest:—

"The new dyeing material consists of the seed-vessels of a plant, which, according to the information from M. Reichenbach, belongs to the family of the *Gentianeæ*. The form of the unilocular capsules is longish-ovate, drawn out to a point next the end of the peduncle, and crowned upon the opposite and more obtuse one with the dried six-lobed calyx. They vary in size, but on an average their length is 1·5 to 2 inches, and the diameter at the thickest part 0·5; the colour is not uniformly reddish-yellow, but at some places darker, at others lighter. The surface is more or less irregularly waved with six to eight longitudinal ribs. The odour resembles saffron, and subsequently honey. The shell is pretty hard and brittle, but becomes quickly mucilaginous when chewed, imparting a yellow colour to the saliva, with a slightly bitter taste; it swells up considerably in water. Inside the capsules there are a number of dark reddish-yellow seeds (in one specimen I counted 108); they are not attached to the sides, but are imbedded in a hardened pulp, and so connected one with the other. These seeds are tolerably hard, soften but slowly when chewed, have no particular taste, but after some time produce at the point of the tongue a slight but peculiar sourish-sweet pungency, resembling the action of *Paraguay rue*. The pulp, on the other hand, cementing them together, has a



strong bitter taste, which is particularly perceptible at the back part of the palate.

"The wongshy, especially when pounded, readily gives up to water, both at the usual temperature as well as on boiling, a colouring principle, which possesses such an enormous divisibility that two parts of the pounded capsules furnish 128 parts of a liquid, which, placed in a cylindrical vessel of white glass, with a diameter of 3 inches, still appears of a bright wine-yellow colour. The concentrated extract is very mucilaginous, and has a fiery-red colour, which, on large dilution, passes into a golden yellow, the red disappearing.

"Protochloride of tin produces no change at the ordinary temperature, or after a long time; on boiling, a dark orange-coloured precipitate results.

"Acetate of lead produces no change.

"Basic acetate of lead causes a turbidness at the ordinary temperature, and an orange-coloured precipitate on boiling.

"Protosulphate of iron changes the colour into a dark brownish-yellow, without, however, a precipitate resulting either in the cold or on ebullition.

"Alum, acetate of alumina, and acetate of zinc produce yellow precipitates only on boiling.

"Barytic-water causes a yellow precipitate at the ordinary temperature, which, on boiling, acquires a reddish tint.

"Lime-water gives a pure yellow precipitate; solutions of gypsum and chloride of calcium are not precipitated by it even on boiling; well-water, with a considerable amount of carbonate of lime, does not precipitate the colouring principle even with the assistance of heat: it is consequently not able to decompose the combinations of lime with acids.

"To ascertain the value of the wongshy colouring matter for the purposes of dyeing, one part of the pounded capsules was digested for twelve hours with twenty parts of lukewarm water, being frequently stirred, and the liquid then strained. The colouring matter is most quickly extracted in this manner without its becoming gelatinous from the formation of paste, as would happen were the liquid boiled. Properly prepared samples of woollen cloth (some without any mordant, others mordanted with alum, protochloride of tin, acetate of alumina, and basic acetate of lead) were dyed with this extract at a temperature of about 104° Fah.; the colour does not turn out so pure at a higher temperature. The unmordanted cloth was dyed a beautiful and uniform orange colour by one immersion; of the mordanted samples, those with alum and acetate of alumina were better than those with protochloride of tin; the least satisfactory was that in which basic acetate of lead had been used as mordant. The tone of the colour was not altered by the three first mordants, but it was less intense, and the stuffs were not uniformly penetrated by the colouring matter. However, the samples with alum mordant gave perfectly satisfactory results after a second immersion. The colouring matter likewise combines

readily and uniformly with silk, communicating to it a very glowing golden colour, so that in this case I also prefer not having recourse to mordants. Cotton, as was to be expected, can only be dyed with the assistance of mordants, and the best results appeared to be obtained with tin mordants; the colour was orange, of a very agreeable tint.

"The colour, both upon wool, silk, and cotton, resists soap perfectly; but alkalies give it a yellow, acids and tin salts a red tint. By this behaviour it differs from the colour of annotta, with which, as will subsequently be seen, it possesses in other respects great resemblance—a resemblance which unfortunately exists as regards the action of light. When exposed to light, the colour very soon fades upon cotton, less quickly upon wool; and in this case it is more permanent upon the unmordanted samples. It resists the light longest upon silk, and in this respect, when compared with the other known yellow colours, may be reckoned among the best.

"I obtained a beautiful yellow, with a faint tint of red, by mordanting the woollen cloth with lime-water and immersion in the boiling vat; it resists the soap perfectly, and the action of light much better than the orange. It is altered in a similar manner to the orange by alkalies, acids, and tin salts, only less. Several very beautiful shades of yellow may be obtained by adding pearlash or caustic potash to the dye, and immersing the unmordanted fabric at the ordinary temperature. The union of the colour with the fibre takes place very quickly and very uniformly. By the addition of one part pearlash to thirty parts dye liquor, a yellow was obtained with a remarkable glow from a slight admixture of red. By the addition of twice the quantity of pearlash, a lively yellow, with a faint tint of green, was obtained. A still larger amount of pearlash cannot be used, as it renders the colour dull and impure. With caustic potash instead of pearlash, I obtained, in the first place, a pure brilliant yellow, with less red than with the pearlash; in the latter case, a beautiful canary-yellow, with a shade of green. Ammonia acts in the same manner; but the colour, under all circumstances, contains more red. The colour also appears of a somewhat different shade when the fabrics are first immersed in the dye liquor, and then, after being washed, placed in an alkaline bath.

"In the case of silk and cotton the effect of alkalies is similar, but less apparent, because the silk and cotton fibres imbibe less of the colouring substance than those of wool.

"That this colour resists the soap is self-evident, but it also suffers less from the action of light than the orange; and when fabrics so dyed are passed through a vinegar or muriatic acid bath a brilliant aurora colour is obtained. This interesting behaviour, which the wongshy colouring matter has in common with that of annotta, is explained by the chemical character of the former, which is a weak acid; it combines with the alkalies and with the alkaline earths, as evident by the precipitation with baryta and lime-water. Its combinations with the former possess a pure yellow colour, and are decomposed by stronger acids, when the liberated

colouring matter separates of a brilliant vermilion colour. But the colouring matter thus separated is no longer the same as that which was originally contained in the aqueous solution, for it is now perfectly insoluble in water, and is only dissolved in small quantity, and of a golden-yellow colour, by absolute alcohol, ether, and spirit of 0.863 specific gravity. In the moist state it has a vermilion colour; when dry and in the purest state it is brown-red, like Ratanhia extract, and is easily reduced to powder; but if it still contains sugar and fat, it has a beautiful yellowish-red colour in thick layers, whilst in thin layers it is yellow and transparent, and becomes moist in the air. On heating the pure substance upon platinum, at first yellow vapour is given off, and at some spots the colour becomes pure yellow; it subsequently turns black, fuses, and chars. The residual cinder is difficult to burn; the yellow vapours condense, when the experiment is made in a glass tube, into yellow oily drops. Concentrated sulphuric acid renders it scarcely perceptibly blue, and the acid acquires the same colour, which quickly passes into violet and brownish-red, whilst the colouring matter slowly dissolves. Water separates from this solution a dirty yellowish-grey flocculent substance.

"The reaction of the wongshy colouring matter which has just been mentioned has no resemblance with the reaction of sulphuric acid upon annatto, for the liquid never acquires a pure blue colour, as is the case with annotta, but is violet from the first, and only for a minute.

"It dissolves readily in caustic ammonia and caustic soda, with a golden-yellow colour."

Wongshy is used in China for dyeing yellow, and also for green, along with indigo. It is also used for giving a bottom to silk or cotton to be dyed cherry or scarlet with safflower, in the same way as annotta is used in this country; but as a dye alone it does not possess that permanence required and obtained by other colouring matters, and hence it has not been much used in this country.

---

#### ALOEES.

Dr. Bancroft, in his work on the *Philosophy of Permanent Colours*, recommended this substance as a dyeing agent. He proposed to digest it in nitric acid, by which means he obtained aloetic acid, a substance capable of being used as a dye. This matter has been the subject of extensive investigation by many chemists, and has been occasionally more or less used as a dyeing agent.

The aloes contain a yellow crystalline matter, soluble in cold water, called *aloin*, and a resinous-looking substance, soluble in boiling water, called *aloetin*. The first substance, when the solution is evaporated, yields crystals which, according to Dr. Stenhouse, have the formula  $C_{17}H_{18}O_7$ . Commercial aloes yield in 100 parts—

Aloin, . . . . .	69.2
Aloetin, . . . . .	25.6
Albumen, . . . . .	5.2
	<hr/>
	100.0

When aloes are treated with nitric acid they yield several coloured compounds, some of which have been used in dyeing wool and silk brown, violet, and other colours, according to the mordants employed, which are permanent. Cotton is also dyed with tin mordants. The mode of preparing the aloes for dyeing formed the subject of a patent in this country. The following was the proposed method of preparation:—

“The mode of preparing the colouring matter from aloes is as follows:—Into a boiler or vessel capable of holding about 100 gallons, the patentee puts 10 gallons of water and 132 lbs. of aloes, and heats the same until the aloes are dissolved; he then adds 80 lbs. of nitric or nitrous acid, in small portions at a time, to prevent the disengagement of such a quantity of nitrous gas as would throw part of the contents out of the boiler. When the whole of the acid has been introduced, and the disengagement of gas has ceased, 10 lbs. of liquid caustic soda, or potash of commerce, of about 30° are added, to neutralise any undecomposed acid remaining in the mixture, and to facilitate the use of the mixture in dyeing and printing. If the colouring matter is required to be in a dry state, the mixture may be incorporated with 100 lbs. of China clay, and dried in stoves, or by means of a current of air. In preparing the colouring matter from extract of logwood, the materials are used in the manner and proportions above described; the only difference being that the extract of logwood is substituted for the aloes.

“The colouring matter is used in dyeing by dissolving a sufficient quantity in water according to the shade required, and adding as much hydrochloric acid or tartar of commerce as will neutralise the alkali contained in the mixture, and leave the dye-bath slightly acidulated. The article to be dyed is introduced into the bath, which is kept boiling until the desired shade is obtained.

“When the colouring matter is to be used in printing, a sufficient quantity is to be dissolved in water, according to the shade required to be produced; this solution is to be thickened with gum, or other common thickening agent; and hydrochloric acid, or tartar of commerce, or any other suitable supersalt is to be added thereto, for the purpose before mentioned. After the fabrics have been printed with the colouring matter, they should be subjected to the ordinary process of steaming to fix the colour.”

---

#### PITTACAL.

This substance is obtained from beech tar. It is dry and hard, very brittle, and resembles indigo in appearance. It has no taste or smell, and



does not dissolve in water. Sulphuric acid dissolves it, producing a violet-coloured solution. Muriatic acid gives a red-purple solution, from which alkalis precipitate the pittaical. Acetate of lead, salts of tin, sulphate of copper, acetate of alumina, all give deep-blue precipitates, not readily changed. This colour is fixed easily upon cotton by tin and alumina. Although this substance has been long known, it has never been much used as a dye.

---

#### BARBARY ROOT.

The plant from which this is obtained grows in almost every part of the world; great quantities of it are obtained from India, where it grows in great abundance and perfection. The colouring matter is found in the whole of the root. In the stem it is found round the pith and near the bark. This colouring substance is much used in dyeing or staining leather, but it is not much used in dyeing of cotton. It contains a large quantity of astringent matter, and is therefore very useful in preparation of leather, and may be used for woollen and cotton in dyeing blacks. Mr. Edward Solly has made some investigations of this root.—See *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*.

Were we to enumerate the various vegetable substances that have been used in dyeing, and may still be used by some, the list would extend to almost all our vegetable products. Before the introduction of Brazil-wood, logwood, sumach, and bark, the natives of this country, and many in the Highland districts still continued to use the woods and shrubs that grew around them. The following are a few that were well known to every housewife:—Bark of the alder and the willow, both flower and seeds of the broom and the whin, the horse chestnut and the holly. These, and several others, gave colours of various tints, but they were generally used along with copperas and alum, and a free use of *laut* (urine), which no doubt, in many cases, produced fermentation and oxidation. Time was no object—the woollen was alternately boiled, and steeped, and exposed to the air for days, until the desired depth was obtained. The colours thus produced wanted brightness, but were generally permanent. Recently a class of colours, or rather tints, have been in fashion which requires a nomenclature of their own. They are neither red, blue, nor yellow; brown, violet, nor green; drab, slate, nor grey; and yet they partake of all these. To produce such tints with the ordinary dyeing agents in use a few years ago would certainly have puzzled the most experienced dyer; but the chemist has come to the aid of the dyer in a way which, if the dyer do not learn chemistry, he will be reduced to the condition of a mere labourer. This will be more noticed in speaking of the coal-tar colours. The most ordinary vegetable and animal substances are being converted into dyes: sawdust of all sorts, lichens, mosses, bran, paper and cotton waste, blood, horns, resins,

gum, &c. These are heated under pressure to from 300° to 400° Fah., with water and caustic soda. A decomposition takes place,—sulphide of sodium is produced, which acts upon the organic matter, liberating sulphide of hydrogen, and there is left a mass soluble in water, giving a greenish-coloured solution, which is said to dye cotton and woollen a variety of tints, according to the strength of solution used, and without a mordant; although by the use of bichromate of potash as a mordant, and other oxidising bodies, the tints are varied, and with other colouring matters any mixed shade may be obtained, having a peculiar beauty of its own. These reactions may only be the beginning of a new set of chemical compounds that will yet open up a field of inquiry and application to the practical dyer.

---

#### COCHINEAL.

This is a small insect, called the *Coccus cacti*, and is much sought after for its tinctorial qualities. It furnishes the finest known shades of crimson, red, purple, scarlet, &c., for woollen and silk. The insects are reared in great abundance in Mexico. They feed upon a cactus plant which the natives cultivate round their dwellings for that purpose. The insects attach themselves to the leaves of the plant, and increase rapidly in number. The females live about two months, and the males only about one month. The season of rearing and gathering lasts about seven months: during this period the insects are gathered three times. After each gathering some of the branches and leaves containing females and their young are preserved under shelter, and on the return of the proper season they are distributed over the plantation. A few females are put into a small nest made of some downy substance, and the young insects quickly spread themselves out upon the leaves, to which they attach themselves. They are gathered by brushing them off the leaves with the feather end of a quill into boiling hot water, in which they are kept a few seconds. This not only kills them instantly, but causes them to swell to twice their natural size. When taken out of the hot water they are spread out and dried, and then packed for the market. Some cultivators instead of hot water use steam, and others again place them in an oven or upon a hot plate. The differences in the appearance of cochineal are caused by these different modes of killing the insects and heating them. They shrivel in drying, and assume the appearance of irregular formed grains, fluted and concave. The best sort seem as if dusted with a white powder, and are of a slate-grey colour; but this appearance is often imparted by means of powdered talc, to deceive the purchaser.

There are three kinds of cochineal in commerce. The finest is known by the name of *mistic*, from the name of the place in which the insects are reared, La Mistica, in the province of Honduras. Another is called *wild*, because they are collected from plants growing in a state of nature; but this variety is inferior to the former. The third is a mixture of these two,

or rather the debris or fragments, and varies in quality according to the proportion of the mixture.

Cochineal has been the subject of several chemical investigations, the results of which are not very satisfactory. The following are instances of these. The cochineal contains—

1. Carmine, which may be termed the colouring matter.
2. A peculiar animal matter.
3. A fatty matter, composed of . . . . . { Stearine,  
Bleine, and  
Volatile fatty acids.
4. Saline matters, as . . . . . { Phosphate of lime.  
Carbonate of lime.  
Chloride potassium.  
Phosphate of potash.  
Combination of potash with organic acids.

Mr. John gives the following as the result of his analysis :—

Red colouring matter,	. . . . .	50·0
Gelatine,	. . . . .	10·5
Wax,	. . . . .	10·0
Debris of skin, &c.,	. . . . .	14·0
Gummy matter,	. . . . .	13·0
Phosphate of lime, of potash, and iron, and chloride potassium,		14·0

CARMINE, or the colouring matter of cochineal, may be obtained by macerating finely ground cochineal with ether, which dissolves out the fatty matter, and then dissolving the carmine by the application of hot alcohol, and leaving the solution to cool: on evaporating the alcohol, the carmine is deposited as a beautiful red crystalline substance, which dissolves freely in water. It is affected by the following re-agents, as under:—

Tannin . . . . .	Gives no precipitate.
Most acids . . . . .	Change its colour from a bright to a yellowish-red.
Boracic acid . . . . .	Does not change the colour, but rather reddens it more.
Potash, soda, and ammonia	Change it to a crimson-violet.
Baryta and strontia . . .	Produce the same effect.
Lime . . . . .	Gives a crimson-violet <i>precipitate</i> .
Alumina . . . . .	Combines with it and precipitates it as a beautiful red; but if boiled it passes to violet-red.

A little potash, soda, or ammonia added prevents this change, and preserves the stability of the red.

Protoxides of tin . . .	Change it to crimson-violet.
Peroxide of tin . . .	Changes it to yellowish-red.
Salts of iron . . .	Turn it brown ; no precipitate.
Salts of lead . . .	Change it to violet ; no precipitate.
Salts of copper . . .	Change it to violet ; no precipitate.
Nitrate of mercury . . .	Gives a scarlet-red precipitate.
Nitrate of silver . . .	Has no action upon it.
Chlorine . . .	Turns it yellow.

“ As may be supposed, it is next to impossible to judge of the goodness of a cochineal by its physical characters. In order to ascertain its value, we must have recourse to comparative experiments. We are indebted to MM. Robiquet and Anthon for two methods of determining the quality of cochineals according to the quantity of carmine they contain. The process of M. Robiquet consists in decolourising equal volumes of decoction of different cochineals by chlorine. By using a graduated tube, the quality of the cochineal is judged of by the quantity of chlorine employed for decolourising the decoction. The process of M. Anthon is founded on the property which the hydrate of alumina possesses of precipitating the carmine from the decoction so as to decolourise it entirely. The first process, which is very good in the hands of a skilful chemist, does not appear to us to be a convenient method for the consumer: in the first place, it is difficult to procure perfectly identical solutions; in the next place, it is impossible to keep them a long time without alteration. We know that chlorine dissolved in water reacts, even in diffused light, on this liquid, decomposes it, appropriates its elements, and gives rise to some compounds which possess an action quite different from that of the chlorine solution in its primitive state. The second process seems to us to be preferable, as the proof liquor may be kept a long while without alteration. A graduated tube is also used; each division represents one-hundredth of the colouring matter. Thus, the quantity of proof liquor added exactly represents the quantity in hundredths of colouring matter contained in the decoction of cochineal which has been submitted to examination.

“ The colouring matter of cochineal being soluble in water, I have used this solvent for exhausting the different kinds which I have submitted to examination in the colorimeter. I operated in the following manner:— I took a grain of each of the cochineals to be tried, dried at 122° Fah.; I submitted them five consecutive times to the action of 200 grains of distilled water at water-bath heat, each time for an hour; for every 200 grains of distilled water I added two drops of a concentrated solution of acid sulphate of alumina and of potash. This addition is necessary to obtain the decoctions of the different cochineals exactly of the same tint, in order to be able to compare the intensity of the tints in the colorimeter. Care must be taken not to add to the water, which serves to extract the colouring matter from the different cochineals, more than the



requisite quantity of acid sulphate of alumina and solution of potash, because a stronger dose would precipitate a part of the colouring matter in the state of lake.

"In order to estimate a cochineal in the colorimeter, two solutions, obtained as described above, are taken; some of these solutions are introduced into the colorimeter tubes as far as zero of the scale, which is equivalent to 100 parts of the superior scale; these tubes are placed in the box, and the tint of the liquids enclosed is compared by looking at the two tubes through the eye-hole, the box being placed so that the light falls exactly on the extremity where the tubes are. If a difference of tint is observed between the two liquors, water is added to the darkest (which is always that of the cochineal taken as type) until the tubes appear of the same tint. For diluting the liquors the same water must always be used which has served to extract the colouring matter of the cochineals under examination, otherwise the darkest decoction would pass into violet as water was added to it to bring back the tint to the same degree of intensity as that of the decoction to which it is compared. The number of parts of liquor which are contained in the tube to which water has been added is then read off; this number, compared with the volume of the liquor contained in the other tube, a volume which has not been changed, and is equal to 100, indicates the relation between the colouring power and the relative quality of the two cochineals. And if, for example, 60 parts of water must be added to the liquor of good cochineal to bring it to the same tint as the other, the relation of volume of the liquids contained in the tubes will be in this case as 160 is to 100, and the relative quality of the cochineals will be represented by the same relation, since the quality of the samples tried is in proportion to their colouring power."

Dr. De la Rue has separated the colouring matter from cochineal, which he finds composed of  $C_{14}H_{14}O_8$ , and has named it carminic acid.

Some of the German chemists, supposing that the plant upon which the insect feeds might be the source of the colouring matter, instituted a series of experiments to determine that point, but without success. The conclusion they came to was, that the animal economy plays a prominent part in the formation of the colouring matter.

Carmines is manufactured extensively in France, and is used for superior red inks, paints, and for colouring artificial flowers. It is prepared on the large scale by boiling a quantity of cochineal in water with soda, and then adding to it a little alum, cream of tartar, and the white of eggs, or isinglass, which separates the carmine as a fine flaky precipitate. This precipitate is carefully collected.

There is something in the production of good carmine which is not yet fully understood. It has not yet been prepared in this country in the same perfection as in France (page 13). It is found also that with a coal fire to boil the solution, a smaller quantity of it is produced than when a wood fire is employed, and there are many other little points which shew the delicacy of its preparation.

The residue of the carmine, and some portions of the precipitate from the cochineal, when first taken from the boiler, are collected and boiled in water; to this mixture is added a solution of alum and chloride of tin, by which a beautiful red-coloured precipitate or lake is formed. This constitutes the beautiful pigment known as *carmine lake*.

---

#### LAKE LAKE, OR LAC,

Is a concrete juice which distils from several kinds of plants. It appears, however, to be determined that it is caused by an insect named *Coccus ficus*, or *Cæcus loco*, and may therefore be regarded as of animal origin. There are several varieties of this product under the names of *stick lac*, *seed lac*, and *shell lac*. There are also brought from India two other products distinguished as *lac lac* and *lac dye*, which are the kinds mostly used in dyeing, but their composition is not very well known. They, however, contain a goodly quantity of resinous matter, which must be destroyed before they are used as dyes. *Lac lac* is obtained fit for use as a dye by boiling the gum lac with alkaline water, which dissolves the colouring matter along with some of the resinous. To this is added some alum, which precipitates the whole as an aluminous product, in which state it is used.

Dr. Bancroft discovered that acids destroyed the resinous matter of lac dye, and rendered the colouring matter soluble, and this is now the mode generally adopted in working with this substance.

The following may be taken as the ordinary means of producing this colour:—Add to four pounds of lac dye three pounds of strong sulphuric acid, and set the mixture aside for two days; pour over it half a gallon of boiling water, stir the whole well, and leave it to settle for twenty-four hours; the clear liquor is then to be decanted into a leaden vessel, and the residue washed with water until all the colouring matter is dissolved. The washings may be added to the liquor in the leaden vessel. There is then added to this liquor a quantity of lime-water, until the solution barely tastes acid, which forms a precipitate with the sulphuric acid; the whole is then thrown upon a filter, and the clear liquor passing through the filter forms the dye.

Some dyers take about thirty-two parts of lac dye, and rub it down fine in ten parts of strong sulphuric acid; then add three times the quantity of the mixture of water, and set aside for two days; it is then ready for use, requiring merely to be diluted as required.

The French dyers generally take thirty-two parts of lac dye, rubbed down in twelve parts of hydrochloric acid of 30° Twad.; when well mixed, it is diluted with about an equal quantity of water, set aside for twenty-four hours, and stirred from time to time; it is then ready for use. Many dyers treat the lac lac in the same way as the lac dye, using one pound of

sulphuric acid to two pounds of lac lac; in other respects the process is the same. A superior lac dye has recently been prepared by treating stick lac with weak ammonia, and adding tin salt, which precipitates a fine red, which is collected and sold to the dyer.

The mordants employed for dyeing with the lacs are termed *lac spirits*; the lac and spirits are mixed previous to using. *Lacs* are employed as substitutes for cochineal, and most of the colours obtained by the one are producible by the other; but for fine reds the lac is much inferior. This dye is only used for silk and woollen.

---

### KERMS.

This is also an animal substance—the dried bodies of another species of the *coccus* insect. This insect is supposed to have been known as a dyeing agent as early as the time of Moses; it was used in India at a very early age, and was highly valued both by the Romans and Spaniards for dyeing purples; but after the cochineal dye was discovered, cochineal was used in preference, on account of the superior beauty of the colours. Accordingly. in many countries where the kermes insect was reared and enriched the people, the remembrance of it is lost.

Good kermes is of a full deep-red colour, having a pleasant smell, and sharp sour taste; the red colouring matter is soluble in water and in alcohol. It possesses properties similar to cochineal.

Acids render it	. . . . .	Yellowish-brown.
Alkalies,	. . . . .	Crimson-violet.
Iron salts turn it	. . . . .	Black.
Alum renders it	. . . . .	Blood-red.
Salts of tin,	. . . . .	A bright red.
A mixture of iron salts and tartar turns it to	. . . . .	Grey colour.
Sulphate of copper and tartar,	. . . . .	Olive-green.
Tin salts and tartar,	. . . . .	Cinnamon-brown.

A red with tin requires about twelve times the quantity of kermes as of cochineal, and the colour is a little inferior. As a dye, it is not much used, and only for silk or woollen. There is no affinity between cotton and the colouring matters of *cochineal*, *lacs*, and *kermes*.

---

### ULTRAMARINE.

This pigment cannot be considered a dye drug; but as it is used by calico-printers for giving to cloth a beautiful blue and green, we briefly describe its history and manufacture. *Lapis lazuli*, or ultramarine, is a mineral or precious stone having a blue colour of

great beauty, and when finely ground is used by artists as one of their colours. Early in the present century, a French manufacturer of soda discovered a blue substance in one of his furnaces resembling this precious stone, which he sent for analysis to M. Vanquelin, an eminent French chemist, who found it to be composed of silica, alumina, soda, and sulphur, in the same proportions, or nearly so, as found in the natural *Lapis lazuli*, and suggested the probability of its being made an object of manufacture. This induced the Society for the Encouragement of National Industry of France, to offer a prize of £240 to any one who would find out a practical method for making ultramarine at a cost, and in such quantities, as would bring it within the reach of the manufacturer. This was shortly followed by several claimants for the prize, and which resulted in the establishment of several manufactories for the production of the colour by slightly different methods, and also of different tints; indeed, so progressive has been the manufacture that upwards of thirty different varieties of ultramarine are known in the market, varying in hue from a perfect blue to a beautiful green. The process of manufacture may be briefly stated, thus:—100 parts of fine China clay, well washed and dried; 41 parts of sulphide of sodium, 41 parts of calcined caustic soda, 18 parts of charcoal, and 13 parts of sulphur, are all intimately mixed, and pressed into a fire-clay crucible, which is put into a furnace and kept at a bright red heat for eight hours; then the heat is raised to whiteness for about an hour; the crucible is withdrawn, and the whole allowed to cool; the product is ground and washed in water; if the air has been pretty well excluded from the crucible, the colouring matter is green, and will remain insoluble. This green being collected and dried, and with the addition of a little sulphur it is calcined at a red heat, in a free current of air, when it becomes blue. However, there are other methods of preparing the colour, varying slightly in the proportions and manner of manipulation, all yielding the same products; but whichever method is adopted it requires a great deal of care and experience in the management to produce good results. There is a great tendency to dull shades; whereas they should all have a high pure lustre. These colours are generally printed on cloth with albuminous substances, and are fixed by a steam heat which renders the albumen insoluble.



## COAL-TAR COLOURS.

---

THE organic colouring matters we have hitherto been describing—*i.e.*, those which are extracted from vegetable bodies, such as logwood, fustic, bark, safflower, &c.—have their existence in the plant, either in the form of a white base, which becomes coloured by the absorption of oxygen from the air, as is the case with indigo, or the colour exists ready formed in the plant, as in safflower, and is extracted by solution in water or an alkaline ley, from which solution it is transferred to the fabric of the cloth. Such organic colours we may term simple educts—the base or colouring matter exists formed in the plant, and only requires some simple method, such as solution, to extract or educe it. It is very different with the organic colours of the coal series. They, on the other hand, may be termed products. The coal containing all the elements necessary for their formation is split up or decomposed by what is called destructive distillation, and its elements recombining in different proportions, give rise to very numerous new products, from some of which the bases of the coal-tar colours are derived.

It is, no doubt, very puzzling to the uninitiated to comprehend how such beautiful colours can come from such an unlikely substance as coal tar, and we have not unfrequently heard the remark, “Who could have imagined that such colours existed in coal tar?” and when told that the colours did not actually exist in it, they have replied, “How can any one take out of tar that which really does not exist in it?” In order to make the matter as clear as possible, we will endeavour to give the reader a brief account of the preliminary processes, and afterwards go on to describe how the colours are formed. For our present purpose we may consider coal to consist of the four elements, carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen, leaving out for the present the ash or earthy matters it contains. Of the elements named carbon and hydrogen predominate, oxygen and nitrogen only occur in small quantities. In the process of gasmaking the coal is subjected to a high heat in an iron or earthen retort, and the excessive temperature splits up its elements, throws them violently asunder, and they rearrange themselves according to their new affinities, under these new conditions, to form a variety of compounds all vastly different from coal. The bulk of the carbon and hydrogen unite to form a permanent gas, which does not condense on cooling; hydrogen and oxygen unite to form water, hydrogen and nitrogen to form ammonia, and some of all four elements pass off in the form of vapours, which, on being cooled, condense into a black oily liquid with a disagreeable smell, called coal or gas tar. The reader will perceive that no amount of powdering or

pressing of the coal, no treatment with any solvent could have extracted this gas, ammonia, tar, &c., from it: although the elements for these productions were all there, it required the destructive distillation to bring about this change. It is, however, with the coal tar alone we have to deal, as all the substances from which the colours are derived are produced from it.

The tar has the appearance of a black homogeneous-looking liquor; but when it is put into a still and made to boil, it is found not to have a steady boiling point, like water; a light oil passes over at a comparatively low temperature, and as the heat is raised, the condensed oil passing over continues to increase in specific gravity until, if carried far enough, the distillate thickens and solidifies. In ordinary practice the tar is put into a cast-iron still and heat applied. There first passes over some ammoniacal compounds, and a light oily-looking liquid, called coal-naphtha; this is set apart, and there follows at a higher temperature a heavier oil, called dead-oil; the residue is then tapped or run from the still and used for pitch, asphalt, or black varnish.

The first of these products, coal-naphtha, is again distilled; and as it has been found to consist of a great variety of compounds, each having a different boiling point and distinct properties, these are separated from each other by repeated distillations, always setting apart the portions distilling over within given limits of temperature: this is known as fractional distillation, and the following are a few out of the vast number of definite chemical compounds which have been separated in this way:—

	Formula.	Boiling point.
Benzol, . . . . .	$C_6H_6$ ,	177° Fah.
Parabenzol, . . . . .	$C_6H_6$ ,	203° "
Toluol, . . . . .	$C_7H_8$ ,	230° "
Xylol, . . . . .	$C_8H_{10}$ ,	282° "
Cumol, . . . . .	$C_9H_{12}$ ,	300° "
Cymol, . . . . .	$C_{10}H_{14}$ ,	338° "

From the heavier portions of the coal-tar many other important hydro-carbons may be obtained, such as naphthalene, paranaphthalene, chrysen, &c., having other formulas.

Naphthalene, . . . . .	$C_{10}H_8$ .
Paranaphthalene, . . . . .	$C_{14}H_{10}$ .
Chrysen, . . . . .	$C_6H_4$ .

Again, there are formed a series of compounds having oxygen as part of their composition, along with carbon and hydrogen—of which acetic and carbolic acids are examples, and a series having nitrogen along with the carbon and hydrogen, in which occurs aniline,  $C_6H_7N$ .

So far back as 1825, the late Professor Faraday, when experimenting on the composition of gases, found when working with an oil gas a clear

colourless liquid, having an agreeable smell, which he called "bicarburet of hydrogen." A substance having similar properties was discovered by Mitscherlich, when distilling benzoic acid, which he called "benzine." Dr. Hofmann afterwards, about 1845, discovered the same substance in the products of coal tar, and named it benzol, giving as its formula  $C_6H_6$ .

In 1826, Unverdorben discovered a substance amongst the products of the distillation of indigo which he called "crystalline." Runge obtained the same substance from the distillation of coal, and found it gave a blue colour with chloride of lime; he therefore called it "kyanol."

Fritzsche still later, again, obtained it from indigo by a different process from Unverdorben, and gave it the name of aniline. Then Zinin obtained it from a substance called nitrobenzol or nitrobenzine, which had been discovered by Mitscherlich in 1834, and Zinin called his substance "benzedam." Some time afterwards Dr. Hofmann, when investigating this subject, pointed out that all these bodies—"crystalline, kyanol, aniline, and benzedam"—were identical in composition. The name aniline was retained, and the others discarded. The next important event in the history of these dyes was the discovery of the mauve dye by Mr. Perkin, who prepared it from aniline, and thus completed the chain of discovery which has led to the opening up of a large field of manufacturing industry. Benzol could be had in large quantity from coal tar; by the action of nitric acid on benzol, nitrobenzol could be obtained; from nitrobenzol, aniline; and from aniline the mauve dye. Mr. Perkin thus briefly describes his discovery of this dye in a lecture read before the Society of Arts:—"I was endeavouring to convert an artificial base into the natural alkaloid quinine, but my experiments, instead of yielding the colourless quinine, gave a reddish powder. With the desire of understanding this peculiar result, a different base of more simple construction was selected—namely, aniline, and in this case I obtained a perfectly black product. This was purified and dried, and when digested with spirits of wine, gave the mauve dye."

We have in the above quotation another striking example of what very frequently happens in the process of experimental research. A busy worker is striving after the attainment of one definite result, but he obtains one altogether different, and, as in this case, one that turns out to be of very great importance; and here the great merit lies in being able to perceive at once the different uses to which his discovery can be applied in the arts and manufactures. It often happens that observers are contented to note unlooked for phenomena which they come across, not thinking them worthy of further consideration; and some one coming after perceives applications, and turns their work to good account. Throughout the history of the coal-tar colours, we perceive the value of carefully recording discoveries, which, though at the time they may be considered trivial, or looked upon as being only important as chemical curiosities, yet as new sources of the product may arise, so may new combinations and applications be discovered which may lead to most important results.

Aniline is prepared by mixing nitrobenzol with strong acetic acid and iron filings or turnings. The mixture is made in an iron still, which is afterwards heated by fire or high pressure steam, and the aniline passes over at a temperature between  $347^{\circ}$  and  $374^{\circ}$  Fah. In its commercial state, it is of a pale sherry colour, and gives a blue or blue-violet colour when chloride of lime is added; it combines with sulphuric and hydrochloric acids, producing the sulphate or muriate of aniline. The mauve dye is prepared by mixing a solution of sulphate of aniline with a solution of bichromate of potash. On allowing the mixture to stand for a day or two, a black precipitate is formed—this is collected, washed, and dried, it is then digested in methylated spirit, which dissolves out the mauve dye. The spirit is recovered by distillation, and the mauve solution from the still has caustic soda added to it, which again precipitates the colouring matter. It is now thrown upon a filter and the soda is washed out, leaving the colour in a pasty form, which may be either put into jars for the market in this form, or dried before sending out. We need scarcely say that when this process was made public, the attention of chemical manufacturers was at once drawn to it, and numerous improvements suggested. Instead of bichromate of potash, peroxide of lead, peroxide of manganese, permanganate of potash, and other oxygenising agents were proposed in order to cheapen the process. The principle of the manufacture is the same in all, so we need not detail them here.

Mr. Perkin now felt some difficulty in the practical application of the dye to cotton fibre. We quote what he says upon this point—"The dyeing of cotton with aniline purple at first presented many difficulties; this colouring matter was found to be capable of producing a very beautiful colour without a mordant, and it was proposed to employ it in this manner; but the colour thus obtained would not bear washing, being nearly all removed with hot water and soap. Mordants, such as alum, were then experimented with, but these gave no results. After some time Mr. R. Pullar accordingly found a method of applying this colouring matter to cotton, which is based upon the insolubility of the compounds it forms with tannin. In using this process, the cotton is first soaked in a decoction of sumach or some other tannin agent, then in a solution of stannate of soda, and lastly in water slightly acidulated with sulphuric acid. The cotton thus prepared contains an insoluble compound of tin and tannin, and which possesses a great affinity for aniline purple. The stannate of soda may be replaced by alum or a solution of tin salt. This method of preparing cotton has been found suitable for nearly all the aniline colours discovered since the mauve, and is now universally employed in Great Britain for cotton dyeing." This account of how the difficulties were surmounted is alike interesting to the chemist and dyer, and shews the benefit of practical knowledge. Mr. Perkin again remarks, when speaking of the difficulty of fixing his colour upon cotton—"I have told you that most of the coal-tar colours contain carbon, hydrogen, and nitrogen, and that they are generally organic bases. They differ essentially from most



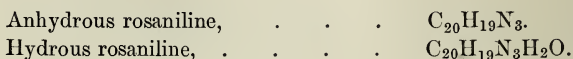
of the vegetable colouring matters, which contain, with but few exceptions, only carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, and are weak acids. You will understand that many difficulties had to be encountered in their application for dyeing and printing, because they would not combine with the ordinary mordants used for the colouring matter of woods, as alumina and oxide of tin. The observations refer to the dyeing and printing of vegetable fibres, and not to silk or wool, as these matters absorb the coal-tar colours without the intervention of a mordant."

If the reader looks to our remarks upon the colouring matter of the dye-woods, he will find us stating that these have no affinity for cotton, and stand in the same relation to that fibre as the coal-tar colours; and the practical dyer will not fail to observe that the coal-tar colours are fixed upon the cotton by the same mordants and applied in the same manner as for the colouring matters of Brazil-wood, logwood, &c.—namely, steeping the goods in sumach, then passing them through a solution of chloride of tin, or other tin salt, washing from this, and then passing through the colouring matter. The affinity of the purple colour for animal fibres was so great that it was found difficult to obtain an even dye upon silk and woollen, if the tint required was a light one, the solution becoming exhausted of colour before all the fibre could be exposed to it, and means had to be resorted to for the purpose of retarding the action between the colour and fibre, to enable the dyer to produce light shades with equality.

Chemists and manufacturers, besides striving to improve the process for producing aniline purple, also sought to produce other colours from the same source, and in this they were wonderfully successful. Shortly after mauve was introduced there appeared an aniline blue. It was prepared by mixing a solution of muriate of aniline with one of chloride of lime, which produced a deep blue solution; the colour was precipitated with common salt and collected upon a filter, any impurities were dissolved out by washing with cold benzol, and the remaining colour, dissolved in methylated spirit, was ready for use for dyeing silk and woollen fabrics without further preparation.

The most popular and also the most beautiful colour got from aniline is that known as the magenta. It was first made by heating commercial aniline with tetrachloride of tin, but no sooner was this process known than an improvement was introduced by the substitution of nitrate of mercury for the tin salt; both these salts, however, had soon to give place to a cheaper and equally effective substitute, arsenic acid. Although many other salts have been tried, this last-named still maintains its ground. Twenty parts of a saturated solution of arsenic acid are mixed with twelve parts of commercial aniline, and heated for some time in a cast-iron still, at a temperature ranging from 300° to 338° Fah.; water and aniline pass over, and when the heat has been continued for some hours, steam is blown through the mixture in the still, which brings over more aniline; the lid of the still is then removed, and the mixture allowed to

cool sufficiently to be transferred to large vessels, in which it is boiled with an excess of water, and afterwards filtered, to remove insoluble matters. Common salt is then added to the filtrate, which precipitates the colouring matter in a crude form; this is thrown upon a filter, washed, and afterwards dissolved in boiling water; from this solution the magenta crystallises out on cooling. Chemists have found this magenta to be the salt of a colourless base, called rosaniline. We have referred to similar compounds in the vegetable colouring matter. The formula of rosaniline is given as follows:—



When prepared as described above, it is the arseniate of rosaniline; but in the process of purification it is converted into the hydrochlorate, which is the commercial salt. If prepared with nitrate of mercury the nitrate of rosaniline is formed. The vegetable acids also form salts with this base, so that we may have the acetate or oxalate of rosaniline, &c.

Magenta, like mauve, has so strong an affinity for animal fibres, that no mordant is required for dyeing silk and woollen. Cotton, however, requires the same mordants as for mauve; few colours, if any, exceed the rich beauty of magenta, but, unfortunately, it does not withstand the action of light well, and fades on being exposed to it.

From the salts of this rosaniline base or magenta several other colours have been prepared; in fact, it is now largely manufactured as a material for the production of those other colours. We have already referred to a blue, prepared by the mixing aniline with chloride of lime; but another, and the more common blue of the coal-tar colours, is produced by heating a mixture of aniline and magenta. The process is generally conducted as follows:—The mixture is put into iron pots, enamelled inside, and fitted with tight lids, each having a stirring apparatus and condensing tube attached, and a test-hole fitted with a plug. Acetate of soda is introduced with the mixture, as it is found that the best blues are obtained when the salt of rosaniline contains a weak acid. These pots are heated in an oil-bath, and kept at a temperature of  $370^{\circ}$  to  $375^{\circ}$  Fah., until the desired change has taken place. This is ascertained by dipping a glass rod through the test-hole, at short intervals of time, till the desired depth of colour appears on the rod; the mixture is then removed from the pots, and treated several times with hydrochloric acid, which removes free aniline and purple products, leaving an insoluble mass, which constitutes the cheapest form of this blue. A better blue is obtained by digesting the pasty crude colour in methylated spirit, and throwing the mixture into water acidulated with muriatic acid; the colour then precipitates, and may be collected upon a filter. This blue is insoluble in water, but, like indigo, it is soluble in strong sulphuric acid, and is thus rendered applicable as a dye. Modifications and improvements in the production of this colour have occurred from time to time, and that

known as "Nicholson's blue" is the most extensively used. Mr. Nicholson, however, has not made his process known. This blue has now all but superseded all others, owing to its quality as a dye being superior in distinctness; for if a light shade is dyed upon woollen or silk with either indigo or Prussian blue, it has generally a greenish or greyish tint; whereas with Nicholson's blue, no matter how light the shade, the colour is always distinct; but, alas, it lacks the permanency of indigo blue, and although the colour is more pure and brilliant at first, its use for dyeing articles of a lasting description, such as carpets, &c., will have to give place to the more permanent colours from indigo.

Another blue, called "Bleu de Paris," is made by heating aniline with tetrachloride of tin in a close vessel for about thirty hours, at a temperature of 360° Fah. The blue obtained by this process differs from aniline blue in being soluble in water, but its preparation is difficult and expensive, and it has never attained any position in the market.

There are also a number of shades of violet prepared from aniline, and largely used by dyers. They differ in tint and shade, according to the process of manufacture. That known as "violet imperial" is produced by heating a mixture of magenta and aniline for a shorter time than is necessary to produce the blue already described; but the most beautiful violet colours are those known as "Hofmann's violets." These are obtained by heating together hydrochlorate of rosaniline dissolved in alcohol and iodide of ethyl or methyl for several hours. The mixture is heated in a steam-jacketed iron pot with a tight fitting lid, having a hole which can either be closed with a screw plug or connected with a condensing apparatus; when the steam has passed through the jacket for five or six hours, the screw plug is removed and condenser attached; the alcohol and any iodide of ethyl or methyl not taken up distil over. The product is then removed from the pot, dissolved in water, filtered, and the colouring matter is precipitated from the filtrate with common salt. The violet obtained varies very considerably in tint, according to slight modifications of the process the different tints have different chemical constitutions, as may be seen from the following formulæ:—

A red shade, . . . . .	$C_{22}H_{23}N_3$ .
A reddish-violet shade, . . . . .	$C_{24}H_{27}N_3$ .
A very blue, . . . . .	$C_{26}H_{31}N_3$ .

These violets are exceedingly brilliant, but, like the other aniline colours, they do not stand exposure to light well.

**GREENS.**—There is a green, called "Aldehyd green," which derives its name from the circumstance that aldehyd is used in its preparation. Aldehyd is a product of the decomposition of alcohol, and is prepared by heating together alcohol, sulphuric acid, and finely divided black oxide of manganese. It is a volatile colourless liquid, with an ethereal yet suffocating

odour. The aldehyd green may be prepared as follows:—In a mixture of three parts of sulphuric acid and one part of water dissolve one part of magenta, and to the cold solution add in small quantities at a time about one and a-half parts of aldehyd. The temperature of the mixture is then raised to about 212° Fah., and kept at this until a drop of it, placed in water, gives a bright blue colour. It is then thrown into a weak boiling solution of hyposulphite of soda. The quantity of hyposulphite must be four times as much as there was of magenta used. The whole is kept boiling for some time, and then filtered. A solution of acetate of soda is added to the filtrate, which precipitates the green dye, which is caught upon a filter, washed and dried, or used in the pasty condition. By certain modifications of the Hofmann violet process another green may be obtained, which is called the “iodine green.” It is prepared by mixing one part of rosaniline with two parts of iodide of methyl and two parts of methylic alcohol, and proceeding in the same way as described for Hofmann’s violets, being careful not to allow the heat to exceed 320° Fah. Above this temperature a further decomposition takes place, and the green colour is destroyed. After about five hours heating, the mixture is boiled with a large quantity of water, which dissolves out the green colouring matter, the insoluble is separated by filtration and common salt added to the filtrate. This is again boiled, and carbonate of soda is now added. In filtering a little of the mixture a clear green filtrate is obtained. The whole is then thrown upon a sand filter, and picric acid added to the filtrate, which throws down the green colouring matter as a precipitate, ready for collecting on a filter, washing and using.

There is another green, called “Perkin’s green,” which is extensively used in calico-printing. It is prepared in nearly the same manner as the one just described, only there is no iodide of ethyl used. Indeed, so great is the variety of colours and tints which have been produced from the coal-tar products, many of them resulting from slight variation of one process, that it would not only occupy too much space, but would be apt to become tedious, were we to enter into a detailed description of all the different modifications of the manufacture. Every shade of colour between yellow and orange, between blue and purple, and between brown and black, is already known.

Aniline black is produced by the action of oxidising agents on aniline and toluidine. In appearance it closely resembles the precipitate formed in the preparation of mauve with aniline and bichromate of potash; but the bichromate is substituted by oxide of copper. The dye is not considered to be definite, but is supposed to be a mixture of at least two colouring matters—one a deep blue, and the other a brown. It is insoluble in water, alcohol, or benzol, and consequently makes a very fast dye. It is more suitable, however, for the calico-printer than the dyer, and, unlike all the other coal-tar colours, it has a stronger affinity for cotton fibre than for woollen or silk. It may be as well to state here how a dye-stuff so insoluble in ordinary solvents is rendered applicable to dyeing and calico-printing.



Several patents have been secured for its application, and we quote what follows from one:—

“I take 1 gallon of water, and dissolve in it 4 oz. of chlorate of potash. To this I add aniline in the proportion of 8 oz., previously mixed with 8 oz. of hydrochloric acid, at 32° Twad. After stirring well, I add 1 pint of acetic acid, and 8 oz. measure of perchloride of copper, at 88° Twad. Then I add 4 oz. of sal-ammoniac. I steep the fibre in this solution, wring out and dry; then I expose the goods in a room at from 60° to 70° Fah., for two or three days. The goods are now passed through water alone, or a solution containing alkaline or metallic salts, which develops the black much sooner and better. The alkaline, or alkaline earths, may be used for raising the black, such as caustic soda, potash, ammonia, or lime-water.”

From the time that the mauve-dye was first discovered on to the present, we have had a regular progressive succession of discoveries. Chemists have been striving to produce from the numerous products of coal tar colouring matters to rival or surpass in beauty those formerly obtained from vegetable sources only; and the result of their labours may be guessed when we consider the steady development of their discoveries, and of the industrial appliances which were the immediate consequences. These achievements may be said to have reached a culminating point in the production of artificial alizarin—the colouring matter of madder—the synthetical preparation of which had for a long time been the aim of many investigators in this branch of inquiry, and therefore the steps leading to its discovery have a particular historical interest. As early as 1832 Dumas and Laurant, two great French chemists, found, when fractionating the products of the distillation of coal tar, a substance among the heavier portions having carbon and hydrogen in such proportions as to suggest to them the formula of  $C_{15}H_{12}$ ; and this being about half as much more than a compound previously separated, and known as naphthaline, they gave to this new body the name of paranaphthaline. The same substance was afterwards separated by another chemist, who called it anthracene. The late Professor Anderson, when investigating the coal-tar products, gave as the constitution of this substance  $C_{14}H_{10}$ , and he adopted the newer name anthracene, which it still retains. It was for a long time supposed to be one of the useless products of coal tar; but in 1868 two German chemists—Graebe and Liebermann—when experimenting upon alizarin from madder, found that they could convert the alizarin into anthracene. The question naturally suggested itself, Can anthracene, on the other hand, be converted into alizarin? and ere long these two chemists solved the question by actually preparing alizarin from anthracene, though by a roundabout process. We may here mention, in the discovery of this artificial alizarin, doubts were entertained of its ever becoming commercially useful. Difficulties were pointed out similar to those which met the aniline colours on their first introduction, such as the production of anthracene in sufficient quantity, and at a price which would enable the artificial to compete with

the natural alizarin. Then there was considerable difficulty in separating pure anthracene from the other solid products of coal tar, a list of which we give below, with their melting and boiling points and their formulæ:—

	Formula.	Melting point.	Boiling point.
Naphthaline, . . .	$C_{10}H_8$	79° Fah.	220° Fah.
Acenaphthaline, . . .	$C_{12}H_{10}$	100° „	285° „
Phenanthrene, . . .	$C_{14}H_{10}$	110° „	340° „
Anthracene, . . .	$C_{14}H_{10}$	213° „	360° „
Pyrene, . . .	$C_{16}H_{10}$	180° „	...
Chrysen, . . .	$C_{16}H_{10}$	284° „	360° „
Retene, . . .	$C_{18}H_{18}$	95° „	400° „

The reader will observe that anthracene and chrysen have the same boiling points, and will in consequence distil over together, so that the separation cannot be effected by fractional distillation; it may, however, be performed by dissolving the anthracene in spirits of wine, chrysen being insoluble therein.

It was found that when anthracene is heated with glacial acetic acid until the mixture gently boils, and chromic acid added at intervals, keeping up the ebullition for about two hours, that, on cooling, there is deposited a crop of light-coloured crystals. These gave, on analysis, a formula of  $C_{14}H_8O_2$ , and this substance was termed anthrachinon. It may be prepared more easily by mixing one part of anthracene with two and a half parts of bichromate of potash in solution, and four parts of wood vinegar. When these have been heated for some time together, a mixture of six parts strong vitriol, with two of water, is added by degrees, keeping the temperature at 212° until all action has ceased. If the anthracene has not been pure, the product obtained as above is dissolved in oil of vitriol, and heated to 158° Fah., until sulphurous acid gas ceases to be evolved. It is then thrown into water, and the anthrachinon, which is insoluble in water, is precipitated and obtained by filtration. This substance forms a sort of link between anthracene and alizarin, as may be seen from their respective formula:—

Anthracene, . . . . .	$C_{14}H_{10}$ .
Anthrachinon, . . . . .	$C_{14}H_8O_2$ .
Alizarin, . . . . .	$C_{14}H_8O_4$ .

Notwithstanding the evident close relationship of the two last compounds, there is no direct method of giving to the anthrachinon the two equivalents of oxygen necessary to complete the change; but, again, by a somewhat roundabout method this has been achieved, and after its accomplishment several methods were suggested and patented, all more or less successful. Graebe and Liebermann patented the following process:—The anthracene is treated with bromine or chlorine, and the product fused with caustic potash, which yields an alizarate of potash; this is decomposed by muriatic acid, and chloride of potassium and alizarin are

obtained. These chemists afterwards substituted another process. They treated the anthrachinon with vitriol, precipitated any excess of acid with lime, then to the clear solution they added carbonate of soda, and evaporated this to dryness; they then fused the dry mass with caustic soda, and from this obtained the alizarin. While these experiments were being carried on by continental chemists, Perkin, Dale, and others in this country were prosecuting similar investigations, which resulted in the preparation of alizarin from anthracene without the necessity of forming the intermediate compound, anthrachinon. Their processes consisted at first of either treating the bromine or chlorine compounds of anthracene with sulphuric acid and peroxide of manganese, or boiling the anthracene with sulphuric acid, precipitating the excess of acid by lime, and treating the remaining solution with caustic potash and nitrate, or chlorate of potash, supplying the required oxygen. These processes have been greatly simplified, and have cheapened the production of artificial alizarin. Several modifications have also been introduced from time to time, as experience was gained in manufacturing, but these have not been made public.

For some time considerable doubt was entertained as to the identity of the composition of artificial alizarin with that of the natural; but careful analysis by Dr. Schunck, Messrs. Perkin, Bolley, Kopp, and others have removed all doubt, and established their identity. It was also uncertain at first whether the artificial would be equally valuable in the dye-house or not, and it was more difficult and required a longer time to remove the doubts and prejudices on this point. A little time and experience were sufficient to prove the efficacy of the dye to those of an unbiased judgment; but the prejudice resulting from the long use of madder, and the influence brought to bear by the madder growers and merchants whose interests were at stake, have not been entirely removed yet. All those, however, who have given the artificial alizarin a fair trial have found that the red produced is equally fast and brilliant with that given by madder, and the principal contention now is a commercial one—one of £ s. d. Whenever the artificial colours can be produced and sold to the dyer at a price lower than the natural, the latter must yield. Notwithstanding this, artificial alizarin will not put madder quite out of the market; for the latter is preferable for many colours upon wool, because it contains other dyes which the wool takes up, giving tints which pure alizarin does not; but further discoveries may soon overcome this difference. The reader will have seen that mauve and magenta were only the first of a series of new dyes, so also may alizarin yet turn out to be; and should there develop from this source a series of colours with the permanency of alizarin, the result will be of the greatest importance to the dyeing and calico-printing trades. Indeed, we have already indications of such a series. Mr. Perkin has announced that when experimenting upon alizarin, he found that there was produced, along with that colouring matter, another which gave certain reactions differing from alizarin: it gave, with the same mordants,

a bluer purple and a more scarlet red; and to this colouring matter he has given the name of anthrapurpurin, and its formula as  $C_{14}H_8O_5$ . He separated this anthrapurpurin from crude alizarin by dissolving the latter in a dilute solution of carbonate of soda, and adding precipitated alumina, which, on agitation, combined with the alizarin, forming a lake, which precipitated and left the anthrapurpurin in solution; he boiled this clear solution, and acidified with hydrochloric acid, which caused the colouring matter to be precipitated. Mr. Perkin says this colouring matter is still associated with another, which gives an orange colour with aluminous mordants. By repeated boiling in alcohol this orange colouring can be removed from the anthrapurpurin. These processes of separation are yet difficult, but hopeful; the orange colouring matter has not yet been subjected to analysis. The following is some of the properties and reactions of anthrapurpurin:—It is very slightly soluble in water; caustic potash and soda dissolve it, giving beautiful violet-coloured solutions, which become blue when heated, but not so blue as those obtained with alizarin; it dissolves also in solutions of the alkaline carbonates, giving a reddish-purple colour, which is precipitated with carbonic acid. If a solution of it in alcohol have acetate of copper added, the colour changes from a yellow to a beautiful purple. When an ammoniacal solution of it is acidified with hydrochloric acid, the dye is precipitated as a dark purple, which dissolves in carbonate of soda, yielding a blue colour; and in caustic alkalies yielding a reddish-purple. Mr. Perkin says that anthrapurpurin has about the same affinity for mordants as alizarin; the colours it produces are also, to some extent, analogous, for it dyes red with alumina, purple and black with iron mordants. There is, however, he observes, a considerable difference in the shade of colour produced, the red being much purer and less blue than those of alizarin, and the purples, blues, and blacks more intense. The fastness of the colours against light and soap is equal to that of the alizarin colours. When used in dyeing Turkey-red it produces very brilliant colours of a scarlet shade, which are remarkable for their permanence.

These results are most hopeful to the dyeing trade, but we have our fears as to the resultant effects which will be produced on the dyer as an intelligent and skilled workman. Hitherto the art was one which required for its successful operations a considerable amount of skill and experience in comparing the dyes and judging of the effects produced by different combinations of the dyeing agents and tints, so as to procure the desired shade, so that a good practical dyer was a man with a degree of intelligence which enabled him to command a position equal to that of a skilled mechanic. But when every colour and shade of colour is made to his hand, and it is only necessary for him to put in the required quantity, and work the goods in it till the proper depth of colour is obtained, less intelligence is required, a less intelligent class of men will be employed, and very little improvement will result from the operations of the trade. Mr. Perkin has considered this view of the question, and has gone somewhat further than the



effects upon the working dyer. We quote what he says on this point:—  
“ The aniline colours have produced quite a revolution in the arts of dyeing and printing, and have made these processes far simpler than they were, and there is such a variety of shades of colour now sent into market, that the dyer or printer has little else to consider than the intensity of the colour required; and, in fact, if a dyer has a large order to execute of a particular shade of colour not in the market, he will not trouble about matching it himself, but send to the colour manufacturer to supply him with a product capable of yielding the required shade.”

We have here the opinion of a great discoverer in this branch of industry, who is perhaps apt to look upon these discoveries, and represent them as a source of saving all manner of trouble to the manufacturing dyer. There is no doubt they will lessen the bother and chance of error to a very large extent; but though we perceive the inevitable lowering of the workmen's qualifications, there will still be required about as great skill and experience as ever in the manufacturer or manager to enable him to suit the colouring matter to the fabric. Cotton, woollen, and silk, as we have already stated, require different treatment, and different qualities of the same kind of fibre will not give the same results on dyeing. Then, again, different qualities and strengths of mordants will give different results, and unless the colour manufacturers were furnished with all these particulars accompanying every order, and were experienced practical dyers to boot, the dyer could never depend on having his pattern suited or matched without giving his practical supervision and care, and exercising his skill and experience as formerly.

# DYEING RECEIPTS.

---

## INTRODUCTORY OBSERVATIONS.

IN the preceding pages we have endeavoured throughout to consider the wants and requirements of the practical man from a chemical standpoint, and therefore have confined our remarks more to the principle and the theory of the operations, than to the operations themselves; and when making reference to practical processes, we considered ourselves addressing men equally conversant with the process under consideration with ourselves. Consequently, except when required to illustrate some fundamental principle, practical processes for dyeing have not been given. But our present object is to detail processes, and in so doing we do not now consider ourselves writing for practical dyers, nor do we, in every case, profess to give the most recent and economical methods for a dye-house. A receipt that is the best and most economical to-day may not be so to-morrow, from modifications and improvements introduced as the result of observations, depending, it may be, upon circumstances which no receipt can give. In what follows we are supposing ourselves addressing the non-practical reader, or, it may be, the apprentice-dyer, and therefore descend into details of processes, so that any one may be enabled to produce, either for amusement or use, any of the shades or colours required. And although, as already stated, the quantities and particular methods given may not be, in all cases, the most economical for the dye-house, nevertheless, by carefully following out the instructions given, a good colour similar to the pattern attached will be produced without difficulty, which is all that is in general required by the amateur. The practical dyer will soon economise according to circumstances, while the thrifty housewife will find that very little trouble is necessary for renovating and improving the appearance of many articles of dress and house furnishings, either in cotton, silk, or woollen.

At the same time, it may be stated that many of the manipulatory processes to be given refer to the methods followed in the dye-house, either of hank or cloth; but where small quantities of goods are to be dyed, what is required in the operations is the free exposure of every portion or part of the fibre, whether cloth or skein, to the dyeing solution, and particularly to the mordant. Where a mordant is required, if the mordant be not equal upon the fibre an even dye cannot be got.

## PRELIMINARY PREPARATIONS FOR DYEING.

## 1. BANDING.

Cotton is generally obtained in bundles of 5 lbs. or 10 lbs., made up of *heads*, each head having 10 hanks, except when the yarn is very coarse, when each head has only 6 hanks; or very fine, when each head has 20 hanks. The number of heads indicates the grist of the thread, called "*the Number*." Thus, 10 lbs. of No. 60 will have 60 heads of 10 hanks, or 30 heads of 20 hanks. These heads are made up into spindles of 18 hanks by the dyer, and through each spindle is tied a piece of stout thread or twine, termed a band; the bundle, when banded, is divided into six quantities, and rolled up and tied into bundles for boiling. Thus, No. 60 will give 35 spindles and 12 hanks, equal to 36, and will be rolled up into 6 sixes, or all sixes, as it is termed, 10 lbs. being invariably named a bundle.

Silk is also banded in the same manner as cotton, using no particular number of hanks, but in quantities convenient for making up into skeins when finished.

Woollen is also banded with twine into spindles, previous to being put under operations for scouring or dyeing.

## 2. BOILING AND STICKING.

*Cotton*.—After banding, cotton is boiled in water for two or three hours until thoroughly wet (see page 56). The bundles are then loosed, and each roll of yarn is put upon a wooden pin, about 3 feet in length and about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch thick, six *pins* or *sticks* forming a bundle according to the division made by the bander. The pins are put through the hank.

*Silk*, as referred to in No. 1, after banding, is carefully tied up and put into fine canvas bags, and boiled in the bags in a strong solution of soap for three or four hours, until all the gum is boiled off. If the silk be yellow gum, it is put upon sticks like the cotton, and wrought in a solution of soft soap, at a temperature just approaching the boiling point, for about one hour, when it is tied up as the white gum silk, and put into bags and boiled till all the gum is removed; when boiled, it is washed from the soap, and *sticked* for dyeing, putting six or eight heads of silk on each stick.

*Woollen* is steeped over night in soap ley, or old alkaline solutions, and then scoured through clean soap, to remove all oil or grease that may be upon the wool; or, what is more common, a scouring liquor is prepared with 1 lb. soft soap and 1 lb. common soda, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. soda ash, in 10 gallons water, and scoured through this.

## 3. COTTON CLOTH.

The cloth is taken out the fold and hanked up by the hand, taking the end of the piece through the hank and tying it loosely, technically termed

kinching; it is then steeped in old alkaline ley overnight, which loosens and removes the oil, grease, and dressing which it has got in weaving; it is then thoroughly washed in clean water. Where there is a dash wheel, it should be used for this washing. This liquor often ferments with the dressing on the cloth, hence it is known as the rot steep.

#### 4. TO REMOVE OIL STAINS.

When oil spots are upon the goods, and so fixed or dried in that the steeping, as above, will not remove them, rub a little soft soap upon the oil stain, and let it remain for an hour, then rub the stain gently with the hand in a lather of soap, slightly warmed, and then wash in water; for cotton, a little caustic ley will do equally well for removing the oil, but the soap is a preferable process, and seldom fails. It is essential that all oil or grease be removed before dyeing.

#### 5. TO REMOVE IRON STAINS.

Take a little muriatic acid in a basin or saucer and make it slightly warm, by placing the basin in hot water, then dip the iron stain into the acid for about one minute, which will dissolve the oxide of iron; the cloth must be well washed from this, first in water, then in a little soda and water, so as to remove all trace of acid. A little oxalic acid may be used instead of muriatic acid, but more time is required, and with old fixed spots is not so effective. The same precautions are necessary in washing out the acid, as any acid dried in the cloth injures it.

#### 6. TO MAKE BLEACHING LIQUOR.

Take a weighed quantity of bleaching powder, and add to it as much water as will make it into a thin cream; take a flat piece of wood and break all the small pieces by pressing them against the side of the vessel, then add two gallons of cold water for every pound of powder; stir well, put a cover upon the vessel, and allow the whole to settle. This will form a sort of stock vat for bleaching operations.

#### 7. TO BLEACH COTTON YARN FOR DYEING.

A vessel sufficiently large to allow of the cotton being wrought in it freely without pressing is to be filled about two-thirds with boiling water; add a pint of bleaching liquor from No. 6 for every gallon of water in the vessel, then work the yarn in this for half an hour. Into another vessel of similar size, filled two-thirds with cold water, add a wine-glassful of vitriol for every two gallons of water; stir well, and then put the yarn from the bleaching solution into this, and work ten minutes, and then wash from this until all acid is removed.



## 8. TO WORK COTTON YARN FOR DYEING OR BLEACHING FOR DYEING.

A bundle, No. 2, suspended upon the pins, is put into a tub filled with the liquor; the ends of the pins resting upon the edge of the tub, the lower portion of the yarn is in the liquor, the upper portion is over the pins. The workman now catches the part of the yarn that is upon the pin and draws it right over, so that the position of the hank is reversed—that which was above is now in the liquor, and *vice versâ*. When he has gone over the whole bundle, he draws the whole towards him and begins anew, and this goes on until the liquor (if it be dyeing) is pretty well exhausted; by this means the whole yarn is completely exposed. In the dye-house, in dyeing 10 lbs., low tubs, about 20 inches in height and as many wide, are used, and called 10 lb.-tubs; but any vessel may be used that holds liquor enough to allow the yarn easy play. For larger quantities of yarn long boxes are used, having a steam pipe along the bottom to keep up the heat of the solution. These are termed baths.

## 9. TO BLEACH COTTON YARN TO BE FINISHED WHITE.

The yarn when banded is boiled for three hours in caustic ley, either potash or soda, made by adding one gill of the caustic ley No. 11 or 12 for each gallon of water in the boiler; wash well from this ley, and lay the yarn to steep in a bleaching liquor, made up as No. 7, but with cold water; after four or five hours, lift and steep for an hour in a sour of one wine-glassful of vitriol to the gallon of water, lift and wash well; then boil again in a ley of half the strength of the first for two hours, and wash from this and steep again four hours in bleaching liquor; wash from this and steep for an hour in a clean sour; wash well from this and dry. A little smalt blue is put into the last washing water to clear the white.

## 10. TO BLEACH COTTON CLOTH.

Rot steep, as No. 3, and wash, then boil in caustic ley, of the strength of 1 gill of No. 11 or 12 to the gallon of water, for three hours; wash out the boil and steep in bleaching liquor for six hours, same strength as No. 9; wash, and steep an hour in strong sour of one wine-glassful of vitriol to the gallon of water; wash well from this before drying or dyeing. If the cloth be very heavy, one operation may not be enough; in such cases repeat the operation, omitting the rot steep.

## 11. TO MAKE CAUSTIC POTASH.

To 3 gallons of water add 2 lbs. either black or pearl ashes and boil; when boiling, add newly slaked lime, until a small quantity of the liquor taken out does not effervesce when an acid is added to it. To do this, take a tumbler half filled with cold water, take out a tablespoonful of the boiling ley, and put into the tumbler, and add a few drops of sulphuric acid; were sulphuric acid added to the hot ley, it would spurt up, and

endanger the operator. When the addition of acid causes no effervescence, the boiling and adding of lime is stopped, and the whole allowed to settle; then remove the clear into a vessel having a cover, to prevent it taking carbonic acid from the air. This serves as a stock for general use. The lime sediment remaining may have some hot water added, which will give a strong ley, and may be used for first boils for yarn or heavy cloth.

#### 12. TO MAKE CAUSTIC SODA.

For every gallon of water add 1 lb. of soda ash, or 2 lbs. of crystallised soda of the shops; boil, and then add slaked lime, and proceed otherwise as with No. 11.

#### 13. TO SLAKE LIME.

Take some well and newly-burned limestone, and pour over it some water so long as the stone seems to absorb it, and allow it to stand; if not breaking down freely, sprinkle a little more water over it. A small quantity is best done in a vessel, such as an old cask, in which case it may be covered with a board or bag. Slaked lime should not stand long exposed. One cwt. of newly-burned Irish lime will take 4 gallons water.

#### 14. TO MAKE A SOUR.

To every gallon of water add 1 gill of vitriol, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  gill of muriatic acid, stir thoroughly; goods steeped in this should be covered with the liquor, as pieces exposed become dry, which deteriorates the fibre; if left under the liquor, the cloth is not hurt by being long in the sour.

#### 15. TO MAKE NITRATE OF IRON.

Take four parts, by measure, nitric acid (aqua fortis), and one part water, put the vessel containing the mixture into a warm place, and add by degrees pieces of iron so long as the acid continues to dissolve the metal with effervescence; then take out any remaining iron, and after settling for an hour, pour off the clear, and preserve from light. The solution has a brownish colour and syrupy consistence.

N.B.—The fumes given off during the operation destroy animal and vegetable tissues, and corrode metals. They should be led up the chimney. The strength of the acids used in these receipts, except otherwise mentioned, is—

Vitriol,	.	.	.	.	.	166° to 168° Twad.
Nitric acid,	.	.	.	.	.	63° „ 66° „
Muriatic acid,	.	.	.	.	.	32° „ 35° „

#### 16. TO MAKE ACETATE OF IRON (*Black Iron Liquor*).

Put pieces of iron, or filings, into crude vinegar, and allow it to stand for several days, stirring occasionally; a gentle heat assists the action.

This liquor is sold prepared, and may be obtained of any drysalter.

17. TO MAKE SULPHATE OF IRON (*Copperas*).

Into a glass or stoneware vessel put two parts, by measure, of sulphuric acid (vitriol), and one part water, and add small pieces of iron, or filings, as long as they are dissolved; then decant the clear liquid into a basin, and evaporate by a gradual heat, until a skin or pellicle be seen forming on the surface of the liquid; remove the heat, and when cool, sulphate of iron will be found crystallised at the bottom. This salt is sold cheap by drysalters.

18. TO MAKE PROTO-CHLORIDE OF IRON (*Muriate of Iron*).

To four parts of muriatic acid add two parts water, and apply a gentle heat, then add iron, in pieces or filings, so long as it continues to be dissolved, then pour off the clear into a basin and evaporate, as No. 17, when greenish-coloured crystals of chloride of iron will be obtained; but this salt crystallises with difficulty, and deliquesces in the air, and should not be exposed. Instead of evaporating and crystallising, the solution may be put into a bottle and reserved for use.

## 19. TO MAKE PERSULPHATE OF IRON.

Take some nitrate of iron, No. 15, and add to it carbonate of soda or potash in solution; so long as there is a precipitate, wash the precipitate, which is easily done by using a large vessel for the operation, filling it up several times with water, and when the precipitate settles, decanting off the clear; when washed, some vitriol is added and heat applied, which dissolves the precipitate, and forms persulphate of iron.

## 20. OTHER METHODS.

Take two parts vitriol, and one nitric acid, and two water, and add iron so long as it is dissolved, applying heat; take the clear solution and bottle up for use.

To 4 oz. of copperas, dissolved in water, add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz., by measure, of nitric acid, and boil the solution for about one minute.

Instead of nitric acid, add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of nitrate of potash (nitre) and a few drops of vitriol; bring the whole to a boil, when the protosulphate of iron is converted into a persulphate.

These salts are not generally sold by drysalters.

The proportions or parts of acids referred to are by measure.

21. TO MAKE PERCHLORIDE OF IRON (*Permuriate of Iron*).

Take three parts of muriatic acid and one part nitric acid, with two parts water, and add iron so long as it continues to be dissolved; the clear solution is then to be decanted and bottled for use.

It may be formed also by precipitating the iron from the nitrate by soda, and dissolving the precipitate in muriatic acid, in the same manner as No. 20.

## 22. TO MAKE SULPHATE OF ZINC (*White Vitriol*).

Take two parts vitriol and one part water, and add to the mixture metallic zinc, granulated, so long as it continues to be dissolved; decant the clear into a basin, and evaporate by heat until a skin appears on the surface, then lay aside to cool, when there will be obtained crystals of sulphate of zinc. They are white and transparent. This salt is very abundant in the market.

## 23. TO MAKE SULPHATE OF COPPER (*Blue Stone*).

Two parts strong vitriol and one part water are put into a glass flask, there is then added a quantity of copper turnings or filings, and the whole kept boiling for a considerable time; then decant the solution into a basin, and set aside to cool, when blue crystals of sulphate of copper will be obtained. This salt is plentiful in the market.

*N.B.*—The gas given off when making this salt should not be allowed to escape into a room; indeed, the dissolving of metals in acids should always be done in such situations that the gases evolved be carried up a chimney.

## 24. TO MAKE NITRATE OF COPPER.

To one part, by measure, strong nitric acid and two parts water, add metallic copper so long as the acid dissolves it. The clear solution is put into a bottle and preserved for use. By evaporating, as No. 22, crystal will be obtained, but with difficulty. Dyers themselves generally prepare this salt.

## 25. TO FEATHER TIN OR ZINC (*Granulate*).

Take the best grain tin, and melt in an iron pot or ladle, and then pour it gently from a height of several feet into a large vessel filled with cold water. The metal is formed into thin flakes, and is in this state easily dissolved.

Zinc may also be granulated by the same process.

## 26. PROTOCHLORIDE OF TIN (*Crystals of Tin*).

Take three parts pure muriatic acid and one part water, put them into a glass or stoneware vessel, and place it so that the acid be raised to a temperature of nearly 200°; add to this acid feathered tin from time to time, so long as it continues to be dissolved, then withdraw the heat, and let the solution cool gradually, when there will be obtained the crystals of tin, which may be collected and dried at a moderate heat, and bottled tightly to prevent deliquescence. This salt is sold by drysalts.



## 27. TO MAKE BICHLORIDE OF TIN.

Take 1 oz. of protochloride of tin (crystals of tin) and dissolve in 5 oz. of water, in which is put  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. muriatic acid; bring this to boil, adding cautiously, and drop by drop, nitric acid, until no effervescence or nitrous fumes are produced by its addition. Allow to cool, and then bottle for use.

By heating barwood spirits, or plumb spirits, and treating in the same manner, bichloride will be produced. As the nitric acid put into the spirits causes rapid effervescence, a large vessel should be employed for this operation.

## 28. ANOTHER METHOD FOR PERMURIATE OF TIN.

Take two parts of muriatic acid and one part nitric acid, add to this feathered tin, gradually as dissolved, keeping the acid warm. Red nitrous fumes are evolved in this operation. Three ounces of tin to every pound of mixed acids forms a good spirit. Some dyers, especially for woollen stuff, add to this a little sal-ammoniac, say half the weight of the muriatic acid.

## 29. RED SPIRITS.

Take three parts, by measure, of muriatic acid and one part nitric acid, with one part water; put the vessel containing the mixture into a cool place, and add, in small quantities at a time, feathered tin, in the proportion of 2 oz. of tin for each pound of acid. A few hours after the action has ceased, the spirits are ready for use.

*N.B.*—In making spirits, the best sort of vessels to use are salt-glazed stoneware, as thin as can be had.

## 30. TO MAKE YELLOW SPIRITS.

To every three parts of muriatic acid add one part sulphuric acid and one part water; add to this, by degrees, feathered tin, so long as it continues to be dissolved, keeping the solution at a temperature of about 60°; decant and preserve for use. This kind is seldom used now. The red spirits serve the same purpose.

## 31. BARWOOD SPIRITS.

Take five parts, by measure, muriatic acid and one part nitric acid; add to this, by degrees, 1 oz. of feathered tin for every pound of the mixed acid. This spirit should stand for a day before being used.

## 32. SPIRIT MORDANT FOR WOOLLEN.

Five lbs. muriatic acid, 3 lbs. sulphuric acid,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. nitric acid, 1 lb. tartar, and 2 pints water; dissolve in this 1 lb. of feathered tin, or as much tin as the acid will dissolve.

## 33. PLUMB SPIRITS.

Mix six parts, by measure, muriatic acid, one part nitric acid, and one part water; keep the mixture at a temperature of about  $60^{\circ}$ ; for every pound weight of the acids add by degrees  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz. tin. This spirit should stand a day before being used.

## 34. DOUBLE MURIATE OF TIN.

This is prepared exactly as No. 26, but is not crystallised. Dissolve 5 oz. tin in every pound weight of muriatic acid, this gives the strength at which it is generally sold.

Oxymuriate is prepared by passing chlorine through a solution of muriate of tin.

## 35. SINGLE MURIATE OF TIN.

Take two parts acid and one part water, and add to this 3 oz. of tin for every pound weight of acid; dissolve in the same manner as No. 26.

Both these liquors are sold by drysalters.

## 36. TO MAKE A PLUMB TUB.

Make a decoction of logwood by boiling; if the wood be ground, half an hour's boiling will do, but if chipped, two hours, using  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. best logwood for every gallon water; after boiling has ceased, and the wood settled, decant the clear decoction and allow it to stand for forty-eight hours; again decant from any matter that may have settled to the bottom, and to every gallon of the decanted liquor add from 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of plumb spirits. Stir well, and after standing for a day it is ready for use. If the spirits were added to the logwood while hot the colour would precipitate.

## 37. ALUM PLUMB TUB.

Make a decoction of logwood, by boiling, of 1 lb. to the gallon water; when the wood is settled, remove the clear decoction, and to each gallon of liquor add 1 lb. of alum. The alum should be previously dissolved to saturation. When well stirred and allowed to stand for a day, the plumb tub is ready for use.

## 38. PEACHWOOD PLUMB.

Make a strong decoction of Lima or Brazil-wood by boiling, using 1 lb. wood to the gallon water. When the boiling has ceased and the wood settled to the bottom, decant the clear and allow it to cool for twenty-four hours; then decant again from any sediment that may have collected, and to every gallon of liquor add half-pint plumb spirits No. 33; stir well, and let stand for several hours, when it is fit for use.

## 39. TO MAKE UP A BLUE VAT.

Take 1 lb. of indigo, and grind in water until no grittiness can be felt between the fingers; put this into a deep vessel (casks are generally used),

with about 12 gallons of water, then add 2 lbs. copperas and 3 lbs. newly slaked lime, and stir for fifteen minutes; stir again after two hours, and repeat every two hours for five or six times; towards the end, the liquor should be of a greenish-yellow colour, with blackish veins through it, and a rich froth of indigo on the surface. After standing eight hours to settle, the vat is fit for use. The goods should not be allowed to come into contact with the precipitate or sludge at bottom.

### 39a. ANOTHER METHOD.

One lb. indigo,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. slaked lime,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of fine iron filings, and  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb. of powdered zinc—the zinc must be in the state of an impalpable powder; stir every hour for five or six hours, until the solution becomes yellow with blue veins through it; let it stand for half-an-hour, and it is fit for use.

### 40. TO PREPARE ANNOTTA.

Into 2 gallons of water put 1 lb. annotta, 4 oz. pearlash, and 2 oz. soft soap, apply heat, stir until the whole is dissolved. When convenient, it is best to boil the solution.

### 41. TO PREPARE CATECHU.

To 7 or 8 gallons of water add 1 lb. of catechu, and boil till all is dissolved, then add 2 oz. nitrate of copper, and stir, when it is ready for use. Sulphate of copper may be used instead of nitrate. Any quantity, less or more of each, may be used in the same proportions.

### 42. TO MAKE DECOCTIONS OF GROUND WOODS.

On a piece of coarse cloth stretched upon a frame, or laid into a basket, put the ground wood, and place it over a vessel, then pour over the wood boiling water until the water pass through nearly colourless. If the wood be chipped it must be boiled.

### 43. TO TEST THE COMPARATIVE QUALITY OF LOGWOOD, OR OTHER VEGETABLE COLOURING MATTERS SOLUBLE IN WATER.

Take 100 grains, and dry at the heat of boiling water, and mark the loss. Take 10 grains and put into a porcelain crucible, and keep it at a red heat over gas or in a clear fire until nothing is left but a white ash; weigh this and mark. Take other 10 grains and put it upon a filter, and pour boiling water upon it as long as the water passing through is coloured; dry what remains on the filter at  $212^{\circ}$  and weigh; this gives water, ash, and woody fibre. Then take a skein of cotton of a given weight mordanted with sumach and spirits; work this in the colour dissolved out until the liquor is exhausted. When several samples of logwood are tested, their relative values are thus easily ascertained. We use only 10 grains

to test for the colouring matter, as it is important that the colour should never be sufficient to dye the cotton fully. We have found the quantity of moisture given off at 212° from ground logwood to vary from 27 per cent. to 45 per cent. Red and yellow woods may be tested in the same way.

#### 44. TO MAKE SULPHATE OF INDIGO.

Into 5 lbs. of the most concentrated sulphuric acid, not less than 168° Twad., stir in by degrees 1 lb. of the best indigo, finely ground and dried; expose this mixture to a heat of about 100° Fah. for ten or twelve hours, stirring it occasionally. A little rubbed upon a window pane should assume a purple-blue colour.

#### 45. TO PREPARE INDIGO EXTRACT.

Sulphate of indigo is prepared as No. 44, and then diluted with about 4 gallons of hot water, and the whole put upon a thick woollen filter over a large vessel, and hot water poured upon the filter until it passes through nearly colourless; the blackish matter retained upon the filter is thrown away, and the solution which passed through is transferred to a leaden vessel, and evaporated to about 3 gallons, to this is added about 4 lbs. common salt, and well stirred; the whole is again put upon a woollen filter, and allowed to drain. The extract remains as a thin pasty mass upon the filter, and is ready for use. Various other proportions are used by manufacturers of this colour, but we have found the above to suit well for our own use.

#### 46. TO MAKE SOUR EXTRACT OF INDIGO.

We take this and the following from the *Chemical News* for 15th January, 1875:—"To make what is generally called *sour extract of indigo*, mix 5 lbs. of best Bengal indigo in 30 lbs. of strong oil of vitriol. Let it stand five days; then put it in a tub, and add 40 gallons boiling water to it; then filter while hot through strong felt cloth. The filters are usually made this way:—A frame like a table top, 8 yards long, 2 yards wide. This frame is divided into four filters; pieces of wood across are put on the top and made to fit the holes (the shape of bowls with holes perforated in them); then the felt cloth is put on the top, and the liquid is put on the filter and filtered through. The sediment at the top is used to colour pottery moulds. That which is run through is put in a tub, and 40 lbs. of common salt added; digest for six hours, then put on the filter again for four or five days. That which drains through runs away into the sewers. That on the top of the filters is the extract. From these proportions the extract should weigh 80 lbs. This is sour extract of indigo of commerce."

#### 47. TO MAKE FREE EXTRACT OF INDIGO.

"To make free extract of indigo, put 100 lbs. of the sour extract in a tub, 12 gallons of water as well; neutralise the acid in the extract with



strong soda-ash liquor until it is free from any sour taste; then put on the filter for six days. It should weigh 100 lbs. when it comes off. This is free extract of indigo of commerce."

#### 48. TO MAKE CHEMIC.

2  
3  
Into a cask containing about 20 gallons of boiling water (the cask should not be over three-thirds full) add 1 lb. of indigo made into sulphate or extract, then add by degrees ground whiting, stirring after each addition, and continue until the acid of the indigo is exactly neutralised, which is generally known by the taste ceasing to be sour, as this is generally used for dyeing greens on cotton with a vegetable yellow base; if there be more whiting added than will neutralise the acid, or too little to leave free acid, the colours dyed with it will be faulty. The whole should stand for eight or ten hours to settle after adding the whiting, when it is ready for use. As a quantity of sediment collects at the bottom of the vessel, care has to be taken to avoid disturbing this. Carbonate of soda may be used instead of whiting, with the same precautions; but this is not so good for the colour, as soda salts remain in solution.

#### 49. TO PREPARE SAFFLOWER FOR DYEING COTTON.

Take 1 lb. of safflower, and immerse in cold water until perfectly wet, and the fibres all loose, then place it on a fine haircloth search, and pour upon it clean cold water until the water passing through is not tinged yellow. Dissolve 1 oz. of pearlash in 2 gallons water, and add the washed safflower, stir and allow it to stand for five or six hours, after which the whole is again put on the search, placed over a clean vessel to retain all the liquid passing through which contains the dye. After pouring a little clean water upon the exhausted safflower in the search to wash out any dye, it is thrown away.

This dyeing liquor spoils by keeping, and should be used when newly prepared.

#### 50. TO PREPARE SAFFLOWER FOR DYEING SILK.

Into the liquid, as prepared in No. 49, is put 2 oz. by measure of vitriol, well stirred, and a quantity of cotton is put into this and allowed to steep for a few hours; the colouring matter is imbibed by the cotton, which is dyed a deep red. The cotton is now well washed in cold water until all yellow colour is removed, and then wrought for fifteen minutes in a vessel with cold water, having dissolved in it 1 oz. pearlash; wring the cotton from this, and the solution is ready for dyeing silk.

#### 51. TO MAKE OXALATE AND MURIATE OF TIN.

Dissolve 2 oz. of crystallised binoxalate of potash, then add 1 oz. of crystals of tin, and stir till dissolved.

It is also prepared by adding to a pint of red spirits 2 oz. binoxalate of potash, and stirring until it is dissolved; or the oxalate may be dissolved in water before adding it to the spirits.

#### 52. TO MAKE ACETATE OF ALUMINA (*Red Liquor*).

In 1 gallon hot water dissolve 2 lbs. alum; dissolve in a separate vessel 2 lbs. acetate of lead (sugar-of-lead) in 1 gallon water; in a third vessel dissolve  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. crystallised soda; mix all the solutions together, and stir well for some time, then allow to stand overnight; decant the clear solution, which is ready for use.

This mordant is obtained from drysalts under the name of red liquor.

#### 53. TO TEST WATER.

Take a small piece of white soap, and dissolve in alcohol, and let the solution clear; if a little of this clear solution is added to distilled water there is no precipitate, but if the water be hard it becomes milky; the hardness of the water may be known by the amount of milkiness or precipitate given.

By taking a little of the water in a clean glass, and adding the following tests, using a separate quantity of water for every test, the presence of the following ingredients, which generally exist in water, will be ascertained:—

Tests used.	Indicate the presence of
If oxalate of ammonia gives a whiteness,	Lime, free or combined.
If blue litmus is turned red, . . . .	Acids, uncombined.
If turmeric turns brown, . . . .	Alkalies and alkaline earths.
If nitrate of silver gives white, and not cleared by the addition of nitric acid, . . . .	{ Muriatic acid, free or combined.
If salts of barytes give white, not cleared by adding nitric acid, . . . .	{ Sulphuric acid and sulphates.
If lime-water gives milkiness, . . . .	Carbonic acid.
If acetate of lead becomes brown or black after standing, . . . .	Sulphides.
If chloride of calcium gives white, . . . .	Carbonated alkalies.
If phosphate of soda gives white after long stirring, . . . .	Magnesia.

Carbonates of the earths, sulphates, muriates, and free acids make water hard.

#### 54. TO MAKE LIME-WATER.

Into a barrel or other deep vessel, filled with cold water, add new-slaked lime in the proportion of  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. to the gallon water, then stir well and allow to settle; the clear is what is used for dyeing. This should be

made up just previous to using, as lime-water standing attracts carbonic acid from the air, and forms an insoluble crust on the surface, which tends to weaken the solution.

55. TO MAKE COCHINEAL LIQUOR, OR PASTE.

Put 8 oz. ground cochineal in a bottle, and add to it 8 oz. by measure ammonia, and 8 oz. water; let the whole simmer together for a few hours, when the liquor is ready for use.

56. TO REMOVE MILDEW FROM COTTON.

Proceed with the stains by rubbing in soap or steeping in a little soda, washing, and then steeping in bleaching liquor, same as No. 7; afterwards pass through a sour, and wash.

57. TO REMOVE INDELIBLE INK MARKS.

Steep the marking in a little chlorine water, or a weak solution of bleaching liquor, for about half an hour, then wash in ammonia water, which will remove the stain; the goods should be washed from this in clean water.

58. ANOTHER METHOD.

Spread the cloth with the ink mark over a basin filled with hot water, then moisten the ink mark with the tincture of iodine, and immediately after take a feather and moisten the parts stained by the iodine, then put on it a solution of hyposulphite of soda, or caustic potash or soda; when the colour is removed, let the cloth dip into the hot water; after a while wash well and dry.

59. TO DETECT ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE FIBRES.

Treat the fabric with bichloride of tin heated to from 130° to 150° Fah., when the cotton and linen become black, and wool and silk remain unchanged.

60. TO DETECT MIXED FABRICS OF COTTON AND WOOL.

Dip a piece of the suspected cloth in bleaching liquor: after a little the woollen turns yellow and the cotton white, and consequently may be easily distinguished.

61. TO DETECT COTTON IN LINEN.

The piece to be tested is boiled to remove all dressing, and then dried; a portion of the piece is put into common vitriol for about one minute, it is then taken out, washed in water several times, and then in a weak solution of soda or potash, and all gummy matter formed is removed by gentle rubbing; by this process the cotton is dissolved out and the linen remains, or what portion of the cotton is not dissolved becomes

opaque white; the linen is transparent, and is thus easily detected. By comparing the portion of cloth immersed with a similar portion not tried, the quantity of cotton present may easily be estimated.

#### 62. ANOTHER METHOD FOR DETECTING COTTON IN LINEN.

Take a small piece of the cloth, boil in water and dry; then take three parts, by weight, of vitriol, and add to it two parts of crushed nitrate of potash (nitre). The dry piece of cloth is put into this for six or seven minutes, and then washed from this till there is no taste of acid, and dry at a gentle heat; then put it into a mixture of ether and alcohol, which will dissolve the cotton and not the linen. If the piece be weighed before putting into the ether and alcohol, and after, the quantity of cotton in the fabric may be thus ascertained. Or, dye the cloth with an alcoholic solution of rosalic acid, then treat it with carbonate of soda in caustic soda. The cotton remains undyed.

#### 63. COTTON AND WOOL.

Take a small piece of the cloth and boil in caustic soda, No. 12, when the wool will be dissolved and the cotton will remain. If the threads have been previously counted, their relative mixture may be thus ascertained.

#### 64. COTTON WITH SILK AND WOOL.

Put a piece of the cloth into chlorine water or bleaching liquor, No. 6. The cotton is whitened by the liquor, and the silk and woollen become yellow. These changes will be easily distinguished by the use of a small pocket lens.

#### 65. COTTON WITH SILK AND WOOLLEN.

Take a small piece and unravel the threads, and inflame them; the cotton burns away freely, with little or no black charcoal; the woollen and silk shrivel up, leave a black charcoal, and give a strong smell.

There are several other methods by dyeing—viz., by using a dye that has an affinity for animal fibres without mordants—dipping the cloth in this, the cotton remains white. Or, jute may be distinguished from hemp or flax by giving a deep yellow with aniline sulphate, while the others are not affected by this re-agent.

#### 66. SOFTENING.

Into a gallon of hot water dissolve  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of common soda, then add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint sweet oil, and stir well. A little of this is added to the washing water for some colours, to soften the goods; it is only applied to yarn.

#### 67. TO STRIP ROYAL BLUE FROM SILK OR WOOLLEN.

For 8 lbs. stuff, either silk or woollen, take 2 lbs. copperas, 2 lbs. bluestone, and 2 lbs. argol dissolved in water, and work the goods in it warm.



## 68. STRIP SCARLET COCHINEAL DYE.

For each pound of cloth take half-ounce bichromate of potash and a little vitriol, work in this a short time, and the colour is reduced to a light fawn.

## 69. TO MAKE SOLUBLE PRUSSIAN BLUE FOR DOMESTIC USE.

Take half-pound yellow prussiate of potash dissolved in water, add to this half-pound, by measure, nitric acid, and then half-pound of copperas in solution, stir well, and filter immediately, and wash the acid out, or until the water passing through the filter is coloured blue; dry at a steam heat.

## 70. ANOTHER METHOD.

Take a solution of 4 oz. yellow prussiate of potash, and a solution of 4 oz. of copperas, to which has been added 1 oz. muriatic acid; put half an ounce of bleaching powder in 1 pint of water, and allow this to settle, and put the clear solution into the solution of yellow prussiate; then mix this with the copperas solution, stir well, and filter immediately; wash until the liquor passing through ceases to taste of acid, the last portions of the washing will be blue—the blue is dried at a steam heat, and is ready for use. There are other methods, but these are simple and easy, and they give good results.

## 71. TO FIND THE QUANTITY OF TANNIN IN ANY VEGETABLE.

Make a solution of pure dry tartar emetic in 100 graduation measures of water; boil 50 grains of the substances to be tested, say sumach, in one quart of water for fifteen minutes, and set aside to cool, add to this  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. sal-ammoniac in solution. Then add by degrees the tartar emetic solution until a precipitate ceases to be formed, then note the number of graduated measures taken. As each grain of tartar emetic is equal to 2 grains of tannin, and as every 10 graduation measures had 1 grain of tartar emetic in solution, the calculation is easy; say 50 graduations are taken, then as  $10 : 2 :: 50 : 10$  grains of tannin in the 50 grains of sumach, or 20 per cent.

## 71a. TESTING DYED STUFFS OR FIBRES.

A logwood dye, or the presence of logwood, is detected by putting the dyed fibre into dilute sulphuric or muriatic acid, which removes the colour or renders it brownish. If the acid used be neutralised with ammonia, the liquor assumes a blue logwood colour; and if the discharged fabric be put into ammonia, it will give a slate colour. Supposing the colour under test be a black, if it has been wholly dyed with logwood the cloth becomes brown by the acid; but if it has had a blue bottom the cloth after washing out the acid will remain blue. The same thing applies to what are termed logwood blues; some of these have no blue bottom, others have.

Nitric acid should not be used for this testing, as it will remove indigo-blue and give an erroneous result.

Blue dyed with indigo is not altered by dipping in sour made with sulphuric or muriatic acid, or by an alkaline ley.

Aniline blue is altered by caustic alkaline leys, becoming light grey; and a Prussian blue is completely removed by these re-agents, leaving a buff or dun colour of peroxide of iron.

Colours dyed with oxide of iron give a blue by putting them into a solution of yellow prussiate of potash, and iron colours are removed by muriatic acid and water warmed; by adding afterwards ammonia in excess to the acid the iron is precipitated.

Yellows, boiled with soap.—If the dye is by fustic, it is removed; if by bark, the colour is browned, but not removed. Should the dye be by chrome, putting it into an alkaline sulphide turns the dye black with a yellow tint.

Reds by safflower are completely removed by an alkaline ley; but the addition of an acid to the ley in excess restores the colour.

Reds by Brazil woods are mostly removed by a sour made with vitriol. If the colour is washed in a solution of soap, it makes the solution red; if logwood has been mixed with the red dye, such as in crimsons, &c., the soap liquor becomes of a lavender colour.

Greens being mixed dyes of yellow and blue, the kind of yellow used is known by similar tests as given for yellows, and the kind of blue is known by the same treatment as we have given for blue. Aniline greens are known from their solubility in alcohol.

We take the following from the *Chemical Society's Journal*.—

“A.—BLUES.—Solution of citric acid or dilute hydrochloric acid is added.

(a.) Colour changes to red or orange. *Logwood*.

(b.) Colour does not change.

Another part is treated with calcium chloride solution.

(a.) Colour remains unchanged. *Prussian blue*.

(b.) Colour changes.

Another part is treated with caustic soda.

(a.) The substance is decoloured. *Aniline blue*.

(b.) It remains unchanged. *Indigo blue*.

“B.—YELLOWS.—A portion is tested for ferric oxide by means of potassium ferrocyanide; another part is tested for picric acid by means of potassium cyanide solution. The production of a blood-red colour indicates picric acid.

If the colours are absent, another portion is treated with a boiling soap solution (one part of soap in two hundred of water).

(a.) The colour changes to brown, but becomes yellow again with an acid. *Turmeric*.

(b.) The colour becomes very dark. *Fustic*.

(c.) The colour unchanged. *Weld, Persian berries, or quercitron*.

Another portion is boiled with stannous chloride.

- (a.) The colour remains unchanged. *Quercitron*.
- (b.) The colour changes to orange. *Persian berries*.

If annotta is the colouring matter present, the colour changes to greenish blue on boiling in concentrated sulphuric acid.

“C.—REDS.—The substance is treated with boiling soap solution.

- (a.) The colour is totally discharged. *Saffron carmine (safflower)*.
- (b.) The colour is slightly discharged. *Aniline red*.
- (c.) The colour changes to yellowish-red or yellow. *Brazil-wood* or *cochineal*.

A part of the substance is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid.

- (1.) A cherry-red colour is produced. *Brazil-wood*.
- (2.) A yellowish-orange colour is produced. *Cochineal*.
- (d.) The colour remains unchanged. *Madder red*.

This colour is not discharged by ammonium, chloride, or by a mixture of equal parts of stannous chloride, hydrochloric acid, and water.

“D.—GREENS.—These colours may consist of a mixture of blues and yellows, or of such substances as aniline green.

The substance is heated with alcohol of 95 per cent. in a water bath.

- (I.) The alcohol is coloured yellow, while the substance becomes more and more blue. *Indigo* or *Prussian blue* is present; the residue is washed and tested for these blues, as already directed. The alcoholic liquid is tested for yellows as above.
- (II.) The alcohol is coloured green, while the substance becomes less coloured. *Aniline green*, or a mixture of *aniline blue with yellow* is present.

A part of the substance is boiled with dilute hydrochloric acid.

- (a.) The liquid is coloured blue or lilac. *Aniline green from methyl iodide* is present.
- (b.) The substance is decolourised. *Aniline green from aldehyde*.
- (c.) The substance is coloured blue, while the liquid becomes yellow *Aniline blue mixed with yellow*.

“E.—VIOLETS.—The substance is boiled in calcium chloride solution.

- (a.) It is unchanged. *Alcanna violet*.
- (b.) It is coloured nankeen yellow. *Madder violet*.
- (c.) It is decolourised. *Cochineal violet*.

Another portion is boiled in citric acid, the colour is brightened. *Aniline violet*.

“To distinguish between the two aniline violets, a third part is boiled in hydrochloric acid, which is diluted with three times its volume of water. After washing it appears blue violet, if ordinary violet is the colour; while, if Hofmann's violet is present, the substance appears greenish, and after washing, light lilac or bluish.”

## COTTON DYEING.

---

### GENERAL DIRECTIONS.

IN the following receipts for cotton, the quantity of dye-stuffs given is for dyeing 10 lbs. weight of goods, whether cloth or yarn; so that the proportions of the dye-drug may be easily calculated for any particular quantity. When only small quantities of goods are to be dyed, such as gloves, handkerchiefs, or a dress, the proportion of dye-stuffs may be increased with good effect, as very small quantities cannot be done with the same economy.

The quantities given in these receipts, in connection with a pattern, must be looked upon as a close approximation only, there being so many circumstances to consider, that positive quantities cannot be given; for instance, the quality of the fabric, the water, and the dye-drugs, are often so varied as to require a difference of one-half more or less of the stuff to produce the same effect. However, the amateur will find that in following out any of the receipts, he will not fail to produce the colour required, if not the exact tint. Thus, suppose it is wished to dye a brown of any particular sort, say cinnamon brown, No. 77, by following the mode and using the quantities given in the receipt a brown of that quality will be produced; but should he wish to dye a brown of the *exact tint* and *depth* of any pattern in the book, the quantities of stuff used may not produce that, owing to the goods, stuff, or water, as already stated, not being the same as were used for the pattern in the book. Nevertheless, by following the instructions given in relation to the principle and reaction of the different stuffs used for the dye, the amateur may be able to add such stuff as will ultimately bring up the particular tint required. As, for example, logwood gives the violet or blue tint, lima or peachwood the red or crimson tint, and fustic or bark the yellow tint.

I have already referred to the preparation of cotton, silk, and woollen for dyeing, which should be carefully attended to, otherwise the experiments will not be successful.

It may be further remarked that, in giving receipts, the exact quantity of water cannot be stated, as that will vary according to the nature of the article to be dyed, shape of vessel, &c.; but in all cases the quantity of water should be sufficient to allow the goods being put under the liquor without being closely pressed.

For re-dyes, if the colour upon the goods be light, and that required be dark, then it may not be necessary to remove it, but only to steep in a little alkali, as soda, to remove grease or oil. In general, it is better to clean the goods throughout, and for this purpose they should be put through the bleaching process, No. 10.



It may also be stated, as a general rule, that for all light shades of colour, the cotton should be previously bleached, otherwise the colour will not give satisfaction. The following will be a sort of guide:—For all safflower colours, light yellows, sky blues, lavenders, nankeens, light greens, very light drabs, &c., the goods should be bleached; for dark drabs, browns, reds, slates, ambers, deep blues, black, dark greens, &c., they need not be bleached.

All washing processes, except where otherwise mentioned, are in cold water.

A question is often put in relation to a partially worn dress, what colour will it dye? This depends much on the nature of the dye already upon it. If it be one easily removed, it may dye any colour; but if a permanent dye is on it, the dye required must not only be darker, but such as the dye upon it can form a part, for instance, blue may be dyed black. When the colour of an old dress has been faded in exposed parts, if the colour cannot be removed entirely, it must be dyed a deep shade, to hide the unequal parts caused by this circumstance.

---

## DYEING.

### 72. BLACK.

Steep the goods in a decoction of 3 lbs. sumach, putting them in while it is hot, and let them lie overnight; wring out and work for ten minutes through lime-water, No. 54, then work them for half an hour in a solution of 2 lbs. copperas. They may either be washed from this or wrought again through lime-water for ten minutes—the former gives the preferable shade, but the goods must be well washed; work them for half an hour in a warm decoction of 3 lbs. logwood, adding half a pint chamberley, urine, before entering the goods, then lift and raise with 2 oz. copperas in solution; work ten minutes, then wash and dry.



### 73. JET BLACK.

The goods are proceeded with exactly as last; but along with the logwood is added 1 lb. fustic, and finished as above.

In both these blacks, if 3 pints iron liquor, No. 16, be used instead of the copperas, or in part mixed with the copperas, it makes a richer shade of black, but copperas is most generally used; if mixed, use half the quantity of each.

#### 74. BLUE BLACK.

Dye the goods first a good shade of blue by the vat, No. 39, and then proceed exactly as No. 72; but should the blue be very deep, as is often the case, then half the quantity of the materials given for No. 72 will suffice.

#### 75. SPIRIT BROWN.

The goods are dyed first a spirit yellow, exactly as No. 104, and washed; they are then wrought for half an hour in a decoction of 2 lbs. lima or peachwood and 1 lb. logwood; lift the goods out the liquor and add 3 oz. of alum in solution, and work fifteen minutes; wash and dry. By varying the proportions of logwood and limawood, a variety of shades can be produced.



#### 76. MORDANT BROWN.

Dye a yellow, the same as No. 106, then work for half an hour through a decoction of 2 lbs. limawood and 8 oz. logwood, lift and raise with 2 oz. alum in solution; work for fifteen minutes, and wash and dry.

This method is well adapted for cloth goods, is better than the spirits, and more easily performed by the non-practical man. The spirit brown is best for yarn.

#### 77. CINNAMON BROWN.

Dye a dark yellow, the same as No. 104, then work for twenty minutes in  $3\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. limawood and  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. logwood; then raise, by adding 2 oz. of alum in solution; wash in cold water, and dry.



## 78. UVANTERINE BROWN.

Dye a yellow, the same as No. 104, and then work for twenty minutes in a decoction of 1 lb. limawood and 1 lb. fustic; lift and raise, by adding half pint red liquor, No. 52; work ten minutes in this; wash in cold water, and dry. For light cloth the mordant yellow No. 106, is best for these shades.

## 79. FAWN BROWN.

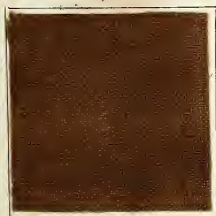
Mix one part annotta liquor, No. 40, and one part boiling water; stir well, and work the goods in this for ten minutes; wring out and wash in two waters; then work for twenty minutes in a decoction of 2 lbs fustic and 1 lb. sumach; lift and add 3 oz. copperas, in solution; stir well, and work for twenty minutes longer; wash from this in two waters; then work for twenty minutes in a decoction of 8 oz. limawood, 8 oz. fustic, and 4 oz. logwood; lift and raise with 1 oz. alum; work ten minutes; wring out and dry.

## 80. BISMARCK BROWN.

This is a rich brown, dyed with one of the coal-tar preparations, and sold under the name of Bismarck brown; the tint is like No. 78.

Work in a hot decoction of  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. sumach for half an hour; wring out and work for twenty minutes in a solution of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  oz. stannate of soda, and wash from this.

In the dye-bath or boiler dissolve 4 oz. of the dye "Bismarck brown," and work the goods in this for fifteen minutes, at a heat of  $120^{\circ}$  Fah., about as hot as the hand can bear, wring out and dry. If the shade required be redder than this preparation will give, add to the dye a little alum or red liquor; and if required yellower, a little fustic added will produce this, so that a considerable variety of tints may thus be obtained.



## 81. CATECHU BROWN.

Work the goods at a boiling heat for two hours, or steep for several hours, if the liquor is allowed to cool, in 2 lbs. catechu, prepared as No. 41; wring out, and then work for half an hour in a hot solution of 6 oz. bichromate of potash (chrome); wash from this in hot water. If a little soap be added to the washing water the colour is improved.

Any depth of shade of brown may be dyed by repeating the operation, or lighter shades may be got by using a smaller portion of materials.



#### 82. CATECHU CHOCOLATES.

Dye a brown, as No. 81, then work fifteen minutes in a decoction of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. logwood; lift, and add 3 oz. alum, in solution; work ten minutes longer; wash out and dry.

By this process a great variety of browns and chocolates may be produced, both by using different quantities of logwood, and by different depths of brown before the logwood is applied.

#### 83. CHOCOLATE OR FRENCH BROWN.

Dye a yellow, as No. 104, then work for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. logwood; lift, and raise with half a pint of red liquor, No. 52, and work ten minutes longer; wash and dry.

Another shade of deeper chocolate will be obtained by adding 1 lb. fustic with the logwood; for cloth dye the yellow as No. 106.



#### 84. CATECHU FAWNS.

Work the goods fifteen minutes in hot water, to which has been added 2 pints of the catechu, No. 41; wring from this, and work fifteen minutes in hot water, in which has been dissolved 1 oz. of bichromate of potash; wash from this, and dry.

#### 85. CATECHU FAWNS—ANOTHER METHOD.

Work in the solution of catechu the same as No. 81; wring out, and



then work for fifteen minutes in warm water, to which has been added 2 oz. acetate of lead previously dissolved; wash in cold water and dry.

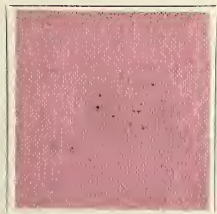


#### 86. CATECHU FAWNS—ANOTHER METHOD.

Work for fifteen minutes in warm water, to which has been added 4 pints of catechu, No. 41; lift, and add 2 oz. copperas in solution, and work for other fifteen minutes. Wash from this in one tub water, and finish through warm water, in which as much soap has been dissolved as will raise a lather, and dry out. A great variety of drabs can be dyed by varying the proportions of these matters.

#### 87. SAFFLOWER PINK.

Two lbs. of safflower prepared as No. 49, adding as much water with the safflower liquor as will be sufficient for the quantity of goods; work in this for five minutes, and lift out, taking care not to lose any of the liquor, then add about 1 gill of sulphuric acid. The liquor should taste decidedly acid. Enter the goods in this, and work an hour; wring out, and wash in three separate waters; but in the last water there is to be put as much cream of tartar in solution as to be perceptible to the taste; wring from this, and dry in the air, or in a very dry heat, carefully avoiding steam or the sun's rays, which affect the colour. The cream of tartar should be dissolved in boiling water before adding.



#### 88. ROSE COLOUR.

Prepare 4 lbs. of safflower as No. 49, then proceed to dye exactly as No. 87; the vitriol to be added to the safflower in sufficient quantity to give the liquor a sour taste; work an hour, or until a drop of the liquor

upon the point of the finger, held between you and the light, has no reddish tint; wring out, wash, and finish as above.

#### 89. SAFFLOWER CRIMSON.

Prepare 7 lbs. safflower as No. 49, and then proceed as No. 87; it may be requisite to lift once or twice during working, and add each time one glass of vitriol; the acid taste should always prevail. This colour requires to be wrought for several hours before all the red colouring matter of the safflower is taken up. It also requires an extra tub of water in washing.



#### 90. SAFFLOWER RED.

Into a tub of warm water add two imperial pints of annotta, No. 40, and work the goods through this for twenty minutes; wring out, and then proceed to dye with 6 lbs. of safflower, in every way as No. 88, and finish in the same manner.

#### 91. SAFFLOWER SCARLET.

Dye a deep orange with the annotta solution, No. 40, about one measure water to one measure annotta; wring out, wash from this, and then work in 7 lbs. of safflower, No. 49, and proceed exactly as in No. 88 for crimson, and finish in the same manner.

The annotta liquor used for this should not be thrown away, as it will serve again either for this or other light shades.

#### 92. ANILINE PINK.

This colouring matter is sold under the designation of saffronine or saffronine crystals. About half an ounce of the dye is dissolved in the dye bath or boiler, which should be kept at a heat of about 100° Fah.; the goods, after being well bleached and washed from any remaining salts, are wrought in this solution for fifteen or twenty minutes, wrung out and dried. For darker or lighter shades of pink more or less of the saffronine is used.

#### 93. COMMON RED.

Boil or scald, No. 42, 3 lbs. sumach; put the goods into this as soon as possible after the grounds settle or the liquor is decanted, and let them

steep till the liquor is cold, say overnight; wring out, and work for an hour in red spirits diluted to from  $2^{\circ}$  to  $2\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  Twaddell's hydrometer, or about 1 gill spirits, No. 29, to each gallon water; wring out, and wash well, and make a decoction, No. 42, of 3 lbs. limawood and 1 lb. fustic; work the goods in this for half an hour at a heat that the hand may be held in without pain, lift up and raise by adding 1 gill red spirits, No. 29; return the goods and work fifteen minutes longer; wash out and dry.



94. BARWOOD RED.

Boil 2 lbs. sumach and decant the clear, add a wine-glassful of vitriol, and steep the goods in this decoction for at least six hours; wring out and work in spirits, No. 31, diluted to  $2\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  Twaddell, for an hour; wring out and wash, then pass through a tub of warm water; put 10 lbs. of barwood into a boiler with water, and bring it near to the boil, into which the goods are entered and wrought amongst the wood grains for about three-quarters of an hour; lift out, wash, wring, and dry. Deeper shades may be dyed by using greater quantities of stuffs in each operation.

Instead of the spirits some prefer stannate of soda, as giving a softer tint; the operations otherwise are the same; only use no vitriol with the sumach, of which take  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. instead of 2 lbs.

95. ANILINE RED.

Steep the goods overnight in a decoction of 2 lbs. of sumach, putting them in while the liquor is hot; wring out and work for half an hour in red spirits (No. 29), at  $3^{\circ}$  Twad., and wash from this until no taste of the spirits is perceptible in the goods. To the dye-bath put in 2 lbs. of *red paste*; work the goods in this for fifteen minutes, at a heat of  $120^{\circ}$ ; wring out and dry. There are in the meantime three different shades of colour sold and known as red paste, marked Nos. 1, 2, and 3. No. 1 gives a yellow-red, approaching to a scarlet. No. 2, a rich red, allied to Turkey. No. 3 has a blue tint, like that from barwood. These reds have the advantage over ordinary reds by the red woods, as they stand washing in soap solutions, nor do they turn purplish by alkalies like the dyes from wood.

## 96. COMMON CRIMSON.

Three lbs. sumach are boiled or scalded, No. 42, and the goods steeped in it overnight, and then spirited at 2° Twaddell, same as No. 93; wash and work through a decoction of 3 lbs. limawood and 1 lb. logwood for thirty minutes, then raise with a gill red spirits, No. 29; work for fifteen minutes more, wash out and finish.

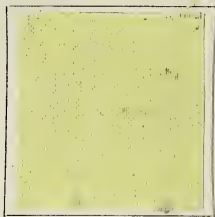
By using only limawood without logwood a beautiful red crimson is obtained, and by varying the proportions and quantities of the two woods a great variety of tints may be dyed by the same proportion of sumach and spirits. Although limawood is here, and in the other receipts named, it embraces what are termed Brazil-woods.

## 97. MAGENTA.

Work for half an hour in a hot decoction of 1½ lb. of sumach; wring out and work for twenty minutes in a solution of 12 oz. of stannate of soda, and wring out; dissolve 1 oz. of magenta crystals in boiling water; add this to the dye-bath, with the proper quantity of water to work the goods; work in this for 15 minutes at a heat of 120° Fah.; wring out and dry.

## 98. LIGHT STRAW.

To a tub of cold water add 4 oz. of acetate of lead (sugar of lead), previously dissolved, work the goods through this for fifteen minutes, and wring out; into another tub of water add 2 oz. bichromate of potash (chrome), work the goods through this ten minutes, wring out, and pass again through the lead solution for ten minutes, wash and dry.



## 99. LEGHORN.

Proceed and finish exactly as No. 98, but along with the chrome add ½ pint annotta liquor, No. 40.

Different depths and tints may be obtained by using more or less of these stuffs, without varying the mode of working.

## 100. LEMON YELLOW.

Into a tub of cold water put 1 lb. of acetate of lead (sugar of lead),



previously dissolved; work the goods in this for fifteen minutes, and wring out; into another tub of cold water put 6 oz. bichromate of potash in solution; work the goods for fifteen minutes through this, and wring out; then put back, and work ten minutes in the lead solution; wring out, wash, and dry.



#### 101. CHROME YELLOW.

Proceed and finish exactly as No. 100, but using twice the quantity of stuff; or with the same quantity of stuff passing the goods twice through the chrome and lead, and finishing out the lead as described; by these means any depth of yellow may be dyed with lead and chrome.

#### 102. CHROME AMBER.

To a tub of cold water add 1 lb. acetate of lead and 1 lb. nitrate of lead in solution; work the goods in this for half an hour and wring out, then in a tub of warm water add 12 oz. chrome, and work the goods from the lead through this for fifteen minutes; expose to the air for half an hour, then pass again through the lead and chrome, working the same time in each as before, and allow an hour's exposure out the chrome the second time; then pass through the lead; wring out, and wash and dry. A third dip may be given, if not deep enough, observing the same rules.



#### 103. ANOTHER METHOD FOR DARK YELLOWS.

Into a tub of water add 1 lb. acetate of lead, and to this add gradually caustic potash or soda, Nos. 11 and 12, until the precipitate formed be re-dissolved, taking care not to add more caustic alkali than is required for this solution. Work the goods through this for half an hour;

wring out, then dissolve 8 oz. chrome in another tub of water, and work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; wring out, and wash and dry. 2 or 3 oz. of sulphate of zinc may be added to the chrome solution with good effect. If a red deep amber be required, add to the chrome solution  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint muriatic acid.

#### 104. SPIRIT YELLOW.

Steep or lay the goods in a decoction of 3 lbs. sumach, as No. 93; lift and wring out, and then work in the spirit, either No. 29 or 30, diluted to 2° Twaddell, for half an hour; then wash out. Into a coarse canvas bag put 3 lbs. quercitron bark, and put this into a copper boiler with as much water as will allow the goods to be wrought easily, boil for half an hour; remove the bag with the bark, and work the goods in the decoction for fifteen minutes; lift and add 1 pint of yellow spirits, No. 30, or red spirits, No. 29; work in this for half an hour; wash out till no taste of spirits is felt, and dry. An iron vessel will not do for this operation.

#### 105. LIGHT SPIRIT YELLOW.

Work the goods through the spirits, Nos. 29 or 30, made down to 2° Twaddell, for half an hour, without being previously sumached; then wash out and dye with the bark, prepared as No. 104; proceed in the same manner, by adding the spirits, washing, and finishing.

#### 106. BARK YELLOW WITH MORDANT.

Work the goods for ten minutes in red liquor, No. 52, made to 8° Twaddell; wring out and wash in a tub with hot water; then work through a decoction of 2 lbs. bark, No. 42, for half an hour; lift and add a pint of red liquor, No. 52; work fifteen minutes, and wash and dry.

#### 107. CHROME ORANGE.

Boil 2 lbs. of brown acetate of lead and 1 lb. of litharge in 3 gallons of water for an hour; take two-thirds of the clear solution in a tub of cold water, and work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; wring out, and work through lime-water, No. 54, for ten minutes; wring out, and put back into the lead tub; work other fifteen minutes, wring out and give another tub of lime-water; then back again to the lead, adding the remaining solution of lead to it; after fifteen minutes' working, wring out, and work ten minutes through a tub of water with 1 lb. of chrome dissolved in it; wring out, and pass again through the lead and chrome as before; then work in lime-water heated from 200° to 206° Fah., when the orange colour is obtained; then wash through a tub of hot water, into which is put a little softening, No. 66; wring and dry.

## 108. ANOTHER METHOD FOR CHROME ORANGE.

Take 2 lbs. of sugar of lead, dissolved in water, and add to this lime-water till the lead that is precipitated is re-dissolved; then work the goods in this for twenty minutes; wring out and work for ten minutes in a solution of 1 lb. of chrome; wring out and pass twice through the lead and chrome in the same way; then raise by working in hot lime-water, as No. 107; wash in hot water with softening, and dry.



Where heavy goods are dyed, caustic soda or potash in solution is used instead of lime for raising the orange.

## 109. ANNOTTA ORANGE.

Heat the annotta solution, No. 40, to working heat—about 120° Fah.; work the goods in this for twenty minutes; wring tightly out, in order not to lose much stuff; wash in a couple of waters, and dry.

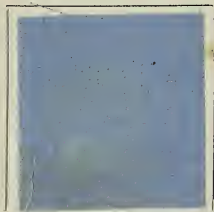
If this colour is passed through water made to taste sour by an acid, a very red orange, bordering on scarlet, is produced; but the colour is very fugitive, not that it is easily removed, but changes easily by acid or alkaline substances, and by exposure to light.

## 110. SKY BLUE OR PRUSSIAN BLUE.

For light blues the goods should be bleached Nos. 7 and 10; then to a tub of cold water, sufficiently large to work the goods in easily, add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint nitrate of iron, No. 15, and work in this for twenty minutes; wring out, and pass through one tub of clean water. Into another tub of cold water add 4 oz. yellow prussiate of potash, in solution, and about a wine-glassful of vitriol; work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; wring out, and wash through cold water, in which is dissolved 1 oz. of alum; wring out and dry.

To dye lighter or darker shades of sky blue, use less or more of the iron and yellow prussiate; or should the shade be too light after passing through the operations described, by repeating the operations through the same tubs, only adding an ounce more yellow prussiate, the shade will be deepened nearly double. There are a variety of blues with peculiar tints, such as a reddish or purple hue, or greenish tint, which were popular for a time under certain designations, such as mazarine blue, Waterloo blue,

Napoleon blue, &c. The mode of dyeing these remain, but they have been re-christened with some more popular names. Waterloo blue was simply a deep Prussian blue. The Napoleon is the same, having a reddish tint.



111. NAPOLEON BLUE.

The cotton should be bleached before dyeing. Into a tub of cold water add 1 imperial pint of nitrate of iron, No. 15, and 2 gills muriatic acid, then add 3 oz. crystals of tin, No. 26, or a pint of double muriate, No. 34; stir well, and immediately enter the goods, and work for thirty minutes; wring out, and put directly into the prussiate tub, made up with water, into which is put a solution of 12 oz. yellow prussiate and one wine-glassful of muriatic acid; work in this for fifteen minutes, then wash out in clean water in which is dissolved 2 oz. alum. If a deeper shade of blue is required than these quantities will give, the goods are washed from the prussiate tub in water, without alum, and passed again through the iron and prussiate, and then washed out, as above, with alum in the last water.

112. ROYAL BLUE.

This is dyed in the same manner as the above; but the liquors are stronger—using 2 pints iron, 2 gills muriatic acid, and 4 oz. tin crystals, No. 26. The prussiate tub is made up by dissolving in it 1 lb. yellow prussiate of potash, and adding one wine-glassful of sulphuric acid and one glassful muriatic acid. All the other operations are the same as No. 111. If not sufficiently dark with putting once through, repeat.



113. CHINA BLUE.

This is one of the coal-tar blues sold under the above name. Bleach the goods well, then work them for fifteen minutes in a solution of



$\frac{1}{2}$  lb of alum, at a heat of  $100^{\circ}$  Fah.; lift the goods out, and add to the solution  $2\frac{1}{4}$  oz. of china blue crystals, previously dissolved in boiling water; re-enter the goods and work for twenty minutes; wring out and dry. Deeper or lighter shades can be given by increasing or lessening the quantity of the dye.

#### 114. OPAL OR SPIRIT BLUE.

The goods are worked for half an hour in a hot solution of 1 lb. of oil soap; lifted and wrung out, and then worked for fifteen minutes in a hot solution of 1 lb. of alum and wrung again.

There is then dissolved  $\frac{3}{4}$  oz. of the blue dye in 3 pints of methylated spirits kept hot until the whole is dissolved. A little of this is added to the dye-boiler while the water is cold, and the goods are entered and wrought in this; the heat of the boiler is gradually raised until it boils; during this interval the goods are lifted from time to time, adding at each time more of the dyeing liquor; the whole should be added by the time the solution begins to boil. It is kept at the boiling point, and the goods wrought in it for fifteen minutes; they are then removed and washed in cold water and dried. This blue is generally required of a greenish tint as compared with china blue. This is obtained by longer boiling and exposure to the air after. This is the fastest of the coal-tar colour blues upon cotton.

#### 115. LOGWOOD BLUE.

Dye first a light blue with the vat, No. 39, then allow to lie in a hot decoction of 2 lbs. sumach for several hours, and then keep working for fifteen minutes through water to which has been added 1 pint acetate of alumina (red liquor), and 1 pint acetate of iron (iron liquor); wash well from this in hot water, then work twenty minutes in a decoction of 2 lbs. logwood; lift, and raise with  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of red liquor; work ten minutes longer; wash and dry.

#### 116. INDIGO VAT BLUE.

If the goods be yarn they are wrought for fifteen minutes in the vat, No. 39, wrung out, the wringings put back into the vat, and the goods exposed for an hour to the air; if the blue be deep enough in colour, they are washed and dried; if not dark enough, they are passed again through the vat in the same way, repeating as often as the depth of shade requires. When the colour is dark, the goods are passed through a tub of water with as much sulphuric acid, perfectly free from nitric acid, in it as makes it taste perceptibly sour, washed well and dried. For very light shades the yarn is bleached, but for ordinary and deep shades it is unbleached. Cloth dyed vat blue is generally stretched upon a frame, and then immersed into the vat with the frame, or made to pass over rollers under the liquor, to obtain an equality of dye over all the piece.

Care must be taken, whether in dyeing yarn or cloth in the blue vat, that the sediment or *sludge* at the bottom be not disturbed by agitation; for if the goods come into contact with it, the colour will be destroyed by

being dirty and grey looking. When the dyeing in a vat is finished for the day, the vat is stirred up and allowed to settle all night. A vat should never be used until several hours after stirring (see page 268).

#### 117. CHROME GREEN.

Dye a blue by the blue vat, No. 39, about twice the depth of the sky-blue pattern, No. 110; then work it twenty minutes through a solution of 1 lb. acetate of lead, prepared as No. 103, with soda or potash; wring out, and work for fifteen minutes in a tub with 6 oz. of chrome in it, then wash out and dry.

It will be observed that this kind of green is obtained first by dyeing a blue and then a yellow on the top of the blue; by the depth of either every variety of shade can be produced. The principal difficulty is, when a particular shade is required, to get the proper depth of blue; for after the yellow has been dyed upon it, blue cannot be dyed on the top of the yellow by the vat. This difficulty can only be got over by experience.

The mode of dyeing yellow, No. 100, may be adopted upon the blue, but there is a great tendency to an unequal colour by this method.

This pattern is not produced by chrome, but is of a similar tint. Chrome green is seldom dyed upon cloth, but is the principal kind of green upon yarn.



#### 118. BARK GREEN ON YARN.

The goods are dyed a blue in the vat, No 39, according to the shade required, and when washed from this vat are wrought for fifteen minutes in red liquor, at 7° Twaddell; they are wrung out, and put through a tub of hot water, then worked for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. bark, and raised by adding  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of red liquor, and working fifteen minutes, then washed and dried.

#### 119. FUSTIC GREEN ON YARN.

Dye a vat blue, in No. 39; wash and wring, and then pass through the acetate of alumina, No. 52, at 6° Twaddell; wash through a tub of hot water, and then work for twenty minutes in a decoction of 4 lbs. fustic; lift and raise with 2 oz. alum in solution; work fifteen minutes, wash, and dry.

#### 120. BARK OR CHEMIC GREEN ON CLOTH.

The goods after being cleaned, not bleached, are wrought for ten minutes in red liquor at 7° Twaddell, wrung out, and passed through a

tub of hot water, and then wrought for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. bark, lifted and raised with  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint red liquor, and wrought ten minutes longer, then lifted and drained or wrung out. Into a tub of cold water put 5 gallons of chemic, No. 47 or 48; the yellow cloth is worked in this for twenty minutes, wrung out and dried. Of course, any depth of shade may be made in this way by varying the quantity of stuff used.



#### 121. FUSTIC GREEN ON CLOTH.

Work the goods in acetate of alumina, No. 52, at 6° Twad., and dry from this in a stove or hot chamber; then wet out in hot water, and work for twenty minutes through a decoction of 3 lbs. fustic; lift and raise with 2 oz. alum, in solution; work fifteen minutes; wring out, and then work in the chemic prepared as last; wring out and dry.

#### 122. GREEN WITH PRUSSIAN BLUE.

Dye a good Prussian blue same way as sky, No. 110, according to the depth of green required; and then work ten minutes in acetate of alumina, red liquor, at 6° Twad.; wash in warm water, and work for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. fustic; lift and raise with 2 oz. alum, in solution; work ten minutes longer; wash and dry.

Bark may be substituted for fustic in this green. If so, the bark should not be wrought very warm; and thus a finer tint is obtainable.

#### 123. SAGE GREEN.

Dye a Prussian blue same as sky, No. 110, and work ten minutes in a solution of 2 lbs. alum; wring out, and work fifteen minutes in a decoction of 1 lb. fustic; lift, and add a pint of the alum solution formerly used; work ten minutes, and then wash and dry.



## 124. OLIVE OR BOTTLE GREEN.

Dye a good shade of Prussian blue, No. 110; then mordant by working ten minutes in acetate of alumina (red liquor), at 7° Twad.; wring out and wash in hot water; work for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. fustic and 1 lb. sumach; then add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint iron liquor, No. 16, and work fifteen minutes; then wash in a tub of water having 2 oz. alum dissolved in it, and dry.

## 125. OLIVE OR BOTTLE GREEN—ANOTHER METHOD.

Work the goods in red liquor at 7° Twad., wash in warm water, and work half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. bark and 1 lb. sumach; lift, and add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint iron liquor, No. 16; work other fifteen minutes; wring out, and then work fifteen minutes in the chemic prepared as in No. 120; wring out of this and dry.

## 126. DEEP OLIVE GREEN.

Dye a Prussian blue, No. 110, then work for ten minutes in red liquor at 6° Twad.; wash in hot water, and work in a decoction of 3 lbs. bark and 1 lb. logwood; lift, and raise with  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of red liquor, and work ten minutes; wash from this and dry.

A great variety of shades of green may be obtained by varying the proportions of bark and logwood. Fustic may also be used instead of bark.

If the goods be yarn, a light vat blue may be dyed instead of the Prussian blue, and proceeded afterwards in the same manner as above.



## 127. ANILINE GREEN.

Work in a hot decoction of 2 lbs. sumach for twenty minutes; wring out, and work for fifteen minutes in a solution of 12 oz. of stannate of soda, and wring out.

Dissolve 3 oz. of aniline green crystals and 5 oz. of alum in the dye-bath, work in this for twenty minutes, at a heat of 100° Fah., lift up, and add to the bath  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pint of a strong decoction of fustic; work in this fifteen minutes; wring out and dry. If the green required be more of a blue colour, use less fustic; if more yellow, use more fustic.



## 128. LAVENDER PUCE OR LILAC.

Work for an hour in red spirits, No. 29, made down to 2° Twad.; wring out and wash, then work half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. of logwood, at working temperature, about 120° Fah.; lift up, and add 1 gill red spirits, No. 29; work for twenty minutes; wash from this and dry. One half pint red liquor, or 2 oz. alum, may be added to the logwood as raising, instead of red spirits.



## 129. ANOTHER METHOD.

Work the goods for fifteen minutes in red liquor, at 7° Twad.; wring out and wash in warm water; then work half an hour in a decoction of 2 lbs. of logwood, at working heat; lift and raise with  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint red liquor, or 2 oz. alum; work ten minutes in this, and wash in a tub of lukewarm water; wring out and dry.

## 130. LIGHT PURPLE OR ADELAIDE.

The goods are laid in a decoction of 2 lbs. sumach, as No. 72, wrung out, and wrought half an hour through the spirit plumb liquor, No. 36; wrung out, and washed in clean cold water till no taste of acid is felt on the goods, then dried.

When working with the spirit plumb liquor, it is best to take the plumb liquor into a tub or separate vessel, and work the goods in this, returning the liquor afterwards to the plumb tub.



## 131. ANOTHER METHOD AND DEEPER SHADE.

The goods are laid in 2 lbs. sumach, as No. 72, wrung out, and wrought for twenty minutes in red spirits, No. 29, at 2° Twad.; washed well

from this, then worked in the spirit plumb, No. 36, in the same manner as No. 130; washed out till no taste of acid is on the goods, and dried.

### 132. ORDINARY PURPLE.

Boil two pounds of sumach, and treat the goods in the same way as No. 72; work in red spirits at 2° Twad. for an hour, and wash in cold water; then work for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. of logwood, at working heat; then lift, and add 1 gill of spirits, No. 29, and work for ten minutes more; wash in cold water and dry.

A variety of purple shades may be dyed by this process by slightly varying the proportions of the stuffs. If a browner tint is required, give a little more sumach; if a bluer tint, less sumach, and increase the logwood, and raise with  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint red liquor, or 2 oz. alum, instead of red spirits.



### 133. LAVENDER OR PEACH.

Work the goods for twenty minutes through the spirit plumb liquor, No. 36, without any previous preparation; wring out, and wash in clean cold water till no taste of acid is felt, and dry.

### 134. LOGWOOD PUCE.

Dye the goods a good shade of Prussian blue, No. 110, then work for fifteen minutes in a decoction of 1 lb. of logwood, at working temperature; lift up, and add 4 oz. alum; work ten minutes, and then wash in cold water and dry.

### 135. ANOTHER METHOD.

Dye a sky blue as No. 110, then to a tub of warm water add one gallon alum plumb liquor, No. 37, and work in this fifteen minutes; wring out and dry.

### 136. LIGHT LAVENDER.

To a tub of warm water add two gallons of alum plumb liquor, No. 37, and work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; wring out and dry. If a blue tint is required, add with the plumb  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of chemic, No. 48.

## 137. ANILINE PURPLE.

Work for half an hour in a hot decoction of 1 lb. of sumach; wring out, and work for twenty minutes in a solution of 8 oz. of stannate of soda, and wring out.

Into the dye-bath put  $\frac{3}{4}$  oz. of what is known in the market as Schumacher, No. 8, with one gill red liquor; work in this for about twenty minutes at a heat of  $120^{\circ}$ ; wring out and dry. If a bluer shade is required, work the bath at  $150^{\circ}$ , and add a little more red liquor.

## 138. MAUVE.

Work for half an hour in a hot decoction of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of sumach; wring out, and work in a solution of 12 oz. of stannate of soda.

Into the bath put  $1\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of mauve dye, with fully one quart of red liquor; work in this for fifteen minutes at a heat of  $120^{\circ}$  Fah.; wring out and dry.

## 139. ANILINE LAVENDER.

The cotton for this colour to be well bleached. Into the dye-bath put one pint of red liquor, and work in this for fifteen minutes at a heat of  $100^{\circ}$  Fah.; lift up, and add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. lavender dye; work in this for twenty minutes; wring out and dry. A great variety of shades of lavender can be dyed by varying the quantity of the dye; besides, there are a great variety of different colouring matters in the market giving lavenders from a reddish-blue to a bluish-pink, which the dyer may select as required.

## 140. FRENCH WHITE.

(For Pattern, see *Safflower Lavender*, No. 141.)

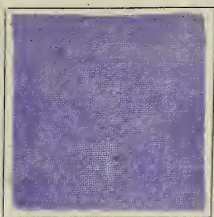
To a tub of hot water add one pint of alum plumb, No. 37, and half a pint of chemic, No. 48; work in this fifteen minutes; wring out and dry.

## 141. SAFFLOWER LAVENDER.

Dye the goods a sky blue, No. 110, then dye a safflower pink on the top of the blue, No. 87, with 1 lb. safflower; but in dyeing the pink the sulphuric acid must be added to the safflower liquor previous to the blue being entered into it, otherwise the alkali of the safflower will destroy the blue.

We need hardly add that different depths of colour, and different hues, will be obtained by varying the shade of blue and the quantity of safflower. Deep blue and little safflower gives a lilac or puce; while a light blue, such as pattern No. 110, with 4 lbs. safflower, will give a

peach colour; and a blue one-half the depth of No. 110, and pink with  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of safflower, will give a French white.



#### 142. SAFFLOWER LAVENDER—ANOTHER METHOD.

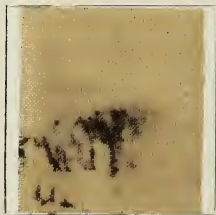
Dye a pink with 2 lbs. of safflower, No. 87, then proceed and dye a sky blue over this, No. 110, and finish exactly as described for sky blue.

Of course, the remarks made at No. 141, in reference to different shades, apply equally to this method; but more safflower is required by this method than the other.

#### 143. IRON BUFF OR NANKEEN.

Take 2 lbs. of sulphate of iron (copperas), and dissolve in warm water, and then add the requisite quantity of water for working the goods; work in this for twenty minutes, and wring out, and put them immediately into a separate vessel filled with lime-water, No. 54, and work in this for fifteen minutes; wring out, and expose to the air for half an hour, when the goods will assume a buff colour.

If the colour is not sufficiently deep, this operation may be repeated, working through the same copperas solution, but using fresh lime-water each time; the goods are then washed through clean warm water and dried.



#### 144. ANOTHER METHOD.

To a vessel of warm water add half a pint nitrate of iron, No. 15, and work the goods in this twenty minutes; wring out, and work for fifteen minutes in another vessel filled with warm water, to which has been added half a pint caustic potash or soda, Nos. 11 and 12; then wash through warm water, and if the colour is not deep enough repeat the operation; wash again, wring out, and dry.



If a little soap be used in the last washing water of either of these two buffs, the colour is improved.

#### 145. ANOTHER METHOD.

Add to a tub of water in which the goods are to be dyed half a pint annotta, No. 40, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. bichromate of potash in solution; work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; lift them out, and add to the liquor  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. acetate of lead in solution, and work twenty minutes in this; wring out and dry. By adding more of these stuffs a variety of shades of light fawn or dark buffs may be dyed.

#### 146. DRAB.

Work the goods for fifteen minutes in a decoction of  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. sumach; lift, and add 1 oz. copperas in solution and work for fifteen minutes; wash out in cold water, then work for fifteen minutes in a decoction of 4 oz. fustic, 2 oz. limawood, and 1 oz. logwood; lift, and raise with 1 oz. alum in solution; work ten minutes longer, wring out, and dry.

A great variety of shades can be produced by this means, varying the proportion of the limawood, fustic, and logwood, and different depths by varying the quantities of sumach and copperas.



#### 147. OLIVE DRAB.

Work fifteen minutes in  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. sumach, then add 1 oz. copperas, and work in this for fifteen minutes; wash in a tub of water, and work in  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. fustic for twenty minutes, and raise with 1 oz. alum; work ten minutes, and dry out.

#### 148. RICH REDDISH DRAB.

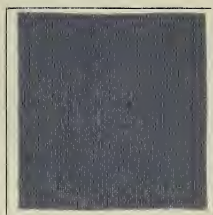
To a tub of hot water add one pint of annotta, No. 40, which gives a light salmon colour; then proceed with this exactly as No. 147, or as No. 146, by which a great variety of drabs may be dyed.

#### 149. STONE COLOUR.

Work the goods twenty minutes in a decoction of 1 lb. sumach; lift, and add 1 oz. copperas in solution; work fifteen minutes, and wash in cold

water; then work ten minutes in warm water, to which half a pint alum plumb liquor, No. 37, has been added; wring and dry.

This gives a reddish tint; but if this tint be not required, the alum plumb may be dispensed with, using  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. alum in the washing water.



#### 150. CATECHU STONE DRAB.

Work the goods for fifteen minutes in 2 pints catechu, No. 41, in hot water; lift, and add 2 oz. copperas in solution; work for fifteen minutes, and wash in cold water. To another tub of warm water add a decoction of 2 oz. logwood; work the goods in this for ten minutes; lift, and raise with  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. alum; work ten minutes longer; wring out and dry.

#### 151. CATECHU DRAB.

Work the goods for fifteen minutes in hot water, to which has been added 1 pint catechu, No. 41; then lift, and add 1 oz. copperas; work ten minutes, and wash out and dry.

A variety of tints may be obtained by *topping* with a little different woods, as No. 145, proceeding in the same manner.

## SILK DYEING.

---

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

In the introductory part, page 339, we gave the method of preparing silk for dyeing in the hank; but a great portion of the dyeing required by the amateur is re-dyeing, such as ribbons, handkerchiefs, dresses, shawls, etc. The first operation with goods to be re-dyed is steeping in a strong and warm solution of soap for a few hours, in order to remove stains of oil or grease; they are afterwards washed in water, and if the colour remaining upon them after this operation be light and equal, and the colour wanted be dark, then no more cleaning is required; but if unequal, they should be put into a sour, No. 14, for fifteen minutes, then washed out, and proceeded with for the colour required.

The following quantities of dye-stuffs given in these receipts are for dyeing 5 lbs. weight of silk. In cases where the silk is very hard-spun, as in some ribbons and dresses, a little more dye-stuff may be used than the quantities given, and also a little more time allowed. Some kinds of goods will be more bulky than others of the same weight; in such cases, less or more water may be used accordingly. The quantity of water must always be sufficient to allow the goods to be quite loose when immersed under the surface.

When goods are washed from the dye, it is always in cold water, except otherwise mentioned in the receipt.

The remarks we made about cotton re-dyes are equally applicable for silk—for goods that have been worn, the exposed parts are faded, the other parts dark; except the whole colour can be entirely removed, the re-dye must be dark to hide the inequalities by former wear.

---

### DYEING.

#### 152. BLACK.

Work for an hour in a solution of 8 oz. of copperas, and wash well out in cold water; then work an hour in a decoction of 4 lbs. of logwood, adding to it  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of urine; lift out, and add to the logwood liquor 2 oz. copperas in solution; work fifteen minutes; wash and dry.

This will give a good black, not very deep. If a deep black is required, add to the copperas solution of first operation 2 oz. by measure nitrate of iron, No. 15; indeed, for re-dyes it will be better to add this at all times. If a blue shade is required instead of adding urine dissolve a little white soap in the logwood liquor, and add no copperas.

## 153. FULL DEEP BLACK.

Work an hour in 1 lb. copperas and 2 oz. nitrate of iron, No. 15; wash and work for an hour in a decoction of 5 lbs. logwood, and 1 lb. fustic; lift, and add 2 oz. copperas, work ten minutes; wash and finish.

If the colour is not deep enough, add a little more logwood before raising with the copperas.



## 154. FRENCH BLACK.

Work an hour in 1 lb. copperas and 4 oz. alum; wash well, and then work an hour in a decoction of 4 lbs. logwood, in which a little white soap has been added; wash out and finish. This black should have a purplish tint.

## 155. BLUE BLACK BY PRUSSATE.

Dye a deep Prussian blue as described No. 110, and work from the prussiate for half an hour in 8 oz. copperas; wash well from this in cold water, and then work for half an hour in a decoction of 2 lbs. logwood, using neither urine nor soap in it; lift and add a little of the copperas solution with which the goods were mordanted; work other ten minutes, then wash and dry.

## 156. DEEP HAT BLACK, OR PARIS BLACK.

Work the silk fifteen minutes in a decoction of 2 lbs. fustic and 1 lb. bark; lift, and add in solution 6 oz. verdigris and 6 oz. copperas; work other fifteen minutes, and then sink the whole under the surface, and let it steep for several hours, say overnight; lift and wash from this, then make a decoction of 5 lbs. of logwood; dissolve in it as much white soap as will make a lather, and work in this for an hour; wash out and dry. A heavy black is dyed by steeping the silk in a decoction of valona nut or husks of the acorn, and then passing through a copperas solution, washing out, and finishing through logwood.

## 157. MIXED BLACK.

Coal-tar black dyed direct upon silk is not very common; but by dyeing a bluish purple or mauve, see Mauve, and then dyeing a deep blue



over this, as given further on, a very clear bright shade of black can be obtained, but not so fast as the other black when exposed to light.

## 158. BROWN.

Dye an orange with annotta, No. 40 (see Orange), then work for fifteen minutes in a solution of 8 oz. copperas; wash well from this, and then work half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. fustic, 8 oz. logwood, and 1 pint archil liquor; lift, and add 2 oz. alum in solution; work ten minutes, wash and dry.

1 lb. of Brazil or peachwood may be substituted for the archil liquor with nearly the same results. A variety of this shade of brown may be dyed by varying the quantity of each stuff.



## 159. BROWN.

Dye an orange by annotta, No. 40 (see Orange); wash out, and then work for twenty minutes in a decoction of 3 lbs. fustic, 8 oz. sumach, 8 oz. peachwood; lift up, and add 3 oz. of copperas in solution; work other fifteen minutes, wash out in two waters, using 2 oz. of alum in solution in the last water.

If the particular tint required is not obtained by the above proportions, it may be given in the water with the alum, using it a little warm. If yellowness is required, add fustic. If redness is required, add peachwood. If depth or blueness, add logwood.

A great many particular hues of brown may be dyed by this method; as for instance, by using only fustic and sumach in the second operation a California brown is obtained, &c., as just referred to, so that any intelligent person will easily regulate his colours and tints. California brown is a yellow fawn brown, something like that now called Bismarck.

## 160. RED BROWNS.

Dye a deep orange by annotta, No. 40 (see Orange); wash out, then work for fifteen minutes through the plumb liquor, No. 36; wash well and dry.

Particular tints may be given by adding either logwood, peachwood, or fustic in the last washings, as described in last receipt.

## 161. ANOTHER METHOD.

Steep the silk in an alum solution of 8 oz. to the gallon for an hour, and wash out in warm water; then work half an hour in a decoction of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. fustic,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. peachwood, 8 oz. logwood; lift, and add 1 pint of the alum solution, work for ten minutes; wash and dry.

## 162. CHOCOLATE BROWN.

Steep the silk for an hour in alum, 1 lb. to the gallon water; wash once in warm water, and then work for half an hour in a decoction of 3 lbs. peachwood and 1 lb. logwood; lift, and add 1 pint of the alum solution; work in this for fifteen minutes; wash out and dry.

Deeper shades of chocolate are obtained by using a little less peachwood and more logwood, in equal proportions. A little fustic, say 4 oz., may be added, which will give a still deeper hue if required.



## 163. BRONZE BROWN.

Work for half an hour in a decoction of 8 oz. fustic, to which 4 oz., by measure, of archil liquor has been added; then lift, and add 2 oz. solution of copperas; work fifteen minutes, wash in cold water, and finish. A little alum in the washing water will vary the hue a little.

## 164. ANOTHER METHOD.

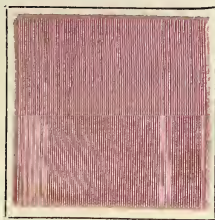
Work for ten minutes in 1 oz. of "Bismarck brown," No. 80, at a heat of  $120^{\circ}$ ; wring out, and work in another vessel containing 3 oz., by measure, of archil liquor; wring out and dry. Different shades of this colour can be produced by varying the quantities of each.

## 165. SAFFLOWER PINK.

Prepare the safflower as described, Nos. 49 and 50; then take a quantity of solution equal to 1 lb. of safflower originally used; add to this solution 1 oz., by measure, vitriol; enter the silk, and work for half an hour; then wash in a vessel with warm water in which about 1 oz. cream of tartar has been dissolved; wring out and finish. Lighter or darker

shades may be dyed by using less or more safflower—when more is used, a little more time will be required.

If safflower extract be used, which is simply the red colouring matter of safflower, No. 50, precipitated by an acid, add about two gills of the extract to warm water, with half a wine-glassful of vitriol; stir well; work the goods in this, and proceed as above.



#### 166. SAFFLOWER ROSE AND CRIMSON.

Dye the goods first a good shade of lavender by working it in archil, see Lavender on silk; it is then dyed with the safflower above the lavender, exactly as the pink, but using more dye; from  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. to 1 lb. safflower to each pound of silk will give from a rose to a crimson, using a corresponding quantity of vitriol to raise the colour, and requiring from an hour and a half to two hours' time working; it is finished by washing in warm water made acid to the taste with cream of tartar, the same as the pink.

#### 167. SAFFLOWER SCARLET.

Dye the silk first a good shade of orange by annotta, No. 40 (see Orange); wash from this, and then enter into the safflower, proceeding in the same manner as for rose or crimson. For a good rich scarlet, it will require as much safflower as the crimson, 1 lb. to the pound of goods, and finished in the same manner.

#### 168. COCHINEAL CRIMSON.

To every gallon of water used, add about 2 oz., by measure, bichloride of tin, Nos. 27 and 28; allow any sediment to settle, and take the clear solution, and apply heat; when warm, work the goods in it for an hour or more.

Boil in a bag 2 lbs. of cochineal, by suspending it on the surface of the water for half an hour; add this to the proper quantity of water for working the goods, the whole being at hand heat; wring the silk from the spirits, and work it in this cochineal solution for half an hour, then set it in steep for several hours, keeping well under the liquor; wash well out of this in cold water. If the shade is not blue enough, a little cochineal

dissolved in ammonia, No. 55, may be added to the water; and after working in this for ten minutes, wring out and dry.



#### 169. GENERAL REMARKS.

Connected with different shades of red, crimson, scarlet, &c., there are a great variety of such shades dyed with the coal-tar colours on silk, the colouring matters being sold under different marks and names, generally with instructions how to dye with them; with silk there are no preparations required as mordants, &c. We repeat Mr. Perkins' statement upon this,—“ In silk-dyeing the principal difficulty experienced in applying the coal-tar colours was owing to their great affinity for the fibre, thus preventing the dyer from obtaining an even colour, especially when dyeing light shades. After a time, however, it was found that this obstacle could be overcome by dyeing the silk in a weak soap lather, to which the colour had been added. This not only caused the dyeing to proceed with less rapidity, but also kept the face of the silk in good condition. Silk dyed by this process is left soft, but may afterwards be rendered hard or ‘scoop,’ by rinsing in a bath of slightly acidulated water.”

These remarks apply to almost all the coal-tar colours upon silk. We need hardly add here, that although the different colouring matters can be had ready for use, the intelligent dyer will observe that by mixing one with another a great variety of tints can be produced.

#### 170. ANILINE PINK.

Dissolve  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of the colouring matter called saffronine in a separate vessel, have as much white soap dissolved in the bath as will produce a good lather, then add the dissolved colouring matter, and work the goods in this until the colour in the bath is pretty well exhausted; lift, and wring out and dry.

#### 171. ANILINE RED.

Into a bath, at a heat of  $120^{\circ}$ , in which is dissolved some white soap, put 1 lb. of the colour called red paste, marked No. 1. Stir well, then work the goods in this for twenty minutes. Deeper or lighter shades may be had by using less or more of the paste. If a bluer shade of red be wanted, use the paste marked No. 3.



## 172. COMMON RED.

Make a decoction of 2 lbs. peachwood and 1 lb. fustic, No. 42; work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; lift up, and add 4 oz., by measure, red spirits, No. 29; work again fifteen minutes; wash in cold water, and finish.

A variety of tints may be dyed in this way, by varying the proportions; and by adding a little logwood, clarets and such shades can be produced; but these common colours do not stand the air well.

## 173. COCHINEAL PINK.

This colour is dyed in the same manner as No. 167, only using much less cochineal; about  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. will make a good colour. Different shades of pink, rose, and crimson can be dyed by this method, by varying the quantities of stuff used.

## 174. COCHINEAL SCARLET.

Dye a deep orange by annotta, No. 40 (see Orange); then wash and proceed in the same way as for crimson, passing through the spirits, and then cochineal, as stated above.

## 175. COMMON CRIMSON.

Into a copper or stoneware vessel put some of the peachwood plumb liquor, No. 38; work the goods in it for half an hour; then wash out in cold water until no taste of the plumb liquor is perceptible in the cloth; wring and dry.

## 176. COMMON SCARLET.

Dye the goods an orange by annotta, No. 40 (see Orange); wash in water, and then work in the peachwood plumb liquor, No. 38, in the same way as dyeing common crimson; wash out and dry.

## 177. RUBIES, MAROONS, &amp;c.

Take 1 lb. of cudbear and boil for fifteen minutes in a bag; work the silk in this solution for half an hour. If the shade required be of a bluish tint, lift, and add 3 oz., by measure, liquid ammonia; work ten minutes, and wring and dry.

If the shade required be of a red hue, lift, and add 2 oz., by measure, red spirits, No. 29; work ten minutes; wash out and dry.

If a brown hue is wanted, use along with the cudbear a decoction of 4 oz. fustic; work in this, and raise with 2 oz. red spirits, as above.

If a deep violet hue is required, use along with the cudbear a decoction of 4 oz. logwood; work in it, and raise with 2 oz. red spirits, as above.

## 178. RUBIES, &amp;c.

Into a bath, at a heat of  $150^{\circ}$ , in which is dissolved a quantity of white soap to raise a good lather, put in  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of the dye known as Schumacher's No. 8; work in this for about twenty minutes.

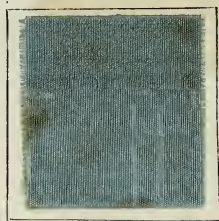
## 179. SKY BLUE.

To 1 pint of sulphate of indigo, No. 44, add 2 or 3 gals. boiling water; put into this a piece of woollen cloth, such as an old blanket; after steeping for a day, take it out and wash in cold water.

If the sky blue required be very light, make up a vessel with warm water, about blood heat, steep the blue cloth in this for a few minutes, and wring out, when as much blue will be dissolved off as will dye the silk; add 1 oz. of alum in solution, and work the silk in this for twenty minutes; wring out and dry.

If the blue required be deep, then to the warm water in which the blanket is put add 1 oz. of pearlash, and proceed as detailed; but before adding the silk, a few drops of vitriol may be added with the alum to neutralise the alkali.

If indigo extract be used, Nos. 45, 46, and 47, then the blanket or woollen cloth is not required, but to the requisite quantity of water add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of extract, with 1 oz. of alum in solution, and work the silk as stated; less or more of the extract is used according to the depth of shade required.



## 180. PRUSSIAN BLUE—SKY.

To a sufficient quantity of cold water in which to work the goods, add half pint of nitrate of iron, No. 15; work in this for twenty minutes, then wash in cold water.

Into another vessel of cold water add 3 oz. yellow prussiate of potash in solution, and 1 oz., by measure, of vitriol; work through this for ten minutes, then wash in cold water in which an ounce of alum has been dissolved, and finish.

## 181. ROYAL BLUE.

To a vessel of cold water add 2 pints of nitrate of iron, No. 15; then take 1 pint water and  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint muriatic acid, and to this add 3 oz.

crystals of tin, No. 26; when dissolved, add this to the vessel containing the iron, or instead add 1 pint double muriate of tin, No. 33; stir well, and enter the goods immediately, and work for half an hour.

In another tub dissolve 8 oz. yellow prussiate, and add to it 2 oz., by measure, of vitriol; wring the goods out of the iron solution and put them directly into the second vessel with the prussiate, working for fifteen minutes; then wash out in cold water, having 2 oz. of alum dissolved in it, and finish.

Should the shade not be sufficiently deep, instead of washing in the alum water, put them back into the iron solution, and again through the prussiate in the same way, and work the same time as first, only adding 2 oz. yellow prussiate before entering the second time into the prussiate vessel; then finish as stated.

Deeper shades are obtained by using more iron and tin, or by giving several dips.

Some wash the goods out the iron solution in one water before putting them into the prussiate, and also wash out the prussiate before putting back to the iron; the shade by this will not be so deep with the same stuff, but there is less risk of an unequal colour.



#### 182. ANOTHER METHOD, OR NAPOLEON BLUE.

Put into a vessel with cold water 2 pints nitrate of iron, No. 15, and 2 pints protochloride of tin, No. 26; work in this for half an hour; into another vessel with water put in a solution of 10 oz. yellow prussiate, 1 lb. alum, and 4 oz., by measure, muriatic acid; wring the goods out the iron solution, and put into the prussiate without washing, and work fifteen minutes. If not deep enough, pass again through the iron, and then the prussiate, adding 2 oz. more prussiate; wash from this and dry. The goods may be softened a little by mixing oil and tartaric acid, and adding a little of this to the last water; the goods should be dried by heat.

If red prussiate of potash be used instead of yellow, as some prefer, then the iron used in first operation should be protomuriate, No. 18.

This shade of blue has a wine colour tint, and is much admired.

#### 183. ALKALINE BLUE.

Alkaline blue is the technical name of the colouring matter of a rich blue dye from coal tar. To a bath made up with a soap solution, at a heat

of 150°, add 4 oz. of alkaline blue, and work in this for half an hour. This gives a beautiful rich deep blue. Lighter shades may be got by using a smaller quantity of the dye.

#### 184. ANILINE BLUE.

To the bath, filled with hot water, add 2 oz. of what is termed Nicholson's blue, marked B B B B, previously dissolved in boiling water; work in this at a heat of 100° for twenty minutes; wash from this, and finish through acidulated water made to taste sour with sulphuric acid.

#### 185. LAVENDER.

Into as much water as will serve to work the goods in easily, put one pint of plumb liquor, No. 33; stir well, and work the goods in this for twenty minutes, then wash out in cold water and dry.

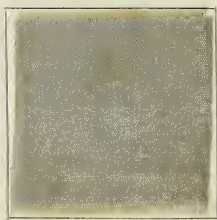
Darker or lighter shades can be dyed by using less or more of the plumb liquor.

If a blue tint of lavender is required, add to the plumb liquor solution, before putting in the goods, two or three drops of sulphate of indigo, or extract, No. 45 or 46, and proceed as stated.

#### 186. LAVENDER—ANOTHER METHOD.

Into a vessel with warm water as hot as the hand can bear, dissolve a little white soap, enough to raise a lather; then add one gill archil liquor, and work the goods in this for fifteen minutes; wring out and dry.

Boil 1 oz. of cudbear, and add the solution to the soap and water, instead of archil, which will give a lavender having a redder tint than that with the archil. If a still redder shade of lavender be required, the soap may be dispensed with.



#### 187. WINE COLOUR, VIOLET, LILAC, &c.

Into a copper pan or stoneware vessel put as much of the plumb liquor, No. 36, as will serve to work the goods in; then work in this for twenty minutes; wash out in two or three waters, or until the goods have no taste of the plumb liquor, then dry.

If a rich blue tint is required, add to the plumb 1 oz., by measure, sulphate of indigo, or extract, No. 45 or 46. If a red tint is required, dye the cloth first a lavender by cudbear, No. 186, without soap; then work through the plumb liquor without indigo.



The plumb liquor used for this colour is not thrown away; it is either put back into the stock tub or into another vessel kept for that purpose, when it may be used over again. If indigo has been used, it must not be put back into the stock plumb, or it will give the whole a blue shade; all such mixtures should be kept separate.

## 188. VIOLET.

To the bath, raised to a heat of 120° Fah., add 1½ oz. of “methylated violet,” marked No. 10, 12 oz. white tartar, and 6 oz. ground alum, previously dissolved; work the goods in this for thirty minutes; wring out and dry.

## 189. HOFMANN'S VIOLET.

To a bath of water, at 100° Fah., with soap making a lather, put in 1 gill of Hofmann's solution, R R R; work in this for half an hour, or until the colour is pretty well taken up. This may also be wrought with tartar and alum, as the above. The great drawback to these purples or violets is their fading by exposure to light.

## 190. FRENCH AND PEARL WHITE.

In hot water dissolve a quantity of white soap, as much as makes a lather, and then add about ½ oz., by measure, archil; work the goods in this for ten minutes, and finish out the soap.

A little cudbear may be used instead of archil, less or more according to the shade required.

## 191. ANOTHER METHOD.

To a vessel of cold water add about 1 oz., by measure, of plumb liquor; work the goods for ten minutes; wash out and dry.

For these shades the goods should be perfectly white previous to dyeing.

## 192. WELD, YELLOW.

Work the silk for an hour in a solution of alum, about 1 lb. to the gallon; wring out and wash in a vessel with warm water. Boil 2 lbs. weld, strain the liquor, and work the alumed silk in this for half an hour; then add one pint of the alum solution to the weld bath, and return the silk; work for ten minutes longer, and wring out and dry.

This gives a rich lemon yellow; by adding more weld deeper shades are produced; or by adding a little annotta, No. 40, amber and straw tints are obtained.



## 193. BARK AND FUSTIC YELLOW.

Work the silk for an hour through an alum solution of the strength of 1 lb. to the gallon water, then wash out in warm water and wring. Take 2 lbs. of bark, prepared as No. 42, and work the alumed silk in this solution for half an hour; lift and add 1 pint of the alum solution; work ten minutes longer, and wring out and dry. By using fustic instead of bark a very rich yellow is also produced.

## 194. ANOTHER METHOD.

Alum the silk as above, and boil 3 lbs. bark in a bag; then work the silk through this decoction, while very hot, for half an hour; lift and add 2 oz., by measure, red spirits, No. 29; work for fifteen minutes, wash out in cold water; then work ten minutes in a solution of white soap; wring out of this and dry.

## 195. GOLD AND AMBER.

Into warm water with white soap add 2 pints annotta liquor, No. 40; work in this fifteen minutes; wash out, and then work twenty minutes through a decoction of 8 oz. bark; lift, and add 1 oz., by measure, red spirits, No. 29; work other ten minutes; wash out and finish.

Different tints of these colours may be dyed by varying the quantity of annotta bottom and of the bark.

## 196. NANKEEN, BUFF, SALMON, FLESH, &amp;c.

Make a solution of white soap in warm water, and to this add 1 pint of annotta liquor; work twenty minutes, wring out and finish. If the shade is not deep enough, add a little more annotta.

If a red tint is required, such as salmon or flesh colour, the goods are washed out the soap, and finished in cold water, in which 2 oz. alum is dissolved. By adding a little fustic with the alum, a straw tint, like the pattern attached, will be got.



## 197. ORANGE.

The silk is wrought for fifteen minutes in a strong solution of annotta, No. 40, made warm; then washed in warm water and dried.

The annotta made up for silk should be with soft soap, instead of potash or soda, or only a very little of these alkalies should be added.



#### 198. ORANGE—ANOTHER METHOD.

Dye a very light shade of red, as No. 171, or pink, No. 170; wash out and top by dyeing over this a yellow, with 2 oz. of picric acid; wring out and dry.

#### 199. YELLOW DRAB.

To a vessel of warm water add 1 pint annotta liquor, No. 40; work in this for fifteen minutes, and wash; then work other fifteen minutes in a decoction of  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. sumach and 1 lb. fustic; lift up, and add 4 oz. copperas in solution and 1 oz. alum; work ten minutes; wash in cold water and dry.

A variety of shades of drab may be dyed in this way by varying the proportions of the stuff, and adding with the fustic small quantities of logwood and peachwood.

#### 200. COMMON DRABS.

Work the goods for fifteen minutes in a decoction of 8 oz. sumach and 8 oz. fustic; lift and add 4 oz. copperas; wash twenty minutes, and wash out in cold water. In another vessel with warm water add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint archil liquor; work fifteen minutes in this, and dry out.

If a greenish tint be required, add a decoction of 4 oz. fustic to the archil, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz., by measure, of chemic, No. 48, or a little extract, No. 45. If a purple tint is required add, instead of the chemic, 1 oz. of alum in solution.

A great variety of tints may be produced by a slight variation of some of these ingredients.

#### 201. SLATE OR STONE COLOUR.

In a decoction of 1 lb. sumach, 4 oz. fustic, and 4 oz. logwood, No. 42, work the silk for half an hour; lift, and add a solution of 4 oz. copperas; work other thirty minutes; wash in cold water, and finish.

A variety of tints can be produced by this method, by varying the proportions of the stuffs.



#### 202. COMMON GREEN.

Steep for an hour in an alum solution of 1 lb. to the gallon; wash in warm water, and work for thirty minutes in a decoction of 6 lbs. fustic; then add 2 oz., by measure, indigo extract, No. 45 or 46; work other thirty minutes; wash and finish.

Should the shade be too yellow, as the extract often varies in quality, add more extract to the fustic before finishing.

Deeper and lighter shades are dyed by this method, by using less or more of each stuff.



#### 203. ANOTHER METHOD.

Work for forty minutes in a decoction of 4 lbs. fustic; lift, and add 1 lb. alum in solution, and 2 oz., by measure, of indigo extract; work for half an hour in this; wash out in cold water having in it  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of the alum solution, No. 202, and finish.

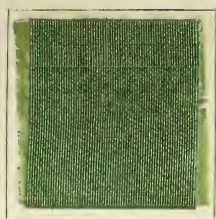
#### 204. SAGE GREEN AND PEA GREEN.

Steep the silk for an hour in an alum solution of 8 oz. to the gallon of water, and then wash out in warm water; boil 4 lbs. ebony wood chips for an hour; take the clear, and work the silk in it for thirty minutes; lift, and add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. indigo extract; work ten minutes; wash in cold water having  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint of alum solution, No. 202, in it, and dry. A weak decoction of weld may be used instead of ebony chips.

Care has to be taken in adding the extract, lest the quantity given be



too much for the shade required ; it may be better to add less, and if found not enough, lift and add more.



#### 205. BOTTLE GREEN.

Dissolve 2 lbs. alum and 1 lb. copperas ; work the silk in this for an hour, and wash out in warm water ; then work for half an hour in a decoction of 6 lbs. fustic ; lift, and add 2 oz., by measure, indigo extract, No 45 ; work twenty minutes ; wash out and finish.

#### 206. ANOTHER METHOD.

Proceed exactly as described for common green ; but add 1 lb. of logwood to the 6 lbs. of fustic, and operate in every way the same as No. 202.

If a deeper shade be required, a little more logwood may be added.

#### 207. GREEN.

To a bath heated to 120° add 8 oz. of what is known as new green powder, 8 oz. picric acid, 6 oz. of alum, and 12 oz. of white tartar ; work in this for half an hour. This gives a very deep rich green, but the shade may be varied by varying the quantity of picric acid.

#### 208. ANOTHER METHOD.

To a bath with soap dissolved in it, dye a blue, as No. 183 ; wash out, and dye over this a yellow, with 8 oz. of picric acid and 8 oz. of alum ; if a yellowish green is required, use more picric acid ; if a bluish green is wanted, use less of this acid.

#### 209. OLIVE.

Work the silk for half an hour in a solution of 1 lb. copperas and 4 oz. alum ; wash out in hot water, and then work half an hour in a decoction of 2 lbs. fustic and 4 oz. logwood ; lift, and add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint alum solution, No. 202, or 2 oz. dissolved ; work ten minutes in this ; wash and dry.

If the shade required have more of a green hue than pattern, add a little chemic, or extract, to the last water, and work ten minutes and dry.



#### 210. LIGHT OLIVE.

Dye a light Prussian blue, No. 180, then work for twenty minutes in a decoction of 2 lbs. fustic and  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint archil liquor; lift, and raise with  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint alum solution, No. 202, or 1 oz. dissolved; work ten minutes and finish.

The intelligent operator will soon be able to apply the proper stuff for the tint required; but in working with silk avoid strong caustic alkalies, or alkaline earths, such as lime, which affects the fibre, also bleaching liquors. The affinity of silk for dyes is much greater than cotton; it is easier dyed, but strong liquors have a tendency to take away the natural lustre of the silk.

## WOOLLEN DYEING.

---

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

THE preparation of woollen for dyeing has been given (page 339). In the following receipts the quantity of dye-stuffs given are for 10 lbs. of woollen, whether yarn or cloth, and the quantity of liquid used must be sufficient to allow the goods plenty of room in the liquor. The proper quantity of water for a certain quantity of goods will soon become known with a little practice.

For re-dyes every care should be taken to remove all grease or oil first, or no good dye can follow. This is done by steeping and scouring in soap and soda, No. 2. If the remaining colour be unequal or dark, the goods are steeped or wrought for a little in a sour made up by *sal nixon* (bisulphate of potash), 2 oz. to the gallon water.

Woollen is always dyed hot, the liquid generally being near to the boiling point, which necessitates its being dyed in a boiler. Iron vessels are in general not used for this purpose. Copper, and copper with tin, were formerly used. Now wood-baths are generally used, made of a size to dye 50 lbs. or 100 lbs. at a time, having a steam-pipe running along the bottom to give the necessary heat. The dye-stuffs, such as ground wood, are generally put into the boiler, and the goods wrought with them; but it is cleaner to make a decoction and use the clear liquor.

All washings to be in cold water, except warm be specified in the receipt.

---

### DYEING.

#### 211. BLACK.

Work for one hour in a bath of 8 oz. bichromate potash (chrome), 6 oz. alum, 4 oz. fustic; lift and expose to the air for a short time; wash well, and then work for one hour in another bath of 4 lbs. logwood, 4 oz. barwood, 4 oz. fustic; lift and add 4 oz. copperas in solution; work half an hour in this, and then wash and dry.

#### 212. BLACK.

Work for twenty minutes in a bath of 8 oz. camwood; lift and add 8 oz. copperas; work other twenty minutes; then withdraw the fire from the boiler, and submerge the goods in the liquor overnight; then wash

out. In another bath, of 5 lbs. of logwood and 1 pint urine, work for an hour; lift and add 4 oz. copperas; work in this half an hour longer; wash and dry.



213. BLUE BLACK.

Dye first a good dark Prussian blue, No. 236, or royal blue; then proceed in the same manner as in No. 211, using only the half of the stuff named there. If the blue is very deep, instead of operating as No. 211, the goods may be wrought for half an hour in a decoction of 4 lbs. logwood; then add to this 1 oz. red chromate of potash; work half an hour longer; wash and dry.

214. COMMON BLACK.

Put into the bath 8 oz. of bichromate of potash, with 5 oz. of red argol; boil these together for a little; put off the boil, and enter the goods, and work for one and a half hours; then wash out. In a new bath add 5 lbs. of ground logwood; work in this at nearly boiling heat for an hour; wash out and dry.

Where red argol may not be at hand, common salt may be used instead; the former is preferable.

215. BROWN.

Work for half an hour in 8 oz. of chrome; lift and expose till cold; then in a new bath work an hour in 2 lbs. fustic, 4 oz. madder, 3 oz. cudbear, 4 oz. tartar, 2 oz. logwood; lift out and dry; or wash before drying.

216. CHROME BROWN.

Dissolve in bath 6 oz. bichromate of potash and 3 oz. of tartar; work in this for one and a half hours; wash well; make up new bath with 9 oz. cudbear, 2 lbs. fustic; work in this for one hour; lift and add  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. copperas; re-enter and work fifteen minutes; wash out and dry.

217. YELLOW OR LIGHT BROWN.

Work for an hour in the following bath: 2 oz. bichromate of potash (chrome), 2 oz. argol, 2 oz. alum; wash from this bath; then work about



forty minutes in another bath, made up with 2 lbs. fustic, 1 lb. madder, 8 oz. peachwood, 4 oz. logwood; wash out of this and dry. This gives a very beautiful brown; and a great variety of tints and shades may be made by varying the quantities of the last bath with the same preparation as the first bath.

## 218. BROWN.

This is a more easily dyed brown than last, although not giving the same tint. Work for an hour in a bath made up with 2 lbs. fustic, 2 lbs. madder, 1 lb. peachwood, 4 oz. logwood; then lift and add to the bath a solution of 2 oz. copperas, and work half an hour in this; wash out and dry.



## 219. BROWN.

Work for an hour in a bath of 4 lbs. fustic, 2 lbs. camwood,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. logwood; lift and add to the bath 4 oz. copperas; work half an hour in this; wash and dry. A variety of shades may be dyed in this way by varying the proportions of stuffs.

## 220. Madder Brown.

Make a bath charged with 6 oz. alum, 3 oz. tartar or argol,  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb. madder, and 3 lbs. fustic; boil these together for some time; put off the boil and enter the goods, and work for an hour with the liquor at spring of the boil; lift up and add 2 oz. bluestone and 1 oz. of copperas; work half an hour; wash and dry.

## 221. CRIMSON.

Work in a bath for one hour with 1 lb. cochineal paste, No. 49, 6 oz. dry cochineal, 1 lb. tartar, 1 pint protochloride of tin; wash out this and dry.



## 222. MAGENTA.

To a bath heated to about  $170^{\circ}$  add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of magenta crystals, previously dissolved in boiling water; work in this for thirty minutes; wring out and dry. A little soap in solution may be used with advantage.

## 223. SCARLET.

Work for an hour in a bath to which has been added 1 lb. tartar, 2 oz. dry cochineal, 8 oz. sumach, 8 oz. fustic; wash out and dry.

## 224. ANOTHER METHOD.

To the bath add 12 oz. cochineal, 3 oz. of tartar,  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. oxalic acid,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  pint of scarlet spirits, and  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. flavine; boil all these together for a short time; then let off the boil and enter the goods, and work for one and a half hour, keeping up the heat close to the boiling point; wash out and dry.

## 225. RED.

Work half an hour in a bath of 1 oz. bichromate of potash, 1 oz. alum; wash out this through cold water; then work for half an hour in another bath of 3 lbs. peach or limawood; lift and add 1 oz. alum; work in this for twenty minutes; wash and dry.

## 226. LAC-SCARLET OR RED.

Put into bath 4 oz. of lac-dye, 2 pints of scarlet spirits, 2 oz. crystals of tin in  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint muriatic acid, and 8 oz. tartar; boil these together for fifteen minutes; let off the boil; then enter goods, and work for an hour; wash out and dry. If the colour wanted be more of a scarlet, add some flavine or quercitron bark.

## 227. CLARET.

Work for an hour in 5 oz. camwood; lift out and expose until the goods are well drained and cold; in the interim add to the bath with the camwood 4 oz. copperas, 2 oz. alum, 8 oz. logwood; work the goods in this for half an hour; wash and dry.



## 228. MADDER RED.

Work the goods for two hours in a bath having dissolved in it 2 lbs. alum, 5 oz. tartar, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint perchloride of tin; lift out and expose for an hour; then work for an hour in a fresh bath charged with 8 lbs. of madder; wash out and dry. Different shades, down to a salmon-colour, may be dyed in this way, using small proportions of stuff.

## 229. PINK.

Work one hour in a bath of 1 lb. tartar, 8 oz. alum, 1 lb. cochineal paste, 1 gill measure of red spirits, No. 29; wash out and dry.



## 230. PINK.

Put into the bath  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of alum,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. cream of tartar,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. tin crystals in half pint muriatic acid, and add to this 1 gill of cochineal paste; enter the goods after the stuffs are well mixed, and work for half-an-hour; wash and dry. Darker and lighter shades can be had by using less or more paste.

## 231. YELLOW.

Work for half an hour in a bath with 3 oz. chrome, 2 oz. alum; lift and expose till well cooled and drained; then work for another half hour, without previous washing in another bath of 5 lbs. fustic; wash out and dry.



## 232. YELLOW OR AMBER.

Charge the boiler with  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of alum,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. cream of tartar, 1 pint double muriate of tin, 1 oz. flavine, and 10 oz. quercitron bark; boil these

together for fifteen minutes; allow the liquor to cool till the hand may be held in it, then enter the goods, and bring up the heat to  $200^{\circ}$ ; work for an hour; wash out and dry. By adding a little cochineal, ambers and oranges may be dyed.

### 233. ANOTHER METHOD.

Work for twenty minutes in a bath with 8 oz. tartar, 8 oz. alum; lift, and add to the bath 2 lb. bark, 8 oz. sumach, 8 oz. fustic, 1 pint red spirits; work in this for forty minutes; wash out and dry.

### 234. ANOTHER METHOD FOR YELLOW.

Put into bath 8 oz. alum, 3 oz. tartar,  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. flavine,  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint yellow spirits; boil altogether for ten minutes, then enter the goods and work until they are all of an even colour. This makes a rich amber yellow.

### 235. ORANGE.

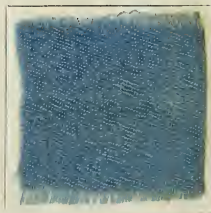
Work for forty minutes in a bath to which has been added 2 lbs. sumach, 3 oz. cochineal dry, 1 lb. fustic, 8 oz. tartar, 1 pint red spirits; wash out this and dry.



### 236. SKY BLUE.

Work in a bath for half an hour with 8 oz. argol, 1 lb. alum, 1 gill indigo extract, No. 45 or 46; wash out this and dry.

Different depths of shade may be made by varying the quantities of indigo extract.



### 237. ANILINE BLUE.

Take 3 oz. of Nicholson's blue, marked B, B, B, B, and dissolve in a gallon of boiling water, then add it to the bath along with a gill silicate



of soda; enter the goods cold, and bring up heat to  $180^{\circ}$ ; wash and work in a new bath having in it  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint sulphuric acid, which brings up the blue; wash and dry.

### 238. ROYAL BLUE.

Work the goods for twenty minutes in a bath with 1 lb. yellow prussiate of potash, and lift; then take  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint nitrate of iron, No. 15, and add to it 1 oz. of the crystals of tin, No. 26, or 1 pint double muriate of tin, No. 34; stir well for a few minutes, and then add this mixture to the bath, and work the goods in this for half an hour; wash out and dry.

Different shades of this may be dyed by varying the quantities of all the ingredients.

### 239. ANOTHER METHOD.

Into the required quantity of water put 1 quart of muriate of iron, No. 18, and add to it 1 pint of double muriate of tin, No. 34; work in this for half an hour; lift and work half an hour in a bath with 4 oz. red prussiate of potash. If the colour is not deep enough, repeat this through the same stuff, adding 2 oz. more red prussiate; then wash out in cold water and dry.



### 240. SAXON BLUE.

Work the goods in a bath for thirty minutes, in which 1 pint of indigo extract has been added, and 2 ounces alum, and 1 ounce tartar; wash out and dry; any shade may be got by giving more or less of the extract.

### 241. PIGEON BLUE.

Work in a bath for forty minutes having 2 oz. bichromate of potash, 4 oz. alum, 1 oz. tartar; wash from this in cold water, and then work for half an hour in another bath with 3 lbs. logwood; lift and add 1 oz. verdigris; work for fifteen minutes, and wash and dry.

### 242. ANOTHER METHOD.

Charge the bath with 5 oz. bichromate of potash, 9 oz. alum, and 2 oz. tartar; work in this for half an hour; lift and drain.

Into another bath having in it a decoction of 9 oz. logwood, work in

this for twenty minutes, then add 5 oz. cudbear; work for forty minutes in this, expose for an hour, and wash and dry.

#### 243. OAK OR APPLE GREEN.

Work for half an hour in a bath with 1 oz. chrome, 1 oz. alum; wash through cold water, and then work for half an hour in a second bath with 2 lbs. fustic and 8 oz. logwood; wash and dry.

A variety of this shade can be obtained by varying the proportions and quantities.

#### 244. COMMON LOGWOOD GREEN.

Work the goods for an hour in a bath having dissolved in it  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. alum, 5 oz. tartar, and 3 oz. sulphate of copper; lift and expose for two hours; then into a fresh bath work for half an hour with  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. fustic and 1 lb. logwood; lift and add to this bath 3 oz. of soda ash, and 1 gallon of stale urine; work in this for another thirty minutes, wash out and dry.

#### 245. COMMON GREEN.

Work for fifteen minutes in a bath with 5 lbs. fustic, 2 oz. argol, 5 oz. alum; lift, and add  $\frac{1}{2}$  gill indigo extract; and then work for half an hour, and dry.

If the green seem too yellow, a little more extract of indigo may be added.



#### 246. FAST GREEN.

This is first dyed blue in the indigo or woad vat, according to the depth of green required, and then work for an hour in a bath with 4 lbs. fustic, 2 lbs. alum, and dry out.

By dyeing the blue vat lighter than is required for the green, and adding to the bath with the fustic a little logwood, will give the required depth and a good shade; but the colour is not so fast.

#### 247. BOTTLE GREEN.

Work for an hour in a bath with 2 oz. chrome and 4 oz. alum; lift out and expose to the air for some time till the goods are cold; then

work for an hour in a second bath with 3 lbs. fustic,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. logwood; wash out and dry.

#### 248. INVISIBLE GREEN.

Work for an hour in a bath with 3 oz. chrome, 4 oz. alum; lift and expose to the air for some time; then work for an hour in a second bath with 2 lbs. fustic,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. logwood; wash out and dry.

By comparing these two last receipts, it will be seen that the different shades are produced by varying the proportions of the same stuffs, and will serve as a guide to the amateur.

#### 249. GRASS GREEN.

To the bath add  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of alum, 2 oz. tartar,  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. indigo extract, and 6 lbs. fustic; boil all the stuffs together for ten minutes in bath half-filled with water; then fill the bath with cold water, and enter the goods, and raise the heat slowly to the boiling point; work at this heat for half an hour, then wash and dry.

#### 250. OLIVE.

Work for an hour in a bath with 10 oz. fustic, 8 oz. logwood, 4 oz. madder, 2 oz. peachwood; lift, and add to the same bath 4 oz. copperas in solution, and work for half an hour and dry.



#### 251. OLIVE.

Work for an hour in a bath with 4 oz. chrome, 2 oz. alum; lift and expose for some time to the air; then work for an hour in a bath with 3 lbs. fustic,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. camwood, 1 lb. logwood; lift out and dry.

#### 252. PURPLE.

Work the goods half an hour in a bath, with 1 oz. chrome, 1 oz. alum; lift out and wash, and then work half an hour in a bath with 2 lbs. logwood, 1 lb. peachwood; lift, and add 1 oz. of alum in solution; work in this for twenty minutes; wash and dry.

If a light and redder shade be required, use less logwood and more peachwood; and if a darker shade, more of each.



#### 253. HOFMANN'S VIOLET.

Put into bath, when it is lukewarm, 1 gill of Hofmann's R, R, R; put in the goods, and bring the heat slowly to the boiling point; work until the colour is level. By adding a little alum and tartar, it gives a bluer tint than when alone.

#### 254. PEACH, TO WINE COLOUR.

Work the goods for an hour in a bath with 4 lbs. cudbear, and dry.

If a darker shade be required, give more cudbear; if the tint be required bluer, add, after half an hour's working, 1 gill ammonia or hartshorn; if a redder tint is required, add a wine-glassful of muriatic acid.

If the acid be added, the goods should be washed before drying.

#### 255. LIGHT VIOLET.

Work for an hour in a bath with 4 oz. cudbear, 4 oz. logwood, 2 oz. barwood or camwood, 2 oz. peachwood; lift and add 2 oz. alum in solution, and work half an hour and dry.



#### 256. PERKIN'S MAUVE ORIGINAL COLOUR.

Add 1 gill of the colour to the dye bath; when the water is lukewarm enter the goods, and bring the liquid slowly to the heat of 180°; continue to work till the colour is level. Light shades of this is difficult to get level. Alum may be used with this, but it hurts the fastness of the dye.



## 257. COMMON PUCE.

Work in a bath for one hour with 10 oz. logwood, 1 oz. camwood, 8 lbs. cudbear; lift and add 2 oz. copperas in solution; work half an hour and dry.

## 258. PUCE OR PURPLE.

Dissolve  $1\frac{1}{4}$  oz. of Perkin's purple in a pint of warm alcohol and filter it, adding the filtrate to the bath along with 6 oz., by measure, of acetic acid, 6 oz. alum, and 2 oz. tartar; enter the goods at hand-heat, and bring the liquor to the boil, working for an hour; wash out and dry. If a blue shade is required—something approaching to mauve—add to the bath about a wine-glassful of vitriol; if a redder shade is required, add a little magenta dye.

## 259. GREENISH DRAB.

To the dye bath add 1 oz. bichromate of potash,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. alum,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. tartar, and work the goods in this half an hour; lift out and wash. Make up a new bath of water, and add 4 oz. logwood, 2 oz. fustic, 1 oz. barwood, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. peachwood; work the goods again through this second bath half an hour; wash and dry.

Shades of this can also be varied by using different proportions of stuffs.

## 260. BROWN DRAB.

To the dye bath add 2 oz. ground madder, 1 oz. peachwood, 2 oz. logwood, 6 oz. fustic, and work in this for thirty minutes; lift up and add 3 oz. of copperas in solution; mix well, and work the goods in this for other thirty minutes; wash and dry.

This shade can be greatly varied, either by altering the quantity of the stuffs, or the proportions of any of them; if a redder tint be required, add more peachwood or madder—the latter gives the drab hue; if more yellow, add fustic; if more slate or black, add logwood, and *vice versâ*.

## 261. LIGHT GREY.

To a bath half filled with water add 2 oz. of tartar,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of ground nut-galls, 1 oz. of cudbear, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of logwood, and boil fifteen minutes; then fill up the bath with cold water and enter the goods, and work rapidly till the heat comes to the boiling point, continuing working the goods for forty minutes. This is required in order to have an even dye with so little stuff; lift and add  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of copperas; work other twenty minutes, then wash and dry. This gives a very light shade of grey—of course, darker shades can be obtained by more stuff.

## 262. GREY DRAB.

Dissolve  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. of bichromate and add to it the required quantity of water; work the goods in this for half an hour; then lift and add 1 oz. of logwood; work again for half an hour; wash and dry.

Different shades of this drab may be made by varying the quantities of the dye-stuffs.



## 263. ANOTHER METHOD.

To the bath one-fourth full, add 6 oz. alum, 2 oz. tartar,  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. indigo extract,  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. Perkin's mauve,  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. cochineal,  $\frac{1}{4}$  oz. cudbear, and 1 oz. fustic; boil together; then fill bath with cold water, enter the goods, and raise the heat to the boiling point, and continue working till level; wash and dry.

## 264. SLATE DRAB.

Into the proper proportion of water add 1 oz. peach or lima-wood, 2 oz. logwood,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. fustic; work in this for twenty minutes, and then lift out, and add to the dye bath 1 oz. sulphate of iron (copperas) in solution; stir well and work in this for another half hour; lift out and expose to the air for a short time; wash and dry.

A great variety of shades of slate or stone colours may be dyed by varying the quantities and the proportions of the dye-stuffs.

## 265. SLATE OR STONE COLOUR.

Work for half an hour in a bath with 8 oz. logwood, 1 oz. fustic; lift and add to the bath a solution of 1 oz. alum,  $\frac{1}{2}$  oz. copperas; work in this half an hour; wash and dry.

If a bluer tint be required, use less alum and more copperas; if more to the purple, less fustic and more alum; and so, by a very little practice, any particular tint can be obtained.



## 266. BLUE BY WOOLLEN BLUE VAT.

The blue vat No. 39 is not used for woollen or silk; for these fibres there are two sorts of vats used, to set which and keep in order requires great experience, and many extensive dye-houses do not possess them. The dyer who keeps these has always something different to his neighbour which he prefers and keeps secret. A very good method for setting a woad vat is as follows:—Into a large and deep iron vessel, capable of being furnished with a steam jacket, put, for every 20 gallons water, 12 lbs. best woad finely chopped, 1 lb. ground indigo, 3 oz. madder, 3 oz. bran; mix well, and let them steep from sixteen to twenty hours at bloodheat; when they begin to ferment, and the colour of the solution becomes yellowish, a little lime is added and the vat stirred; this stirring should be continued every four or five hours, and either lime, madder, or potash added in small portions according to the appearance of the solution; when in good order, there should be on the surface a thin floating layer of indigo, and when the liquor is blown upon, it should have an amber tint with blue veins; if too yellow, a little lime is added. It requires several days before the vat can be dyed with.

To dye silk in this vat, the liquor should only be lukewarm; to dye woollen it should be heated to about 170° Fah. The heat must not be applied to the bottom of the vat, which would raise the sediment, but to the sides by the steam jacket above the sediment.

## 267. ANOTHER BLUE VAT FOR WOOLLEN.

In a similar vessel to the above add, for every 20 gallons water, 5 oz. ground indigo, 8 oz. potash, 3 oz. madder, and 4 oz. bran; keep the solution at a heat of 140° Fah.; after twenty-four hours the whole will have begun to ferment; then add 2 oz. madder; stir, and allow the whole to settle, after which the vat is ready for use. Woollen is dyed in this in the same way as last—heating the vat to 170°, working the goods in it for a short time, then exposing to the air for an hour. If the shade is deep enough, wash and finish; if not dark enough, give another dip. (See the chapter upon Indigo and the principle of these vats.)

## MIXED FABRICS.

---

### DYED TWO COLOURS.

MIXED fabrics of cotton and woollen, as coburgs and damasks, are very common; these are either dyed all one colour, or the cotton and woollen are dyed of different colours. This last is seldom done, except with new goods, or in cases where very light coloured goods are wanted a dark shade, in which case a light and dark colour may be dyed. The process for doing this is very simple. As the process used for woollen will seldom produce the same colour on cotton, the two have to be dyed separately. For most colours it is necessary to dye the woollen first, and then the cotton; in a few the cotton is dyed first. In most cases, the processes we have given will serve the purpose; as for instance—

#### 268. GREEN AND PINK.

The woollen is first dyed a green, by the process No. 245, and then the cotton is dyed pink, by the process No. 87.

#### 269. GREEN AND CRIMSON.

Dye the woollen by working for an hour in 2 lbs. tartar, 4 lbs. alum, 6 lbs. fustic, and then add  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint indigo extract, No. 45; wash out and lay overnight in 6 lbs. sumach; work half an hour in red spirits, No. 29, made to 2° Twaddell; wash and work for an hour in 5 lbs. peachwood at hand-heat; raise with alum; wash and finish.

#### 270. BLUE AND ORANGE.

First dye the cotton a blue by the blue vat, No. 39; wash, and then dye the woollen by working one hour in 2 lbs. tartar, 8 oz. cochineal, 2 lbs. fustic, and 2 pints bichloride of tin, No. 27; wash from this and dry.

In this way almost any two colours may be dyed upon cotton and woollen, although woven together, by proceeding as the receipt for the colour required on each sort of fibre; and except as in the case where cotton is dyed by the blue vat, and consequently fast, the woollen is always to be dyed first. The same rule is applicable to silk and woollen. The two



have to be dyed separately, although in many cases the silk takes on more dye during the dyeing of the woollen than cotton does.

A mixture of silk and cotton when required two colours, has also to be done in the same manner; but it is much more difficult, and cannot be done with every kind of colour; it is a process, however, seldom required.

These processes are more in use for re-dyes, as generally in mixed fabrics the different stuffs are dyed in the hank before being woven.

## MIXED FABRICS.

---

### DYED ONE COLOUR.

SHOULD the mixed fabrics be required all of one colour, the same double process has often to be adopted, especially when the fabrics are cotton and woollen ; as, for instance—

#### 271. BLACK ON COTTON AND WOOLLEN.

The woollen is dyed first, as No. 211, and then, to dye the cotton, the goods are laid in sumach, and dyed as No. 72; and so on for any colour of these mixed fabrics.

#### 272. BROWN ON COTTON AND WOOLLEN BY ONE PROCESS.

Work the goods for two hours in catechu, same as No. 81; then work for an hour at boiling heat with 8 oz. chrome and 2 oz. tartar; lift out and work an hour in 2 lbs. fustic and 8 oz. cudbear; wash and dry. Should a deeper shade be required, or a shade more to the chocolate hue, add with the cudbear 4 oz. logwood.

#### 273. BLACK ON SILK AND WOOLLEN BY ONE PROCESS.

Work an hour in a solution of 8 oz. tartar, and 8 oz. copperas, and wash out; work for fifteen minutes in a decoction of 4 lbs. logwood; lift, and add 1 oz. bichromate of potash; work half an hour and dry.

#### 274. BLACK ON COTTON, SILK, AND WOOLLEN, BY ONE PROCESS.

Steep for six hours in 2 lbs. sumach, then work for an hour in a solution of 6 oz. tartar, 6 oz. bluestone, and 6 oz. copperas; wash from this, and work half an hour in a decoction of 4 lbs. logwood; lift and raise with 1 oz. copperas; work ten minutes; wash and dry.

Should a very deep black be required, add 1 lb. of bark with the logwood; all else the same.

#### 275. DRABS ON COTTON, SILK, AND WOOLLEN, BY ONE PROCESS.

Work the goods half an hour in 8 oz. sulphate of iron and 4 oz. tartar; lift and drain; then work for half an hour in 4 oz. logwood and 1 oz. chrome; wash out and dry.

By varying the quantity of these stuffs, or by using a little fustic or peachwood in the last bath, a great variety of shades of drab, slates, or fawns may be produced, the different fibres being equally dyed.

The operator, by a careful study of the different modes of dyeing the different fabrics, may easily dye any mixed fabric one or more colours, always bearing in mind that nothing be used to affect the fibre of any one of the mixtures; particularly in attempting to remove the colour from a mixed fabric, be careful not to use substances that affect the silk or woollen, such for example as bleaching liquor, caustic alkalies, or lime.

### COLOUR AND DRESS.

The following remarks upon the harmony of colours, taken from M. E. Chevreul, may prove of some value in selecting colours.

*“ Red Drapery.*—Rose-red cannot be put in contact with the rosiest complexions without causing them to lose some of their freshness. Dark red is less objectionable for certain complexions than rose-red, because, being higher than this latter, it tends to impart whiteness to them in consequence of contrast of tone.

*“ Green Drapery.*—A delicate green is, on the contrary, favourable to all fair complexions which are deficient in rose, and which may have more imparted to them without inconvenience; but it is not so favourable to complexions that are more red than rosy, nor to those that have a tint of orange mixed with brown, because the red they add to this tint will be of a brick-red hue. In the latter case a dark green will be less objectionable than a delicate green.

*“ Yellow Drapery.*—Yellow imparts violet to a fair skin, and in this view it is less favourable than delicate green. To those skins which are more yellow than orange it imparts white; but this combination is very dull and heavy for a fair complexion. When the skin is tinted more with orange than yellow, we can make it roseate by neutralising the yellow; it produces this effect upon the black-haired type, and it is thus that it suits brunettes.

*“ Violet Draperies.*—Violet, the complementary of yellow, produces contrary effects; thus, it imparts some greenish yellow to fair complexions; it augments the yellow tint of yellow and orange skins. The little blue there may be in a complexion it makes green. Violet, then, is one of the least favourable colours to the skin, at least when it is not sufficiently deep to whiten it by contrast of tone.

*“ Blue Drapery.*—Blue imparts orange, which is susceptible of allying itself favourably to white and the light flesh tints of fair complexions, which have already a more or less determined tint of this colour. Blue is,

then, suitable to most blondes, and in this case justifies its reputation. It will not suit brunettes, since they have already too much of orange.

“*Orange Drapery*.—Orange is too brilliant to be elegant; it makes fair complexions blue, whitens those which have an orange tint, and gives a green hue to those of a yellow tint.

“*White Drapery*.—Drapery of a lustreless white, such as cambric, muslin, assorts well with a fresh complexion, of which it relieves the rose colour; but it is unsuitable to complexions which have a disagreeable tint, because white always exalts all colours by raising their tone; consequently, it is unsuitable to those skins which, without having this disagreeable tint, very nearly approach it. Very light white draperies, such as muslin, plaited or point lace, have an entirely different aspect.

“*Black Drapery*.—Black draperies, answering the tone of the colours with which they are in juxtaposition, whiten the skin; but if the vermilion or rosy parts are to a certain point distant from the drapery, it will follow that, although lowered in tone, they appear relatively to the white parts of the skin contiguous to this same drapery redder than if the contiguity to the black did not exist.”



# GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS

USED IN THE DYE-HOUSE,

WITH THE CHEMICAL NAMES,

A FULL EXPLANATION OF WHICH MAY BE OBTAINED IN THE VOLUME.

---

*Adjective.* A term applied to a colour depending on a base for its production.

*Aqua fortis.* Nitric acid.

*Aqua-regia.* A mixture of hydrochloric and nitric acids, generally in the proportion of two of the former to one of the latter.

*Alkali root.* Alkanet root.

*Alterant.* A substance added to the colouring liquor to give it brightness, same as "raising."

*Argol.* Bitartrate of potash, formed by deposit on wine casks.

*Arnotto.* Annotta.

*Barilla.* The name of an impure soda imported from Spain and the Levant.

*Black ash.* Carbonate of potash in fused masses, as imported.

*Black lead.* Plumbago. Impure carbon.

*Black iron liquor.* Acetate of iron, or pyrolignite of iron.

*Bleed.* To extract the colouring matter from a dye-drug.

*Bleaching powder.* Chloride of lime.

*Block tin.* Commercial tin cast into ingots or blocks, not so pure as grain tin.

*Borax.* Borate of soda.

*Blue copperas.* Sulphate of copper.

*Blue-stone.* Sulphate of copper.

*Blue vitriol.* Sulphate of copper.

*Bottom.* Applied to the base of a colour, such as sumach, galls, &c.

*Brimstone.* Sulphur.

*Brown sugar.* Acetate of lead, or pyrolignite of lead.

*Bucking.* Boiling goods in an alkaline ley.

*Bundle.* Ten pounds of cotton yarn.

*Calomel.* Protochloride of mercury.

*Carmine.* Colouring matter of cochineal, extracted and dried.

*Chamber-ley.* Urine.

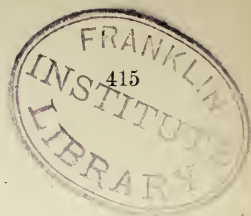
*Chemic, or chemic blue.* Sulphate of indigo.

*Chrome.* Bichromate of potash.

*Common salt.* Chloride of sodium.

*Copperas.* Protosulphate of iron.

- Corrosive sublimate.* Bichloride of mercury.
- Cream of tartar.* Bitartrate of potash, purified. *See* Argol.
- Crofting.* Exposing goods upon the grass.
- Crude tartar.* *See* Argol.
- Crystals of tin.* Chloride of tin.
- Dip.* Generally applied to immersing goods in the blue vat.
- Doctored.* To adulterate, generally applied to giving an appearance of strong colour to dyewoods, by adding water containing lime to them.
- Double muriate of tin.* A saturated solution of bichloride of tin.
- Epsom salts.* Sulphate of magnesia.
- Essential salt of lemons.* Binocalate of potash.
- Extract of indigo.* Sulphate of indigo.
- Fast colour.* Permanent colours.
- Fancy colour.* Colours subject to fade; fugitive.
- Feathering.* To granulate a metal.
- Firing spirits.* When tin by dissolving too rapidly, or by heat, becomes converted into a bichloride.
- Flake.* A wooden frame on which wet goods are placed to drain.
- Fluery of a vat.* The froth of oxidised indigo floating on the surface of a blue vat.
- Flowers of zinc.* Oxide of zinc.
- French tub.* Protochloride of tin and logwood, plumb tub.
- Glauber salts.* Sulphate of soda.
- Grain tin.* Metallic tin in prismatic pieces.
- Green vitriol.* Sulphate of iron, copperas.
- Hartshorn.* Ammonia.
- Kelp.* Ashes left on burning sea-weed.
- Killing.* Dissolving any substance in an acid, as iron in nitric acid; killing iron.
- King's yellow.* Sulphuret of arsenic.
- Lactine.* Curd of milk used for animalising cotton.
- Lemon juice.* Citric acid.
- Ley.* Solution of an alkali, as potash or soda.
- Lime juice.* Citric acid.
- Lime shell.* Caustic lime.
- Lime stone.* Unburned or carbonate of lime.
- Litharge.* Protoxide of lead.
- Lunar caustic.* Nitrate of silver.
- Magnesia nigra.* Manganese.
- Marine acid.* Hydrochloric acid.
- Mineral alkali.* Soda.
- Mordant.* Generally applied only to acetate of alumina.
- Muriatic acid.* Hydrochloric acid.
- Muriates.* Chlorides.
- Nitromuriate of tin.* A solution of tin in nitric and hydrochloric acids, forming a persalt.



- Nitre.* Nitrate of potash.  
*Oxymuriate of tin.* Perchloride of tin.  
*Oxymuriate of potash.* Chlorate of potash.  
*Oxymuriatic acid.* Chlorine.  
*Oil of vitriol.* Sulphuric acid.  
*Orpiment.* Persulphide of arsenic.  
*Oxygen of the bleachers.* Chlorine, chloride of lime, bleaching powder.  
*Pearlash.* Carbonate of potash.  
*Permuriate of tin.* Perchloride of tin.  
*Prussiate of potash.* Ferrocyanide of potassium.  
*Queen-wood.* Brazil-wood.  
*Quicksilver.* Mercury.  
*Raising.* See Alterant.  
*Realgar.* Sulphide of arsenic.  
*Red chrome.* Bichrome of potash.  
*Red liquor.* Acetate of alumina.  
*Rot steep.* Steeping cloth in old leys to soften the paste; fermentation takes place, hence the name.  
*Roman vitriol.* Sulphate of copper.  
*Saddening.* Making a colour darker by means of a salt of iron.  
*Sal-ammoniac.* Chloride of ammonium.  
*Sali nixon.* Bisulphate of potash.  
*Sal prunella.* Fused nitrate of potash cast into balls or cakes.  
*Sal volatile.* Sesquicarbonate of ammonia.  
*Salt of lemons.* Citric acid.  
*Salt of saturn.* Acetate of lead.  
*Salt of soda.* Carbonate of soda.  
*Salt of sorrel.* Binocalate of potash.  
*Salt of tartar.* Carbonate of potash.  
*Salt of vitriol.* Sulphate of zinc.  
*Salt perlate.* Phosphate of soda.  
*Saltpetre.* Nitrate of potash.  
*Salt sedative.* Boracic acid.  
*Salts of tin.* Crystallised protochloride of tin.  
*Salt cake.* Sulphate of soda.  
*Saxon blue.* Sulphate of indigo.  
*Scalding.* Extracting a colouring matter by boiling water.  
*Smalt blue.* Ground glass, made of alumina, silica, potash, or soda, coloured blue by oxide of cobalt.  
*Slaked lime.* Hydrate of lime.  
*Sludge.* Sediment of the blue vat.  
*Single muriate of tin.* Half strength of double perchloride of tin.  
*Sour.* Water made acid by sulphuric or muriatic acid.  
*Soda ash.* Carbonate of soda not crystallised.  
*Spirits.* Solutions of chlorides of tin.  
*Spirits of salt.* Hydrochloric acid.

*Spirits of hartshorn.* Ammonia.

*Spirits of wine.* Alcohol.

*Spent.* Exhausted of colour.

*Stoving.* Hanging goods in the stove to dry.

*Stock tub.* Vessel filled with strong solution of a substance to be kept for use.

*Sugar of lead.* Acetate of lead.

*Substantive colour.* A colour fixed in the fibre without mordant—not a compound.

*Supertartrate of potash.* See Argol.

*Sweeten.* To pour water upon goods from a sour placed on a frame, as a partial wash.

*Tartar.* See Argol.

*Test blue.* Sulphate of indigo.

*Tincal.* Borate of soda, borax.

*Turnbull's blue.* Ferrocyanide of iron, Prussian blue.

*Vegetable alkali.* Potash.

*Verdigris.* Acetate of copper.

*Verditer.* Acetate of copper.

*Vinegar.* Acetic acid.

*Vitriol.* Sulphuric acid.

*Volatile alkali.* Ammonia.

*Vomiter.* A boiler so constructed that the boiling liquid is thrown up a pipe and showered on the goods.

*White vitriol.* Sulphate of zinc.

*White copperas.* Sulphate of zinc.

*White lead.* Carbonate of lead.

*Whiting.* Carbonate of lime.

*White zinc.* Oxide of zinc.



# INDEX.

- ABSORPTION** of gases by water, 38.  
**Acetate** of alumina, 121, 199, 350.  
     ,, of barytes, 115.  
     ,, of copper—verdigris, 146.  
     ,, of iron—iron liquor, 135.  
**Acid**, arsenic and arsenious, 173.  
     ,, bromic, 84.  
     ,, carbonic, 88.  
     ,, chloric and chlorous, 50.  
     ,, gallic, 213.  
     ,, hydrochloric, 51.  
     ,, hypobromic and hypobromous, 84.  
     ,, hypochlorous and hypochloric, 50.  
     ,, hypophosphorous, 83.  
     ,, hyposulphuric, 81.  
     ,, hyposulphurous, 80.  
     ,, hydriodic, 84.  
     ,, nitric, 42.  
     ,, oxalic, 88.  
     ,, perchloric, 51.  
     ,, phosphoric and phosphorous, 83.  
     ,, sulphurous, 73.  
     ,, sulphuric, 74.  
**Affinity**, 23.  
**Ammonia**, 48.  
**Analine**, 328.  
     ,, black, 332.  
**Alizarin**, 333.  
     ,, its nature and composition, 334.  
**Alkalimetry**, 105.  
**Alkanet root**, 306.  
**Aloes**, 315.  
**Alum**, 117.  
**Alumina**, 117.  
**Annotta or arnotta**, 303.  
     ,, preparation, 347.  
     ,, dyeing with, 304.  
**Anthrapurpurin**, 336.  
**Antimony**, 175.  
**Application** of laws of affinity, 24.  
     ,, of the effects of heat, 73.  
**Aquafortis**, 42.  
**Archil**, products from, 307.  
**Arrangement** of colours, 14.  
**Arsenic**, 172.  
     ,, green, how dyed, 173.  
  
**BARIUM**, 115.  
**Barbary root**, 317.  
**Bark or quercitron**, 285.  
**Barium chloride**, 115.  
**Barwood**, 280.  
**Bismuth** and its salts, 151.  
**Blacks** on cotton, 357.  
     ,, on silk, 379.  
     ,, on woollen, 395.  
  
**Bleaching**, old method of, 56.  
     ,, theory of, 57, 69.  
     ,, solutions, how prepared, 64.  
     ,, cotton for dyeing, 340.  
**Bleu de Paris**, 331.  
**Blue vat** for cotton, 346.  
     ,, setting of for cotton, 256.  
     ,, theory of, 253.  
     ,, stone, 145.  
**Blues** on cotton, 367.  
     ,, on silk, 386.  
     ,, on woollen, 400.  
**Boiling** of liquids, 5.  
**Borate** of soda, 109.  
**Borax**, 86.  
**Boron**, 85.  
**Brazil-woods**, 276.  
**Bromine**, 84.  
**Browns** on cotton, 358.  
     ,, on silk, 381.  
     ,, on woollen, 396.  
  
**CADMIUM**, 143.  
     ,, salts, 143.  
**Calcium**, 116.  
**Camwood**, 282.  
**Carajura or Chica**, 311.  
**Carbon**, 86.  
**Carbonic oxide**, 87.  
     ,, acid, 88.  
**Carthamus**, 290.  
**Catalysis**, 25.  
**Catechu**, 347, 224.  
**Caustic potash and soda**, how made, 341.  
**Cerium**, 178.  
**Chemic**, 349.  
**Chestnut**, 228.  
**Chlorine**, its properties, on, 49.  
     ,, combined with oxygen, 50.  
**Chloride** of lime, bleaching powder, 59.  
     ,, table of values, 64.  
     ,, how tested, 61.  
     ,, of nitrogen, 55.  
     ,, of sodium, 109.  
**Chlorate** of potash, 96.  
**Chromium**, 162.  
**Chromic acid**, 164.  
**Chrome greens**, 168.  
     ,, orange, 168.  
     ,, yellows, 166.  
**Coal-tar colours**, 325.  
     ,, their history, 326.  
**Cobalt**, 139.  
**Cochineal**, 318.  
     ,, its composition and properties, 319.  
     ,, dye, remarks on, 384.

- Colour of flowers, 211.  
 Colouring matter of logwood, 270.  
     " matters absorbed by carbon, 87.  
 Colours for dress, choosing of, 411.  
 Copperas, 130.  
     " how made, 343.  
 Copper and salts of, 144.  
     " nitrate, 342.  
     " sulphate, 343.  
 Corrosive sublimate, 178.  
 Cotton dyeing, 356.  
 Cyanogen, 89.  
 Cyanide of potassium, 101.  
  
 DECOCTIONS of woods, how made, 347.  
 Divi divi, 227.  
 Drab colours on cotton, 377.  
     " on silk, 391.  
     " on woollen, 406.  
 Dyed colours, how detected, 353.  
 Dyeing receipts, 338.  
  
 EFFECTS of heat on colours, 6.  
     " of light on colours, 10.  
     " of light on combination, 11.  
     " of light on decomposition, 12.  
 Elements, what they are, 16.  
     " table of, 16.  
 Equivalents in volume, 17.  
 Erbium, 185.  
  
 FAWN colours on cotton, 361.  
 Flavine, 287.  
 Fluorine, 85.  
 Fustic or yellow wood, 283.  
  
 GALLS, 213.  
     " analysis of, 219.  
 Garancine, 301.  
     " action of re-agents on, 302.  
 Gases absorbed by carbon, 86.  
 German blue vat, 264.  
 Gold and its salts, 181.  
 Glossary of terms, 413.  
 Green, aldehyd, 331.  
     " colouring matter on vegetables, 209.  
 Greens on cotton, 370.  
     " on silks, 393.  
     " on woollen, 402.  
  
 HARTSHORN, 48.  
 Heat the cause of conditions of matter, 1.  
     " its effects on matter, 2.  
     " by mixing vitriol and water, 78.  
 Hydrocarbons, 90.  
 Hydrogen, 31.  
     " binoxide, 39.  
  
 INCRUSTATION on steam boilers, 38.  
 Indigo, 280.  
     " theory of its formation, 234.  
     " its composition, 234, 244.  
     " extracts, 251, 348.  
     " testing quality of, 235.  
     " different qualities, 242.  
     " relations to other compounds, 249.  
     " sulphate, 250.  
     " blue vat, 252.  
  
 Indian blue vat, 263.  
 Indium, 143.  
 Ink, indelible marks removed, 351.  
 Introduction to dyeing receipts, 338.  
 Iodine, 83.  
 Iridium, 184.  
 Iron, 129.  
 Iron liquor, 134.  
     " oxides of, as mordants, 190.  
     " its salts, in dyeing, 134.  
     " nitrate, 198.  
     " sulphate, copperas, 130.  
     " stains removed, 340.  
  
 KERMS, 323.  
  
 LAC dye, 322.  
 Lanthanum, 185.  
 Lavenders and lilacs on cotton, 373.  
 Lead, 146.  
 Lead salts, 147.  
 Light, theory of, 8.  
 Lithium, 110.  
 Litharge, 147.  
 Lime, 116.  
     " sulphate, 116.  
     " carbonate, 117.  
 Logwood, 269.  
     " action of salts upon, 272.  
     " testing of, 274.  
  
 MADDER, 294.  
     " acids, 299.  
     " purple, 298.  
     " dutch, 295.  
     " orange, 299.  
     " red, 298.  
     " yellow, 299.  
     " brown, 299.  
     " of Avignon, 295.  
     " Levant, 294.  
     " useful products of, 299.  
     " preparations, 300.  
 Magenta, 329.  
 Magnesia, 117.  
 Manganese, 127.  
     " compounds, 128.  
 Matter, general properties and conditions of, 1.  
 Mauve dye, 327.  
 Mercury, 178.  
 Metals, their general properties, 91.  
 Mildew, how removed, 351.  
 Mixed fabrics, how tested, 351.  
     " how dyed, 408.  
     " dyed two colours, 408.  
     " dyed one colour, 410.  
 Molybdenum, 171.  
     " compound, 171.  
 Mordants, 186.  
     " their action, 187.  
     " the theory of, 201.  
 Munjeet or mungeet, 303.  
 Muriate of iron, 343.  
 Myrobalans, 227.  
  
 NAMING substances, rules for, 20.  
 Nature of salts, 21.

- Nickel, 140.  
   " salts, 140.  
 Niobium, 185.  
 Nitric acid, 42.  
 Nitrate of iron, how made, 342.  
   " of barytes, 115.  
 Nitrogen, 39.  
   " with oxygen, 40.  
 Nomenclature, 20.  
  
 OAK bark, 227.  
 Oil stains removed, 340.  
 Oranges on cotton, 366.  
 Orpiment, 174.  
 Osmium, 184.  
 Oxygen, 29.  
   " how made, 29.  
 Oxalic acid, 88.  
 Oxalate of potash, 97.  
 Oxides of lead, 147.  
 Ozone, 71.  
  
 PASTEL vat, 259.  
 Paladium, 183.  
 Peach-wood, 277.  
 Pearlash, 93.  
 Persian berries, 289.  
 Phosphorus, 82.  
 Phosphate of potash, 97.  
   " of soda, 109.  
 Pink and reds on cotton, 361.  
   " on silk, 382.  
   " on woollen, 397.  
 Platinum, 182.  
   " salts of, 183.  
 Picric acid, 247.  
 Pittacal, 316.  
 Plumb tub, 275.  
   " tubs, 346.  
 Potash, 92.  
   " nitrate, 96.  
   " sulphate, 96.  
   " bisulphate, 96.  
   " cyanate, 101.  
   " vat, 264.  
 Potassium, 91.  
   " ferrocyanide, 97.  
   " cyanide, 101.  
 Preparing goods for dyeing, 339.  
 Preparation of cotton for dyeing, 356.  
 Printing resists, 248.  
 Prussian blue for domestic use, 353.  
 Purples, puces, &c., on silk, 388.  
   " on woollen, 405.  
   " on cotton, 373.  
  
 REALGAR, 174.  
 Red prussiate of potash, 100.  
   " colours on woollen, 397.  
 Rhodium, 184.  
 Rosaniline, 330.  
 Royal blue removed from silk and woollen, 352.  
 Ruthenium, 185.  
  
 SAFFLOWER or Carthamus, 290.  
   " how prepared, 349.  
 Santal or Saunders-wood, 279.  
  
 Salts, their constitution, 21.  
   " of chromium, 165.  
 Salt radicals, 27.  
 Scarlet dye removed, 353.  
 Selenium, 82.  
 Silicium, 85.  
 Silk, composition of, 193.  
   " dyeing, 379.  
 Silver, 179.  
   " salts of, 180.  
 Slaked lime, 342.  
 Soaps, 111.  
 Sodium, 101.  
 Soda manufacture, 102.  
   " testing strength of, 106.  
   " nitrate and sulphate, 109.  
 Sooranjee, 308.  
 Sours, how made, 342.  
 Stannate of soda, 160.  
 Straw, colours on cotton, 364.  
 Strong boiling, 5.  
 Strontium, 115.  
 Substances affecting boiling point, 5.  
 Sugar of lead, 148.  
 Sulphur, 72.  
   " and oxygen, 73.  
 Sulphate of alumina, 121.  
 Sulphide of hydrogen, 81.  
 Sulphite of potash, 96.  
 Sumach, 220.  
 Spirit mordants, 196.  
 Spirits, tin, 158.  
   " different, how made, 345.  
 Symbols, use of, 19.  
  
 TABLE of Centigrade and Fahr. scale, 4.  
   " of solubility of different salts, 37.  
   " of strength of nitric acid, 46.  
   " of strength of hydrochloric acid, 53.  
   " of strength of sulphuric acid, 79.  
   " of test by mixing vitriol & water, 78.  
   " of boiling points and gravity of potash in solution, 95.  
   " of soda in solution of different gravities, 108.  
   " of action of salts on galls and sumach, 217.  
 Tannin, 214.  
   " into gallic acid, 216.  
   " quantitative testing, in any vegetable, 353.  
 Tellurium, 172.  
 Temperature, measures of, 3.  
 Testing nitric acid, 45.  
   " dyed colours, 354.  
   " tin salts, 157.  
   " lead salts, 151.  
 Thallium, 151.  
 Tin, 152.  
 Tin salts, &c., 154, 341.  
   " double and single muriates, 157.  
 Titanium, 162.  
 Turmeric, 289.  
 Tungstenum, 170.  
  
 ULTRAMARINE, 323.  
 Uranium, 176.  
   " oxides and salts, 177.

- VALONIA, 227.  
 Vanadium, 170.  
 Vats, management of, 265.  
     " made up with zinc, 268.  
 Vegetable matters used in dyeing, 206.  
     " " their composition, 207.  
 Verdigris, 146.  
 Violets, Hofmann's, 331.  
     " on cotton, 373.  
     " on silk, 389.  
     " on woollen, 404.  
 Vitriol, testing for impurities, 80.  
  
 WATER, 32.  
     " how tested, 34, 350.  
 Weld or wold, 288.  
 Woad vat, 261.  
  
 Woad and pastel, 257.  
 Wongsby, 312.  
 Wools, composition of, 193.  
 Woollen dyeing, 395.  
 Woolfram, 170.  
  
 YELLOW prussiate of potash, 97.  
     " on cotton, 364.  
     " on silk, 389.  
     " on woollen, 399.  
 Young, J., improvements in making soda,  
     103.  
     " fustic, 284.  
  
 ZINC, 141.  
     " salts, 142.  
     " sulphate, 344.

THE END.



A  
CATALOGUE  
OF  
STANDARD WORKS

PUBLISHED BY  
CHARLES GRIFFIN & COMPANY.

---

	PAGE
I.—Religious Works, . . . . .	I
II.—Scientific „ . . . . .	6
III.—Educational „ . . . . .	18
IV.—Works in General Literature, . . . . .	23

---

LONDON:  
12 EXETER STREET, STRAND.

# NOTICE.

---

New Issue of this Important Work—Enlarged, in part Re-written, and thoroughly Revised to date.

EIGHTEENTH EDITION, *Royal 8vo. Handsome Cloth, 10s. 6d.*

## A DICTIONARY OF DOMESTIC MEDICINE AND HOUSEHOLD SURGERY,

BY

SPENCER THOMSON, M.D., EDIN., L.R.C.S.,

REVISED, AND IN PART RE-WRITTEN, BY THE AUTHOR,

AND BY

JOHN CHARLES STEELE, M.D.,

OF GUY'S HOSPITAL.

With Appendix on the Management of the Sick-room, and many Hints for the Diet and Comfort of Invalids.

In its New Form, DR. SPENCER THOMSON'S "DICTIONARY OF DOMESTIC MEDICINE" fully sustains its reputation as the "Representative Book of the Medical Knowledge and Practice of the Day" applied to Domestic Requirements.

The most recent IMPROVEMENTS in the TREATMENT OF THE SICK—in APPLIANCES for the RELIEF OF PAIN—and in all matters connected with SANITATION, HYGIENE, and the MAINTENANCE of the GENERAL HEALTH—will be found in the New Issue in clear and full detail; the experience of the Editors in the Spheres of Private Practice and of Hospital Treatment respectively, combining to render the Dictionary perhaps the most thoroughly practical work of the kind in the English Language. Many new Engravings have been introduced—improved Diagrams of different parts of the Human Body, and Illustrations of the newest Medical, Surgical, and Sanitary Apparatus.

\* \* *All Directions given in such a form as to be readily and safely followed.*

### FROM THE AUTHOR'S PREFATORY ADDRESS.

"Without entering upon that difficult ground which correct professional knowledge and educated judgment can alone permit to be safely trodden, there is a wide and extensive field for exertion, and for usefulness, open to the unprofessional, in the kindly offices of a *true* DOMESTIC MEDICINE, the timely help and solace of a simple HOUSEHOLD SURGERY, or, better still, in the watchful care more generally known as 'SANITARY PRECAUTION,' which tends rather to preserve health than to cure disease. 'The touch of a gentle hand' will not be less gentle because guided by knowledge, nor will the *safe* domestic remedies be less anxiously or carefully administered. Life may be saved, suffering may always be alleviated. Even to the resident in the midst of civilization, the 'KNOWLEDGE IS POWER,' to do good; to the settler and emigrant it is *INVALUABLE*."

"Dr. Thomson has fully succeeded in conveying to the public a vast amount of useful professional knowledge."—*Dublin Journal of Medical Science.*

"The amount of useful knowledge conveyed in this Work is surprising."—*Medical Times and Gazette.*

"WORTH ITS WEIGHT IN GOLD TO FAMILIES AND THE CLERGY."—*Oxford Herald.*

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN & CO., EXETER STREET, STRAND.

# CHARLES GRIFFIN & COMPANY'S

## LIST OF PUBLICATIONS.

### RELIGIOUS WORKS.

ALTAR OF THE HOUSEHOLD (The); a	s.	d.
Series of Prayers and Selections from the Scriptures, for Domestic Worship, for every Morning and Evening in the Year. By the Rev. Dr. HARRIS, assisted by eminent Contributors, with an Introduction by the Rev. W. LINDSAY ALEXANDER, D.D. <i>New Edition, entirely Revised.</i> Royal 4to, with Steel Frontispiece. Cloth, gilt edges, . . . .	22	0
Illustrated with a Series of First-class Engravings on Steel, . . . .	28	0

May also be had bound in the following styles : half-bound calf, marbled edges ; and levant morocco, antique, gilt edges.

ANECDOTES (CYCLOPÆDIA OF RELIGIOUS AND MORAL).	s.	d.
With an Introductory Essay by the Rev. GEORGE CHEEVER, D.D. <i>Thirty-fourth Thousand.</i> Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . .	3	6
*.* These Anecdotes relate to no trifling subjects ; and they have been selected, not for amusement, but for instruction. By those engaged in the tuition of the young, they will be found highly useful.		

BIBLE HISTORY (A Manual of). By the Rev.	s.	d.
J. WYCLIFFE GEDGE, Diocesan Inspector of Schools for Winchester. Small 8vo. Cloth, neat, . . . .	0	7
"This small but very comprehensive Manual is much more than a mere summary of Bible History."— <i>Church Sunday School Magazine.</i>		

BUNYAN'S PILGRIM'S PROGRESS. With	s.	d.
Expository Lectures by the Rev. ROBERT MAGUIRE, Incumbent of St. Olave's, Southwark. With Steel Engravings. <i>Second Edition.</i> Imperial 8vo. Cloth, gilt, . . . .	10	6

#### THE LARGE-TYPE BUNYAN.

BUNYAN'S PILGRIM'S PROGRESS. With	s.	d.
Life and Notes, Experimental and Practical, by WILLIAM MASON. Printed in large type, and Illustrated with full-page Woodcuts. <i>Twelfth Thousand.</i> Crown 8vo. Bevelled boards, gilt, and gilt edges, . . . .	3	6

BUNYAN'S SELECT WORKS. With an	s.	d.
Original Sketch of the Author's Life and Times. Numerous Engravings. <i>New Edition.</i> Two vols., super-royal 8vo. Cloth, . . . .	36	0

## CHRISTIAN YEAR (The): Thoughts in Verse

for the Sundays and Holy Days throughout the Year. With an original Memoir of the Rev. JOHN KEBLE, by W. TEMPLE, Portrait, and sixteen beautiful Engravings on Steel, after eminent Masters. In 4to. Handsome cloth, . . .

Unique walnut boards, . . . . .  
Morocco antique, . . . . .

s. d.  
12 6  
21 0  
25 0

### ILLUSTRATIONS.

Morning .. .. after H. HOWARD, R.A.	The Old Mansion .. after C. W. RADCLYFFE.
Sunset .. .. " G. BARRETT.	The Cathedral Choir .. LEVAIN.
A Mountain Stream .. " C. BENTLEY.	Sunset (after CLAUDE), .. G. BARRETT.
A River Scene .. " C. W. RADCLYFFE.	Moonlight .. " HOFLAND.
A Mountain Lake .. " J. M. W. TURNER.	Pastoral Landscape .. " C. W. RADCLYFFE.
A Greek Temple .. " D. ROBERTS, R.A.	Halt in the Desert .. " D. ROBERTS, R.A.
A Village Church .. " C. W. RADCLYFFE.	Guardian Angels .. " H. HOWARD, R.A.
The Wayside Cross .. " TONY JOHANNOT.	The Church Gate .. " C. W. RADCLYFFE.

"An Edition *de luxe*, beautifully got up . . . admirably adapted for a gift-book."—  
*John Bull.*

## CHRISTIAN YEAR (The): With Memoir of the

Author by W. TEMPLE, Portrait, and Eight Engravings on Steel, after eminent Masters. *New Edition.* Small 8vo, toned paper. Cloth gilt, .

Morocco elegant, . . . . .  
Malachite, . . . . .

5  
10  
12

\*\* The above are the only issues of the "Christian Year" with Memoir and Portrait of the Author. In ordering, Griffin's Editions should be specified.

## COMMENTARIES ON THE HOLY SCRIPTURES.

### HENRY (Matthew): The HOLY BIBLE.

With a Commentary and Explanatory Notes. *New Edition.* In 3 vols., super-royal 8vo. Strongly bound in cloth, . . . . .

50

### SCOTT (Rev. Thomas): A COMMEN-

TARY ON THE BIBLE; containing the Old and New Testaments according to the Authorised Version, with Practical Observations, copious Marginal References, Indices, &c. *New Edition.* In 3 vols., royal 4to. Cloth, . . . . .

63

## CRUDEN'S COMPLETE CONCORDANCE

TO THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS AND THE BOOKS CALLED APOCRYPHAL. Edited and Corrected by WILLIAM YOUNGMAN. With fine Portrait of CRUDEN. *New Edition.* Imperial 8vo. Cloth, handsome gilt top, . . . . .

7

## DICK (Thos., LL.D.): CELESTIAL

SCENERY; or, The Wonders of the Planetary System Displayed. This Work is intended for general readers, presenting to their view, in an attractive manner, sublime objects of contemplation. Illustrated. *New Edition.* Crown 8vo, toned paper. Handsomely bound, with gilt edges, . . . . .

5

## DICK (Dr.): CHRISTIAN PHILOSOPHER

(The); or, The Connection of Science and Philosophy with Religion. Revised and enlarged. Illustrated with 150 Engravings on Wood. *Twenty-eighth Edition.* Crown 8vo, toned paper. Handsomely bound, with gilt edges, . . . . .

5



## STANDARD BIBLICAL WORKS

BY

THE REV. JOHN EADIE, D.D., LL.D.,

*Late a Member of the New Testament Revision Company.*

This SERIES has been prepared to afford sound and necessary aid to the Reader of Holy Scripture. The VOLUMES comprised in it form in themselves a COMPLETE LIBRARY OF REFERENCE. The number of Copies already issued greatly exceeds A QUARTER OF A MILLION.

- I. EADIE (Rev. Prof.): BIBLICAL CYCLO-  
PÆDIA (A); or, Dictionary of Eastern Antiquities, Geography, and  
Natural History, illustrative of the Old and New Testaments. With Maps,  
many Engravings, and Lithographed Facsimile of the Moabite Stone.  
Large Post 8vo, 700 pages. *Twenty-third Edition.* Handsome cloth, . . . 7 6  
Half-bound, calf, . . . . . 10 6  
Morocco antique, gilt edges, . . . . . 16 0

"By far the best Bible Dictionary for general use."—*Clerical Journal.*

- II. EADIE (Rev. Prof.): CRUDEN'S CON-  
CORDANCE TO THE HOLY SCRIPTURES. With Portrait on  
Steel, and Introduction by the Rev. Dr. KING. Post 8vo. *Forty-seventh*  
*Edition.* Handsome cloth, . . . . . 3 6  
Half-bound, calf, . . . . . 6 6  
Full calf, gilt edges, . . . . . 8 6  
Full morocco, gilt edges, . . . . . 10 6

\* Dr. EADIE's has long and deservedly borne the reputation of being the COM-  
PLETEST and BEST CONCORDANCE extant.

- III. EADIE (Rev. Prof.): CLASSIFIED BIBLE  
(The). An Analytical Concordance. Illustrated by Maps. Large Post  
8vo. *Sixth Edition.* Handsome cloth, . . . . . 8 6  
Full morocco, antique, . . . . . 17 0

The CLASSIFIED BIBLE presents the entire Scriptures under certain distinct Heads or  
Topics. The verses being printed in full, reference and comparison are greatly  
facilitated.

"We have only to add our unqualified commendation of a work of real excellence to  
every Biblical student."—*Christian Times.*

- IV. EADIE (Rev. Prof.): ECCLESIASTICAL  
CYCLOPÆDIA (The). A Dictionary of Christian Antiquities, and of  
the History of the Christian Church. By the Rev. Professor EADIE,  
assisted by numerous Contributors. Large Post 8vo. *Sixth Edition.*  
Handsome cloth, . . . . . 8 6  
Full morocco, antique, . . . . . 17 0

"The ECCLESIASTICAL CYCLOPÆDIA will prove acceptable both to the clergy and laity  
of Great Britain. A great body of useful information will be found in it."—*Athenæum.*

- V. EADIE (Rev. Prof.): A DICTIONARY OF  
THE HOLY BIBLE; for the use of Young People. With Map and  
Illustrations. Small 8vo. *Thirty-sixth Thousand.* Cloth, elegant, . . . 2 6  
Full morocco, gilt edges, . . . . . 7 6

## FOSTER (Charles) : THE STORY OF THE

BIBLE, from Genesis to Revelation—including the Historical Connection between the Old and New Testaments. Told in Simple Language. Large Post 8vo, with Maps and over 250 Engravings (many of them Full-page, after the Drawings of Professor CARL SCHÖNHERR and others), illustrative of the Bible Narrative, and of Eastern Manners and Customs. *Now Ready. Second Thousand.*

Home and School Edition, cloth elegant, . . . . .	6 0
Prize and Presentation Edition, beautifully gilt, . . . . .	7 6

### OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A book which, once taken up, is not easily laid down. When the volume is opened, we are fairly caught. Not to speak of the well-executed wood engravings, which will each tell its story, we find a simple version of the main portions of the Bible, all that may most profitably be included in a work intended at once to instruct and charm the young—a version couched in the simplest, purest, most idiomatic English, and executed throughout with good taste, and in the most reverential spirit. *The work needs only to be known to make its way into families*, and it will (at any rate, it ought to) become a favourite Manual in Sunday Schools."—*Scotsman*.

"A HOUSEHOLD TREASURE."—*Western Morning News*.

"This attractive and handsome volume . . . written in a simple and transparent style. . . . Mr. Foster's explanations and comments are MODELS OF TEACHING."—*Freeman*.

"This large and handsome volume, abounding in Illustrations, is just what is wanted. . . . The STORY is very beautifully and reverently told."—*Glasgow News*.

"There could be few better Presentation Books than this handsome volume."—*Daily Review*.

"This elegant volume will prove a valuable adjunct in the Home Circle and Sunday Class."—*Western Daily Mercury*.

"WILL ACCOMPLISH A GOOD WORK."—*Sunday School Chronicle*.

"In this beautiful volume no more of comment is indulged in than is necessary to the elucidation of the text. Everything approaching Sectarian narrowness is carefully eschewed."—*Methodist Magazine*.

"This simple and impressive Narrative . . . succeeds thoroughly in rivetting the attention of children; . . . admirably adapted for reading in the Home Circle."—*Daily Chronicle*.

"The HISTORICAL SKETCH connecting the Old and New Testaments is a very good idea; it is a common fault to look on these as distinct histories, instead of as parts of one grand whole."—*Christian*.

"Sunday School Teachers and Heads of Families will best know how to value this handsome volume."—*Northern Whig*.

## KITTO (John, D.D., F.S.A.) : THE HOLY

LAND : The Mountains, Valleys, and Rivers of the Holy Land; being the Physical Geography of Palestine. With eight full-page Illustrations. *Eleventh Thousand. New Edition.* Fcap. 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

\* \* Contains within a small compass a body of most interesting and valuable information.

## THE PICTORIAL SUNDAY BOOK :

Containing nearly two thousand Illustrations on Steel and Wood, and a Series of Maps. *Seventy-third Thousand.* Folio. Cloth, gilt, . . . . .

## PALEY (Archdeacon): NATURAL THEOLOGY.

The Evidences of the Existence and the Attributes of the Deity. With Illustrative Notes and Dissertations, by HENRY, Lord BROUGHAM, and Sir CHARLES BELL. Many Engravings. One vol., 16mo. Cloth, . . . . .

s. d.

4 0

— With Lord BROUGHAM'S NOTES AND DIALOGUES ON INSTINCT. Many Illustrations. Three vols., 16mo. Cloth, . . . . .

7 6

"When Lord Brougham's eloquence in the Senate shall have passed away, and his services as a statesman shall exist only in the free institutions which they have helped to secure, his discourse on Natural Theology will continue to inculcate imperishable truths, and fit the mind for the higher revelations which these truths are destined to foreshadow and confirm."—*Edinburgh Review*.

## RAGG (Rev. Thomas): CREATION'S TESTI-

MONEY TO ITS GOD: the Accordance of Science, Philosophy, and Revelation. *Thirteenth Edition*. Large crown 8vo. Handsome cloth, bevelled boards, . . . . .

5 0

"We are not a little pleased again to meet with the author of this volume in the new edition of his far-famed work. Mr. Ragg is one of the few original writers of our time to whom justice is being done."—*British Standard*.

\*.\* This work has been pronounced "The Book of the Age," "The best popular Text-Book of the Sciences," and "The only complete Manual of Religious Evidence, Natural and Revealed."

## RELIGIONS OF THE WORLD (The): Being

Confessions of Faith contributed by Eminent Members of every Denomination of Christians, also of Mahometanism, Parseeism, Brahminism, Mormonism, &c., &c., with a Harmony of the Christian Confessions of Faith by a Member of the Evangelical Alliance. Crown 8vo. Cloth bevelled, . . . . .

3 6

\*.\* In this volume, each denomination, through some leading member, has expressed its own opinions. There is no book in the language on the same plan. All other works on the subject, being written by one individual, are necessarily one-sided, incomplete, and unauthentic.

SOUTHGATE (Henry): SUGGESTIVE  
THOUGHTS ON RELIGIOUS SUBJECTS. (See page 31.)SOUTHGATE (Mrs. Henry): THE CHRIS-  
TIAN LIFE: Thoughts in Prose and Verse from the Best Writers  
of all Ages. Selected and Arranged for Every Day in the Year. Small  
8vo. Cloth Elegant. (*Nearly Ready*).

## WORDS AND WORKS OF OUR BLESSED

LORD: and their Lessons for Daily Life. Two Vols. in One. Foolscap, 8vo. Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

6 0

## SCIENTIFIC WORKS.

## MEDICAL WORKS

By WILLIAM AITKEN, M.D., Edin., F.R.S.,

PROFESSOR OF PATHOLOGY IN THE ARMY MEDICAL SCHOOL; EXAMINER IN MEDICINE FOR THE MILITARY MEDICAL SERVICES OF THE QUEEN; FELLOW OF THE SANITARY INSTITUTE OF GREAT BRITAIN; CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE ROYAL IMPERIAL SOCIETY OF PHYSICIANS OF VIENNA; AND OF THE SOCIETY OF MEDICINE AND NATURAL HISTORY OF DRESDEN.

*Now Ready. Seventh Edition.*

## \*The SCIENCE and PRACTICE of MEDICINE.

In Two Volumes, Royal 8vo., cloth. Illustrated by numerous Engravings on Wood, and a Map of the Geographical Distribution of Diseases. To a great extent Rewritten; Enlarged, Remodelled, and Carefully Revised throughout, . . . . .

s. d.

42 0

*In reference to the Seventh Edition of this important Work, the Publishers would only remark, that no labour or expense has been spared to sustain its well-known reputation as "The Representative Book of the Medical Science and Practice of the Day." Among the More Important Features of the New Edition, the subject of DISEASES OF THE BRAIN AND NERVOUS SYSTEM may be specially mentioned.*

## Opinions of the Press.

"The work is an admirable one, and adapted to the requirements of the Student, Professor, and Practitioner of Medicine. . . . The reader will find a large amount of information not to be met with in other books, epitomised for him in this. We know of no work that contains so much, or such full and varied information on all subjects connected with the Science and Practice of Medicine."—*Lancet*.

"Excellent from the beginning, and improved in each successive issue, Dr. Aitken's GREAT AND STANDARD WORK has now, with vast and judicious labour, been brought abreast of every recent advance in scientific medicine and the healing art, and affords to the Student and Practitioner a store of knowledge and guidance of altogether inestimable value. . . . The first 530 Pages of the Second Volume would, if printed separately, form perhaps the best text-book in our language for the student of Neurology and Insanity. A masterly and philosophical review, characterised by the precision of the specialist, and the breadth of the catholic physician, is presented in these pages of the varied phenomena connected with morbid conditions of the nervous system in their relations to anatomical structure, chemical composition, physiological uses, and pathological changes. . . . A classical work which does honour to British Medicine, and is a compendium of sound knowledge."—*Extract from Review in "Brain," by J. Crichton-Browne, M.D., F.R.S., Lord Chancellor's Visitor in Lunacy.*

"The SEVENTH EDITION of this important Text-Book fully maintains its reputation. . . . Dr. Aitken is indefatigable in his efforts. . . . The section on DISEASES of the BRAIN AND NERVOUS SYSTEM is completely remodelled, so as to include all the most recent researches, which in this department have been not less important than they are numerous."—*British Medical Journal*.

"The STANDARD TEXT-BOOK in the English Language. . . . There is, perhaps, no work more indispensable for the Practitioner and Student."—*Edin. Medical Journal*.  
 "In its system, in its scope, and in its method of dealing with the subjects treated of, this work differs from all other Text-Books on the Science of Medicine in the English language."—*Medical Times and Gazette*.

"The extraordinary merit of Dr. Aitken's work. . . . The author has unquestionably performed a service to the profession of the most valuable kind."—*Practitioner*.  
 "Altogether this voluminous treatise is a credit to its Author, its Publisher, and to English Physic. . . . Affords an admirable and honest digest of the opinions and practice of the day. . . . Commends itself to us for sterling value, width of retrospect, and fairness of representation."—*Medico-Chirurgical Review*.

"Diseases are here described which have hitherto found no place in any English systematic work."—*Westminster Review*.  
 "We can say with perfect confidence, that no medical man in India should be without Dr. Aitken's 'Science and Practice of Medicine.' The article on Cholera is by far the most complete, judicious, and learned summary of our knowledge respecting this disease which has yet appeared."—*Indian Medical Gazette*.



PROF. AITKEN'S WORKS.—(*Continued.*)

\* ——— **OUTLINES OF THE SCIENCE AND PRACTICE OF MEDICINE.** A Text-Book for Students. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo, . . . . .

"Students preparing for examinations will hail it as a perfect godsend for its conciseness."—*Athenæum*.

"Well-digested, clear, and well-written, the work of a man conversant with every detail of his subject, and a thorough master of the art of teaching."—*British Medical Journal*.

"In respect of both the matter contained, and the manner in which it is conveyed, our examination has convinced us that nothing could be better . . . . We know of no summary of the use of Electricity as a means of diagnosis, equal to that contained in the Section on Diseases of the Nervous System."—*Medico-Chirurgical Review*.

\* ——— **THE GROWTH OF THE RECRUIT,** and the Young Soldier, with a view to the Selection of "Growing Lads" and their Training, . . . . .

**ANSTED (Prof., M.A., F.R.S.): NATURAL HISTORY OF THE INANIMATE CREATION,** recorded in the Structure of the Earth, the Plants of the Field, and the Atmospheric Phenomena. With numerous Illustrations. Large post 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

**BAIRD (W., M.D., F.L.S., late of the Brit. Mus.):**

**THE STUDENT'S NATURAL HISTORY;** a Dictionary of the Natural Sciences: Botany, Conchology, Entomology, Geology, Mineralogy, Palæontology, and Zoology. With a Zoological Chart, and over 250 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. Cloth gilt, . . . . .

"The work is a very useful one, and will contribute, by its cheapness and comprehensiveness, to foster the extending taste for Natural Science."—*Westminster Review*.

**BROWNE (Walter R., M.A., M. Inst. C.E., M. Inst. M.E., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge):**

\* **THE STUDENT'S MECHANICS:** An Introduction to the Study of Force and Motion. With Diagrams. Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

**Contents.**

I. FIRST PRINCIPLES.  
II. STATICS.  
III. KINEMATICS.

IV. DYNAMICS.  
V. AXIOMS, DEFINITIONS, AND LAWS.  
VI. EXAMPLES WORKED & UNWORKED.

"Clear in style and practical in method, "THE STUDENT'S MECHANICS," is cordially to be recommended from all points of view. . . . Will be of great value to Students desirous to gain full knowledge."—*Athenæum*.

"The merits of the work are especially conspicuous in its clearness and brevity . . . . deserves the attention of all who have to teach or learn the elements of Mechanics . . . . An excellent conception."—*Westminster Review*.

\* ——— **FOUNDATIONS OF MECHANICS.**

Papers reprinted from the *Engineer*. In crown 8vo, . . . . .

WORKS by A. WYNTER BLYTH, M.R.C.S., F.C.S.,  
Public Analyst for the County of Devon, and Medical Officer of Health for  
St. Marylebone.

\* **HYGIÈNE AND PUBLIC HEALTH** (a Dictionary of) : embracing the following subjects :—

- I.—**SANITARY CHEMISTRY** : the Composition and Dietetic Value of Foods, with the Detection of Adulterations.
  - II.—**SANITARY ENGINEERING** : Sewage, Drainage, Storage of Water, Ventilation, Warming, &c.
  - III.—**SANITARY LEGISLATION** : the whole of the **PUBLIC HEALTH ACT**, together with portions of other Sanitary Statutes (without alteration or abridgment, save in a few unimportant instances), in a form admitting of easy and rapid Reference.
  - IV.—**EPIDEMIC AND EPIZOOTIC DISEASES** : their History and Propagation, with the Measures for Disinfection.
  - V.—**HYGIÈNE—MILITARY, NAVAL, PRIVATE, PUBLIC, SCHOOL.**
- Royal 8vo, 672 pp., cloth, with Map and 140 Illustrations, . . . . . 28 0

**Opinions of the Press.**

"Excellently done . . . the articles are brief, but comprehensive. We have tested the book, and can therefore recommend Mr. Blyth's Dictionary with confidence."—*Westminster Review*.

"A very important Treatise . . . an examination of its contents satisfies us that it is a work which should be highly appreciated."—*Medico-Chirurgical Review*.

"A work that must have entailed a vast amount of labour and research. . . . Will become a STANDARD WORK in HYGIENE AND PUBLIC HEALTH."—*Medical Times and Gazette*.

"Contains a great mass of information of easy reference."—*Sanitary Record*.

**RE-ISSUE OF BLYTH'S "PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY."**

In 2 Vols. Crown 8vo.

\* Vol. I.—**FOODS : THEIR COMPOSITION AND ANALYSIS.**  
(Ready), . . . . . 16 0

**General Contents.**

History of Adulteration—Legislation, Past and Present—Apparatus useful to the Food Analyst—"Ash"—Sugar—Confectionery—Honey—Treacle—Jams and Preserved Fruits—Starches—Wheaten Flour—Bread—Oats—Barley—Rye—Rice—Maize—Millet—Potato—Peas—Chinese Peas—Lentils—Beans—MILK—Cream—Butter—Cheese—Tea—Coffee—Cocoa and Chocolate—Alcohol—Brandy—Rum—Whisky—Gin—Arrack—Liqueurs—Beer—Wine—Vinegar—Lemon and Lime Juice—Mustard—Pepper—Sweet and Bitter Almond—Annatto—Olive Oil—Water. *Appendix* : Text of English and American Adulteration Acts.

In Crown 8vo., cloth, with Elaborate Tables, Folding Litho-Plate, and Photographic Frontispiece.

\* Vol. II.—**POISONS : THEIR EFFECTS AND DETECTION.**  
(Nearly ready).

**General Contents.**

Historical Introduction—Statistics—General Methods of Procedure—Life Tests—Special Apparatus—Classification : I.—**ORGANIC POISONS** : (a.) Sulphuric, Hydrochloric, and Nitric Acids, Potash, Soda, Ammonia, &c. ; (b.) Petroleum, Benzene, Camphor, Alcohols, Chloroform, Carbolic Acid, Prussic Acid, Phosphorus, &c. ; (c.) Hemlock, Nicotine, Opium, Strychnine, Aconite, Atropine, Digitalis, &c. ; (d.) Poisons derived from Animal Substances ; (e.) The Oxalic Acid Group. II.—**INORGANIC POISONS** : Arsenic, Antimony, Lead, Copper, Bismuth, Silver, Mercury, Zinc, Nickel Iron, Chromium, Alkaline Earths, &c. *Appendix* : Examination of Blood and Blood-Spots.

"Will be used by every Analyst."—*Lancet*.

"Full of great interest . . . The method of treatment excellent . . . Gives just that amount of information which those able to appreciate it will desire."—*Westminster Review*.

"STANDS UNRIVALLED for completeness of information . . . A really 'practical' work for the guidance of practical men."—*Sanitary Record*.

"The whole work is full of useful practical information."—*Chemical News*.

## THE CIRCLE OF THE SCIENCES: A

s. d.

SERIES OF POPULAR TREATISES ON THE NATURAL AND PHYSICAL SCIENCES, AND THEIR APPLICATIONS, by Professors OWEN, ANSTED, YOUNG, and TENNANT; Drs. LATHAM, EDWARD SMITH, SCOFFERN, BUSHNAN, and BRONNER; Messrs. MITCHELL, TWISDEN, DALLAS, GORE, IMRAY, MARTIN, SPARLING, and others. Complete in nine volumes, illustrated with many thousand Engravings on Wood. Crown 8vo. Cloth lettered. Each vol., . . .

5 0

- VOL. 1.—ORGANIC NATURE.—Part I. Animal and Vegetable Physiology: the Skeleton and the Teeth; Varieties of the Human Race.
- VOL. 2.—ORGANIC NATURE.—Part II. Structural and Systematic Botany—Invertebrated Animals.
- VOL. 3.—ORGANIC NATURE.—Part III. Vertebrated Animals.
- VOL. 4.—INORGANIC NATURE.—Geology and Physical Geography; Crystallography Mineralogy; Meteorology, and Atmospheric Phenomena.
- VOL. 5.—NAVIGATION; PRACTICAL AND NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY.
- VOL. 6.—ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY.
- VOL. 7.—PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.—Electro-Metallurgy; Photography; Chemistry of Food; and Artificial Light.
- VOL. 8.—MATHEMATICAL SCIENCE.—Arithmetic; Algebra; Plane Geometry; Logarithms; Plane and Spherical Trigonometry; Mensuration and Practical Geometry, with use of Instruments.
- VOL. 9.—MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY.—Statics; Dynamics; Hydrostatics; Pneumatics; Practical Mechanics; and the Steam Engine.

## IN SEPARATE TREATISES. Cloth.

1. ANSTED's Geology and Physical Geography, . . . . .	2	6
2. BREEM's Practical Astronomy, . . . . .	2	6
3. BRONNER and SCOFFERN's Chemistry of Food and Diet, . . . . .	1	6
4. BUSHNAN's Physiology of Animal and Vegetable Life, . . . . .	1	6
5. GORE's Theory and Practice of Electro-Deposition, . . . . .	1	6
6. IMRAY's Practical Mechanics, . . . . .	1	6
7. JARDINE's Practical Geometry, . . . . .	1	0
8. LATHAM's Varieties of the Human Species, . . . . .	1	6
9. MITCHELL and TENNANT's Crystallography and Mineralogy, . . . . .	3	0
10. MITCHELL's Properties of Matter and Elementary Statics, . . . . .	1	6
11. OWEN's Principal Forms of the Skeleton and the Teeth, . . . . .	1	6
12. SCOFFERN's Chemistry of Heat, Light, and Electricity, . . . . .	3	0
13. SCOFFERN's Chemistry of the Inorganic Bodies, . . . . .	3	0
14. SCOFFERN's Chemistry of Artificial Light, . . . . .	1	6
15. SCOFFERN and LOWE's Practical Meteorology, . . . . .	1	6
16. SMITH's Introduction to Botany: Structural and Systematic, . . . . .	2	0
17. TWISDEN's Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, . . . . .	1	6
18. TWISDEN on Logarithms, . . . . .	1	0
19. YOUNG's Elements of Algebra, . . . . .	1	0
20. YOUNG's Solutions of Questions in Algebra, . . . . .	1	0
21. YOUNG's Navigation and Nautical Astronomy, . . . . .	2	6
22. YOUNG's Plane Geometry, . . . . .	1	6
23. YOUNG's Simple Arithmetic, . . . . .	1	0
24. YOUNG's Elementary Dynamics, . . . . .	1	6

## DALLAS (W. S., F.L.S.):

A POPULAR HISTORY OF THE ANIMAL CREATION: The Habits, Structure, and Classification of Animals. With coloured Frontispiece and many hundred Illustrations. *New Edition*. Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

s. d.

8 6

DOUGLAS (John Christie, Mem. Soc. Tel. Eng.,  
East India Govt. Telegraph Department, &c.):

\* A MANUAL OF TELEGRAPH CONSTRUCTION. For the use of Telegraph Engineers and others. With numerous Diagrams. Crown 8vo. Cloth, bevelled, . . . . .

15 0

\* \* *Second Edition. Published with the approval of the Director-General of Telegraphs in India.*

## GENERAL CONTENTS.

PART I.—GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF STRENGTH AND STABILITY: with the Strength of Materials.

PART II.—PROPERTIES AND APPLICATIONS OF MATERIALS, WITH SPECIFICATIONS.

PART III.—TELEGRAPH CONSTRUCTION, MAINTENANCE, AND ORGANISATION, treating of the Application of the Information conveyed in Parts I. and II. to the case of Combined Structures; including the Construction of Overground, Subterranean, and Subaqueous Lines; Office Fittings; Estimating; Organisation, &c.

"Mr. Douglas deserves the thanks of Telegraphic Engineers for the excellent 'Manual' now before us . . . he has ably supplied an existing want . . . the subject is treated with great clearness and judgment . . . good practical information, given in a clear, terse style."—*Engineering*.

"The amount of information given is such as to render this volume a most useful guide to any one who may be engaged in any branch of Electric Telegraph Engineering."—*Athenæum*.

"Calculated to be of great service to Telegraphic Engineers."—*Iron*.

DUPRÉ (Alphonse, Ph. D., F.R.S., Prof. of  
Chemistry at the Westminster Hospital) and HAKE (H. W., Ph. D.,  
F.C.S., of Queenwood College):

\* A MANUAL OF CHEMISTRY, Organic and Inorganic, for the use of Students. (*In preparation*).

## GRIFFIN (John Joseph, F.C.S.):

\* CHEMICAL RECREATIONS: A Popular Manual of Experimental Chemistry. With 540 Engravings of Apparatus. *Tenth Edition*. Crown 4to. Cloth.

Part I.—Elementary Chemistry, . . . . .

2 0

Part II.—The Chemistry of the Non-Metallic Elements, including a Comprehensive Course of Class Experiments, . . . . .

10 6

Or, complete in one volume, cloth, gilt top, . . . . .

12 6



## GURDEN (Richard Lloyd, Authorised Surveyor for the Governments of New South Wales and Victoria):

s. d.

\* TRAVERSE TABLES: computed to Four Places Decimals for every Minute of Angle up to 100 of Distance. For the use of Surveyors and Engineers. In folio, strongly half-bound, . . . . . 30 0

\* \* *Published with Concurrence of the Surveyors-General for New South Wales and Victoria.*

"Mr. GURDEN is to be thanked for the extraordinary labour which he has bestowed on facilitating the work of the Surveyor. . . . An almost unexampled instance of professional and literary industry."—*Athenæum*.

"Those who have experience in exact SURVEY-WORK will best know how to appreciate the enormous amount of labour represented by this valuable book. The computations enable the user to ascertain the sines and cosines for a distance of twelve miles to within half an inch, and this BY REFERENCE TO BUT ONE TABLE, in place of the usual Fifteen minute computations required. This alone is evidence of the assistance which the Tables ensure to every user, and as every Surveyor in active practice has felt the want of such assistance, few knowing of their publication will remain without them."—*Engineer*.

"We cannot sufficiently admire the heroic patience of the author, who, in order to prevent error, calculated each result by two different modes, and, before the work was finally placed in the Printers' hands, repeated the operation for a third time, on revising the proofs."—*Engineering*.

"Up to the present time, no Tables for the use of Surveyors have been prepared which, in minuteness of detail, can be compared with those compiled by Mr Gurden. . . . With the aid of this book, *the toil of calculation is reduced to a minimum*; and not only is time saved, but the risk of error is avoided. Mr. Gurden's book has but to be known, and no Engineer's or Architect's office will be without a copy."—*Architect*.

"A valuable acquisition to those employed in extensive surveys."—*Building News*.

"These Tables are Characterised by ABSOLUTE SIMPLICITY; the saving of time effected by their use is most material. . . . Every one connected with Engineering or Survey should be made aware of the existence of this elaborate and useful set of Tables."—*Builder*.

## JAMIESON (Andrew, C.E., F.R.S.E.):

\* STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE (A Manual of) for the use Students preparing for Government and other Competitive Examinations. With Numerous Diagrams. Crown 8vo. (*In preparation*).

## JAMIESON (Andrew, C.E.), and MUNRO (John, C.E.):

\* A POCKET-BOOK OF ELECTRICAL RULES AND TABLES. —(*See Munro, John.*)

## LEARED (Arthur, M.D., F.R.C.P., late Senior Physician to the Great Northern Hospital):

\* IMPERFECT DIGESTION: Its Causes and Treatment. Post 8vo. *Seventh Edition*. Cloth, . . . . . 4 6

"It now constitutes about the best work on the subject."—*Lancet*.

"Dr. Leared has treated a most important subject in a practical spirit and popular manner."—*Medical Times and Gazette*.

LINN (S.H., M.D., D.D.S., Dentist to the Imperial Medico-Chirurgical Academy of St. Petersburg):

THE TEETH: How to preserve them and prevent their Decay. A Popular Treatise on the Diseases and the Care of the Teeth. With Plates and Diagrams. Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . . 2 6

"Everyone who values his teeth—and who does not?—should study this practical little book."

"Many important truths on the preservation of the teeth and the irregularity of children's teeth are here set forth; and on the subject of artificial teeth there is sound advice, which most of us may sooner or later be glad of."—*Medical Times and Gazette*.

"Contains much useful information and excellent advice."—*Leeds Mercury*.

"Deserves to be widely read."—*Northern Whig*.

"We heartily recommend the treatise."—*John Bull*.

LONGMORE (Surgeon-General, C.B., Q.H.S., F.R.C.S., &c., Professor of Military Surgery in the Army Medical School):

\* THE SANITARY CONTRASTS OF THE CRIMEAN WAR. Demy 8vo. Cloth limp, . . . . . 1 6

"A most valuable contribution to Military Medicine."—*British Medical Journal*.

"A most concise and interesting Review."—*Lancet*.

M'NAB (W. Ramsay, M.D., F.L.S., Professor of Botany at the Royal College of Science, Dublin):

\* A MANUAL OF BOTANY, Structural and Systematic, for the use of Students. (*In preparation*).

MOFFITT (Staff-Assistant-Surgeon A., late of the Royal Victoria Hospital, Netley):

\* A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR ATTENDANTS ON THE SICK AND WOUNDED IN WAR. With numerous Illustrations. Post 8vo. Cloth, . . . . . 5 0

\* \* *Published under the sanction of the National Society for Aid to the Sick and Wounded in War.*

"A work by a practical and experienced author. After an explicit chapter on the Anatomy of the Human Body, directions are given concerning bandaging, dressing of sores, wounds, &c., assistance to wounded on field of action, stretchers, mule litters, ambulance, transport, &c. All Dr. Moffitt's instructions are assisted by well-executed illustrations."—*Public Opinion*.

MUNRO (John, C. E.) and JAMIESON (Andrew, C.E., F.R.S.E.):

\* A POCKET-BOOK OF ELECTRICAL RULES AND TABLES, for the use of Electricians and Engineers. Royal 32mo. (*At press*).

## NAPIER (James, F.R.S.E., F.C.S.):

\* A MANUAL OF THE ART OF DYEING AND DYEING RECEIPTS. Illustrated by Diagrams and Numerous Specimens of Dyed Cotton, Silk, and Woollen Fabrics. Demy 8vo. *Third Edition, thoroughly revised and greatly enlarged.* Cloth, . . . . .

s. d.

21 0

### General Contents.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. HEAT AND LIGHT.   | IV. VEGETABLE MATTERS in use in the Dye-house. |
| II. A CONCISE SYSTEM OF CHEMISTRY, with special reference to Dyeing. | V. ANIMAL DYES.                                |
| III. MORDANTS AND ALTERANTS.   | VI. COAL-TAR COLOURS.                          |

#### APPENDIX—RECEIPTS FOR MANIPULATION.

"The numerous Dyeing Receipts and the Chemical Information furnished will be exceedingly valuable to the Practical Dyer. . . . A Manual of necessary reference to all those who wish to master their trade, and keep pace with the scientific discoveries of the time."—*Journal of Applied Science*.

"In this work Mr. Napier has done good service . . . being a Practical Dyer himself, he knows the wants of his *Confrères* . . . the Article on Water is a very valuable one to the Practical Dyer, enabling him readily to detect impurities, and correct their action. The Article on Indigo is very exhaustive . . . the Dyeing Receipts are very numerous, and well illustrated."—*Textile Manufacturer*.

## \* ——— A MANUAL OF ELECTRO-METALLURGY. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Cloth. *Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged,* . . . . .

7 6

### General Contents.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. HISTORY of the ART.  | VI. DEPOSITION of METALS upon one another.                                 |
| II. DESCRIPTION of GALVANIC BATTERIES and their RESPECTIVE PECULIARITIES. | VII. ELECTRO-PLATING.  |
| III. ELECTROTYPE PROCESSES.   | VIII. ELECTRO-GILDING.   |
| IV. BRONZING.   | IX. RESULTS of EXPERIMENTS on the DEPOSITIONS of other METALS as COATINGS. |
| V. MISCELLANEOUS APPLICATIONS of the PROCESS of COATING with COPPER.      | X. THEORETICAL OBSERVATIONS.   |

"A work that has become an established authority on Electro-Metallurgy, an art which has been of immense use to the Manufacturer in *economising the quantity of the precious metals absorbed, and in extending the sale of Art Manufactures.* . . . We can heartily commend the work as a valuable handbook on the subject on which it treats."—*Journal of Applied Science*.

"The fact of Mr. Napier's Treatise having reached a FIFTH EDITION is good evidence of an appreciation of the Author's mode of treating his subject. . . . A very useful and practical little Manual."—*Iron*.

"The Fifth Edition has all the advantages of a new work, and of a proved and tried friend. Mr. Napier is well known for the carefulness and accuracy with which he writes. . . . There is a thoroughness in the handling of the subject which is far from general in these days. . . . The work is one of those which, besides supplying first-class information, are calculated to inspire invention."—*Jeweller and Watchmaker*.

## PHILLIPS (John, M.A., F.R.S., late Professor of Geology in the University of Oxford):

\* A MANUAL OF GEOLOGY : Theoretical and Practical. Edited by ROBERT ETHERIDGE, F.R.S., Palaeontologist to the Geological Survey of Great Britain, Past-President of the Geological Society; and HARRY GOVIER SEELEY, F.R.S., Professor of Geography in King's College, London. With numerous Tables, Sections, and Figures of Characteristic Fossils. *In Preparation.* Demy 8vo, *Third Edition: Thoroughly Revised and Augmented.*

PHILLIPS (J. Arthur, M. Inst. C.E., F.C.S., F.G.S.,  
Ancien Elève de l'Ecole des Mines, Paris) :

\* ELEMENTS OF METALLURGY : a Practical Treatise on the Art of Extracting Metals from their Ores. With over 200 Illustrations, many of which have been reduced from Working Drawings. Royal 8vo., 764 pages, cloth, . . . . . 34 0

### General Contents.

- I.—A TREATISE ON FUELS and REFRACTORY MATERIALS.
- II.—A Description of the principal METALLIFEROUS MINERALS, with their DISTRIBUTION.
- III.—STATISTICS of the amount of each METAL annually produced throughout the World, obtained from official sources, or, where this has not been practicable, from authentic private information.
- IV.—The METHODS of ASSAYING the different ORES, together with the PROCESSES of METALLURGICAL TREATMENT, comprising :

Refractory Materials.	Antimony.	Iron.
Fire-Clays.	Arsenic.	Cobalt.
Fuels, &c.	Zinc.	Nickel.
Aluminium.	Mercury.	Silver.
Copper.	Bismuth.	Gold.
Tin.	Lead.	Platinum.

" 'Elements of Metallurgy' possesses intrinsic merits of the highest degree. Such a work is precisely wanted by the great majority of students and practical workers, and its very compactness is in itself a first-rate recommendation. . . . In our opinion, the BEST WORK EVER WRITTEN ON THE SUBJECT with a view to its practical treatment."—*Westminster Review*.

"In this most useful and handsome volume, Mr. Phillips has condensed a large amount of valuable practical knowledge. . . . We have not only the results of scientific inquiry most cautiously set forth, but the experiences of a thoroughly practical man very clearly given."—*Athenæum*.

"For twenty years the learned author, who might well have retired with honour on account of his acknowledged success and high character as an authority in Metallurgy, has been making notes, both as a Mining Engineer and a practical Metallurgist, and devoting the most valuable portion of his time to the accumulation of materials for this his Masterpiece."—*Colliery Guardian*.

"THE VALUE OF THIS WORK IS ALMOST INESTIMABLE. There can be no question that the amount of time and labour bestowed upon it is enormous. . . . There is certainly no Metallurgical Treatise in the language calculated to prove of such general utility to the Student really seeking sound practical information upon the subject, and none which gives greater evidence of the extensive metallurgical knowledge of its Author."—*Mining Journal*.

PORTER (Surgeon-Major J. H., Late Assistant  
Professor of Military Surgery in the Army Medical School, and Hon.  
Assoc. of the Order of St. John of Jerusalem) :

\* THE SURGEON'S POCKET-BOOK : an Essay on the Best Treatment of the Wounded in War ; for which a Prize was awarded by Her Majesty the Empress of Germany. Specially adapted to the PUBLIC MEDICAL SERVICES. With 152 Illustrations, 16mo, roan. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged*, . . . . . 7 6

"Every Medical Officer is recommended to have the 'Surgeon's Pocket Book' by Surgeon-Major Porter, accessible to refresh his memory and fortify his judgment." *Précis of Field-Service Medical Arrangements for Afghan War*.

"A complete *vade mecum* to guide the military surgeon in the field."—*British Medical Journal*.

"A capital little book . . . of the greatest practical value. . . . A surgeon with this Manual in his pocket becomes a man of resource at once."—*Westminster Review*.

"So fully illustrated that for LAY-READERS and AMBULANCE WORK it will prove eminently useful."—*Medical Times and Gazette*.



## SCIENTIFIC MANUALS

BY

W. J. MACQUORN RANKINE, C.E., LL.D., F.R.S.,

Late Regius Professor of Civil Engineering in the University of Glasgow.

In Crown 8vo. Cloth.

- \*I. RANKINE (Prof.): APPLIED MECHANICS: s. d.  
comprising the Principles of Statics and Cinematics, and Theory of Structures, Mechanism, and Machines. With numerous Diagrams. *Tenth Edition*, 12 6  
"Cannot fail to be adopted as a text-book. . . . The whole of the information is so admirably arranged that there is every facility for reference."—*Mining Journal*.
- \*II. RANKINE (Prof.): CIVIL ENGINEERING: 16 0  
comprising Engineering Surveys, Earthwork, Foundations, Masonry, Carpentry, Metal-work, Roads, Railways, Canals, Rivers, Water-works, Harbours, &c. With numerous Tables and Illustrations. *Fourteenth Edition*,  
"Far surpasses in merit every existing work of the kind. As a manual for the hands of the professional Civil Engineer it is sufficient and unrivalled, and even when we say this, we fall short of that high appreciation of Dr. Rankine's labours which we should like to express."—*The Engineer*.
- \*III. RANKINE (Prof.): MACHINERY AND MILLWORK: 12 6  
comprising the Geometry, Motions, Work, Strength, Construction, and Objects of Machines, &c. Illustrated with nearly 300 Woodcuts. *Fifth Edition*,  
"Professor Rankine's 'Manual of Machinery and Millwork' fully maintains the high reputation which he enjoys as a scientific author; higher praise it is difficult to award to any book. It cannot fail to be a lantern to the feet of every engineer."—*The Engineer*.
- \*IV. RANKINE (Prof.): THE STEAM ENGINE and OTHER PRIME MOVERS. 12 6  
With Diagram of the Mechanical Properties of Steam, Folding Plate, numerous Tables and Illustrations. *Tenth Edition*,
- \*V. RANKINE (Prof.): USEFUL RULES and TABLES 10 6  
for Engineers and others. With Appendix: TABLES, TESTS, and FORMULÆ for the use of ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS; comprising Submarine Electrical Engineering, Electric Lighting, and Transmission of Power. By ANDREW JAMIESON, C.E., F.R.S.E. *Sixth Edition*,  
"Undoubtedly the most useful collection of engineering data hitherto produced."—*Mining Journal*.  
"Every Electrician will consult it with profit."—*Engineering*.
- \*VI. RANKINE (Prof.): A MECHANICAL TEXT-BOOK. 9 0  
by Prof. MACQUORN RANKINE and E. F. BAMBER, C.E. With numerous Illustrations. *Second Edition*,  
"The work, as a whole, is very complete, and likely to prove invaluable for furnishing a useful and reliable outline of the subjects treated of."—*Mining Journal*.
- \* THE MECHANICAL TEXT-BOOK forms a simple introduction to PROFESSOR RANKINE'S SERIES of MANUALS on ENGINEERING and MECHANICS.

PROF. RANKINE'S WORKS—(*continued*).

\*VII. RANKINE (Prof.): MISCELLANEOUS SCIENTIFIC PAPERS, from the Transactions and Proceedings of the Royal and other Scientific and Philosophical Societies, and the Scientific Journals. Royal 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

PART I.—Papers relating to Temperature, Elasticity, and Expansion of Vapours, Liquids, and Solids.

PART II.—Papers on Energy and its Transformations.

PART III.—Papers on Wave-Forms, Propulsion of Vessels, &c.

With Memoir by P. G. TAIT, M.A., Prof. of Natural Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh. Edited by W. J. MILLAR, C.E., Secretary to the Institute of Engineers and Shipbuilders in Scotland. With fine Portrait on Steel, Plates, and Diagrams.

"No more enduring Memorial of Professor Rankine could be devised than the publication of these papers in an accessible form. . . . The Collection is most valuable on account of the nature of his discoveries, and the beauty and completeness of his analysis. . . . The Volume exceeds in importance any work in the same department published in our time."—*Architect*.

SEATON (A. E., Lecturer on Marine Engineering to the Royal Naval College, Greenwich, and Member of the Institute of Naval Architects):

\*A MANUAL OF MARINE ENGINEERING; Comprising the Designing, Construction, and Working of Marine Machinery. With numerous Illustrations. *Second Edition*. Demy 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

This Work has been prepared to supply the existing want of a Text-Book showing the application of Theoretical Principles to the DESIGN and CONSTRUCTION of MARINE MACHINERY—as determined by the experience of leading Engineers, and carried out in the most recent successful practice. It is intended for use by Draughtsmen and practical Engineers, as well as by Instructors and Students in Marine Engineering, and is fully illustrated.

GENERAL CONTENTS.

I. PRINCIPLES OF MARINE PROPULSION.	III. DETAILS OF MARINE ENGINES
II. PRINCIPLES OF STEAM ENGINEERING.	IV. PROPELLERS.
	V. BOILERS.
	VI. MISCELLANEOUS.

Opinions of the Press.

"The important subject of Marine Engineering is here treated with the thoroughness that it requires. No department has escaped attention. . . . Gives the results of much close study and practical work."—*Engineering*.

"By far the best MANUAL in existence. . . . Gives a complete account of the methods of solving, with the utmost possible economy, the problems before the Marine Engineer."—*Athenæum*.

"In the three-fold capacity of enabling a Student to learn how to design, construct, and work a modern Marine Steam-Engine, Mr. Seaton's Manual has no rival as regards comprehensiveness of purpose and lucidity of treatment."—*Times*.

"The Student, Draughtsman, and Engineer will find this work the most valuable Handbook of Reference on the Marine Engine now in existence."—*Marine Engineer*.

SHELTON (W. Vincent, Foreman to the Imperial Ottoman Gun Factories, Constantinople) :

s. d.

\* THE MECHANIC'S GUIDE : A Hand-Book for Engineers and Artizans. With Copious Tables and Valuable Recipes for Practical Use. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

7 6

GENERAL CONTENTS.

PART I.—Arithmetic.	PART V.—Wheel and Screw Cutting.
PART II.—Geometry.	PART VI.—Miscellaneous Subjects.
PART III.—Mensuration.	PART VII.—The Steam Engine.
PART IV.—Velocities in Boring and Wheel-Gearing.	PART VIII.—The Locomotive.

"The MECHANIC'S GUIDE will answer its purpose as completely as a whole series of elaborate text-books."—*Mining Journal*.

"Ought to have a place on the bookshelf of every Mechanic."—*Iron*.

"Much instruction is here given without pedantry or pretension."—*Builder*.

"A *sine quâ non* to every practical Mechanic."—*Railway Service Gazette*.

\*\* This Work is specially intended for Self-Teachers, and places before the Reader a concise and simple explanation of General Principles, together with Illustrations of their adaptation to Practical Purposes.

THOMSON (Spencer, M.D., L.R.C.S., Edinburgh, and J. C. STEELE, M.D., of Guy's Hospital) :

A DICTIONARY OF DOMESTIC MEDICINE AND HOUSEHOLD SURGERY. Thoroughly Revised and in part Re-Written by the Editors. With a Chapter on the Management of the Sick-room, and many Hints for the Diet and Comfort of Invalids. With many new Engravings. *Eighteenth Edition*. Royal 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

10 6

WYLDE (James, formerly Lecturer on Natural Philosophy at the Polytechnic) :

THE MAGIC OF SCIENCE : A Manual of Easy and Amusing Scientific Experiments. With Steel Portrait of Faraday and many hundred Engravings. *Third Edition*. Crown 8vo. Cloth gilt and gilt edges, . . . . .

5 0

"Of priceless value to furnish work for idle hands during the holidays. A thousand mysteries of Modern Science are here unfolded. We learn how to make Oxygen Gas, how to construct a Galvanic Battery, how to gild a Medal by Electro-Plating, or to reproduce one by Electrotyping, how to make a Microscope or take a Photograph ; while the elements of Mechanics are explained so simply and clearly that the most un-mechanical of minds must understand them. Such a work is deserving of the highest praise."—*The Graphic*.

"To those who need to be allured into the paths of Natural Science by witnessing the wonderful results that can be produced by well-contrived experiments, we do not know that we could recommend a more useful volume."—*Athenæum*.

## EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

\* \* *Specimen Copies of all the Educational Works published by Messrs. Charles Griffin and Company may be seen at the Libraries of the College of Preceptors, South Kensington Museum, and Crystal Palace; also at the dépôts of the Chief Educational Societies.*

**BRYCE** (Archibald Hamilton, D.C.L., LL.D.,

Senior Classical Moderator in the University of Dublin):

\* **THE WORKS OF VIRGIL.** Text from HEYNE and WAGNER. English Notes, original, and selected from the leading German, American, and English Commentators. Illustrations from the antique. Complete in One Volume. *Fourteenth Edition.* Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . . 6 0

Or, in Three Parts:

Part I. BUCOLICS and GEORGICS, . . . . .	2 6
Part II. THE ÆNEID, Books I.-VI., . . . . .	2 6
Part III. THE ÆNEID, Books VII.-XII., . . . . .	2 6

"Contains the pith of what has been written by the best scholars on the subject. . . . The notes comprise everything that the student can want."—*Athenæum*.

"The most complete, as well as elegant and correct edition of Virgil ever published in this country."—*Educational Times*.

"The best commentary on Virgil which a student can obtain."—*Scotsman*.

**COBBETT** (William): **ENGLISH GRAMMAR,**

in a Series of Letters, intended for the use of Schools and Young Persons in general. With an additional chapter on Pronunciation, by the Author's Son, JAMES PAUL COBBETT. *The only correct and authorised Edition.* Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . . 1 6

"A new and cheapened edition of that most excellent of all English Grammars, William Cobbett's. It contains new copyright matter, as well as includes the equally amusing and instructive 'Six Lessons intended to prevent Statesmen from writing in an awkward manner.'"—*Atlas*.

**COBBETT** (William): **A FRENCH GRAMMAR.**

*Fifteenth Edition.* Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . . 3 6

"Cobbett's 'French Grammar' comes out with perennial freshness. There are few grammars equal to it for those who are learning, or desirous of learning, French without a teacher. The work is excellently arranged, and in the present edition we note certain careful and wise revisions of the text."—*School Board Chronicle*.

"Business men commencing the study of French will find this treatise one of the best aids. . . . It is largely used on the Continent."—*Midland Counties Herald*.

**COBBIN'S MANGNALL: MANGNALL'S**

**HISTORICAL AND MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS,** for the use of Young People. By RICHMAL MANGNALL. Greatly enlarged and corrected, and continued to the present time, by INGRAM COBBIN, M.A. *Fifty-fourth Thousand. New Illustrated Edition.* 12mo. Cloth, . . . . . 4 0



- \*COLERIDGE (Samuel Taylor): A DISSERTATION ON THE SCIENCE OF METHOD. (*Encyclopædia Metropolitana*.) With a Synopsis. *Ninth Edition*. Crown 8vo. Cloth,

s. d.  
2 0

## CRAIK'S ENGLISH LITERATURE.

- \*A COMPENDIOUS HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE AND OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE FROM THE NORMAN CONQUEST. With numerous Specimens. By GEORGE LILLIE CRAIK, LL.D., late Professor of History and English Literature, Queen's College, Belfast. *New Edition*. In two vols. Royal 8vo. Handsomely bound in cloth, . . . . .

25 0

### GENERAL CONTENTS.

#### INTRODUCTORY.

- I.—THE NORMAN PERIOD—The Conquest.
- II.—SECOND ENGLISH—Commonly called Semi-Saxon.
- III.—THIRD ENGLISH—Mixed, or Compound English.
- IV.—MIDDLE AND LATTER PART OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.
- V.—THE CENTURY BETWEEN THE ENGLISH REVOLUTION AND THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.
- VI.—THE LATTER PART OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.
- VII.—THE NINETEENTH CENTURY (a) THE LAST AGE OF THE GEORGES.  
(b) THE VICTORIAN AGE.

*With numerous Excerpts and Specimens of Style.*

"Anyone who will take the trouble to ascertain the fact, will find how completely even our great poets and other writers of the last generation have already faded from the view of the present, with the most numerous class of the educated and reading public. Scarcely anything is generally read except the publications of the day. YET NOTHING IS MORE CERTAIN THAN THAT NO TRUE CULTIVATION CAN BE SO ACQUIRED. This is the extreme case of that entire ignorance of history which has been affirmed, not with more point than truth, to leave a person always a child. . . . The present work combines the HISTORY OF THE LITERATURE with the HISTORY OF THE LANGUAGE. The scheme of the course and revolutions of the language which is followed here is extremely simple, and resting not upon arbitrary, but upon natural or real distinctions, gives us the only view of the subject that can claim to be regarded as of a scientific character."—*Extract from the Author's Preface.*

"Professor Craik's book going, as it does, through the whole history of the language, probably takes a place quite by itself. The great value of the book is its thorough comprehensiveness. It is always clear and straightforward, and deals not in theories but in facts."—*Saturday Review.*

"Professor Craik has succeeded in making a book more than usually agreeable."—*The Times.*

- \*CRAIK (Prof.): A MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, for the use of Colleges, Schools, and Civil Service Examinations. Selected from the larger work, by Dr. CRAIK. *Ninth Edition*. With an Additional Section on Recent Literature, by HENRY CRAIK, M.A., Author of "A Life of Swift." Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

7 6

"A Manual of English Literature from so experienced and well-read a scholar as Professor Craik needs no other recommendation than the mention of its existence."—*Spectator.*

"This augmented effort will, we doubt not, be received with decided approbation by those who are entitled to judge, and studied with much profit by those who want to learn. . . . If our young readers will give healthy perusal to Dr. Craik's work, they will greatly benefit by the wide and sound views he has placed before them."—*Athenæum.*

## WORKS BY CHARLES T. CRUTTWELL, M.A.,

Fellow of Merton College, Oxford, and Head Master of Malvern College.

## \* I.—A HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE:

From the Earliest Period to the Times of the Antonines. *Third Edition.* Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . ."Mr. CRUTTWELL has done a real service to all Students of the Latin Language and Literature. . . . Full of good scholarship and good criticism."—*Athenæum*."A most serviceable—indeed, indispensable—guide for the Student. . . . The 'general reader' will be both charmed and instructed."—*Saturday Review*."The Author undertakes to make Latin Literature interesting, and he has succeeded. There is not a dull page in the volume."—*Academy*."The great merit of the work is its fulness and accuracy."—*Guardian*."This elaborate and careful work, in every respect of high merit. Nothing at all equal to it has hitherto been published in England."—*British Quarterly Review*.

s. d.

8 6

*Companion Volume. Second Edition.*

## \* II.—SPECIMENS OF ROMAN LITERATURE:

From the Earliest Period to the Times of the Antonines. Passages from the Works of Latin Authors, Prose Writers, and Poets:

Part I.—ROMAN THOUGHT: Religion, Philosophy and Science, Art and Letters, . . . . .

Part II.—ROMAN STYLE: Descriptive, Rhetorical, and Humorous Passages, . . . . .

Or in One Volume complete, . . . . .

Edited by C. T. CRUTTWELL, M.A., Merton College, Oxford; and PEAKE BANTON, M.A., some time Scholar of Jesus College, Oxford.

"‘Specimens of Roman Literature’ marks a new era in the study of Latin."—*English Churchman*."Schoolmasters and tutors will be grateful for a volume which supplies them at once with passages of every shade of difficulty for testing the most different capacity, or which may be read with advantage in the higher forms of schools. There is no other book of the kind in this country which can be more safely recommended, either for its breadth, cheapness, or interest."—*Prof. Ellis in the "Academy."*"A work which is not only useful but necessary. . . . The plan gives it a standing-ground of its own. . . . The sound judgment exercised in plan and selection calls for hearty commendation."—*Saturday Review*."It is hard to conceive a completer or handier repertory of specimens of Latin thought and style."—*Contemporary Review*.

6 0

5 0

10 6

## CURRIE (Joseph, formerly Head Classical

Master of Glasgow Academy):

\* THE WORKS OF HORACE: Text from ORELLIUS. English Notes, original, and selected from the best Commentators. Illustrations from the antique. Complete in One Volume. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

Or in Two Parts:

Part I.—CARMINA, . . . . .

Part II.—SATIRES AND EPISTLES, . . . . .

"The notes are excellent and exhaustive."—*Quarterly Journal of Education*.

5 0

3 0

3 0

## \* ——— EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR'S COM-

MENTARIES; containing his description of Gaul, Britain, and Germany.

With Notes, Vocabulary, &c. Adapted for Young Scholars. *Fourth Edition.* 18mo. Cloth, . . . . .

1 6

## \* D'ORSEY (Rev. Alex. J. D., B.D., Corpus

Christi Coll., Cambridge, Lecturer at King's College, London):

SPELLING BY DICTATION: Progressive Exercises in English Orthography, for Schools and Civil Service Examinations. *Sixteenth Thousand.* 18mo. Cloth, . . . . .

1 0

- \* FLEMING (William, D.D., late Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Glasgow) : s. d.

THE VOCABULARY OF PHILOSOPHY: MENTAL, MORAL, AND METAPHYSICAL. With Quotations and References for the Use of Students. Revised and Edited by HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., Professor of Moral Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh. *Third Edition, enlarged.* Crown 8vo. Cloth bevelled, . . . . . 10 6

"An admirable book. . . . In its present shape will be welcome, not only to Students, but to many who have long since passed out of the class of Students, popularly so called."—*Scotsman*.

"The additions by the Editor bear in their clear, concise, vigorous expression, the stamp of his powerful intellect, and thorough command of our language. More than ever, the work is now likely to have a prolonged and useful existence, and to facilitate the researches of those entering upon philosophic studies."—*Weekly Review*.

"A valuable addition to a Student's Library."—*Tablet*.

- \* McBURNEY (Isaiah, LL.D.): EXTRACTS FROM OVID'S METAMORPHOSES. With Notes, Vocabulary, &c. Adapted for Young Scholars. *Third Edition.* 18mo. Cloth, . . . 1 6

- \* MENTAL SCIENCE: S. T. COLERIDGE'S celebrated Essay on METHOD; Archbishop WHATELY'S Treatises on LOGIC and RHETORIC. *Tenth Edition.* Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . 5 0

- \* MILLER (W. Galbraith, M.A., LL.B., Lecturer on Public Law, including Jurisprudence and International Law, in the University of Glasgow) :

LECTURES ON THE PHILOSOPHY OF LAW. In 8vo. (*In preparation*).

## WORKS BY WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A.,

Trinity College, Cambridge, late Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow.

- \* A MANUAL OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. For the use of Advanced Students. With Map, 130 Engravings, and very copious Index. *Twelfth Edition.* Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . . . 8 6

"Comprises all the results of modern improved scholarship within a moderate compass."—*Athenæum*.

- \* RAMSAY (Professor): AN ELEMENTARY MANUAL OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. Adapted for Junior Classes. With numerous Illustrations. *Seventh Edition.* Crown 8vo. Cloth, . 4 0

- \* ——— A MANUAL OF LATIN PROSODY Illustrated by Copious Examples and Critical Remarks. For the use of Advanced Students. *Sixth Edition.* Crown 8vo. Cloth, . . . 5 0

"There is no other work on the subject worthy to compete with it."—*Athenæum*.

- \* ——— AN ELEMENTARY MANUAL OF LATIN PROSODY. Adapted for Junior Classes. Crown 8vo. Cloth, . 2 0

## \* THE SCHOOL BOARD READERS:

A NEW SERIES OF STANDARD READING-BOOKS.

EDITED BY A FORMER H.M. INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS.

*Adopted by many School Boards throughout the Country.*

Elementary Reader, Part I., 1d.	Standard III., . . . 9d.
Standard I., . . . 4d.	Standard IV., . . . 1s. 0d.
Standard II., . . . 6d.	Standard V., . . . 1s. 6d.
	Standard VI., . . . 2s. 0d.

Key to the Questions in Arithmetic in 2 Parts, each 6d.

\* \* Each Book of this Series contains within itself all that is necessary to fulfil the requirements of the Revised Code—viz., Reading, Spelling, and Dictation Lessons, together with Exercises in Arithmetic for the whole year. The paper, type, and binding are all that can be desired.

"THE BOOKS GENERALLY ARE VERY MUCH WHAT WE SHOULD DESIRE."—*Times*.  
 "The Series is DECIDEDLY ONE OF THE BEST that have yet appeared."—*Athenæum*.

## \* THE SCHOOL BOARD MANUALS

ON THE SPECIFIC SUBJECTS OF THE REVISED CODE,

BY A FORMER H.M. INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS,

*Editor of the "School Board Readers."*

64 pages, stiff wrapper. 6d.; neat cloth, 7d. each.

I.—ALGEBRA.	V.—ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY. (Well Illustrated with good Engravings.)
II.—ENGLISH HISTORY.	VI.—BIBLE HISTORY. (Entirely free from any Denominational bias.)
III.—GEOGRAPHY.	
IV.—PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.	

"These simple and well-graduated Manuals, adapted to the requirements of the New Code, are the most elementary of elementary works, and extremely cheap. They are more useful as practical guide-books than most of the more expensive works."—*Standard*.

SENIOR (Nassau William, M.A., late Professor of Political Economy in the University of Oxford).

A TREATISE ON POLITICAL ECONOMY: the Science which treats of the Nature, the Production, and the Distribution of Wealth. *Sixth Edition*. Crown 8vo. Cloth. (*Encyclopædia Metropolitana*), . . .

\* THOMSON (James): THE SEASONS. With an Introduction and Notes by ROBERT BELL, Editor of the "Annotated Series of British Poets." *Third Edition*. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . .  
 "An admirable introduction to the study of our English classics."

WHATELY (Archbishop): LOGIC—A Treatise on. With Synopsis and Index. (*Encyclopædia Metropolitana*), . . .

— RHETORIC—A Treatise on. With Synopsis and Index. (*Encyclopædia Metropolitana*), . . .

WYLDE (James): A MANUAL OF MATHEMATICS, Pure and Applied. . . .

s. d.

4 0

1 6

3 0

3 6

10 6



## WORKS IN GENERAL LITERATURE.

s. d.

BELL (Robert, Editor of the "Annotated Series of British Poets"):

GOLDEN LEAVES FROM THE WORKS OF THE POETS AND PAINTERS. Illustrated by Sixty-four superb Engravings on Steel, after Paintings by DAVID ROBERTS, STANFIELD, LESLIE, STOTHARD, HAYDON, CATTERMOLLE, NASMYTH, Sir THOMAS LAWRENCE, and many others, and engraved in the first style of Art by FINDEN, GREATBACH, LIGHTFOOT, &c. *Second Edition.* 4to. Cloth gilt, .

21 0

"'Golden Leaves' is by far the most important book of the season. The Illustrations are really works of art, and the volume does credit to the arts of England."—*Saturday Review*.

"The Poems are selected with taste and judgment."—*Times*.

"The engravings are from drawings by Stothard, Newton, Danby, Leslie, and Turner, and it is needless to say how charming are many of the above here given."—*Athenæum*.

CHRISTISON (John): A COMPLETE SYSTEM OF INTEREST TABLES at 3, 4, 4½, and 5 per Cent.; Tables of Exchange or Commission, Profit and Loss, Discount, Clothiers', Malt, Spirit, and various other useful Tables. To which is prefixed the Mercantile Ready-Reckoner, containing Reckoning Tables from one thirty-second part of a penny to one pound. *New Edition. Greatly enlarged.* 12mo. Bound in leather, . . . . .

4 6

## THE WORKS OF WILLIAM COBBETT.

THE ONLY AUTHORISED EDITIONS.

COBBETT (William): ADVICE TO YOUNG

Men and (incidentally) to Young Women, in the Middle and Higher Ranks of Life. In a Series of Letters addressed to a Youth, a Bachelor, a Lover, a Husband, a Father, a Citizen, and a Subject. *New Edition. With admirable Portrait on Steel.* Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

2 6

"Cobbett's great qualities were immense vigour, resource, energy, and courage, joined to a force of understanding, a degree of logical power, and above all a force of expression, which have rarely been equalled. . . . He was the most English of Englishmen."—*Saturday Review*.

"With all his faults, Cobbett's style is a continual refreshment to the lover of 'English undefined.'"—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

WILLIAM COBBETT'S WORKS—(*continued.*)

## COBBETT (Wm.): COTTAGE ECONOMY:

Containing information relative to the Brewing of Beer, Making of Bread, Keeping of Cows, Pigs, Bees, Poultry, &c.; and relative to other matters deemed useful in conducting the affairs of a Poor Man's Family. *Eighteenth Edition*, revised by the Author's Son. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

s. d.

2 6

## — EDUCATIONAL WORKS. (See page 18).

## — A LEGACY TO LABOURERS: An

Argument showing the Right of the Poor to Relief from the Land. With a Preface by the Author's Son, JOHN M. COBBETT, late M.P. for Oldham. *New Edition*. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

I 6

"The book cannot be too much studied just now."—*Nonconformist*.

"Cobbett was, perhaps, the ablest Political writer England ever produced, and his influence as a Liberal thinker is felt to this day. . . . It is a real treat to read his strong racy language."—*Public Opinion*.

## — A LEGACY TO PARSONS: Or, have the

Clergy of the Established Church an Equitable Right to Tithes and Church Property? *New Edition*. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

I 6

"The most powerful work of the greatest master of political controversy this country has ever produced."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

## COBBETT (Miss Anne): THE ENGLISH

HOUSEKEEPER; or, Manual of Domestic Management. Containing Advice on the conduct of Household Affairs and Practical Instructions, intended for the Use of Young Ladies who undertake the superintendence of their own Housekeeping. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

3 6

## COOK'S VOYAGES. VOYAGES ROUND

THE WORLD, by Captain Cook. Illustrated with Maps and numerous Engravings. Two vols. Super-Royal 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

30 0

## DALGAIRNS (Mrs.): THE PRACTICE OF

COOKERY, adapted to the business of Every-day Life. By Mrs. DALGAIRNS. *The best book for Scotch dishes*. About Fifty new Recipes have been added to the present Edition, but only such as the Author has had adequate means of ascertaining to be valuable. *Seventeenth Edition*. Fcap 8vo. Cloth. (In preparation.)

"This is by far the most complete and truly practical work which has yet appeared on the subject. It will be found an infallible 'Cook's Companion,' and a treasure of great price to the mistress of a family."—*Edinburgh Literary Journal*.

"We consider we have reason strongly to recommend Mrs. Dalgairns' as an economical, useful, and practical system of cookery, adapted to the wants of all families, from the tradesman's to the country gentleman's."—*Spectator*.

## D'AUBIGNÉ (Dr. Merle) : HISTORY OF THE

REFORMATION. With the Author's latest additions and a new Preface. Many Woodcuts, and Twelve Engravings on Steel, illustrative of the life of MARTIN LUTHER, after LABOUCHÈRE. In one large volume. Demy 4to. Elegantly bound in cloth, . . . . .

s. d.

21 0

"In this edition the principal actors and scenes in the great drama of the Sixteenth Century are brought vividly before the eye of the reader, by the skill of the artist and Engraver."

DONALDSON (Joseph, Sergeant in the 94th  
Scots Regiment) :

RECOLLECTIONS OF THE EVENTFUL LIFE OF A SOLDIER IN THE PENINSULA. *New Edition.* Fcap 8vo. Gilt sides and edges, . . . . .

4 0

## EARTH DELINEATED WITH PEN AND

PENCIL (The) : An Illustrated Record of Voyages, Travels, and Adventures all round the World. Illustrated with more than Two Hundred Engravings in the first style of Art, by the most eminent Artists, including several from the master-pencil of GUSTAVE DORÉ. Demy 4to, 750 pages. Very handsomely bound, . . . . .

21 0

## MRS. ELLIS'S CELEBRATED WORKS

On the INFLUENCE and CHARACTER of WOMEN.

## THE ENGLISHWOMAN'S LIBRARY :

A Series of Moral and Descriptive Works. By Mrs. ELLIS. Small 8vo. Cloth, each volume, . . . . .

2 6

1.—THE WOMEN OF ENGLAND: Their Social Duties and Domestic Habits. *Thirty-ninth Thousand.*

2.—THE DAUGHTERS OF ENGLAND: Their Position in Society, Character, and Responsibilities. *Twentieth Thousand.*

3.—THE WIVES OF ENGLAND: Their Relative Duties, Domestic Influence, and Social Obligations. *Eighteenth Thousand.*

4.—THE MOTHERS OF ENGLAND: Their Influence and Responsibilities. *Twentieth Thousand.*

5.—FAMILY SECRETS; Or, Hints to make Home Happy. Three vols. *Twenty-third Thousand.*

6.—SUMMER AND WINTER IN THE PYRENEES. *Tenth Thousand.*

7.—TEMPER AND TEMPERAMENT; Or, Varieties of Character. Two vols. *Tenth Thousand.*

8.—PREVENTION BETTER THAN CURE; Or, the Moral Wants of the World we live in. *Twelfth Thousand.*

9.—HEARTS AND HOMES; Or, Social Distinctions. Three vols. *Tenth Thousand.*

## THE EMERALD SERIES OF STANDARD AUTHORS.

Illustrated by Engravings on Steel, after STOTHARD, LESLIE, DAVID ROBERTS, STANFIELD, Sir THOMAS LAWRENCE, CATTERMOLÉ, &c., Fcap 8vo. Cloth, gilt.

Particular attention is requested to this very beautiful series. The delicacy of the engravings, the excellence of the typography, and the quaint antique head and tail pieces, render them the most beautiful volumes ever issued from the press of this country, and now, unquestionably, the cheapest of their class.

## BURNS' (Robert) SONGS AND BALLADS.

With an Introduction on the Character and Genius of Burns. By THOMAS CARLYLE. Carefully printed in antique type, and illustrated with Portrait and beautiful Engravings on Steel. *Second Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

3 0

## BYRON (Lord): CHILDE HAROLD'S PILGRIMAGE.

With Memoir by Professor SPALDING. Illustrated with Portrait and Engravings on Steel, by GREATBACH, MILLER, LIGHTFOOT, &c., from Paintings by CATTERMOLÉ, Sir T. LAWRENCE, H. HOWARD, and STOTHARD. Beautifully printed on toned paper. *Third Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

3 0

## CAMPBELL (Thomas): THE PLEASURES

OF HOPE. With Introductory Memoir by the Rev. CHARLES ROGERS, LL.D., and several Poems never before published. Illustrated with Portrait and Steel Engravings. *Second Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

3 0

## CHATTERTON'S (Thomas) POETICAL

WORKS. With an Original Memoir by FREDERICK MARTIN, and Portrait. Beautifully illustrated on Steel, and elegantly printed. *Fourth Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

3 0

## GOLDSMITH'S (Oliver) POETICAL WORKS.

With Memoir by Professor SPALDING. Exquisitely illustrated with Steel Engravings. *New Edition.* Printed on superior toned paper. *Seventh Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

3 0

## GRAY'S (Thomas) POETICAL WORKS.

With Life by the Rev. JOHN MITFORD, and Essay by the EARL of CARLISLE. With Portrait and numerous Engravings on Steel and Wood. Elegantly printed on toned paper. *Eton Edition, with the Latin Poems.* *Sixth Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

5 0

## HERBERT'S (George) POETICAL WORKS.

With Memoir by J. NICHOL, B.A., Oxon, Prof. of English Literature in the University of Glasgow. Edited by CHARLES COWDEN CLARKE. Antique headings to each page. *Second Thousand.* Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

3 0

## KEBLE (Rev. John): THE CHRISTIAN

YEAR. With Memoir by W. TEMPLE, Portrait, and Eight beautiful Engravings on Steel. *Second Thousand.*

Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .  
Morocco, elegant, . . . . .  
Malachite, . . . . .

5 0

10 6

12 6



THE EMERALD SERIES—(Continued).

POE'S (Edgar Allan) COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS. Edited, with Memoir, by JAMES HANNAY. Full-page Illustrations after WEHNERT, WIER, &c. Toned paper. <i>Thirteenth Thousand.</i>	s.	d.
Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .	3	0
Malachite, . . . . .	10	6
<i>Other volumes in preparation.</i>		

## FINDEN'S FINE ART WORKS.

BEAUTIES OF MOORE: being a Series of Portraits of his Principal Female Characters, from Paintings by eminent Artists, engraved in the highest style of Art by EDWARD FINDEN, with a Memoir of the Poet, and Descriptive Letterpress. Folio. Cloth gilt, .	42	0
---	----	---

DRAWING-ROOM TABLE BOOK (The): a Series of 31 highly-finished Steel Engravings, with descriptive Tales by Mrs. S. C. HALL, MARY HOWITT, and others. Folio. Cloth gilt, .	21	0
--	----	---

GALLERY OF MODERN ART (The): a Series of 31 highly-finished Steel Engravings, with descriptive Tales by Mrs. S. C. HALL, MARY HOWITT, and others. Folio. Cloth gilt, .	21	0
--	----	---

FISHER'S READY-RECKONER. The best in the World. <i>New Edition.</i> 18mo. Cloth, . . . . .	1	6
--	---	---

GILMER'S INTEREST TABLES; Tables for Calculation of Interest, on any sum, for any number of days, at $\frac{1}{2}$ , 1, $1\frac{1}{2}$ , 2, $2\frac{1}{2}$ , 3, $3\frac{1}{2}$ , 4, $4\frac{1}{2}$ , 5 and 6 per Cent. By ROBERT GILMER. Corrected and enlarged. <i>Eleventh Edition.</i> 12mo. Cloth, . . . . .	5	0
--	---	---

GRÆME (Elliott): BEETHOVEN: a Memoir. With Portrait, Essay, and Remarks on the Pianoforte Sonatas, with Hints to Students, by DR. FERDINAND HILLER, of Cologne. <i>Second Edition, slightly enlarged.</i> Crown 8vo. Cloth gilt, elegant, . . . . .	5	0
"This elegant and interesting Memoir. . . . The newest, prettiest, and most readable sketch of the immortal Master of Music.— <i>Musical Standard.</i>		
"A gracious and pleasant Memorial of the Centenary."— <i>Spectator.</i>		
"This delightful little book—concise, sympathetic, judicious."— <i>Manchester Examiner.</i>		

"We can, without reservation, recommend it as the most trustworthy and the pleasantest Memoir of Beethoven published in England."—*Observer.*

"A most readable volume, which ought to find a place in the library of every admirer of the great Tone-Poet."—*Edinburgh Daily Review.*

## A NOVEL WITH TWO HEROES.

<i>Second Edition.</i> In 2 vols. Post 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .	21	0
--	----	---

"A decided literary success."—*Athenæum.*

"Clever and amusing . . . above the average even of good novels . . . free from sensationalism, but full of interest . . . touches the deeper chords of life . . . delineation of character remarkably good."—*Spectator.*

"Superior in all respects to the common run of novels."—*Daily News.*

"A story of deep interest. . . . The dramatic scenes are powerful almost to painfulness in their intensity."—*Scotsman.*

**HOGARTH: The Works of William Hogarth, in**  
a Series of 150 Steel Engravings by the First Artists, with descriptive  
Letterpress by the Rev. JOHN TRUSLER, and Introductory Essay by JAMES  
HANNAY. Folio. Cloth, gilt edges, . . . . .

s. d.

52 6

"The Philosopher who ever preached the sturdy English virtues which have made us  
what we are."

**KNIGHT (Charles): PICTORIAL GALLERY**  
OF THE USEFUL AND FINE ARTS. With Steel Engravings, and  
nearly 4,000 Woodcuts. Two vols. Folio. Cloth gilt, . . . . .

42 0

— **PICTORIAL MUSEUM OF ANIMA-**  
TED NATURE. Illustrated with 4,000 Woodcuts. Two vols. Folio.  
Cloth gilt, . . . . .

35 0

### **MACKEY'S FREEMASONRY:**

A LEXICON OF FREEMASONRY. Containing a definition of its  
Communicable Terms, Notices of its History, Traditions, and Antiquities,  
and an Account of all the Rites and Mysteries of the Ancient World. By  
ALBERT G. MACKEY, M.D., Secretary-General of the Supreme Council  
of the U.S., &c. *Seventh Edition*, thoroughly revised with APPENDIX by  
Michael C. Peck, Prov. Grand Secretary for N. and E. Yorkshire. Hand-  
somely bound in cloth. (*At Press*.)

"Of MACKEY'S LEXICON it would be impossible to speak in too high terms; suffice it  
to say, that, in our opinion, it ought to be in the hands of every Mason who would  
thoroughly understand and master our noble Science. . . . No Masonic Lodge or  
Library should be without a copy of this most useful work."—*Masonic News*.

### **HENRY MAYHEW'S CELEBRATED WORK ON THE STREET-FOLK OF LONDON.**

**LONDON LABOUR AND THE LONDON**  
POOR: A Cyclopædia of the Condition and Earnings of *those that will*  
*work and those that cannot work*. By HENRY MAYHEW. With many  
full-page Illustrations from Photographs. In three vols. Demy 8vo.  
Cloth, . . . . . Each vol.

4 6

"Every page of the work is full of valuable information, laid down in so interesting a  
manner that the reader can never tire."—*Illustrated London News*.

"Mr. Henry Mayhew's famous record of the habits, earnings, and sufferings of the  
London poor."—*Lloyd's Weekly London Newspaper*.

"This remarkable book, in which Mr. Mayhew gave the better classes their first real  
insight into the habits, modes of livelihood, and current of thought of the London  
poor."—*The Patriot*.

*The Extra Volume.*

### **LONDON LABOUR AND THE LONDON**

POOR: *Those that will not work*. Comprising the Non-workers, by  
HENRY MAYHEW; Prostitutes, by BRACEBRIDGE HEMYNG; Thieves,  
by JOHN BINNY; Beggars, by ANDREW HALLIDAY. With an Intro-  
ductory Essay on the Agencies at Present in Operation in the Metropolis  
for the Suppression of Crime and Vice, by the Rev. WILLIAM TUCKNISS,  
B.A., Chaplain to the Society for the Rescue of Young Women and  
Children. With Illustrations of Scenes and Localities. In one large  
vol. Royal 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

10 6

"The work is full of interesting matter for the casual reader, while the philanthropist  
and the philosopher will find details of the greatest import."—*City Press*.

MR. MAYHEW'S LONDON LABOUR—(*Continued*).

*Companion volume to the preceding.*

# THE CRIMINAL PRISONS OF LONDON,

and Scenes of Prison Life. BY HENRY MAYHEW and JOHN BINNY. Illustrated by nearly two hundred Engravings on Wood, principally from Photographs. In one large vol. Imperial 8vo. Cloth, . . . . .

s. d.  
10 6

"This volume concludes Mr. Henry Mayhew's account of his researches into the crime and poverty of London. The amount of labour of one kind or other, which the whole series of his publications represents, is something almost incalculable."—*Literary Budget*.

\*. This celebrated Record of Investigations into the condition of the Poor of the Metropolis, undertaken from philanthropic motives by Mr. HENRY MAYHEW, first gave the wealthier classes of England some idea of the state of Heathenism, Degradation, and Misery in which multitudes of their poorer brethren languished. His revelations created, at the time of their appearance, universal horror and excitement—that a nation, professedly *Christian*, should have in its midst a vast population, so sunk in ignorance, vice, and very hatred of Religion, was deemed incredible, until further examination established the truth of the statements advanced. The result is well known. The London of Mr. MAYHEW will, happily, soon exist only in his pages. To those who would appreciate the efforts already made among the ranks which recruit our "dangerous" classes, and who would learn what yet remains to be done, the work will afford enlightenment, not unmingled with surprise.

## MILLER (Thomas, Author of "Pleasures of a Country Life," &c.):

THE LANGUAGE OF FLOWERS. With Eight beautifully-coloured Floral Plates. Fcap 8vo. Cloth, gilt edge, *Fourteenth Thousand*, . . . . .

3 6  
7 6

"A book  
In which thou wilt find many a lovely saying  
About the leaves and flowers."—KEATS.

## THE LANGUAGE OF FLOWERS

Abridged from the larger work by THOMAS MILLER. With coloured Frontispiece. *Cheap Edition*. Limp cloth, . . . . .

0 6

## POE'S (Edgar Allan) COMPLETE POETICAL

WORKS. Edited, with Memoir, by JAMES HANNAY. Full-page Illustrations after WEHNERT, WEIR, and others. In paper wrapper. Illustrated, . . . . .

1 6

## POETRY OF THE YEAR: Or, Pastorals from

our Poets, illustrative of the Seasons. With Chromo-Lithographs from Drawings after BIRKET FOSTER, R.A., S. CRESWICK, R.A., DAVID COX, HARRISON WEIR, E.V.B., and others. *New Edition*. Toned paper. Cloth gilt, elegant, . . . . .

16 0

## RAPHAEL: THE CARTOONS OF

RAPHAEL. Engraved on Steel in the first style of Art by G. GREATBACH, after the Originals at South Kensington. With Memoir, Portrait of RAPHAEL, as painted by himself, and Fac-simile of his Autograph. Folio. Elegantly bound in cloth, . . . . .

10 6

"Forms a handsome volume."—*Art and Letters*.

## SCHILLER'S MAID OF ORLEANS: (*Die*

*Jungfrau von Orleans*). Rendered into English by LEWIS FILMORE, translator of GOETHE'S FAUST. With admirable Portrait of SCHILLER, engraved on Steel by ADLARD, and Introductory Notes. In Crown 8vo. Toned paper. Cloth, elegant, gilt edges, . . . . .

"Mr. Filmore's excellent translation deserves to be read by all."—*Northern Whig*.  
 "The drama has found in Mr Filmore a faithful and sympathetic translator."—*Public Opinion*.

## SHAKSPEARE: THE FAMILY. The

Dramatic Works of WILLIAM SHAKSPEARE, edited and expressly adapted for Home and School Use. By THOMAS BOWDLER, F.R.S. With Twelve beautiful Illustrations on Steel. *New Edition*. Crown 8vo.

Cloth, gilt, . . . . . 10 6  
 Morocco antique, . . . . . 17 6

\* \* *This unique Edition of the great dramatist is admirably suited for home use; while objectionable phrases have been expurgated, no rash liberties have been taken with the text.*

"It is quite undeniable that there are many passages in Shakspeare which a father could not read aloud to his children—a brother to his sister—or a gentleman to a lady; and every one almost must have felt or witnessed the extreme awkwardness, and even distress, that arises from suddenly stumbling upon such expressions. . . . Those who recollect such scenes must all rejoice that Mr. BOWDLER has provided a security against their recurrence. . . . This purification has been accomplished with surprisingly little loss, either of weight or value; the base alloy in the pure metal of Shakspeare has been found to amount to an inconceivably small proportion. . . . It has in general been found easy to extirpate the offensive expressions of our great poet without any injury to the context, or any visible scar or blank in the composition. They turn out to be not so much cankers in the flowers, as weeds that have sprung up by their side—not flaws in the metal, but impurities that have gathered on its surface—and, so far from being missed, on their removal the work generally appears more natural and harmonious without them."—*Lord Jeffrey in the Edinburgh Review*.

## SHAKSPEARE'S DRAMATIC & POETICAL

WORKS. Revised from the Original Editions, with a Memoir and Essay on his Genius by BARRY CORNWALL; and Annotations and Introductory Remarks on his Plays, by R. H. HORNE, and other eminent writers. With numerous Woodcut Illustrations and full-page Steel Engravings by KENNY MEADOWS. *Tenth Edition*. Three vols. Super-royal 8vo. Cloth, gilt, . . . . .

42 0

## SHAKSPEARE'S WORKS. Edited by T. O.

HALLIWELL, F.R.S., F.S.A. With Historical Introductions, Notes, Explanatory and Critical, and a Series of Portraits on Steel. Three vols. Royal 8vo. Cloth gilt, . . . . .

50 0

## SOUTHGATE (Mrs. Henry): THE CHRIS-

TIAN LIFE: Thoughts in Prose and Verse from the Best Writers of all Ages. Selected and Arranged for Every Day in the Year. 8vo. Cloth Elegant.



## MR. SOUTHGATE'S WORKS.

"No one who is in the habit of writing and speaking much on a variety of subjects can afford to dispense with Mr. SOUTHGATE'S WORKS."—*Glasgow News*.

FIRST SERIES—THIRTY-SECOND EDITION. SECOND SERIES—SEVENTH EDITION.

## MANY THOUGHTS OF MANY MINDS:

Selections and Quotations from the best Authors. Compiled and Analytically Arranged by

HENRY SOUTHGATE.

In Square 8vo, elegantly printed on Toned Paper.

Presentation Edition, Cloth and Gold, . . . . .	Each Vol.	12	6
Library Edition, Roxburghe, . . . . .	"	14	0
Ditto, Morocco Antique, . . . . .	"	21	0

*Each Series complete in itself, and sold separately.*

"The produce of years of research."—*Examiner*.

"A MAGNIFICENT GIFT-BOOK, appropriate to all times and seasons."—*Freemasons' Magazine*.

"Not so much a book as a library."—*Patriot*.

"Preachers and Public Speakers will find that the work has special uses for them."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

## BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

*Now Ready, Second Edition.*

## SUGGESTIVE THOUGHTS ON RELIGIOUS SUBJECTS:

A Dictionary of Quotations and Selected Passages from nearly 1,000 of the best Writers, Ancient and Modern.

Compiled and Analytically Arranged by HENRY SOUTHGATE. In Square 8vo, elegantly printed on toned paper.

Presentation Edition, Cloth Elegant, . . . . .	10	6
Library Edition, Roxburghe, . . . . .	12	0
Ditto, Morocco Antique, . . . . .	20	0

"The topics treated of are as wide as our Christianity itself: the writers quoted from, of every Section of the one Catholic Church of JESUS CHRIST."—*Author's Preface*.

"This is another of Mr. Southgate's most valuable volumes. . . . The mission which the Author is so successfully prosecuting in literature is not only highly beneficial, but necessary in this age. . . . If men are to make any acquaintance at all with the great minds of the world, they can only do so with the means which our Author supplies."—*Homilist*.

"A casket of gems."—*English Churchman*.

"Mr. Southgate's work has been compiled with a great deal of judgment, and it will, I trust, be extensively useful."—*Rev. Canon Liddon, D.D., D.C.L.*

"Many a busy Christian teacher will be thankful to Mr. Southgate for having unearthed so many rich gems of thought; while many outside the ministerial circle will obtain stimulus, encouragement, consolation, and counsel, within the pages of this handsome volume."—*Nonconformist*.

"The special value of this most admirable compilation is discovered, when attention is concentrated on a particular subject, or series of subjects, as illustrated by the various and often brilliant lights shed by passages selected from the best authors in all ages. . . . A most valuable book of reference."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

"Mr. SOUTHGATE is an indefatigable labourer in a field which he has made peculiarly his own. . . . The labour expended on 'Suggestive Thoughts' must have been immense, and the result is as nearly perfect as human fallibility can make it. . . . Apart from the selections it contains, the book is of value as an index to theological writings. As a model of judicious, logical, and suggestive treatment of a subject, we may refer our readers to the manner in which the subject 'JESUS CHRIST' is arranged and illustrated in 'Suggestive Thoughts.'"—*Glasgow News*.

## THE SHILLING MANUALS.

s. d.

BY JOHN TIMBS, F.S.A.,

Author of "The Curiosities of London," &amp;c.

A Series of Hand-Books, containing Facts and Anecdotes interesting to all Readers. *Second Edition.* Fcap 8vo. Bound in neat cloth.

I.—TIMBS' CHARACTERISTICS OF EMINENT MEN, . . . . .	I	0
II.—TIMBS' CURIOSITIES OF ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE LIFE, . . . . .	I	0
III.—TIMBS' ODDITIES OF HISTORY AND STRANGE STORIES FOR ALL CLASSES, . . . . .	I	0
IV.—TIMBS' ONE THOUSAND DOMESTIC HINTS on the Choice of Provisions, Cookery, and Housekeeping; new Inventions and Improvements; and various branches of Household Management, .	I	0
V.—TIMBS' POPULAR SCIENCE: Recent Researches on the Sun, Moon, Stars, and Meteors; the Earth; Phenomena of Life, Sight, and Sound; Inventions and Discoveries, . . . . .	I	0
VI.—TIMBS' THOUGHTS FOR TIMES AND SEASONS, . . . . .	I	0

*Opinions of the Press on the Series.*

"It is difficult to determine which of these volumes is the most attractive. Will be found equally enjoyable on a railway journey or by the fireside."—*Mining Journal*.

"These additions to the Library, produced by Mr. Timbs' industry and ability, are useful, and in his pages many a hint and suggestion, and many a fact of importance is stored up that would otherwise have been lost to the public."—*Builder*.

"Capital little books of about a hundred pages each, wherein the indefatigable Author is seen at his best."—*Mechanic's Magazine*.

"Extremely interesting volumes."—*Evening Standard*.

"Amusing, instructive, and interesting. . . . As food for thought and pleasant reading, we can heartily recommend the 'Shilling Manuals.'"—*Birmingham Daily Gazette*.

TIMBS (John, F.S.A.): PLEASANT HALF-HOURS FOR THE FAMILY CIRCLE. Containing Popular Science, One Thousand Domestic Hints, Thoughts for Times and Seasons, Oddities of History, and Characteristics of Great Men. *Second Edition.* Fcap 8vo. Cloth gilt, and gilt edges, . . . . .

5 0

"Contains a wealth of useful reading of the greatest possible variety."—*Plymouth Mercury*.

WANDERINGS IN EVERY CLIME; Or, Voyages, Travels, and Adventures All Round the World. Edited by W. F. AINSWORTH, F.R.G.S., F.S.A., &c., and embellished with upwards of Two Hundred Illustrations by the first Artists, including several from the master-pencil of GUSTAVE DORÉ. Demy 4to. 800 pages. Cloth and gold, bevelled boards, . . . . .

21 0

# I N D E X.

	PAGE		PAGE
AINSWORTH (W. F.), Earth Delineated, . . . . .	25	GORE (G.), Electro-deposition, . . . . .	9
— Wanderings in Every Clime, . . . . .	32	GRÆME (Elliott), Beethoven, . . . . .	27
AITKEN (W., M.D.), Science and Practice of		— Novel with Two Heroes, . . . . .	27
Medicine, . . . . .	6	GRIFFIN (J. J.), Chemical Recreations, . . . . .	10
— Outlines, . . . . .	7	— Do. (in Parts), . . . . .	10
— Growth of the Recruit, . . . . .	7	GURDEN (R.), Traverse Tables, . . . . .	11
ANSTED (Prof.), Geology, . . . . .	9	HARRIS (Rev. Dr.), Altar of Household, . . . . .	1
Inanimate Creation, . . . . .	7	HENRY (M.), Commentary on the Bible, . . . . .	2
BAIRD (Prof.), Student's Natural History, . . . . .	7	HOGARTH, Works of, . . . . .	28
BELL (R.), Golden Leaves, . . . . .	23	JAMIESON (A.), Manual of the Steam Engine . . . . .	11
BLYTH (A. W.), Hygiène and Public Health, . . . . .	8	KEBLE'S CHRISTIAN YEAR, 4to, . . . . .	2
Foods, . . . . .	8	— Do., Fcap, . . . . .	2
Poisons, . . . . .	8	KITTO (Rev. Dr.), The Holy Land, . . . . .	4
BROUGHAM (Lord), Paley's Natural Theology, . . . . .	5	— Pictorial Sunday Book, . . . . .	4
BROWNE (W. R.), Student's Mechanics, . . . . .	7	KNIGHT (Charles), Pictorial Gallery, . . . . .	28
Foundations of Mechanics, . . . . .	7	— Do. Museum, . . . . .	28
BRYCE (A. H.), Works of Virgil, . . . . .	18	LEARED (Dr.), Imperfect Digestion, . . . . .	11
Works of Virgil (in Parts), . . . . .	18	LINN (Dr.), On the Teeth, . . . . .	12
BUNYAN'S Pilgrim's Progress (Mason), . . . . .	1	LONGMORE (Prof.), Sanitary Contrasts, . . . . .	12
Do. (Maguire), . . . . .	1	M'BURNEY (Dr.), Ovid's Metamorphoses, . . . . .	21
Select Works, . . . . .	1	MACKEY (A. G.), Lexicon of Freemasonry, . . . . .	28
CHEEVER'S (Dr.), Religious and Moral		M'NAB (Dr.), Manual of Botany, . . . . .	12
Anecdotes, . . . . .	1	MAYHEW (H.), London Labour, . . . . .	28
CHRISTISON (J.), Interest Tables, . . . . .	23	MENTAL SCIENCE (Coleridge and Whately), . . . . .	21
CIRCLE OF THE SCIENCES, 9 vols., . . . . .	9	MILLER (T.), Language of Flowers, . . . . .	29
— Treatises, . . . . .	9	MILLER (W. G.), Philosophy of Law, . . . . .	21
COBBETT (Wm.), Advice to Young Men, . . . . .	23	MOFFITT (Dr.), Instruction for Attendants on	
Cottage Economy, . . . . .	24	Wounded, . . . . .	12
English Grammar, . . . . .	18	MUNRO AND JAMIESON'S Electrical	
French do., . . . . .	18	Pocket-Book, . . . . .	12
Legacy to Labourers, . . . . .	24	NAPIER (Jas.), Dyeing and Dyeing Receipts, . . . . .	13
Do. Parsons, . . . . .	24	Electro-Metallurgy, . . . . .	13
COBBIN'S Mangnall's Question, . . . . .	18	PHILLIPS (John), Manual of Geology, . . . . .	13
COLERIDGE on Method, . . . . .	19	PHILLIPS (J. A.), Elements of Metallurgy, . . . . .	14
COOK (Captain), Voyages of, . . . . .	24	POE (Edgar), Poetical Works of, . . . . .	27
CRAIK (G.), History of English Literature, . . . . .	19	POETRY OF THE YEAR, . . . . .	29
Manual of do., . . . . .	19	PORTER (Surg.-Maj.), Surgeon's Pocket-Book, . . . . .	14
CRUDEN'S CONCORDANCE, by Eadie, . . . . .	3	RAGG (Rev. T.), Creation's Testimony, . . . . .	5
by Youngman, . . . . .	2	RAMSAY (Prof.), Roman Antiquities, . . . . .	21
CRUTTWELL'S History of Roman Literature, . . . . .	20	Do. Elem <sup>ts</sup> , . . . . .	21
Specimens of do., . . . . .	20	— Latin Prosody, . . . . .	21
Do., do. (in Parts), . . . . .	20	Do. Elem <sup>ts</sup> , . . . . .	21
CURRIE (J.), Works of Horace, . . . . .	20	RANKINE'S ENGINEERING WORKS, 15, 16	
Do. (in Parts), . . . . .	20	RAPHAEL'S CARTOONS, . . . . .	29
Cæsar's Commentaries, . . . . .	20	RELIGIONS OF THE WORLD, . . . . .	5
DALGAIRN'S COOKERY, . . . . .	24	SCHILLER'S MAID OF ORLEANS, . . . . .	30
DALLAS (Prof.), Animal Creation, . . . . .	10	SCHOOL BOARD MANUALS, . . . . .	22
D'AUBIGNE'S History of the Reformation, . . . . .	25	— READERS, . . . . .	25
DICK (Dr.), Celestial Scenery, . . . . .	2	SCOTT (Rev. Thos.), Commentary on the Bible, . . . . .	2
Christian Philosopher, . . . . .	2	SEATON (A. E.), Marine Engineering, . . . . .	16
DONALDSON (Jas.), Eventful Life of a		SENIOR (Prof.), Political Economy, . . . . .	22
Soldier, . . . . .	25	SHAKESPERE, Bowdler's Family, . . . . .	30
DORSEY (A. J.), Spelling by Dictation, . . . . .	20	— Barry Cornwall's, . . . . .	30
DOUGLAS (J. C.), Manual of Telegraph Con-		— Halliwell's, . . . . .	30
struction, . . . . .	10	SHELTON (W. V.), Mechanic's Guide, . . . . .	17
DUPRE AND HAKE, Practical Chemistry, . . . . .	10	SOUTHGATE (H.), Many Thoughts of Many	
EADIE (Rev. Dr.), Biblical Cyclopædia, . . . . .	3	Minds, . . . . .	31
Cruden's Concordance, . . . . .	3	— Suggestive Thoughts, . . . . .	31
Classified Bible, . . . . .	3	— (Mrs.), Christian Life, . . . . .	5
Ecclesiastical Cyclopædia, . . . . .	3	THOMSON (Dr. Spencer), Domestic Medicine, . . . . .	17
Dictionary of Bible, . . . . .	3	THOMSON'S SEASONS, . . . . .	22
ELLIS (Mrs.), Englishwoman's Library, . . . . .	25	TIMBS' (John), Shilling Manuals, . . . . .	32
EMERALD SERIES OF STANDARD		— Pleasant Half Hours, . . . . .	32
AUTHORS, . . . . .	26	WHATELY (Archbishop), Logic, . . . . .	22
FINDEN'S FINE-ART WORKS, . . . . .	27	— Rhetoric, . . . . .	22
FISHER'S READY-RECKONER, . . . . .	27	WORDS AND WORKS OF OUR BLESSED	
FLEMING (Prof.), Vocabulary of Philosophy, . . . . .	21	LORD, . . . . .	5
FOSTER (Chas.), Story of the Bible, . . . . .	4	WYLDE (Jas.), Magic of Science, . . . . .	17
GEDGE (Rev. J. W.), Bible History, . . . . .	1	— Manual of Mathematics, 8 10 . . . . .	22
GILMER (R.), Interest Tables, . . . . .	27		



## MANY THOUGHTS OF MANY MINDS

## A TREASURY OF REFERENCE,

Consisting of Selections from the Writings of the most Celebrated Authors

FIRST AND SECOND SERIES. COMPILED AND ANALYTICALLY ARRANGED

By HENRY SOUTHGATE.

*In Square 8vo, elegantly printed on Toned Paper.*

Presentation Edition, Cloth and Gold,	12s. 6d. each Volume.
Library Edition, Half-Bound, Roxburghe,	14s. „
Do., Morocco Antique,	21s. „

*Each Series is Complete in itself, and sold separately.*

“‘MANY THOUGHTS,’ &c., are evidently the produce of years of research. We look up any subject under the sun, and are pretty sure to find something that has been said—generally well said—upon it.”—*Examiner*.

“Many beautiful examples of thought and style are to be found among the selections.”—*Leader*.

“There can be little doubt that it is destined to take a high place among books of this class.”—*Notes and Queries*.

“A treasure to every reader who may be fortunate enough to possess it. Its perusal is like inhaling essences; we have the cream only of the great authors quoted. Here all are seeds or gems.”—*English Journal of Education*.

“Mr. Southgate’s reading will be found to extend over nearly the whole known field of literature, ancient and modern.”—*Gentleman’s Magazine*.

“Here is matter suited to all tastes, and illustrative of all opinions—morals, politics, philosophy, and solid information. We have no hesitation in pronouncing it one of the most important books of the season. Credit is due to the publishers for the elegance with which the work is got up, and for the extreme beauty and correctness of the typography.”—*Morning Chronicle*.

“Of the numerous volumes of the kind, we do not remember having met with one in which the selection was more judicious, or the accumulation of treasures so truly wonderful.”—*Morning Herald*.

“Mr. Southgate appears to have ransacked every nook and corner for gems of thought.”—*Allen’s Indian Mail*.

“The selection of the extracts has been made with taste, judgment, and official nicety.”—*Morning Post*.

“This is a wondrous book, and contains a great many gems of thought.”—*Daily News*.

“As a work of reference, it will be an acquisition to any man’s library.”—*Publishers’ Circular*.

“This volume contains more gems of thought, refined sentiments, noble axioms, and extractable sentences, than have ever before been brought together in our language.”—*The Field*.

“Will be found to be worth its weight in gold by literary men.”—*The Builder*.

“All that the poet has described of the beautiful in nature and art; all the wit that has flashed from pregnant minds; all the axioms of experience, the collected wisdom of philosopher and sage, are garnered into one heap of useful and well-arranged instruction and amusement.”—*The Era*.

“The mind of almost all nations and ages of the world is recorded here.”—*John Bull*.

“This is not a law-book; but, departing from our usual practice, we notice it because it is likely to be very useful to lawyers.”—*Law Times*.

“The collection will prove a mine, rich and inexhaustible, to those in search of a quotation.”—*Art Journal*.

“There is not, as we have reason to know, a single trashy sentence in this volume. Open where we may, every page is laden with the wealth of profoundest thought, and all aglow with the loftiest inspirations of genius. To take this book into our hands is like sitting down to a grand conversation with the greatest thinkers of all ages.”—*Star*.

“The work of Mr. Southgate far outstrips all others of its kind. To the clergyman, the author, the artist,

and the essayist, ‘Many Thoughts of Many Minds’ cannot fail to be an almost incalculable service.”—*Burgh Mercury*.

“We have no hesitation when in describing Mr. Southgate’s very best book of the class. There is positively nothing of the kind in our language that will bear a more favourable comparison with it.”—*Manchester Weekly Advertiser*.

“There is no mood in which we can take it up without deriving instruction, consolation, and amusement. We heartily thank Mr. Southgate for a book which we shall recommend to one of our best friends and panions.”—*Cambridge Chronicle*.

“This work possesses the merits of being a magnificent gift-book, appropriate to all times and seasons;—a volume calculated to be of use to the scholar, the divine, or the public man.”—*Freemasons’ Magazine*.

“It is not so much a book of quotations.”—*Patriot*.

“The quotations abound in thought which is the mainspring of mental exercise.”—*Liverpool Courier*.

“For purposes of apposite quotation it cannot be surpassed.”—*Edinburgh Times*.

“It is impossible to pick out a single passage in the work which does not, upon the face of it, justify its selection by its intrinsic merits.”—*Dorset Chronicle*.

“We are not surprised that a Series of this work should have been called for. Mr. Southgate has catholic tastes desirable in an editor. Preachers and public speakers will find that it has special use for them.”—*Edinburgh Daily Review*.

“The SECOND SERIES fully sustains the deserved reputation of the FIRST.”—*John Bull*.

LONDON: CHARLES GRIFFIN &amp; COMPANY.

87-58201









